THE HISTORY
Of the moſt NOBLE *Order of the GARTER*

The Project Gutenberg eBook of The History of the Most Noble Order of the Garter

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: The History of the Most Noble Order of the Garter

Author: Elias Ashmole

Release date: March 22, 2015 [eBook #48555]
Most recently updated: October 24, 2024

Language: English

Other information and formats: www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/48555

Credits: Produced by Chris Curnow, Jonathan Harry, Sonya Schermann,
Stephen Rowland, Google Books and the Online Distributed

Proofreading Team at http://www.pgdp.net

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE HISTORY OF THE MOST NOBLE ORDER OF THE GARTER ***

Transcriber's Note:

The cover image was created by the transcriber and is placed in the public domain.

His Royal Highness
Prince of Wales, &c.
most Noble Order of
GEORGE AUGUSTUS
And Knight of the
the Garter.

His Royal Highness GEORGE AUGUSTUS Prince of Wales, &c. And Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

M. V^dr. Gucht Scul.

THE HISTORY Of the most NOBLE *Order of the GARTER*:

And the several ORDERS of *Knighthood* extant in *EUROPE*.

Containing

I. The Antiquity of the Town, Castle, Chapel, and College of *Windsor*; with their several *Officers*: The Foundation of the *ORDER* by King *EDWARD* III. The Statutes and Annals at large, as they have been altered and amended.

II. The HABITS, ENSIGNS, and OFFICERS of the *ORDER*. The

Ceremonies of Election, Investiture, and Instalment of Knights: The manner of their Feasts; and the Duties and Fees payable on these Occasions.
Some Account of the *Founders*, with an exact List of all that have been installed since the Institution, and their several Coats of Arms emblazon'd.

Written at the Command of King Charles II. *By* ELIAS ASHMOLE, *Esq;* Windsor *Herald. Now*

compared with the Author's Corrections in his Library at Oxford, *faithfully digested, and continued down to the present Time.*

The Whole illustrated with proper Sculptures.

LONDON: Printed for *A. Bell* in *Cornhill*, *E. Curll*, *J. Pemberton*, and *A. Collins* in *Fleet-street*; *W.*

Taylor and *J. Baker* in *Pater-Noster-Row*, 1715.

Price 7 *s.* 6 *d.*

TO HIS

ROYAL HIGHNESS

GEORGE-AUGUST,

Prince of WALES, &c.

KNIGHT and *COMPANION* of the *MOST NOBLE ORDER* of the *GARTER*.

PARDON me, Mighty Prince, that in the Crowd of Your Joyful and Devoted *Britons*, one of an obscure Fame presumes to lay his *Humble Offering* at Your Feet.

IT is the *History* of the *MOST NOBLE ORDER of the GARTER*; which, from its first Institution, has been constantly worn by Persons of the highest Birth, and most illustrious Merit.

IF the *Stile* and *Manner*, in which it is treated, were proportionable to the Dignity of the Subject, there would need no Apology for this Dedication. For to whom, next to the *Great Sovereign* of the *Garter*,

whose true *Heir* You are, in all manner of *Virtue* and *Honour*, could this Treatise have recourse for Protection, but to Your Royal Highness, who are the Premier *Knight of this Most Noble Order*, and the standing *Grace* and *Ornament* of it.

BUT far above all particular *Views*, are the unspeakable Blessings derived to these Kingdoms, by the SUCCESSION of Your Illustrious Royal *House*: Every *Briton* seems new Born, and to have borrow'd fresh influence from its Glorious Presence.

THE Godlike Virtues of Your Royal Father, are not to be excelled; and should we venture to express an Equality, it can only be the Appearance of Your Royal Highness's imitating so Great a Pattern.

AS He is Wise and Good beyond Praise, so has He a Title to the Hearts of His People beyond Question; which stands Confirmed by the highest Instances of Divine Providence, as well as the incontestible Authorities of Temporal Laws: On these Foundations, what glorious Prospects may we not Build of future Happiness?

IT were easy to dwell on this Subject, were it not wasting Moments of much more concern to Your Royal Highness, than what I am able to Express.

MAY Your Royal Highness long Live to Adorn this *MOST NOBLE ORDER*, and to support the Crown, by a bountiful and flourishing issue, that there may never want one of Your Royal Line to sit on the Throne of *Great-Britain*,

Is the Ardent Prayer of,
ILLUSTRIOUS SIR!

Your Royal Highness's
Most Faithful,
Most Obedient,

and Humbly Devoted Servant.

THE

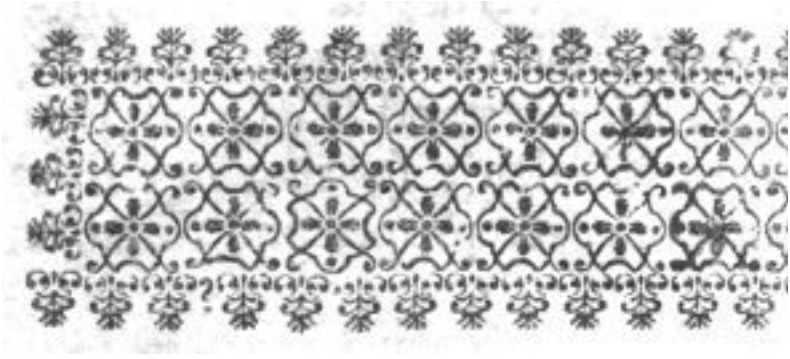
PREFACE

T*hose who are acquainted with Mr.* Ashmole*'s* History of the most Noble Order of the Garter, *will easily satisfy themselves; that no Pains or Industry was wanting to Perfect and Complete so Voluminous a Work: He had the Encouragement of a very gracious Prince, and the use of publick Records, more particularly the several Books of the* Order, *with the Assistance of several MSS wrote by the Officers of Arms, who bore Part in the Ceremonies, or went on Embassies to Stranger Kings, Princes*, &c. *and by their constant Observations, were familiarly versed in all its Laws and Customs*.

These were very great helps to him, and it must be confessed his own elaborate Study had not less owing to it. There is nothing that has relation to this most Noble Order, *which he has not touched on; and indeed it is a Work so very copious, that he does himself acknowledge he has inserted some things of little importance; which he desires may be considered to be done, to gratify some few who have a more immediate concern therein.*

The Reader will in this Treatise find little else omitted: A very painful and exact Abridgment has been made, many Corrections of the Author's, which he saw before his Death, and left among his other Books in his Library at Oxford, *are here carefully altered; some Additions are*

made, a List continued, of the several Knights-Companions, *as well as Officers of the* Order, *for above forty Years; and the Coats of Arms of abundance of the* Knights-Companions *visibly corrected from good Authorities; and every distinct Chapter treated of at large; so that this Work has not been compleated but at great Labour as well as Expence, which could not have been supported, but for the Encouragement some of the* Knights-Companions *of the* most Noble Order *were pleased to give it; as well in their Subscriptions, as in the good Opinion they seemed to Express of the Design.*



THE

HISTORY

OF THE

Most Noble ORDER

OF THE

GARTER.

IT was, undoubtedly, a good Sentiment in the first Collector of this Learned Work, to introduce, as well as a Discourse of *Knighthood* in general, a Treatise of all the several *Orders* that have prevail'd in other Parts of the World; for these in their Rise and Institutions, having a relative Sense to the particular Subject he was to illustrate, seemed to afford him a

very good Opportunity of doing it, by building on so convenient a Foundation.

I shall therefore, (tho' much more confin'd to brevity) follow the same Method, making it serve as a proper Introduction; there being many Things in the voluminous Original, which I conceive may with less Inconveniency be dispenc'd with.

IT was a constant Maxim in all well-regulated Governments, to give a just Encouragement to Merit, and this by proportioning Rewards to the Service done; for Merit must be suppos'd to consist in the Performance of some Virtuous or Heroick Action, directed for the publick Good: And as Vertue is either Military or Civil, so the Distribution of Rewards is different; either by bestowing Degrees and Titles of Honour, or by Donations of Wealth; so that in either Construction, Vertue may have its proper and suitable Reward.

BUT the proper Reward of Military *Vertue*, is Honour: (to which distinct Head this Work is confin'd.) Honour, which *Aristotle* calls the *Greatest of exteriour Goods*: And being an Object of a nobler Ambition than the Accumulation of Wealth, is principally the Aim of that *Vertue* we understand by *Valour*; which springs from more generous Spirits, and hath been the constant Foundation of raising Men to the highest Eminence of Glory, and superiour Dignity.

BUT that Fame might not lose itself in an unbounded Notion, it was at length thought fit to reduce Honour into Form and Order, by investing the Person meriting with some particular Title or Appellation of Excellence, (the Original of all Nobility;) of which Knighthood, as it hath been accounted the most suitable Reward to the greatest Vertue, so it hath been esteemed the chief and

primary Honour among many Nations.

THE *Romans* held Honour and Vertue in that Esteem, that they deify'd, and dedicated Temples to them: They made them so contiguous in their Situation, that there was no other Passage to that of Honour, but thro' the Temple of Vertue, mystically admonishing, that Honour was not to be attained by any other Way.

IN several of the *Roman* Coins we see Honour and Vertue represented together in one Reverse, and in one Medal; the Face of Honour so shadows that of Vertue, that but a little of it appears, *Honour being the more illustrious of the two; and where we behold any Person outwardly adorned with it, we are to judge him inwardly endued with Vertue, inasmuch as Honour is his due, and justly bestowed upon him.*

§. 2. IN tracing the Original of Knighthood, we are not so vain to say, with the *French*, that S. *Michael* was the *premier Chevalier*; yet thus much we may assert, that 'tis near as ancient as Valour and Heroic Vertue, notwithstanding the Ceremonies and Circumstances of it have varied according to several Ages and Nations: And therefore, with much Probability, we may derive the Original of Military Honour from the *Trojans* and *Greeks*; among whom, as Knights of great Renown, were *Hector*, *Troilus*, *Æneas*, *Antenor*, *Agamemnon*, *Menelaus*, *Peleus*, *Tydeus*, &c. And thus *Homer* uses the Word ἱππότης, in the same Sense as *Eques* was afterwards among the *Latins*.

Τοῖσι δὲ καὶ μετέειπε γερήνιος ἱππότα Νέστωρ,

'Mong whom thus *Nestor* spake, that honour'd
Knight.

§. 3. UPON a more substantial Basis we shall descend to the *Romans*; among whom, in the very Infancy of their Military Glory, a Society of Knights was instituted, immediately after their Union with the *Sabines*. *Romulus* inrolled *Centuriæ tres Equitum*, three Centuries of Knights, out of the chiefest Families, whom he appointed to be his Life-guard, and called them *Celeres*, from their Activity and Dispatch in Martial Affairs.

Tarquinius Priscus made an Addition to these Centuries; the like did *Servius Tullius*, who ordained, that those who should succeed in that Body, should be elected *ex censu*, *viz.* from a considerable and certain Valuation of their Estates, who had the greatest Cense, and were of the most Noble Families, says *Dyonys. Halicarn.* And soon after, the Equestrian Class began to be formed and constituted one of the three Orders of the Commonwealth, which were thus rank'd, according to *Livy*: *Senatus, Ordo Equestris & Plebs*; which in the *Roman* Literal Notes is set down after this Manner: CON. SEN. E. ORD. P. Q. R. And forasmuch as this Degree is placed between the *Patricians*, or Senators, and the *Plebeians*, it answers exactly the State of our Knights between the Nobility and Commonalty: And from this Order, to the Height of Nobility which resided in the Senators, was the Way prepared; *Junius Brutus* being the first who was raised to a Senator from the Equestrian Order.

IT was a Constitution, as old as *Tiberius*'s Reign, that none should be admitted, unless Free-born, or a Gentleman for three Generations; and, indeed, for a long Time none were elected Knights but the best Sort of Gentlemen, and Persons of Extraction, as was the illustrious *Mœcenas*.

Atavis regibus ortus eques, Mart.

who aspired no higher, not out of any Incapacity of attaining greater Honours, but that he desired them not, says *Paterculus*: Yet at length, thro' Corruption of Times, Plebeians and Freedmen being too frequently received into this Degree (too near a Parallel among the Knights of this Age) occasion'd their Power to grow less and less, 'till it shrunk to nothing; so that the Places and Offices of Judges which they before had executed, became conferrable upon the *Publicans*. And when *Cicero* was Consul, *anno ab urbe conditi* 690, the Equestrian Order stood in need of Re-establishment, whereupon they were then incorporated into that Commonwealth in the third Degree, all Acts passing *in the Name of the Senate, the People of* Rome, *and the Equestrian Order*.

They often enjoy'd Abroad the Government of several Provinces, whereof *Egypt* had this peculiar to itself, that none of the Senators were admitted, but only those of the Equestrian Order, whose Decrees *Augustus* commanded to be had in like Regard, as if the Magistrates of *Rome*, or Kings, Consuls, or Prætors, had pronounced them.

As a Mark of Eminence, they had the Titles of *Splendidi* and *Illustres* bestowed upon them, and sometimes have been called *most sacred* Knights.

AND besides other Privileges, they had Seats with the Senators in the *Circus Maximus*; and by the *Roscian* Law, sat next them in the Theatres: They had likewise a College called *Collegium Equitum*; and Temples were dedicated to the Goddess *Fortune*, under the Title of *Equestri Fortunæ*.

HAVING shewn the Dignity and Honours of the Equestrian Order among the *Romans*, we shall now touch upon the Degrees of Knighthood which have been Personal, and may be comprehended under the Modern Title of *Equites Aurati*, or *Milites Simplices*, (as

distinguish'd from the several Orders of Chivalry, instituted in Christendom.) In the Circumstance of whose Creation we confess, nothing in the *Roman Ordo Equestris* hath place, tho' that might be the Ground and Original of the Dignity, and one common End in both, namely, the Pursuit of Military Exploits, and Service in the Wars.

§. 4. OF the Degrees of Knighthood. We shall first of the *Monozons*, i. e. Knights begirt with the Military Girdle, a Custom devolved to the *Germans* and *Gauls* from ancient Times, and from them to After-Ages.

SIR *Henry Spelman* notes, *That the late Emperors conferred the Dignity of Knighthood with the Military Girdle instead of all other Arms, because that Part more eminent amongst them girdeth, supporteth, and adorneth the rest*; whence *Selden* calls this Girding the most essential part of the Ceremony. Nor do we find among the various Ceremonies of *Knighthood* any that have continued so constant in Practice as the endowing with Girdle and Sword, Ornaments proper to the Dignity and Marks of *Honour* and *Vertue*, with which the Statues and Portraitures of *Knights*, on their Grave-stones have been adorned.

FOR as at this Day *Knights* are styled *Equites Aurati*, from the Golden Spurs, heretofore put on at their Creation, so were they more anciently *Singulo Miletari donati*, in respect, when any one was *Knighted*, he was not only smitten with the Sword, but invested with Sword and Belt, yet retain'd at the creating our Knights of the *Bath*, as the old Formulary thus hath it; **Then shall the King of great Favour take the Sword, and gird the Esquire therewith.**

Secondly, The *Baccalaurei* or Knights Batchelors, are to be consider'd, who are indifferently styled *Chevaliers*, *Milites*, *Equites Aurati*, and *Knights*. This

Degree is truly accounted the first of all Military Dignity, and the Foundation of all Honours in our Nation, and is derived from, if not the same with that immediately preceding. For as the Ceremony of a gentle Touch on the Shoulder with the flat Side of the Sword hath been since used, instead of girting with the Sword and Belt, (especially in Times of War, or in Haste) as an Initiation into the Military Order; so on the contrary, it is not unusual now-adays, for the Prince, at least *Gladio*, if not *Cingulo donare*; for he oftentimes bestows the Sword upon the Person he *Knighteth*.

Mirœus gives them the Epithet *Aurati*, from the Privilege of wearing Gold upon their Swords and Spurs, omitting *Tiraquel*'s fanciful Distinction between *Miles* and *Eques Auratus*, who allows the former to signify a Knight Noble before, and the other to denote one whom we call a Knight and no Gentleman, or applicable to the *Neapolitan* Gentlemen, (usually called *Cavalieri*) who are all styled *Equites*, tho' they never have attained the Knightly Dignity.

THE third Sort were *Knights Banerets*, who so well deserv'd in the Wars, that they were afterwards permitted to use *Vexillum quadratum*, a square Banner, whence they were called *Equites vexillarii*, or *Chevaliers a Buniere* from the Dutch *Banerheere*, Lord or Master of the Banner.

Camden conceives this Title first devis'd by K. *Edward* 3. in Recompence of Martial Prowess; a Recital of which Dignity is mention'd in a Patent 20 *E.* 3. to *John Coupland*, for his Service, in taking *David* King of *Scots* Prisoner. But it was much more ancient with us, as well as in *France*; and they had particular Robes, and other Ornaments given them from the Crown, *ad apparatum suum pro militia,*

tanquam pro Baneretto, a Rege suscipienda, &c. *viz. ad unum Tunicam*, &c. after which is set down the particular Robes, and other Ornaments appointed for his Creation.

TO shew this Dignity yet more ancient, there is the Evidence of a Writ in K. *Edw.* 3d's Time, for furnishing *Thomas Bardolf* with the Robes of a *Baneret*. It is an Honour esteemed the last among the Greatest, *viz. Nobilitum Majorum*, or the First of the Second Rank; and is placed in the Middle between the *Barons* and the other *Knights*; in which respect the *Baneret* may be called *Vexillarius minor*, as if he were the lesser *Banner-Bearer*; to the End he might be so differenced from the Greater, namely the *Baron*, to whom the Right of bearing a square Banner doth belong.

BUT there are some remarkable differences between these Knights and Knights-Batchelors; as in the Occasions and Circumstances of their Creations, the *Baneret* being not Created, unless at a Time when the King's Standard is erected, and that he bears his own Banner in the Field; whilst the *Knight-Batchelor* follows that which is anothers.

THIS farther difference is observed between them, that the *Knight-Baneret* had so many Gentlemen his Servants at Command, as that he could raise a Banner, and make up a Company of Soldiers to be maintained at his Table, and with his own Pay: But the *Knight-Batchelor* had not sufficient for this, and therefore marched under the Banner of another; and the Wages of the *Baneret* were double.

NEXT to these, we are to mention Knights of the *Bath*, which is a Degree that hath the Investiture and Title of Knight, with an additional Denomination, derived from Part of the Ceremony of his Creation. It is the general receiv'd Opinion, that our K. *Hen.* 4.

first instituted these Knights, which is justify'd by Sir *John Froisard*, who says he created 46 of them at his Coronation, chusing them from such, as were either his Favorites, or had pretensions to it from their personal Merits, or Services.

BUT if the Ceremonies and Circumstances of their Creation be well consider'd, it may be inferr'd, that he rather restor'd the ancient way of making Knights, than Instituted them; and consequently that the Knights of the *Bath*, are really no other than *Knights-Batchelors*; that is, such as are created with those Ceremonies, wherewith *Knights-Batchelors* were formerly created by Ecclesiasticks: But some of them having been laid aside, were then brought again into Use, and made peculiar to this Degree, and since continued to them upon some solemn and great Occasion.

AT the first View they look like a distinct Order of Knighthood; but cannot be so accounted, because they have no Statutes assigned them, nor are in Case of Vacancy, supply'd, (the Essentials of distinct Orders) nor do they wear their Robes beyond the Time of that Occasion upon which they were created; as chiefly, the Coronation of a King or Queen, the Creation of a Prince of *Wales*, Duke of *York*, and the like; whereas also their Number is uncertain, and always at the Pleasure of the King.

Favine calls them Knights of the Crown, because, to distinguish them from Esquires, they wore upon their Left Shoulder an Escutcheon of Black Silk embroider'd with three Crowns of Gold; but therein he mistakes, for they never used only a Silk Lace, and the Jewel they wore was made of Gold, containing three Crowns, with this Motto *Tria juncta in una*, hanging down under the left Arm at a Carnation Ribbon worn cross the Body.

THIS leads us to the Degree of Baronets, who seem allied to Knighthood, by having granted them the Addition of *Sir* to be set before their Names: But this gives them not the Dignity of Knighthood; nor can they properly be styled Knights, until they be actually Knighted.

IT is a Degree erected *Anno* 9. *Jac.* 1. and the Grant made by Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*. It is Hereditary to them, and the Heirs Male of their Bodies lawfully begotten, for ever; and by a subsequent Decree of the said King, Precedence is granted to them before all Banerets, except such as should be made by the King under his Standard, display'd in an Army Royal in open War, and the King personally present, and next to and immediately after the younger Sons of Viscount and Barons.

THE Ground for erecting this Degree was partly Martial; for tho' themselves were not enjoined personal Service in the Wars, yet each Baronet was to maintain thirty Foot Soldiers for three Years in *Ireland*, after the rate of Eight Pence *per* Day, for the Defence of that Kingdom, and chiefly to secure the Plantation of *Ulster*.

THEY were at least to be descended from a Grandfather, on the Father's Side, that bore Arms, and had a Revenue of 1000 *l. per Ann.* or Lands of old Rents of equal Value with 1000 *l. per Ann.* of improv'd Lands, or at least two Parts of three of such Estate in Possession; the other third in Reversion Expectant upon one Life held only in Jointure.

THE Year after, King *James* I. added some new Privileges and Ornaments, *viz.* to Knight those already made that were no Knights; and the Heirs hereafter of every Baronet should, at the Age of One and Twenty Years, receive Knighthood; likewise that all Baronets might bear in Canton, or in an

Inescutcheon, the Arms of *Ulster*; and farther, to have place in the Armies of the King in the Gross, near about the Royal Standard.

SINCE the Institution of Baronets in *England*, there have been made divers in *Ireland* after the like Form: And the Knights of *Nova Scotia* in the *West-Indies* were ordained in Imitation of Baronets in *England* by the said King *James*, *A. D.* 1622. for the Planting that Country by *Scotch* Colonies, and the Degree made likewise Hereditary.

THESE latter wear an Orange Tawny Ribbon as their Badge, to distinguish them from other Knights; and it appears, there was an Intention, 1627. to move his then Majesty, that all Baronets and Knights Bachelors might wear Ribbons of several Colours, some Badge or Jewel, in such Sort as did the Knights of the *Bath*, to distinguish the one from the other: But that Matter dropt.

§. 5. WE shall now observe the Etymology of *Eques*, *Miles*, *Chevalier*, *Ritter*, and *Sir*. The *Grecians* had a Title of Honour equivalent to the Signification of *Eques* in the *Latin*, from *Equus*, an Horse, because one Part of the Ceremony, whereby this Honour became conferred, was the giving of an Horse; or because having an Horse at the Publick Charge, they received the Stipend of an Horseman to serve in the Wars, Horses being Symbols of War, *Bello armantur equi*. It is to be noted, That the Degree of Knighthood in the Dialects of other Nations hath the same Derivation: For in the *French*, a Knight is called *Chevalier*; in the *German*, *Ridder*, or *Ritter*, *q. d. Rider*; so the *Gheslagen Ridder* is interpreted, *The dubbed Knight*; in the *Italian*, it is *Cavagliero*; in the old *British*, *Morchog*; concerning which, hear one of *Jeffery Chaucer*'s Scholars.

Eques ab Equo **is said of very right,**
And Chevalier **is said of Chevalrie,**
In which a Rider **called is a** Knight;
Arragoners **done also specifie**
Caballiero **through all that Partie,**
Is Name of Worship, and so took his
'ginning
Of Spurs of Gold, and chiefly Riding.

AND tho' the Word *Miles* signified at first any legally inrolled for the War, which Inrolment was twofold, *Honoraria* and *Vulgaris*; yet upon the Decay of the *Roman* Empire, upon the Irruption of the innumerable Forces of the *Alani, Goths, Vandals, &c.* which consisted in Horse, their Foot was rendred useless. *Miles* was no longer said of him that served on Foot in the Wars, but began to be properly spoken of the Horseman; whence it came into Vogue, That among the Titles of Nobility, he who had that of *Miles* bestowed on him, was understood to be Horseman, or *Eques*, that is, of the Equestrian Dignity.

Selden observes *Miles* to be equivocal: and that in the old feodal Laws of the Empire it signify'd a Gentleman, as the Word Gentleman is signify'd in *Nobilis*; and with us it hath been frequently used to denote both Gentlemen, and Knights; for *Milites* denotes Gentlemen, or great Freeholders, and not dubbed Knights, *viz.* such who hold by Knights Service from a Lord of a Mannour, and such who are chosen from the several Counties to serve in the High Courts of Parliament.

Miles, even in the *Saxon* Times, denoted sometimes a Dignity. But about the Year 1046, becoming a Title

of Honour, it is since most generally appropriated to Persons who have received Knighthood correspondent to *Eques* and *Chevalier*, tho' indeed less proper; in regard Knighthood is the Dignity of Horsemanship, and the Tenure of Lands by Knights Fees here in *England*, anciently called *Regale Servitium*, is in truth Horse Service; and the Tenants such as served the King on Horseback in Wars, are Gentlemen at least (if not of Noble Extraction.)

Minshew says, the *Equites*, which heretofore followed and accompanied the Emperor, are, in the *German* Tongue, called *Knechtes*, that is, Servitors, or Ministers; but *Camden* says, *Knecht*, in *Saxon Cniht*, was in far more ancient Times accepted as an honorary Title; and, among the old *Germans*, signify'd a Person arm'd with Spear and Lance, (the Ensigns of their Knighthood) as in After-Times such were, among other Nations, adorned with a Girdle and Belt, since called *Equites aurati*, and sometimes simply *Milites*.

THE Addition *Sir* to the Names of all Knights Banerets, Knights of the *Bath*, and Batchelor Knights, pronounced at the Time when they are created, with this Compellation: *Arise, Sir John*, or *Sir Thomas, &c.* is accounted Parcel of their Style, which the Banerets enjoy by virtue of a Clause in their Patent. It is a Contraction of the Old *French* Sire, taken for Seigneur, or Lord, from the *Greek* Κύριος. But how it came to be first given, we cannot find; nevertheless, our *English* Writers have bestowed it upon the major Part of the Nobility, after they had been received into the Order of Knighthood; and in the Life of St. *Thomas Becket*, written about the Time of King *Edw.* 1. we meet with the Title prefix'd to the Names of the four Knights, who slew the said St. *Thomas*.

§. 6. THE Ensigns of the Equestrian Order among

the *Romans*, by which they were made, was a Publick Horse, or a Gold Ring; yet still, to those who had Equestrian Cense, the Horse was the ancienter Badge of the two; but when thro' the Multitude of these Knights no Publick Horses were assigned, but to such who were ready to enter upon Military Service, and to fight in the Legions, such were called *Legionary Knights*, to distinguish them from the rest, who had only receiv'd the Honour of a Gold-Ring; for they were not all employ'd in Wars.

THE Censor (after the Institution of that Office *ab urbe condita*, 310.) and afterwards the Emperor, were the Persons who bestowed this *Equus Militaris*, or *Publicus*, as it was called from the Annual Allowance, to keep him, which they gave unto those of known Vertue and approv'd Life, compelling him to serve in the Wars, tho' against his Will; (but in the more ancient Method of Election, Constraint was not used.) And upon Negligence in the Care of these Horses, or any Blemish, Reproach, or Infamy, or Loss of Patrimony in the Knights, the Horses were not only taken away, but the Knights wholly disfranchis'd. *Rosinus* laying down the Manner and Order used in ejecting such Knights, adds, *A Recital being made of all the Knights that were inrolled, those whose Names he omitted, were thereby understood to be depriv'd of that Dignity*.

WHEN they had served in the Wars the Time appointed by Law, it was the Custom to lead their Horses by the Bridle into the Forum, before the *Duumvirs* [Censors,] and giving an Account under whom and what Generals or Captains they had served; they were thereupon dismissed from farther Service in the Wars: An Example whereof *Plutarch* relates to have been given by *Pompey* himself.

BUT whereas among the *Roman* Inscriptions we

find *Equo publico honoratus donatus*, *ornatus*, and *exornatus*, such is not to be construed to be of Equestrian Dignity, but only to have received the *præmia militaria*, with which the Emperors used to recompense some particular Exploit, by the Honour of such a Gift, according to *Salmasius*. *Equus Publicus*, by a wondrous, nevertheless an accustom'd Speech, among the *Romans*, is the Knight, *qui equo publico meret*. And *qui equo publico donatus*, the other deserving Person.

AS to the Ring: In *Genesis* we read of *Pharoah*'s taking off his Ring, and putting it upon *Joseph*'s Hand. When they came in Fashion with the *Romans*, the Senators at first wore Iron ones, which were accounted the Ensign of Military Vertue, received upon a Publick Account. Howbeit, in Process of Time, when Gold Rings were drawn into Use, none but Senators and Knights had them. The Difference among the Rings of the three Orders in the State were, as *Licetus* observes, Gold Rings set with precious Stones were given to the Senators only; Plain Rings without Stones to the Knights, and Iron Rings to the *Plebeians*, or Free-born-men; insomuch that *Equestri dignitate donare* and *annulo honorare*, is a promiscuous Phrase in *Tacitus*, to give the Dignity of Knighthood; and at the Battle of *Cannæ*, by the two Measures or Bushels of Gold Rings sent to *Carthage*, the Number of the *Roman* Knights there slain was computed.

§. 7. AT length Freed-Men being created Knights, the *Jus annulorum*, the Right of wearing Gold Rings, became promiscuous.

AMONG the *Germans*, the Shield and Lance were accounted the grand Badges of Military Honour, or Knighthood. This the *Lombards*, the *Franks*, and our Country-men, all descending out of *Germany*, used,

and was to us (in the Opinion of Sir *Hen. Spelman*) the Foundation of the Knightly Order. Much like the ancient *Germans* was the Custom of making Knights among the *Irish*: And *Favine* notes the Shield and Lance were the proper Arms appertaining to a *French* Knight, which Esquires, *Armigers*, carried always after their Masters, Shields and Scutes (as they are vulgarly called) *i. e.* Equestrian Targets, inclining to an Oval, not Shields or Bucklers of Foot Soldiers.

ANOTHER Ensign and Ornament of Knightly Honour is, the *Cingulum militare*, or *Balteus*, which, *Varro* says, is *Tuscan*, signifying a military Girdle, which were garnished with great Buckles, Studs, and Rings of pure Gold, to shew their Dignity and Power in military Commands; and with such a Belt, set with Pearls and precious Stones, young *Athelstan* was girded, when he receiv'd *Knighthood* from his Grandfather King *Alfred*. Our Knights were no less anciently known by these Belts, than by their gilt Swords, Spurs, *&c.* Howbeit the Use now only appears in Knights of the *Bath*.

TO this Belt was also added a Sword, not of Ordinary Use; and therefore termed the Sword of a *Knight*, which was hallowed with great Ceremony.

ANOTHER eminent Badge is the Golden Spurs, wherewith, at the Time of their Creation, Knights Spurs were wont to be adorned; and to these, a little after the Conquest, were added far more and greater Ornaments. They were usually put on after the Person had been presented to the Prince who gave the Honour, to signify, that the new-made Knight should not only declare his Valour by his Sword, but also by the Management of his Horse, which he should encourage and excite with his Spurs, to the carrying on his valiant Designs. These Spurs have been of that Esteem, that Knight Batchelors are

latinized *Equites aurati*; among the *Germans*, *Ritter dess Gulden Sporns*; and with us heretofore, *Knights of the Spurs*: And several Families by the Name of *Knight*, bear for their Arms the Spurs on a Canton.

IT is farther certify'd among the Rights of a Knight Baneret, that upon the Account of his Knighthood he may wear gilt Spurs, as well as a gilt Sword; and that the Spurs are essential, may be collected from the Degradation of a Knight, where his gilt Spurs are first cut off with an Hatchet, the Case of Sir *Andra Harcla*. In the last Place is the Collar, an Ensign of Knightly Dignity among the *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Britons*, *Danes* and *Goths*, among whom it was customary to wear them, as denoting such as were remarkable for their Valour. But in later Times, it was the peculiar Fashion of *Knights* among us to wear Golden Collars composed of *S S.* or other various Devices; so that those *Monuments* are known to be erected for *Knights* on whose Portraitures such Ornaments are found.

§. 8. THE Qualifications for Knighthood are principally three. 1. Merit, the bare mentioning whereof shall suffice here. 2. Birth, *viz.* that the Parties who enter thereinto ought first to make appear they be Gentlemen of three Paternal Descents, bearing Coat Armour; and much the same was the Law of the Empire under *Frederick* 2. *A. D.* 1212. Some think it also insufficient, unless descended so by the Mother's Side; at least she must be a freed Woman. And, 3. Estate, which also serves to support the Dignity.

THUS Wealth was so much regarded among the *Chaledonians*, that those who were rich, bore the Name of Knights. It was Estate that entitled a Man to this Honour among the *Romans*; for the Censor might compel any Citizen equal to the Equestrian Cense, whom he thought fit to take that Order: And this

consisted of 400000 Sesterces, *i. e.* 3025 *l.* of our Money.

AND as in *Old Rome*, so here in *England*, not long after the Conquest, they who held a Knights Fee, *viz.* 680 Acres of Land might claim it, says *Camden*. But it appears from *Selden*, that no certain Number, or Extent of Acres, made a Knight's Fee; and *Temp. Hen.* 3. and *Edw.* 1. and 1 *Edw.* 2. the *Census militis* was measured by 20 *l.* by the Year, or more; and by the Royal Prerogative, some who held 15, then 20, at other times 30, then 40, and sometimes 50 *l.* Lands, were required to accept this Honour by Writs directed to the Sheriffs of the Counties, and were excused only by Reason of old Age, irrecoverable Weakness, Loss of Limbs, or being in Holy Orders; and upon all other Causes (if exempted) they paid a Fine, estimated according to the Nature of the Excuse, or length of Time given.

BUT in the promiscuous Course of Knighthood, where the Men of Wealth and Estate (whether otherwise worthy or not) became dignify'd; yet the Gate of Honour was not then shut against those, who wanting Riches, deserved well of their Country; for when Princes conferr'd such Dignities upon Men of narrow Fortunes, they usually bestowed with them annual Pensions, or Lands, agreeable to the Judgment of the Author of the *Division du monde*, who saith that the Honour of Knighthood is not to be given any Person who hath not a considerable Estate, unless sufficient Means to support the Honour of the Order be also given with it.

THESE Pensions are frequently mention'd in our Rolls, sometimes during Pleasure, and sometimes during the Life of the Knight, or till better Provision should be made for their Supports: Examples whereof are, Sir *John Atte Lee*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Walsh*,

Knights. The like Rewards our Kings gave to such whose Merit raised them to the Degree of a *Baneret*, express'd in their Patents, *ad manutenendum statum Baneretti*, *Pro sustentatione sua*, *ut ipse statum Baneretti melius manutenere possit*, *Pro statu suo manutenendo*; or Words to the like Effect: Examples where of are, Sir *Reginald Cobham*, Sir *Thomas de Rokeley*, Sir *John Lysle*, and Sir *Roger de Swynerton*, Banerets.

IT may be next consider'd who can make *Knights*; wherein it is apparent, that they who never were, and others who never could be *Knights*, have conferr'd this Dignity; yet 'tis to be understood, that Necessity and Custom hath in this Case the Force of a Law: For anciently, *Bishops* and *Priests* made *Knights*; so also do the *Popes*, and some Commonwealths; likewise our *Queens*. For the *Sovereign*, or the *Heir apparent*, tho' they be no *Knights*, may nevertheless do it, by reason they possess the *Kingdom*; and are therefore the Head and Chief of *Chevalry*, and consequent all the Power thereof is contained in their Command. To conclude this Point, *Knighthood* was always received from the Hands of another Person, either by Ceremony, or Diploma, except only the Kings of *Spain*, who Time out of Mind made themselves *Knights*; and this by Vertue of an old Law written in the *Arragonian* Tongue, as *Ambrosias Morales* reports. *And, to shew that no Man upon Earth hath any Power over him, he shall gird himself with the Sword made after the Form of a Cross; and that Day can no other Man be Knighted.*

§. 9. Of the Ceremonies and Formalities used at the Conferring of Knighthood, the most ancient was perform'd by putting the Belt loose over the Shoulder, or girding it close about the Waste. The *Bend* in *Armoury* represents the one, and the *Fess* the other. The first Christian Kings at giving this Belt

kissed the new Knight on the Left Cheek, saying, *In the Honour of the Father, and the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, I make you a Knight*. It was called *Osculum pacis*, the Kiss of Favour, or Brotherhood, and is presumed to be the Accollade, or Ceremony of Imbracing, which *Charles* the Great used when he Knighted his Son *Lewis* the *Debonair*. It was in the Time of the same Emperor, the Way of Knighting by the *Colaphum*, or Blow on the Ear, used in Sign of sustaining future Hardships, which is thought to have been deriv'd from the Manner of Manumission of a Slave among the *Romans*; a Custom long after retained in *Germany* and *France*. Thus *William* Earl of *Holland*, who was to be Knighted before he could be *Emperor*, at his being elected King of the *Romans*, received Knighthood by the Box of the Ear, *&c.* from *John* King of *Bohemia*, *A. D.* 1247.

IN the Time of the *Saxons* here in *England*, Knights received their Institutions at the Hands of Great *Prelates* or *Abbots*; which, according to their Opinion, render'd them more auspicious. In the accomplishing of which Solemnity, they added many religious Ceremonies, as Watching, Fasting, Bathing, and Consecrating the Sword; an Instance of which we have in *Heward* Lord of *Brune*, in *Lincolnshire*, who received this Honour from *Brand, Abbot* of St. *Edmundsbury*. But not long after the Conquest, this Custom was restrained by a Synod at *Westminster*, *A. D.* 1102. 3 *H.* 1. which among other Things ordained *Ne Abbates* [*i. e.* all Spiritual Persons] *faciunt milites*. However the religious Ceremonies for the most part continued, especially Vigils and Bathings, as appears by that grand Solemnity at the Creation of 267 Knights, Sons of Earls, Barons, and Knights, upon *Whitsontide*, *anno* 34 *Edw.* 1. cited by *Selden* and *Camden*. And these Formalities the *Saxons* and

Normans, not only here in *England*, but the *French*, *Spaniards*, and other Nations, observ'd, concluding from it, that decency of Habit was as well expected from them, as Integrity of Life, and purity of Manners. And the like religious Ceremony was heretofore observ'd in *Spain* at the Creation of Knights, whether *Cavelleros de Espuela d'Orada*, or *Amados* [our Knights Batchelors,] In this Form, the Person to be Knighted was bathed in the Evening, and presently laid in Bed; then cloathed in rich Robes, and led to the Church to perform his Vigils: That being over, and Mass heard, his Spurs were put on, and his Sword girt about him, then drawn out, and put into his Right Hand; whereupon the Oath was forthwith administred to him; which taken, he that bestowed the Dignity gave him *una Pesconade*, a Blow, or Stroke on the Neck, saying, God assist you in the Performance of your Promise.

THE Oath or Vow the Knights professed, was in general, to relieve and protect Widows, the Fatherless, Oppressed and Miserable, and to defend the Church of God; which to keep and perform was esteem'd as meritorious, as to do all that a Monk, Frier, or Canon Regular should.

THERE is also mention (by Mr. *Selden*) of consecrating the Sword, offering it at the Altar, and receiving it again from thence, as an implicit Kind of taking an Oath. But as in Peace and great Leisure these tedious Ceremonies were used, yet it was otherwise in Times of War, or on a Day of Battle, where Hurry and Throng of Affairs would not permit; and therefore, as well before the joining of Battle, as after Victory obtained, it was usual for the Prince or General in the Field, on Sight of the Army, to give those whom he thought fit to advance to that Honour (they humbly kneeling before him) a Stroke with a

naked Sword flatwise upon their Shoulders, or else to touch their Heads or Shoulders lightly, without any other Ceremony, except pronouncing *Sis Eques in nomine Dei*; to which he adds, *Rise, Sir —— Knight*, or in the *French*, *Sus*, or *Sois, Chevalier, au nom de Dieu*, which we commonly call Dubbing, the old *English* Word used for Creating [Consecrating] a Knight, from *doopen* to dip, by Bathing.

ANOTHER Manner of creating Knights Abroad was, by Royal Codicils, or Letters Patents (these the *Spaniards* call *Privilegios de Cavelleria*) whereupon such Knights are intitled *Equites Codicellares*; and these were sent to such as dwelt in remote Countries, and sometimes, but rarely, extended so as to make the Degree hereditary. There is one Example, that by the bare signification of Letter, without any Ceremonies or Patents under Seal; *Philip* IV. of *Spain*, *Jan.* 15. 1633. conferr'd upon all the Captains that behav'd themselves valiantly in Defence of *Mastricht* (then lately besieg'd by the *Hollanders*) to those that were Gentlemen, the Title of Knights; and to others, that of Gentlemen.

HAVING thus briefly shew'd the various Forms of Creation of *Knights Batchelors*, I shall remark what *Selden* has observ'd of *Knights Bannerets* in later Times, wherein he that was advanc'd to that Honour in the Field, was inducted between two Senior Knights with Trumpets before them, and the Heralds carrying a long Banner of his Arms, call'd a *Penon*; in which Manner being brought to the King or Lieutenant, who bidding him good Success, the Tip of the Banner is cut off, that of an Oblong it might become a Square, like the Banner of a Baron: This done, he returns to his Tent, conducted as before. As for the many and various Formularies at the Creation of a Knight of the *Bath*, see Sir *Edward Byshe* among

his Notes upon *Upton* and Sir *William Dugdale*'s *Warwicksh.* The Knights of the *Bath*, at the Coronation of King *Charles* II. watched and bathed; they took an Oath; they were girded with a Sword and Belt; and lastly, dubbed by the King with the Sword of State.

§ 10. IN the Dignity, Honour and Renown of Knighthood, is included somewhat of Magnificence more excellent than Nobility it self; which mounting the Royal Throne, becomes the Assertor of Civil Nobility, and sits as Judge at the Tribunal therefore. *Knight* is noted by *Camden* as a Name of Dignity, but *Baron* is not so. For if heretofore a Baron had not receiv'd Knighthood, he was written plainly by his Christian Name, and that of his Family, without any Addition but that of *Dominus*, a Term attributed to a *Knight*; and in ancient Charters, the Titles and Names of *Knights* may be seen set before *Barons*. It bestows Gentility not only upon the meanly Born, but upon his Descendants, and encreaseth the Honour of those well-descended. Hereunto agrees the Common-Law: If a Villain be made a Knight, he is thereby immediately enfranchised, and consequently accounted a Gentleman; agreeable to the *Roman* Law, where the Donation of a Gold-Ring ennobled a Slave. *Mœcenas* dy'd a Companion of that Order; even Kings and Princes look upon it as an Accession to their Honour, their other Titles shewing Dominion and Power, this their Valour and Courage. *Geysa*, King of *Hungary*, *Leopold*, Marquis of *Austria*, *Ottacher*, Duke of *Stiria*, and *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria* and *Stiria*; *Godfry*, Duke of *Brabant*, with *Henry* his Son, *Peter*, King of *Arragon*, the Emperor *Henry* III. our *William Rufus*, King *Edward* III. *Henry* VI. *Henry* VII. *Edward* VI. *Lewis* XI. *Francis* I. Kings of *France*, and others, received this Dignity at the Time they enjoy'd their

other Titles. And tho' it is said the Sons of the *French* King are Knights as soon as they receive Baptism, yet are they not judg'd worthy the Kingdom, unless first solemnly created. And we elsewhere find, that the Royal Heirs of *Arragon* were suspended from that Crown, until they had received the Honour of Knighthood. And after the *Norman* Conquest, our young Princes were sent over to the neighbouring Kings to receive this Honour. Thus our King *Henry* II. was sent to *David*, King of *Scots*, and Knighted by him in *Carlisle*; and *Edward* I. at the Age of Fifteen Years, to *Alphonsus* XI. King of *Castile*, for the same Dignity. In like manner did foreign Princes repair hither, to receive the Honour from our Kings. As *Malcolme*, King of *Scotland*, and *Alexander*, Son of *William*, King of *Scotland*, Knighted by our King *John*, *Anno* 1212. So was *Alexander* III. by our King *Henry* III. at *York*, *Anno* 1252. and *Magnus*, King of the *Isle of Man*, by the same King. All which sufficiently demonstrate the great Renown of Knighthood, and the Honour and Esteem which was ever had for that Order.

CAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Christendom.

§ 1.

THE Grounds and Causes of founding *Societies* or *Knightly Orders*, were several and different, tho' all terminated in one End. Among which, principally were these, *First*, A sincere Love to *Honour*, and therein chiefly to excite and promote *Vertue* by suitable Rewards; such was the Design of King *Arthur*, when he formed himself and other Martial Men into a Fellowship, which he stiled *Knights of the Round Table*. *Secondly*, To repress the Incursions and Robberies of the *Saracens* and *Barbarians*, to vindicate the Oppressed, redeem the Enslaved, and to entertain and relieve Pilgrims and Strangers, which were Part of the Duties the *Knights Hospitallers* and *Templars*, &c. stood engag'd in. A *third* Reason was, To Fight in Defence of the Christian Faith, against Pagans and Infidels; to enlarge the Christian Territories, and promote the Service of the Catholick Church: And indeed their Zeal very much advanced Christianity. *Lastly*, When Sovereign Princes perceived themselves embroiled in Wars or dangerous Factions, the erecting such an Order or Society was, that they might by such a Tye restore

Peace, quiet all Jealousies, unite Affections, and secure a lasting Friendship and powerful Assistance, both for their own and their Country's Safety. And to this End were Badges of several Orders devised, as Pledges of Remembrance to quicken and establish their Friendship.

§ 2. THESE Orders are of Two Kinds, 1. *Religious*, or *Ecclesiastical*; and, 2. *Military*, or *Secular*.

§ 3. THE Institutions of the latter Sort were after a while thought too weak to continue, if not sustained by Religion and Piety; and too defective without adjoyning Ecclesiastical Persons thereunto. Therefore the Founders, considering Divine Assistance should concur with Military Industry, began to dedicate these Orders to the Honour and Worship of God, or to our Saviour, or to the blessed Virgin, or some other of the Saints, to gain the Protection and Favour of Heaven, more easily, as they thought, obtainable by the Prayers and Offices of the Clergy. Whereupon some in their Institution joyned Sacred Orders to their Military, and made Provision for Sacred Persons to pray for their Prosperity at home, while they were engaged abroad. Hence King *Edw.* III. at the first Institution of the *Garter*, appointed Thirteen Secular Canons, and Thirteen Vicars to attend the Celebration of Divine Offices. Upon the same Account certain Foundations of Divine Service were erected at *Bugey*, for the Order of the *Annunciads*; at *Dijon*, for the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; and at *Mont St. Michael* in *Normandy*, for the Order of St. *Michael.*

§ 4. I shall now deliver a brief Account of the Religious Orders of Knighthood, proceeding according to their Antiquity.

1. *The Knights of the* Holy Sepulchre *in*

Jerusalem,
are accounted the most Ancient.

DR. *Heylin* reports this Order to be instituted *A. D.* 1099. at such Time as the Temple of *Jerusalem* was regain'd from the *Saracens* by *Philip* King of *France*. Yet *Favin* will have it to be by *Baldwin* the First, King of *Jerusalem*; for while the *Saracens* possess'd the City, there were certain Canons Regular of St. *Augustin*, to whom they permitted the Custody of the Holy Sepulchre. These Canons *Baldwin* made Men of Arms, and *Knights of the Holy Sepulchre*, and ordained that they should nevertheless retain their white Habits, and on the Breast bear his own Arms, which were *Argent a Cross potent: Or*, between *four Crosses of the same*, commonly call'd *The* Jerusalem *Cross*. Their Great Master was the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. They were to guard the Sepulchre, fight against the *Saracens* and Infidels, protect Pilgrims, redeem Christian Captives, hear Mass every Day, recite the Hours of the Cross, and to bear the five red Crosses in memory of our Saviour's Wounds. Their Rule was confirm'd by Pope *Innocent* III. Upon the loss of the Holy Land, these Knights retired to *Perugia* in *Italy*; but retaining their white Habit, chang'd their Arms to a double *red Cross*. *A. D.* 1484. they were incorporated to the *Knights Hospitallers of* Jerusalem then in *Rhodes*. But *A. D.* 1496. *Alexander* VI. made himself, and the Popes his Successors, Great Masters thereof, and empower'd the Guardian of the Holy Sepulchre (his Vicar General) to bestow the same upon Pilgrims to the Holy Land. *Philip* II. King of *Spain*, endeavour'd to restore this Order in some of his Dominions, about the Year 1558. himself being elected Great Master: And another Attempt was made by the Duke of *Nevers*, 1615. but these Designs

took no Effect.

2. *Knights Hospitallers of St.* John Baptist *in* Jerusalem.

BEFORE the taking of *Jerusalem* from the *Saracens*, certain Christian Merchants of *Naples* obtain'd leave from the Caliph of *Egypt* to erect a small and convenient House, for the Entertainment of themselves and Countrymen, which they built before the Church of the *Holy Sepulchre*, together with a small Oratory. To them repair'd certain Canons of the Order of St. *Augustin*, who built another Oratory; but the Confluence of Pilgrims growing great, they erected a large Hospital, in the Place where our Saviour celebrated his last Supper, for the better accommodating devout Travellers, who for want of a Place to lodge in were often robb'd and murder'd: So that at length from their Charity and Hospitality, as also for that they took St. *John Baptist* for their Patron, they obtain'd that Title. It was instituted *A. D.* 1092. or according to others 1099. by *Gerard*, a Native of *Thoulouse*, who came to *Jerusalem* in the Time of *Godfry* of *Bouillon*, and built this Hospital (which became the first Seat of this Order) dedicated to St. *John* of *Cyprus*, Bp. of *Alexandria*, commonly call'd *Johannes Eleemosynarius*; and King *Baldwin* I. conferred on them large Privileges, permitting them Arms, and instituted them to be Knights, *A. D.* 1104. Their Duty was to fight against the Infidels, and they acknowledged Obedience to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*; but growing rich, they obtained from *Rome* to be absolved from that Obedience. Pope *Gelasius* II. or *Calixtus* II. *A. D.* 1120. confirmed their Rule of living; and *Adrian* IV. receiv'd them under

the Protection of the Papal See, being likewise endowed with ample Privileges, and exempted from Payment of Tithes, by succeeding Popes, chiefly by *Pius* IV.

THEY took the black Habit of Hermits of St. *Augustin*, and lived under his Rule by Grant of *Honorius* II. *Anno* 1125. vowing Obedience, Poverty, and Chastity; and on the Breast of their Habit wore at first a plain Cross of White Cloth, which was after changed to one with Eight Points; but in time of War they used a Red Cassock, bearing the White Cross upon it. Unto *Gerard* succeeded *Raimund*, who digested and enlarged their Laws and Institutions in the Composition whereof his Stile was *Raimundus Dei gratia servus pauperum Jesu Christi & Custos Hospitalis Jerusolymitani*; but afterwards he and his Successors had the Title of Great Master of the Order given him, to denote his Power and Authority. At this Day he has the Title of Prince of *Malta* and *Goza*; among his Privileges he seals in Lead, as doth the Pope and Doge of *Venice*; he acknowledges the Pope for his Head, and the King of *Spain* for his Patron; he had under him in several Kingdoms Priors; some of whom had also the Addition of Great with us in *England* he was stiled *Prior Hospitalis; St. Johannis Jerusalem in Anglia*, and by that Title was he summoned to the Parliament as a Baron of this Kingdom, and at length for Place and Precedency was ranked the first Baron; and the greatness of these Knights grew to such height that *temp. H.* 3. they had in Christendom 19000 Mannors.

WHEN *Saladine* took *Jerusalem*, these Knights retreated to *Acres* or *Ptolemais*, and that being taken they seized upon the Island of *Rhodes*, *A. D.* 1308. whence they began to be call'd Knights of *Rhodes*; but *A. D.* 1522. being driven, thence by *Solyman*,

they betook themselves to the Island of *Malta*, which with *Tripoli* and *Goza* were granted to them in Fee by the Emperor *Charles* V. *A. D.* 1530. under the Tender of one Falcon yearly to the Viceroy of *Sicily*, and to acknowledge the King of *Spain* and *Sicily* for their Protectors. In this Isle they continue a Bulwark to those Parts, and from this their Settlement are called Knights of *Malta*.

3. *Knights* Templars.

ABOUT the Year 1117, 1118, 1119, or 1120, this Order took Beginning, *Baldwin* II. then reigning in *Jerusalem*; when Nine Gentlemen, of whom Two of noble Extraction, *Hugh de Paganes* and *Godfrey de St. Omer*, came in Devotion to the *Holy Land*; they were called Brothers of the Militia of the Temple, ordinarily Knights Templars, from the Habitation assigned them out of a part of the King's own Palace, adjoyning to the Temple of *Solomon* in *Jerusalem*. Their first Undertaking was to guard the most dangerous Ways about that City, against the Violence and Robberies of the *Saracens*, which made them acceptable to all, and for which they had Remission of their Sins; but for the first Nine Years they were yet so poor that they lived upon the Alms of others, wore Clothes bestowed in Charity upon them, and rode two on one Horse; in memory of which primitive Poverty their Seal had the Impress, which is represented in *Math. Paris*, *A. D.* 1127. They had Rules assigned them, drawn up by St. *Bernard* Abbot of *Clairvaux*, by the Appointment of Pope *Honorius* II. and *Stephen* Patriarch of *Jerusalem*. They made their Vows of Obedience, Poverty and Chastity, and to live under the Rules of Canons regular of St. *Augustin*.

Their Habit was White, to which, in the Time of *Eugenius* III. they added the Red Cross, and of the same Form that the Hospitallers wore (*Favin* says a patriarchal Cross) and sowed it on the left Shoulder of the *Maulles*. These with the Holy Sepulchre Hospitallers and Teutonicks, principally supported a long time the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*; but when Riches encreas'd, and their Revenues augmented, they grew proud, fell from the Obedience of the Patriarch to joyn with the Pope; and at last, 1307. all the Knights of this Order in *France* were, in one and the same Hour, seized and imprison'd by *Philip le Bel*, King of France, with Consent of Pope *Clement* V. being charged with most infamous and damnable Crimes. And in *England*, *Anno 1. Ed. 2.* they were also apprehended afterwards, rendred Convicts, and all their Possessions seized into the King's Hands. Howbeit the Bishop of *York* commiserating their deplorable Condition within his Diocess, charitably disposed of them in Monasteries under his Jurisdiction. Two Years after many of these Knights were burn'd in *France*, and *Jaques de la Maule*, the last great Master, suffered the same Fate, having seen, *A. D.* 1312. his Order by Papal Authority, condemned and perpetually dissolved; after which their Lands were annexed to the Hospitallers, for their Service against the *Turks*.

THUS they fell, no less famous for Martial Atchievments in the East, than their Wealth in the West; for they enjoyed 16000 Lordships in *Europe*, and a *Spanish* Author tells us, their Revenue was Two Millions yearly, and had in possession 40000 Commanderies, which occasion'd divers to think they were falsly accused, and by suborned Witnesses, merely upon the Ambition and covetous Design of *Philip* King of *France*.

4. *Knights of the Order of St.* Lazarus.

THESE were at the first a Fraternity of Religious Monks, after which they became Ecclesiastick Knights, in Imitation of the Knights of the Holy Sepulchre. Pope *Pius* V. 1572. stiles it *Antiquissimum Charitatis & Militiæ Christi Ordinem*; yet it must be understood as an Order of Monks, founded by St. *Basil*, about the time of *Julian the Apostate*, *A. D.* 366. upon a Charitable Account, *viz.* to take Care of Leprous Persons (a Malady frequent in the East) by which they became separated, even from the Conversation of Men. At length, through the Incursion of the *Barbarians*, and Injury of Time, it lay extinguish'd, but was revived when the *Latin* Princes joyned in a Holy League to recover the *Holy Land*. And a famous Hospital was erected at *Jerusalem*, under the Title of St. *Lazarus*, for the Reception of Lepers: For in that Time the Monks of this Order added Martial Discipline to their Skill in Physick; and for their Services against the Infidels, begat a great Esteem from *Baldwin* II. King of *Jerusalem*, and some of his Successors. In process of Time this Order decayed, being suppressed by *Innocent* VIII. who united it to the *Hospitallers* at *Rhodes*, *A. D.* 1490. Nevertheless *Pius* IV. restored it *A. D.* 1565. confirming the old, and granting new Privileges, making his kinsman Don *Janot de Chastillon* great Master. *Pius* V. *A. D.* 1567. enlarged their Privileges, permitting them to take one Wife only, to wit, a Virgin, not a Widow. Lastly, Pope *Gregory* XIII. *A. D.* 1572. bestowed the Great Mastership of this Order upon *Emanuel Philibert* Duke of *Savoy*, and his Successors, and prescribed them the *Cistercian* Rule; and accordingly he had the Investiture and Collation of the *Commanderies* in *Spain* and *Italy*.

5. *Knights of the* Teutonick *Order, or* Prussia.

IN the Time of the Holy War, a wealthy Gentleman of *Germany*, who dwelt at *Jerusalem*, commiserating the Condition of his Country-men, coming thither in Devotion, made his House their Receptacle; afterwards he erected a Chapel to the Blessed Virgin, whence they had also the Title of *Marian* Knights. To him associated other *Germans*, and in short time encreasing, they professed the Military Employments of the *Templars*, and followed the Acts of Piety and Charity of the *Hospitallers*. *A. D.* 1190. or 1191. they elected *Henry Walpott* their first Master, and the following Year were confirmed by *Celestine* III. under the Title of Knights *Teutonicks*, or *Dutch* Knights, of the Hospital of St. *Mary* the Virgin, vowing Poverty, Obedience, and Charity, and following the Rule of St. *Augustin*. Their Statutes were composed from those of the *Hospitallers* and *Templars*, and One Article was, *That none but* Germans *should be of this Order*. Their Habit was a White Mantle, on the Breast a plain *Black Cross*, but some make it a *Black Cross* voided with a *Cross Potent*. At *Acon* they erected another Hospital; but after that City was taken by *Saladine*, they removed under *Hermannus* their Master into *Germany*, on whom the Emperor *Frederick* II. *A. D.* 1229. and Pope *Honorius* III. bestowed *Prussia*; where having conquer'd that Nation, and reduced it from Paganism, they built the City of *Maryburgh*, and there, *A. D.* 1340. fixed the chief Residence of their great Master. This Country they enjoyed till 1525. that *Albertus Brandenburgh*, the Last great Master, made solemn Renunciation of that Order, and became feudatory to *Sigismond* I. King of *Poland*, who created this *Albert* first Duke of *Prussia*: However, some of the Knights disrellishing this Action elected

another great Master, *viz. Albert Wolfang*, and leaving *Prussia* setled in *Germany*, where they now reside. The younger Sons of the *German* Princes being, for the most part received into this Order, giving it the greatest Reputation.

6. *Knights of* Mount-Joy.

THESE are so called, from a Castle where this Order was instituted, built upon the Point of a Mountain not far from *Jerusalem*, whence the Pilgrims first view'd the *Holy City*, and where these Knights lay in Garrison. Their Habit was White, and the Badge thereof an *Octogonal Cross Red*; they vowed Poverty, Chastity, and Obedience, and followed the Rule of St. *Basil*; which Pope *Alexander* III. *A. D.* 1180. changed to that of *Augustine*. Upon the Loss of the *Holy Land* they retired to *Spain*, and fought against the *Moors*, and according to the Places they resided, in had other Names, in *Catalonia* and *Valentia*, *Equites de Mongoia*, i. e. *Mount Joy*; but in *Castile*, Knights of *Monfrac*, a Castle there. When *Alphonso* IX. King of *Castile* gave them Lands they had won from the *Moors*, the Donation says, *To you Don* Rodrigo Gonsales, *Master of* Monfrac, *of the Order of* Mount Joy. Upon the Decay of this Order, *A. D.* 1221. this Castle was given to Don *Gonsalionez*, Master of the Order of *Calatrava*, by *Ferdinand* the Saint; and these Knights were incorporated with them.

7. *Knights of St.* John *of* Acon *or* Acres.

UNDER the Patronage of this Saint was this Order

erected; they exercised all Duties of Charity towards Pilgrims, and assumed Arms in imitation of the *Hospitallers*; they followed the Rule of St. *Augustine*; and according to *Favina*, had a Black Habit, upon which they wore a *White Cross patee*. After *Acon* was taken they removed into *Spain*, and flourished in the Reign of *Alphonsus* the Astrologer King of *Castile*, about which time Pope *Alexander* IV. approved the Order under the conjoined Title of St. *Thomas* and St. *John* of *Acon*. This King gave them by his Will all the Furniture of his House, and much Money; but afterward they dwindled, and at last were united to the *Hospitallers*. The Ensign was a *Red Cross*, in the middle whereof stood the Figures of St. *John* and St. *Thomas*.

8. *Knights of St.* Thomas.

DISTINCT from the former, yet wearing the same Habit, as the Knights of St. *John* of *Acon*, making the same Processions, and following the same Rule; their Badge was a *Saltire Gules*, (or as others are of Opinion) the same with that of St. *John* of *Acon*, wanting the Figures in the middle: But *Favin* reports, this Order was instituted by King *Richard* I. after the Surprizal of *Acon*; and that these Knights were of the *English* Nation, who wore a White Habit and a *Red Cross*, charged in the middle with an *Escallon*, and that St. *Thomas Becket* was their Patron. Howbeit, after the Christians were driven out of the *Holy Land*, the Knights of this Order were joined to the *Hospitallers*.

9. *Knights of St.* Blaze.

THESE were also called Knights *de Sta. Maria*; they were Officers and Servants to the Kings of *Armenia*; their Habit was Sky colour with a *Cross Gold* on their Breasts; others say a *Red Cross*, and in the middle the Picture of St. *Blaze*, their Patron. This Order was at the height, when the *Armenian* Kings of the House of *Luzignan* kept their Court in *Acon*.

10. *Knights of the Martyrs in* Palestine.

THESE took their Denomination from an Hospital in *Palestine*, dedicated to St. *Cosmus* and St. *Damianus*, Martyrs; where Acts of Charity were exercised towards Sick Strangers. Their Profession obliged them to other Works of Mercy, *viz.* to redeem Captives, and bury their Dead. They followed the Rule of St. *Basil*, which was confirmed to them by Pope *John* XXII. There Badge was a *Red Cross*, in the middle whereof, within a Circle, was the aforesaid Two *Saints*. When they retir'd into *Europe* they changed into a *Red Cross*, and St. *Augustin*'s Rule.

11. *Knights of St.* Catherine *at Mount* Sinai.

THIS Order was instituted, *A. D.* 1063. under the Patronage of St. *Catherine*, whose Body was there deposited in the Church of the Monastery erected and dedicated to her Name. Their first Institution was to guard the said Sepulchre, to secure Travellers, defend the *Grecian* Pilgrims, and to relieve them with Hospitality. Their Habit was White, and they lived under the Rule of St. *Basil the Great*, vowing conjugal Chastity, and Obedience to the Abbot of this Monastery, who was their Superior. But when the

Turks obtained these Countries, these Knights were ill treated and driven away, and the Order almost abolished; nevertheless some Shadow remains for such as travel to visit the Holy Sepulchre at *Jerusalem*, do now and then pass to this Monastery at Mount *Sinai*, where in imitation of the *Padre Guardian* of *Jerusalem*, the principal Monk in this Covent makes them Knights of St. *Catherine* over her Tomb, with the like Questions and Formulary as used at the Holy Sepulchre. These Knights now wear upon the left side of their White Habit the Cross of *Jerusalem*, and Instrument of St. *Catherine*'s Martyrdom; but according to others, the middle of the Wheel is pierced with a Sword.

12. *Knights of St.* Anthony *in* Æthiopia.

AFTER the Death of St. *Anthony* the Hermite, who dy'd about the Year 357. many of his Disciples remaining near *Æthiopia*, follow'd his Example and Manner of Life, and their Successors liv'd in great Austerity and Solitariness in the Desart (therefore call'd *Anchorites*) till the Year 370. when 'tis said *John*, Emperor of *Æthiopia*, erected them into a Religious Order of Knighthood, under the Title and Protection of St. *Anthony*, Patron of his Empire, and bestow'd upon them great Privileges; and being thus instituted, they receiv'd St. *Basil*'s Rule, and cohabited in Monasteries. Their Habit is black, with a blue Cross *Tau*. Their chief Seat is in the *Isle of Meroe*; but in other Parts of *Æthiopia* they have great Numbers of Convents, and no less than 2000000 of annual Revenue. The eldest Sons of Nobles and Gentlemen cannot be admitted, but the second Sons may; and if a Man (except a Physician) have three

Sons, he is bound to assign one of them to be of this Order. Their Vow is to observe conjugal Chastity; to die in Defence of the Christian Faith; to guard the Empire; to obey their Laws and their Superiors; and to go to War when and wheresoever commanded: Moreover, they take an Oath not to fight in Wars between Christians, nor receive Holy Orders, or marry without License. They are of two Sorts: One employ'd in the Wars, the other who being Old are exempted from Military Services, and retire themselves under the Title and Profession of Monks, to the Abbies where they first took their Habit; before which they must serve three Years against the *Arabian* Pyrates about the *Red Sea*, three Years against the *Turks*, and three against the *Moors* upon the Borders of *Borneo*. When they come to be admitted into their Abbey, they are introduced in their Military Habit, of which being disrob'd, the Religious one is put on, *viz.* a black Gown reaching down to the Ground, lined with blue, having a blue Cross fix'd to the Breast, and over that a black Cowle; they are afterwards led to the Church, and there make their Profession. *Philip* VII. Son to the Founder, enlarg'd their Lands and Privileges, and added a Border of *Gold* to the Badge of the *blue Cross*, as observed at this Day.

IN *Italy*, *France* and *Spain*, there are a Sort of Monks that have the Title of Knights of St. *Anthony*, which observe the Rule of St. *Augustin*, and they wear a plain Cross like that in *Æthiopia*; but the Principals of these wear a double St. *Anthony*'s Cross of blue Satin, the one above the other. Their chief Seat is at *Vienne* in *Dauphine*, of which Place the General of the Order bears the Title of Abbot, the Monastery being erected into an Abbey 1297. in Honour of St. *Anthony*, whose Body was translated

thither from *Constantinople*; and all other Places built in Honour of his Name, were made subject to him *A. D.* 1523. *Morœus* calls them *The Hospitallers of St.* Anthony, and says they begun in *France A. D.* 1121. from *Gaston* a Nobleman of *Vienna*. But *Baronius* and others say, *Gaston* and *Gerin* instituted it earlier, making the Letter *Thau* their Ensign or Badge.

13. *The* Constantinian *Angelick Knights of St.* George *in* Greece, *but now in* Italy.

MARQUEZ, a *Spanish* Writer, makes this one of the first Military Orders in Christendom, and derives a formal Institution, Rules and Laws from *Constantine* the Great, which appears little better than Fabulous, therefore we shall omit his Account.

THE Great Masters have their chief Seat and Convent at *Brianno* near *Venice*, and is Hereditary in the Family of *Angelus Flavius Comnenus*. Among the rest of their Prerogatives, the Masters are *Commensales Pontificum*, i. e. may sit at the Table with the Pope, who defends them as Benefactors to the Church, and Founders of the *Lateran* Cathedral at *Rome*. As Subjects to no Prince, they have Power of coyning Money: They give Titles of Counts and Princes to their own Fraternity, and take upon them the restoring to *Honours*, of legitimating *Bastards*, making *Doctors*, *Poets Laureats* and *Publick Notaries*. This Order is under the Protection of the Virgin *Mary* and Patronage of St. *George*; and they profess Obedience and conjugal Chastity; they wear a white Habit, on the left Side whereof is sowed a red or crimson Velvet Cross, Flory; in the middle is the

Labarum imbroidered with the Letter A upon one Arm of the Cross, and Ω on the other. The Sides are wrought with Gold and Silk, but the *Labarum* is all Gold. Amongst these Knights are three Degrees; the first call'd Collered or Grand Crosses, wearing a Collar form'd of *Labarums*, whereat hangs the Cross and St. *George*. The second are the Knights, and these wear the Cross above describ'd. The third are Servants, and they bear the Cross only, without the *Labarum*. The many Grand Priorates or Commanderies belonging to this Order, shew the Power they were formerly endow'd with.

14. *Knights of St.* James *in* Galicia *or* Sanctiago.

THIS is the principal Order in *Spain*, and had its Title of *Don Raniro*, King of *Leon*, who about the Year 826. at *Clavigio*, by the Assistance of St. *James* (said to appear upon a white Horse, bearing a Banner with a *red Cross*) and gain'd a mighty Victory over a great Army of the *Moors*. Some place the Institution about the Year 1160. others 1175. whereas it was only then confirm'd, and their Rule of Living prescrib'd by Pope *Alexander* III. there being a Fraternity of Knights in Spain, *A. D.* 1030. under a *Master* and *Governor*, with Revenues.

AND altho' this Order at first were dispos'd to vertuous Courses, and valiantly to encounter the *Moors*, Enemies to the *Cross* of *Christ*, yet in time they became scandalously perverted, but were afterwards reduc'd to a better Life, and approv'd on by the said Pope *Alexander*, who receiv'd them into the Protection of the Papal See, and gave them the

Rule of St. *Augustin*, the Form of holding Chapters, of electing their *Masters*, of *Treves*, and thirteen Commendadores of Houses, and of the Visitors; and in short very large Privileges, together with the Monastery of St. *Lorjo*, situate in *Galicia* near *Sanctiago*; and the Prior and Canons thereof were incorporated into this Order.

THEIR Ensign is a *red Cross*, which the Knights wear upon their Breast, terminating like the Blade of a Sword, the Hilt crosletted and fashion'd after the ancient Manner; whereupon it was call'd *La Order de Sanctiago de la Espada*.

THEIR Habit is a white Mantle close before, on the Breast whereon is placed the said Cross, made of Silk or Cloth, and they are obliged to wear it upon their Garments, Coats or Cloaks, tho' they use Crosses of Gold likewise.

WHEN the *Moors* were driven out of *Spain*, and the principal Branch of this Order expir'd, upon a Contest for the Place of Great Master, the Crown of *Castile* stepp'd in between, and by consent of the Knights, obtain'd it under the Title of Administrator, which was granted to King *Ferdinand*; and his Son *Charles* V. annex'd it with all its Rights, *&c.* to his Successors in the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*. Since which, the Kings of *Spain* now enjoy the Administration of this Order, and carry that Title and Stile in the Inscription upon the Great Seal thereof, which holds the Royal Arms of *Spain*, upon a Cross that filleth all the Shield, with a Sword at each of the four Corners.

15. *Knights of St.* Saviour *in* Arragon.

THESE were instituted *A. D.* 1118. by Don

Alphonso, call'd *Emperor* of *Spain*, *King* of *Navarre*, *Arragon*, &c. chosen out of the *Spanish* and *French* Nobility that assisted in his Wars. He form'd them into a Society, the better to enable him to drive the *Moors* out of *Saragossa*, and the whole Territory of *Arragon*. Their Rule of living was the *Cistercian*, and somewhat conformable to the *Knights Templars*. When the *Moors* were driven out of *Spain*, their rich *Commanderies* were at length united to the Crown.

THEIR Habit was a white Mantle, on the Breast whereof was a *red Cross Anchre*; but some say it was the Figure of our Saviour.

16. *Knights* d'Avis *in* Portugal.

DON *Alphonso Henriquez*, first King of *Portugal*, took from the *Moors*, *A. D.* 1147. the City of *Evora*, and to strengthen it, sent thither several gallant Commanders, who assum'd the Title of Knights of St. *Mary* of *Evora*, putting themselves under the Protection of our blessed Lady. Not long after they were call'd *d'Avis*, from a Castle upon the *Portuguese* Frontiers, conquer'd from the *Moors*, whither they transplanted themselves. It was confirm'd by Pope *Innocent* III. *A. D.* 1204. under the Rule of St. *Benedict*, and therefore in some Papal Rules call'd of St. *Benedict d'Avis*. The *Knights* profess *conjugal Chastity* and *Obedience*. *Anno* 1213. they submitted themselves to the *Rule*, *Statutes* and *Visitation* of the Order of *Calatrava*; but in the Time of *John* of *Portugal* (natural Son to *Pedro* King of *Portugal*) seventh Great Master *d'Avis*, they cast off their Acknowledgments to *Calatrava*, and never after submitted to them; and afterwards, when the Crown of *Portugal* fell into the Hands of *Philip* II. King of

Spain, this Order was govern'd according to the Statutes of *Portugal*.

Their Badge is a *green Cross, Flory*, (such as the *Knights* of *Alcantara* us'd to wear.) They must be Gentlemen by Extraction, both of the Father's and Mother's side.

17. *Knights of St.* Michael*'s Wing in* Portugal.

About the Year 1165. others say 1171. Don *Alphonso*, who founded the Order *d'Avis*, founded this also after his obtaining a notable Victory over the *Moors* and *Albara* King of *Sevil*, in which Battle St. *Michael* the Archangel is said to appear on the right Side of *Alphonso*, and fight against them.

Their Investiture, *&c.* was the same with *d'Avis*. It is now grown out of Use, but the Mastership remains with the King of *Portugal*.

18. *Knights of St.* Gereon.

This Order was establish'd by *Frederick Barbarossa* the Emperor; others say by *Frederick* II. and consisted only of the *German* Nation. They follow'd the Rule of St. *Augustin*, and wore a white Habit, whereon was sow'd a black Patriarchal Cross, set on a little green Hill.

19. *Knights of St.* Julian de Pereyro, *or of* Alcantara.

They had the first Appellation from St. *Julian de*

Pereyro, a Town in *Leon*, where they had a Monastery built for them by *Ferdinand* II. King of *Leon* and *Galicia*, who in his Diploma of Privileges granted thereunto 1176. stiled himself Protector of this Society of Knights. In the Approbation-Bull of Pope *Alexander* III. their Chief is called Prior; but in that of Pope *Lucius* III. he is stiled Master of *Pereyro*. They used a Secular Habit, modest and grave, and the Ecclesiasticks a Clerical Habit, with a Shred of Cloth and a Scapulary, to distinguish them from other Seculars and Ecclesiasticks. They observed the Rule of St. *Benedict* moderated, as it was convenient for the Exercise of Arms against the *Moors*, for which End it was instituted. Their ancient Badge was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in Allusion to the Name.

The Occasion of altering the first Appellation was upon change of their Habitation. Pope *Adrian* VI. annex'd this Mastership, together with those of St. *James* and *Calatrava*, to the Royal Crown of *Castile* for ever.

20. *Knights of* Trugillo *or* Truxillo *in* Spain.

This Order is so call'd from the City of *Trugillo* in *Estremadura*, but when, or by whom founded, or their Badge, is unknown. Some suppose these Knights the same with that of *Alcantara*; 'tis evident they were in being *A. D.* 1227. when 'tis pretended the Master of *Alcantara* took *Trugillo* from the *Moors*, and plac'd there a Brotherhood of Knights. But it seems these Knights of *Truxillo*, were a distinct Order several Years before, and 'tis not unlikely that they might be incorporated into that of St. *Julian de Pereyro*, and by this Means the Order of *Alcantara* acquired the Towns of *Trugillo*, *Sancta Cruz*, &c. which *Alfonso* IX.

King of *Castile* had given them. They were to be of Noble Descent, and make proof of their Gentility; they were obliged to be near the King's Person, and to attend him in all Martial Expeditions, maintaining always Two Horses and Servants in Readiness.

21. *Knights of* Calatrava.

This Order was instituted in *Castile* by *Sanchio* III. and so called from *Calatrava*, a Frontier Castle of *Castile* and *Toledo*, which the *Moors* took, *A. D.* 714. compounded of the *Arabick Cala* a Castle, and the *Spanish Travas* Manacles, with which the *Moors* fettered the Christians; 400 Years after which, upon the Recovery of the Town from the *Moors*, it was given to the Knights *Templars*; but they, unable to stop the mighty Conquests of the *Moors*, the said *Sanchio* by Proclamation promis'd the Inheritance to any who would undertake the Defence of it, being the Key of the Kingdom of *Toledo*. At length *Raymond* of *Barcelona* (formerly a Knight, then a *Cistercian* Abbot) by the Perswasion of *Velasquez*, accepted the Proffer, and had the Donation, *A. D.* 1158. and fortifying it by the Help of his Associates, this Order arose, call'd at first *Militia de Calatrava*. Upon the account of the Fertility of the Place, 20000 Men and their Families were drawn from the neighbouring Countries to settle there, so that the *Moors* never after attempted it. They remain'd under their own Masters till Pope *Adrian* VI. annex'd it to the Crowns of *Castile* and *Leon*.

22. *Order of the Holy Ghost at* Rome.

Marquez calls them *Brothers of the Hospital of the Holy Ghost*, who tho' not invested with Swords and Spurs, are nevertheless reckoned among the Military Orders, because bound to certify their Gentility before Admittance. Their chief Seat is the Sumptuous Hospital of the Holy Ghost, founded at *Saxia* near the River *Tyber* at *Rome*, by Pope *Innocent* III. *A. D.* 1198. or 1201. But the Ancient Foundation was the Hospital of the *Holy Ghost* at *Montpelier* in *France*, tho' this other became the Principal. They profess Chastity, Poverty, and Obedience, living under the Rule of St. *Augustine*, and have a Master. Their Ensign is a *White Patriarchal Cross with Twelve Points*, sowed to their Breast, and on the left side of their Black Mantle.

In this Hospital, Care is taken for the nursing and bringing up exposed Children, curing Infirmities, Entertainment of Strangers for Three Days, relieving the Poor, and the like Works. Their Revenue is about 24000 Ducats *per* Day, having great Commandaries in *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Spain*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, and elsewhere.

23. *Knights of St.* George d'Alfama.

So named from a Town in *Tortosa*, were instituted, *A. D.* 1201. received Approbation from the Papal See, *A. D.* 1363. and *A. D.* 1399. was united to the Order of our Lady of *Montesa*.

24. *Knights of* Christ *in* Livonia, *or of the Sword-bearers*.

A. D. 1186. *Mainard* first preach'd Christianity to the *Livonians*, and erected the Bishoprick of *Riga*; but his Successors meeting with many Difficulties, *A. D.* 1200. *Albert*, then Bishop of *Livonia*, instituted this Order in Imitation of the Knights *Teutonicks*, with design to extirpate Idolatry, and promote the Gospel. He prescribed to these Knights the *Cistercian* Rule and Habit, *viz.* a long White Mantle and Black Hood; on the Breast was the Figure of a *Red Sword*, or rather *Two plac'd in Saltire*, whence they had the Title of *Ensiferi fratres*, or *Brethren Sword-bearers*. Their Statutes were something like the Knights *Templars*, and they vowed Obedience and Chastity. Pope *Innocent* III. confirmed this Order, which became fully instituted, *A. D.* 1203. but because they could not of themselves accomplish their End. About the Year 1237, they were united to the *Teutonick* Order, and submitted to their Rule and Habit, by whose Help they overcame the *Livonians*, and brought them to the Christian Faith; thenceforward the Great Master of *Livonia* acknowledged him of *Prussia* their Superior, until *Walter de Pletemberg*, their Great Master, separated this Order from their Obedience to the *Teutonick*. Finally, *A. D.* 1561. *Gothard de Ketler*, the last Great Master, following the Example of the Great Master of *Prussia*, became subject to the Crown of *Poland*, surrendering to King *Sigismond* II. the City and Castle of *Riga*, and all the Lands, Charters, Privileges, *&c.* of this Order, receiving in exchange the Dukedom of *Curland*, to him and his Heirs for ever; so the Order expired after 357 Years continuance.

25. *Knights of* Jesus Christ *in* Italy *or* France.

ST. *Dominick* descended of the Family of the *Guzmans* in *Spain*, instituted this Order, *A. D.* 1206. principally to fight against the *Albigenses*, then call'd Hereticks. He prescribed to them a White Habit, and for their Badge a *Cross flory, quarterly, sable and argent*. The Work being done with the *Albigenses*, they devoted themselves wholly to spiritual Warfare; and afterwards, upon admitting Widows and Virgins into their Order, they became called *Fratres seu Sorores de Pœnitentia B. Dominici*, whose Rule Pope *Innocent* VI. confirm'd *circa An.* 1360.

26. *Knights of St.* Mary de Merced. *in* Aragon.

James I. of *Aragon*, being sometime a Prisoner to *Simon* Earl of *Montfort* in *France*, where he suffered much Hardship, and being moved with the insufferable Miseries the Christians endured under the Slavery of the *Moors*, made a Vow to the Blessed Virgin, That when delivered himself, he would endeavour the Redemption of such Christians as the *Moors* had made Captives, and accordingly laid up great Summs for the Performance; and afterwards, by the Council of *Raymond de Penafort*, his Confessor, and *Pedro Nolasco*, a Noble Chevalier, he founded in *Barcelona* this Order of *la Nueva Merced*, so named by the Virgin, who, as they reported, appeared to them all in one and the same Hour, directing the Institution. In *Anno* 1358. I find it called also *Ordo beatæ Eulaliæ*, from St. *Eulalia* the Virgin and Martyr, buried at *Barcelona* in the Church bearing her Name. This Order began on the Day of St. *Laurence*, in *August*, *A. D.* 1218. in the Fifth Year of that King, which Day they annually commemorate. They were

to gather Alms, and go in Person to redeem Christian Slaves; which Work prospered so well, that *Velasco* (the first General or Head) set at Liberty 400 within the Space of Six Years after its Foundation. Their Habit was a Coat and Scapular of course white Cloath, garnished with Cordons and Ribbons, wherewith they fast'ned it about their Necks, and from the upper-end thereof issued a Cap that covered half their Head: The Monks wore their Coats and Scapulars reaching down to their Feet; but those of the Knights were much shorter. *A. D.* 1251. King *James*, the Founder, granted unto all the Fraternity, that they should wear upon their Scapulars the Arms of *Aragon*, *viz. Or* 4 *Pales Gules*, and above that the White Cross of the Church of *Barcelona* in a red Field, with Two Coats joined together *per fess* in one Shield, which came afterwards to be encompassed with a *Bordure*, which the Knights wore on their Scapulars, but the Monks on their Mantles, and both upon their Breasts. Disputes arising among themselves, they were incorporated with the Knights of *Montesa*; so that, ever since, the whole Fraternity have been only Priests. The Master General hath his Residence at *Barcelona*, by the Decrees of Pope *Clement* V. and *John* XXII. To conclude, they now collect great Sums of Money, send out their Agents yearly, chiefly to *Algiers* and *Fess*, and for the Redemption of Christian Captives, and have from the Time of their Institution followed their proposed Ends with all religious Care and Faithfulness.

27. *Knights of the* Rosary *in* Toledo.

Roderick, Bishop of *Toledo* in *Spain*, seeing the Country sore oppressed by the *Moors*, assembled the

Noblest of the City, and proposed the Necessity of their Assistance to extirpate the *Moors*; whereunto they being unanimously inclin'd, he gave Beginning to this Order. By their Statutes, besides fighting against the *Moors*, they are obliged to say, continually, the Rosary of our Blessed Lady. Their Rule of Living was that of St. *Dominick*; and their Ensign the *Figure of our Lady of the Rosary upon a Cross flory, quarterly, argent and sable*.

28. *Knights of St.* Mary the Glorious, *in* Italy.

Their Author was *Bartholomeo de Vincenza*, a Friar Preacher, or *Dominican*, afterwards Bishop of that City. The End he chiefly designed, was to procure Peace to *Italy*, then much disquieted by Civil Wars. It was instituted, *A. D.* 1233. called *Generalis Devotionis annus*, and approved and confirmed by Pope *Urban* IV. *A. D.* 1262. and the Rule of St. *Dominick* prescribed them, who are obliged to take into their Care Widows and Orphans, and endeavour to beget Concord among such as are at Variance. Their Habit is a White Tunick or Cassock, and a Mantle of Russet; some make their Badge which they wear upon their Breast *a purple Cross patee bordered with Gold*, others make it *a purple Cross patee, with Two Stars in chief*; but *Marquez*, that has writ of the Order of Knighthood, gives it an *Octogonal Cross*, like that of *Malta*. They profess Obedience and Conjugal Chastity; but are forbid to wear Spurs or Bridles of Gold: They are commonly called *Cavaleri de Madona*, and reside at *Bolonia*, *Modena*, and other *Italian* Cities; and because they have no Monasteries, but dwell in their own Houses at Ease and Plenty, they were called *Fratres Gaudentes* or *Hilares*.

29. *Knights of St.* James, *in* Portugal,

WERE instituted, *A. D.* 1310. by *Denys* VI. King of *Portugal*, in honour of St. *James*, under whose Protection he became victorious in divers Battles against the *Moors*, and at length quieted his Kingdom by the Assistance of these Knights. It was not long after its Institution ere this Order flourished, through the Privileges the Founder bestowed, and the Approbation of Pope *Nicholas* IV. and others his Successors. The Knights profess Conjugal Chastity, Hospitality and Obedience, and none are admitted till they make proof of their Gentility by Blood. Their Ensign is a *red Sword*, formed like that of St. *James* of *Galicia*; the Habit White, and the only difference between them lies in a little Twist of Gold which these of *Portugal* draw about their Sword. At *Alcasar de Sul* was their Principal Convent, which they afterwards removed to *Dalmela*, where it yet continues. Their Statutes, *&c.* are much the same with those of St. *James* in *Galicia*, whereupon some erroneously have confounded them.

30. *Knights of our* Lady, *and of St.* George *of* Montesa.

THIS Order succeeded into the Lands and Possessions of the Knights *Templars* in *Valentia*, as the Knights *Hospitallers* did into those of the *Templars* in *France*, *Italy*, and *England*; for *James* II. King of *Aragon* and *Valentia*, refusing to give their Revenues to the *Hospitallers* (which as other Princes had done) gave them to the Convent of *Montesa*, where had been placed both Knights and Friars of the Order of *Calatrava*; and excusing himself to Pope *John* XXII. *A.*

D. 1317. he instituted this Order in the City *Valentia* (nevertheless subject to that of *Calatrava*) and made choice of the Town of *Montesa*, to give the Knights both Name and Habitation, whom he obliged to defend his Kingdom against the *Moors*. Their College, dedicated to St. *George*, was built the following Year, and their Statutes confirmed by the said Pope *John*, who gave them the *Cistercian* Rule. Upon their Habit is White, and the Badge a plain *red Cross*, which they wear on their Breasts. *A. D.* 1399. the Order of St. *George d'Alfama* was incorporated to it. And the Great Office of Master hereof is in the King of *Spain*, who hath the Revenue of Thirteen Commandaries belonging thereunto to the Value of 23000 Ducats *per annum*.

31. *Knights of* Christ *in* Portugal.

THESE sprang also from the Ruin of the Knights *Templars*, whose confiscated Estates King *Denys*, sirnamed *Penoca*, desired of Pope *John* XXII. might not be disposed out of his Kingdom, in regard of the great Evils the Neighbouring *Moors* in *Algarves*, did his Kingdom; and forasmuch as the Town of *Castro Marin* was a Frontier, and commodious to resist the Enemy, he moved for Licence to institute an Order of Knights therein, and offer'd his Holiness the Rents and Jurisdiction thereof, which accordingly was granted by the Pope, and dedicated it to the Honour of God, and the Exaltation of the Catholick Faith, under the Title of the *Military Order of our Lord Jesus Christ*, as is alledged from the miraculous Apparition of our Saviour crucified, seen by the King when he went out to fight the *Moors*.

32. *Knights of the* Passion of Jesus Christ.

THIS Order was erected by *Charles* King of *France*, (tho' it made no Progress) and our King *Richard* II. with a large Design exceeding all other Religious Orders, except those of St. *John of Jerusalem* and Knights *Templars*. They were to renew the Memory of our Saviour's Passion, to extirpate Pride, Covetousness and Luxury, to make way for the Reconquest of *Jerusalem* and *Palestine*, and for the Subversion and Confusion of Enemies of the Faith. A MSS. in the *Arundelian* Library, reckons up Twenty Causes for the Necessity of its Institution, which are too long to be inserted; and altho' it was dedicated to our Saviour, yet the Blessed Virgin was look'd upon as a principal Mediatress and Advocate of this Holy Chevalry. Their Governments in the principal Convent, were to be debated by Five Councils, in the Presence of the Prince: 1. The *Quotidian* Council, consisting of Twenty-four: 2. The Particular consisting of about Fourty: 3. The Grand Council consisting of Eighty. 4. The General Chapter held every Year. And, 5. The Universal Chapter to be held every Fourth or Sixth Years, consisting of a Thousand Knights of the Chevalry. The Principal Officer was the *Grand Justiciary*, the next the *Grand Bailiff*: In the Chief City, and in every City and Castle of theirs, one was to administer Justice called a *Potestate*. In the general Chapter was to be an Officer called the *Senator*, and in the Universal Chapter a *Dictator* with Coadjutors and Assistants.

IN the principal Convent were to be Ten Executers of Justice, and Four styled Charitable Commissaries, whose Office was, to provide for Widows and Orphans; and whereas this Order was made up of Eight several Languages, and as many Notaries, who

put on the Habit of the Brothers; for the greater Regularity of their Order, they were to bind themselves by Oath to the Observance of these Three Points, Obedience to Sovereigns, Poverty of Spirit, and Conjugal Chastity. They were allotted for their Maintainance, the Possession of Cities, Castles, *&c.* Gold, Silver, *&c.* and all to be in common, *&c.*

There was to belong to the Castle or Principal Convent a Church of marvellous Structure; it was design'd Fifty Cubits in breadth, without any Pillars, a Hundred Cubits long, and in height Twenty-five; likewise an Hospital, where the Widows of the Holy Chevalry should attend upon the Sick and Infirm; a Baptistery or Font, for the Baptizing the Children of the Knights; a stately Palace, with a great Hall and large Consistories, to contain the Prince and Council with their Retinue; with a large and delightful Cloister for the Canons and Clerks; together with a very spacious Palace, to entertain the Princes of the *West* when they came that Way, either to War, or upon Pilgrimage: In fine, there was to have been Three chief Halls, wherein they might dine together; with distinct Lodgings and Habitations, Wine-Cellars, Granges, Granaries, Stables for Horses and Cattel, Easements, Mills, Cisterns, Baths, and all other Necessaries for the Chevalry. Their Habit was to denote the Passion of Jesus.

THE Dress they were obliged to was a hansome Cloth Coat of a civil Colour, reaching down half way their Legs, and girt with a large Girdle of Silk or Leather Two Fingers broad, the Buckle of Black Horn, the Tongue and Garnishing of the Holes, Tin; to have Red Chaperons or Caps, representing the Blood of our Saviour; over their said Coats, a Mantle of White Cloth or Serge, which from the Shoulders downward was to be open on both Sides along the

Arms, and in that Part before the Breast a *Cross* of red Cloth or Serge Two Fingers broad, extending to the Breadth and Length of that Part of the Mantle; the *Cross* of the Prince's Mantle was to be edged round with a Gold Fringe about half an Inch broad; there were to be some other small Distinction as to the Shape of the Cross upon the White Habit to be used by this Holy *Chevalry*. Their Arms in a Banner were *Argent*, upon a *Cross Gules; a Compass of Four convex semi-circles, conjoyning Four intervening Angles alternately sable* (in Allusion to the Agony of our Lord) charged with an *Agnus Dei Or, the Compass and Cross both fimbriated Gold, with a little red Bordure*.

IN Times of extraordinary Danger, and great Battles, they were to have another singular and solemn Banner; every Knight was to have his Esquire armed at all Points, a little Valet for his Lance and Helmet, a bigger to carry his Mail, and a third to lead his Sumpter; Five Horses, and Four Servants were to attend him in all Warlike Expeditions, and Two or Three Horses and Servants in all Times of Peace. The Number of these Knights of the *Holy Chevalry* was 1000 or 1100.

33. *The Order of the* Brician *Knights in* Sweden.

WAS founded, *A. D.* 1366. by an holy and famous Queen of that Kingdom which they repute St. *Bridget*, the Aim of whose Profession was to oppose Heresy, secure the Confines of the Kingdom, bury the Dead, succour Widows and Fatherless, and to keep up Hospitality. Their chief Ensign was a *Blue Octogonal Cross, and under it a Tongue of Fire*, the Symbol of Love and Charity.

34. *Knights of St.* Maurice *in* Savoy.

THIS Order took its rise upon the Retreat of *Amadeus* VIII. Duke of *Savoy*, into the Desart of *Ripaille*, near the Lake of *Geneva*, and was conferr'd by him, *A. D.* 1434. on Ten of his Courtiers, who retir'd with him, as well as to preserve the Memory of St. *Maurice*, the Patron of *Savoy*. Nine Years after its Institution, the Founder was elected Pope, *A. D.* 1439. and assumed the Name of *Felix* V. Nine Years after that he resigned the Chair, and retir'd to his Solitude in *Ripaille*, where he died, *Jan.* 7. 1451. and lies buried at *Lausanna*. The Order continued not long after his Death; but Duke *Emanuel Philibert* restored it, *A. D.* 1572. and the Dukes of *Savoy* are their Grand Masters.

35. *Knights of the* Holy Ghost,

WERE instituted by Pope *Paul* II. *A. D.* 1468. under the Title of Brethren of the Hospital of the *Holy Ghost*, They wore upon their Habits a *White Cross forme*.

36. *Knights of St.* George *in* Austria *and* Carinthia.

THE Emperor *Frederick* III. others say *Rudolphus* of *Hapsburgh*, first Founder of the Greatness of the House of *Austria*, instituted this Order, A. D. 1470. chiefly to guard the Frontiers of *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Austria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia*, and to suppress the Insolency of the Turks, since which these Knights

have gallantly behaved themselves. The Great Master was advanc'd to the Honour of a Prince; and the Castle of *Mildstad* in *Carinthia* was given him for his Seat, where was founded a Cathedral Church of Canons, under the Rule of St. *Augustin*. Their Ensign is the Arms of St. *George*, a *red Cross*, and their Habit white; they profess Conjugal Chastity and Obedience, and have the Emperors for their Protectors.

THERE are also *Cavalleros de San Jorge en Alemania*, an Order erected by the Emperor *Maximilian*, 1494. upon the like Design with the former; it was confirmed by Pope *Alexander* VI. and is under the same Profession and Protection as the other. There Ensign is a *red Cross*, with a *Crown of Gold* on the top of it; they were otherwise called *crowned Knights*; for after they had served a Year, they and their Heirs have a peculiar right of Adorning their Shields and Helms with a Crown; the Occasion was upon a notable Victory obtained against the *Turks*, who confessed that a Man on Horseback supposed to be St. *George*, put them into that Fear and Disorder as to quit the Field.

37. *Knights of St.* George *at* Rome.

THESE were instituted by *Alexander* VI. 1498. or, as others say, by Pope *Paul* III. at whose Death it became extinct. They dwelt at *Ravenna*, their Province, and were to secure the *Adriatick Sea* from Pyrates.

38. *Knights of St.* Peter *at* Rome.

POPE *Leo* X. *A. D.* 1520. instituted this Order to

fight against the *Turks*, and defend the Sea Coasts. Their Number was Four Hundred; they wore the Image of St. *Peter within an Oval of Gold hanging at a Golden Chain*.

39. *Knights of St.* Paul *at* Rome,

WERE instituted by *Paul* III. 1540. and while he was Pope, he made Two Hundred of them. Their Ensign was *St.* Paul's *Image hanging at a Golden Chain*.

40. *Knights called* Pios *at* Rome.

POPE *Pius* IV. erected this Order 1560. He created of them at first 375. but they encreased to 535. He granted them very considerable Endowments, and preferr'd them before the Knights of the Empire, and *Malta*, because they were his Courtiers, and had the Charge of carrying his Chair on their Shoulders when he went abroad.

41. *Knights of St.* Stephen *at* Florence.

THIS Order was founded in imitation of the Knights of *Malta*, 1561. by *Cosmo de Medicis* II. Duke of *Florence*, afterwards first Duke of Tuscany, in honour of St. *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, the Patron of the City of *Florence*, and in memory of the Battle on the 6th of *August*, (St. *Stephens-day*) at *Marciano*, where overthrowing the Assertors of Liberty, he laid the Foundation of his Grandeur. *Pius* IV. confirmed it under the Rule of St. *Benedict*, which was afterwards

enlarged with many Emoluments and Privileges, by the succeeding Popes. The Knights vow'd Conjugal Chastity and Charity, in relieving the Afflicted, Obedience to their Masters the Great Dukes of *Tuscany*. The chief Place of their Residence was at *Pisa*, where the Founder erected a Church and Convent, as a Nursery for Persons skilful in Maritime Affairs, but since it is transferred to *Cosmopoli* in the Isle of *Ilva*. Their Habit is a long Mantle of White Chamlet trimmed with Red, and on the left part of their Breast a *Cross* (like that of *Malta*) *of red* or *crimson Satin border'd with Gold*; it is daily worn on their Cloaks, and on their Military Garments, and about their Necks in a Ribbon on Festival Days. This Order (like the *Maltese*) also consists of Knights, Priests and Servants. The Priests wear the *Cross of red Taffaty* without a Bordure, the Servants the *Cross* of St. *Anthony* only. The Statutes were reformed by *Ferdinand* Duke of *Tuscany*, Son to the Founder, and approv'd, 1590.

42. *Knights of St.* Maurice *and St.* Lazarus *in* Savoy.

POPE *Gregory* XIII. having, at the Request of *Emanuel Philibert*, Duke of *Savoy*, restor'd the Order of St. *Lazarus*, and the Order of St. *Maurice*, *A. D.* 1572. and constituted this Duke Grand Master, the same Year, for their greater Honour, he united them under the Title of St. *Maurice* and St. *Lazarus*, and appointed the Dukes of *Savoy* Hereditaries and Masters, and oblig'd them to furnish out two Gallies for the Service of the Papal See, to be employ'd against Pyrates. Upon this Union, the Knights had assign'd them for Habit a Gown of Crimson Tabby,

with wide Sleeves, a long Train, and edg'd with white Taffaty, and a Cordon with a Tassel of White and Green fix'd to the Collar. The Badge is, *A green Cross ancree of St.* Laurence, *plac'd Saltirewise, surmounted with the white Cross pornelle of St. Maurice*, which the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain, or any colour'd Ribbon. And the said Duke founded for the Knights two fair Convents, one at *Nice*, the other at *Turin*, and bestow'd on them all the Revenues within his Territories, formerly appertaining to the Order of St. *Lazarus*. The Dukes of *Savoy*, as Grand Masters, use this Title.

43. *Knights of* Loretto.

THIS Order, about the Year 1587. was instituted by *Sixtus* V. who erected the Church of our Lady at *Loretto* into a Cathedral and Bishop's See, and gave the Knights for their Ensign, *the Image of our Lady of Loretto*, hung in a Gold Chain. This is not quite extinguish'd.

44. *Knights of the Blessed Virgin* Mary *of Mount* Carmel.

THO' the Grand Mastership of St. *Lazarus*, and its Commandaries in all Dominions, were confirm'd by Pope *Gregory* XIII. upon the House of *Savoy*, yet under King *Henry* III. some Knights in *France*, of that Order, refus'd to joyn with their Fellows, under the Obedience of the Duke of *Savoy*. King *Henry* IV. desirous to have a new order, bearing the Denomination of *The Blessed Virgin*, &c. apply'd himself to Pope *Paul* V. and obtain'd what he su'd for

A. D. 1608. (besides other Pensions out of certain Ecclesiastical Benefices in *France*) the Commandaries and Hospitals of St. *Lazarus* in that Kingdom, and the *Knights of St.* Lazarus that remain'd in *France*, were incorporated with them under two Titles; their Seal being inscrib'd, *Sigillum Ordinis & Militiæ Mariæ Virginis de Monte Carmeli, & Sancti Lazari in Hierusalem*. The Order consists of One Hundred choice *French* Gentlemen, whose Offices are to attend on the King in every warlike Expedition. They vow Chastity and Obedience, and profess to fight against the Enemies of the Romish See. The Feast of the Patroness is the 16th of *July*; *Philibert Nerestang*, a valiant Knight of St. *Lazarus*, was elected their first Master 1608. Their Badge is a Cross of 8 Points of tawny Velvet or Sattin, with a white Border sow'd on the left Side of their Cloaks, and the Image of the Virgin *Mary* of *Mount Carmel* plac'd in the Middle, within a Rundle encompass'd with Rays of Gold. They also wear about their Necks, in a tawny Silk Ribbon, the like Cross of Gold; but the Image of the said Knights is enamel'd on both Sides. There Investiture is like that of *Malta*.

45. *Knights of the most Glorious Virgin* Mary *of* Rome.

A. D. 1618. *Pedro*, *John Baptista*, and *Bernardo*, sirnam'd *Petrignaneos* (three Brethren of *Spelta* in *Italy*) invented this Order: To which was added, the Rule of St. *Francis d'Assise*, whereof the Popes are Great Masters. *Paul* V. confirm'd them, and gave these Knights the Palace of St. *John Lateran* for their Convent, and the City and Port of *Civita Vecchia* to make their Arsenal; with an Island adjacent, together

with the Government of his Gallies. Their Institution was for the Exaltation of the *Roman* Church, and to check or suppress the *Turks* roving in the Mediterranean. There are three Sorts of this Order, 1. *Knights Gentlemen*, Laicks. 2. *Knights Gentlemen*, Priests and benefic'd. 3. *Knights Chaplains*, or *Servants of Arms*. All of these wear on the left Side of their Mantles their Badge, which is a *blew Cross floree Azure*, border'd with *Silver*, having 4 *Mullets*, or *Stars*, at the End of each Flower, to signifie the Four Evangelists; in the Middle is a Circle (extended round underneath the Arms of the Cross) set with 12 Rays for the 12 Apostles, inscrib'd, *In hoc signo vincam*; and within it (taking up the Center of the Cross) is a Cypher of *M. S.* i. e. *Sancta Maria*, crown'd with Chaplets of Flowers, and Stars of Gold set over the Chaplet.

46. *Knights of the* Annunciade, *and St.* Michael *the Archangel in* Mantua, *or of the Christian Militia in* Moravia.

By these Names they have been promiscuously called. It was instituted 1618. by *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Nevers*, in Conjunction with *Adolph*, Count of *Altham* his Brother, and *John Baptist Petrignan Sfortia*. To give it the greater Lustre, they divided the World among them; *Charles* took the North and West Parts, *Adolph* the Eastern, and the other had the South, where they were personally to found Convents and invest Knights. Duke *Charles* began his Institution of this Order under the Rule of St. *Francis*, in *Olmutz* the Metropolis of *Moravia*, the

Year aforesaid, and dedicated it to the blessed Virgin and St. *Michael*: But what Progress the others made in their pious Resolutions, History is silent. It has been likewise styl'd, *Conceptionis Ordo & Militis Virginis annunciatæ*. *Anno* 1612. several illustrious Princes of divers Countries entered themselves into that Order at *Vienna*. It was approv'd by Pope *Paul* V. and confirm'd by Pope *Paul* VIII. 1624. The Design of its Institution was, to establish Peace and Concord among Christian Princes and their Subjects; to release Captives, and deliver the Oppressed out of the Hands of the Infidels.

On some unhappy Difference among the illustrious Founders, in a short time it moulder'd away and became ineffectual, that the Mahometans (for whose Destruction it was design'd) heard only the Report of it.

CAP. III.

§ 1.

HAVING particulariz'd the Religious Orders, I shall proceed to those accounted absolutely Military. Among them,

1. *Knights of the* Round Table *may, for Antiquity, challenge the first Place.*

The Founder was *Arthur* King of *Britain*, crown'd in the Year of our Lord 516, at the Age of 15 Years; of whose incredible Courage and Gallantry, tho' some have stretch'd too far, yet *William* of *Malmsbury* is of Opinion, he was worthy to have been celebrated by true and faithful Historians, and not false and spurious Tales. He it was that long prop'd up his declining Country, and inspir'd Martial Courage into his Subjects, the *Saxons*, in twelve pitch'd Battles having overcome, and conquer'd divers Countries. He liv'd in so great Repute and Renown, that worthy Knights came from all Parts to his Court, as a Seminary of Military Discipline, to demonstrate their Valour in point of Arms. This gave him Occasion to select out of these, and his own Subjects, some say Twenty Four of the most Valiant, which he united in

a Fellowship; and to avoid all Controversy upon Precedency, caus'd a Round Table to be made, whence the Order had its Appellation. He admitted not only *Britains*, but Strangers; and their Qualifications were to be Persons of Nobility, Dignity, and renown'd for Vertue and Valour. The Place where they were instituted was *Windsor*; and those others of Note, where he and his Knights assembled, were at *Caerleon* in *Monmouthshire*, *Winchester*, and *Camelot* in *Com' Somerset*; and their time of convening was *Whitsuntide*. In *Winchester* Castle was a large Round Table, call'd (and affirm'd to be) King *Arthur*'s; or at least set up in the room of one more ancient, which was destroy'd in the rebellious Times of Forty One, with other Reliques there. The Articles of their Profession (Number 12) are set down by Sir *William Segar*. We find no authentick Proof what Badge they bore, notwithstanding the Report that King *Arthur* had a Shield nam'd *Pridwin*, wherein the Virgin *Mary* was depicted. His Sword and Lance had also their Names, one being call'd *Caliburne*, the other *Irone* or *Rone*. It's not remember'd that this Order surviv'd the Founder, but rather that it expir'd with him, most of these Knights perishing with him at the Battle of *Kamblan*, now *Camelsford*, in *Cornwall*, where tho' he kill'd his Enemy *Mordred*, yet he dy'd *A. D.* 542.

IT may be noted, that the like Round Table grew in Estimation shortly after the *Norman* Conquest, being permitted at Haslelades, Tilts and Turnaments, *temp. Steph.* and *R. I.* And *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, kept the Celebration of the Round Table (consisting of One Hundred Knights, and as many Ladies) with Tilting at *Kenelworth*-Castle, in *Com' Worcest'* 7 *Ed.* I. And King *Edward* III. designing to restore it, held a Just at *Windsor* in the 18th Year of his Reign; and in

the 19th ordain'd it annually to be kept there at *Whitsontide*. But it was thought fit upon divers Accounts to forbid these Assemblies, and in particular 16 *H.* III. at *Shrewsbury*, when the King went to meet *Llewellin* Prince of *Wales*, and in 36 *H.* III. and at many other times.

2. *Knights of the* Oak *in* Navarre,

WERE instituted by *Garcia Ximenes* of the Blood of the *Goths*, who had formerly retir'd from the World to a solitary Life, but relinquish'd it to command an Army rais'd by the *Navarrois*, to deliver themselves from the Oppression of the *Moors*. As he was marching to encounter them, *A. D.* 722. there appear'd to him from the Top of an Oak the Sign of the Cross, ador'd by an infinite Number of Angels. On giving Battle to the Infidels he gain'd a remarkable Victory, and the People elected him their King; and he in thankfulness to God erected this Order, investing his Nobles therewith, and oblig'd them to defend the Christian Faith, and acknowledge Obedience to his Successors, Kings of *Navarre*. Time has eclips'd this Order.

3. *The Order of the* Gennet,

WAS Founded by *Charles Martel*, in Memory of the famous Battle near *Tours*, *A. D.* 726. where he overthrew 385000 *Saracens* and *Moors*, with their General *Abdiramo*; and to reward those who had well-behav'd themselves in this Action. The great Number of rich Gennet Furr, (Ermine has since gain'd the better value) as also the Creatures

themselves taken alive among the Spoils, was the Occasion of assuming the Name: But others impute it to Gennets, a kind of neat-shap'd Horses, whereof not unlikely a great Part of the Founder's Cavalry consisted. The Knights were Sixteen in Number, and were accounted the first Order of this Nature among the *French*, which continu'd till the Institution of the *Star*, when it was laid aside, tho' some *French* Authors question if ever the Order was in being.

4. *The Order of the* Crown-Flower,

ERECTED by *Charles* the Great, Son of King *Pepin*, *A. D.* 802. to reward the *Frizons*, who had behav'd themselves valiantly in his Armies, and to encourage others to emulate their Vertue. It was so call'd from its Ensign, *viz.* an Imperial Crown embroider'd with Gold. The Knights were invested with the Military Belt and a Box on the Ear.

5. *The Order of the* Dog *and* Cock.

THAT there was such an Order in *France* is related by several Writers, but they give no certain Account of its Institution.

6. *The Order of St.* Andrew, *or the* Thistle, *in* Scotland,

IS reported by *John Lesley*, Bishop of *Ross*, to take beginning from a bright Cross in Heaven, in Fashion of that whereon St. *Andrew* suffer'd Martyrdom,

which appear'd to *Hungus*, King of the *Picts* (and to the *Scots* whom *Achaius* King of *Scotland* sent to his Assistance) the Night preceding the Battle with *Athelstan* King of *England*; over whom prevailing, they went in Solemn Procession to the Kirk of St. *Andrew*, to thank God and his Apostle for their Victory, promising that they and their Posterity would ever bear the Figure of that Cross in their Ensigns and Banners. *Favin*, in his *Theatre of Honour*, relates it to be instituted upon the famous League, Offensive and Defensive, made between *Achaius* and *Charlemain* King of *France*; to preserve the Memory of which Alliance, *Achaius* added the *Tressure of Flowers de Lys* to the Lyon, and took for Device the *Thistle* and *Rue*, which he compos'd into a Collar of his Order; and for his Motto, *Pour ma Defence*: Yet doth *Menenius* make these the Symbols of two different Orders, one of the *Thistle*, whence the Knights were so styl'd, and the Motto, *Nemo me impune lacessit*; the other call'd *Sertum Rutæ*, or *The Garland of Rue*: Nevertheless to both these Collars hung one and the same Jewel, *viz.* the Figure of St. *Andrew*, bearing his Cross before him. *But there are some*, saith the same Author, *that refer the Institution of the* Thistle (the Badge of the *Scotch* Kingdom from the Times of *Achaius*) *to the Reign of* Charles VII. *King of* France, *when the Amity was renew'd between both Kingdoms*. Lastly, Others place its Foundation 1500. Their principal Ensign is a Gold Collar, compos'd of Thistles interlink'd with Anulets of Gold, and pendant thereto St. *Andrew* with his Cross, and this Epigraph, *Nemo me impune lacessit*. Their solemn Meeting was annually on St. *Andrew*'s Day, in the Church of the Town dedicated to his Name: During the Festivity, the Knights were richly habited, and wore their Parliament Robes, having fix'd on their

left Shoulders an Azure Roundle, charg'd with a Saltire Argent, or St. *Andrew*'s Cross enfil'd in Centre, with a Crown compos'd of *Flower de Luces Or*. For the ordinary and common Ensign, the Knights us'd a Green Ribbon, whereat hung a Thistle of Gold, crown'd with an Imperial Crown, within a Circle of Gold, containing the last nam'd Epigraph; and now of late they have sew'd to their left Breast an Irradiation (like that of *The Knights of the Garter*) over a Saltire Silver, the Irradiation charg'd with a Blew Roundle of St. *Andrew*'s Cross. Their Number consisted of Thirteen, in Allusion to our blessed Saviour and the Twelve Apostles.

7. *Knights of* our Lady of the Star,

OWE their Original to *Robert* the Devout of *France*, *A. D.* 1022. to manifest his strict Devotion to the blessed Virgin. They were in Number Thirty, inclusive of the Chief. Their Seat was in the noble and ancient House of St. *Owen*, call'd *de Chichey*, near St. *Denys* in *France*. This Order was of no long continuance, for being much sully'd and disgrac'd (during the Civil and Foreign Wars) by the Imitation of Persons that had neither Birth nor Merit to recommend them, King *Charles* VII. took Occasion to efface it *A. D.* 1455. by delivering up, in a Chapter, the Ensign that he wore to the Chevalier *du Guet*, Captain of the Night-watch in *Paris*, the Lords and Princes throwing it off after it had receiv'd that Mark of Infamy; tho' some alledge it declin'd upon the Erection of *The Order of St.* Michael, as the *Star* supplanted that of the *Gennet*.

8. *The Order of the* Lilly *in* Navarre, *or of St.* Mary *of the* Lilly,

WAS founded *A. D.* 1048. by *Garcius* VI. King of *Navarre*, in Honour of the blessed Virgin *Mary*, after his Recovery from a languishing Sickness. Others relate, that prevailing against the *Moors*, he made a Feast in Honour of the blessed Virgin, at which he instituted this Order, electing his Brothers and Sons among the first Knights. It was esteem'd the most Illustrious of all *Spain*, and consisted of Thirty Eight Knights, extracted out of the ancientest Blood of *Navarre*, *Biscay* and *Old Castile*. The Kings of *Navarre* were their Chief. They promis'd, at their Institution, to expose their Lives and Fortunes in Defence of the Christian Faith, the Conservation of the Crown, and Expulsion of the *Moors*.

9. *The Order of the* Sword *in* Cyprus,

WAS erected 1195. by *Guy* of *Lusignan*, King of *Jerusalem* and *Cyprus*, after he had purchas'd that Isle of our King *Richard* I. in Commemoration of so fortunate a Plantation of 15000 Persons whom he brought thither. Some question the Truth of this; however all assent, its Founder was one of the *Lusignan* Family. The Collar was compos'd of round Cordons of white Silk, woven into Love-Knots, interlac'd with the Letters S and R. Beneath this Collar hung an Oval of Gold, whereon was perfigur'd a Sword, the Blade enamell'd Silver, the Hilt Gold, and about the Oval this *Motto*, *Securitas Regni*. *Micheli* says, *Pro Fide Servanda*, and *Gothofredus, pro integritate tuenda*. Their Festivity was *Ascension-Day*, whereon the Founder gave it (in the Church of St.

Sophia, the Cathedral of *Nicosia* in *Cyprus*) to his Brother *Amaury*, and to Three Hundred Barons establish'd in that his new Kingdom. There were Eight Kings of *Cyprus* of the *Lusignan* Line, Great Masters; but when this Isle fell into the Hands of the *Turks*, this Institution ceas'd.

10. *The* Bear *in* Switzerland,

WAS instituted *A. D.* 1213. by the Emperor *Frederick* II. in Favour of the Abbot of St. *Gall* in *Swaben*, who had assisted him in gaining the Empire. These Knights wore a Collar of Gold, at the End whereof hung a Bear Gold, mounted on an Hillock enamell'd with Black, in Honour of St. *Ursus* of the *Theban* Legion, who was martyr'd before the Temple of the Sun at *Soleurre* in *Switzerland*. It was also call'd *The Order of St.* Gall, from the Name of the Patron (a *Scotch* Gentleman, and the Apostle of *Swaben*) of the Place where it receiv'd its Appellation. The Abbot whereof, for the Time being, had Power to confer this Honour, which was done by girding with the Military Belt (the Sword being first consecrated) and putting on the Collar. It continu'd 'till the *Switzers* became a Common-Wealth; and then the Castles of the Nobles being dismantled, it was laid aside.

11. *The* Broom-Flower *in* France,

TOOK its Original from *Lewis* of *France*, to honour the Coronation of his Queen *Margaret*, *A. D.* 1234. Their Habits were Cassocks of White Damask, and Violet Chaperons; the Collar compos'd of Broom-Flowers Proper, interlac'd with Flowers *de Lys*,

hanging thereat a Cross *Florence* Gold, to which was added this Inscription, *Exaltat Humiles*; the Founder accounting the Broom the Symbol of Humility. Their Number was at the Sovereign's Pleasure, and this Order continu'd till the Death of King *Charles* V. Some say *Charles* VI. instituted it, and others deny the being of any such Order.

12. *The* Ship *and* Double Crescent *in* France.

SUCH an Order was of Old, in Honour of the great Atchievements of that Nation, tho' by whom founded is unknown. *Favin* affirms, St. *Lewis* erected this after he had instituted the *Broom Flower*, to animate the Nobility to accompany him in his Expedition to *Africa*, 1269. Their Badge was alluding to the Name of the Order, the Figure of a Ship Pendant in an Oval of Gold; and expir'd with St. *Lewis* after the first Class of Knights; but its Honour was kept up by *Charles*, Brother of St. *Lewis*, and flourish'd in *Sicily* with his Successors, until the Kings of *Arragon* obtain'd that Kingdom.

13. *Knights of St.* James *in* Holland.

THIS Order was erected by *Florentius*, Earl of *Holland* and *Zeland*, and Lord of *Friseland*; and he, *A. D.* 1290. bestow'd the Ensigns of it, in his Palace at the *Hague*, upon Twelve of his chief Nobility, among which was *Lancenot* Lord *Hamilton*, Embassador from the King of *Scots*. They were invested with a Collar of Gold, or Military Belt of Silver gilt, set off with Six Escallops, whereat was hung the Picture of St. *James* the Apostle.

14. *The Order of the* Swan *in* Cleveland.

IF ever any such was, it has been effac'd long since. Yet *Favin* says, the Princes of *Cleve* have born the *Swan* for their Order, Devise, Crest and Supporters, to preserve the Memory of the *Knight of the Swan*, whose Romance he sets down. And further reports, That *Charles Gonzaga* of *Cleve*, Duke of *Nevers*, had a Design to re-establish it.

15. *The Knights of* Jesus *at* Rome,

WERE instituted by Pope *John* XXII. at *Avignon* in *France*, *A. D.* 1320. as a Temporal Prince, being Lord Paramount of St. *Peter*'s Patrimony. *Paul* V. much augmented it. Their Badge is a plain Cross Gules, inclos'd within a Cross patee Or, hanging at a Gold Chain. Pope *Clement* IX. 1668-9. treated Three of the Embassadors from the *Swiss Cantons* with the usual Ceremonies, himself putting on the Chains, and the Captains of his Guards girding their Swords about them.

16. *The* White Eagle *in* Poland,

WAS instituted by *Ladeslaus*, King of *Poland*, to honour the Marriage of his Son *Casimire* the Great, with *Anne* Daughter of *Gedimer* Duke of *Lithuania*, 1325. The Ensign was a white Eagle crown'd.

17. *The Order of Knights* de la Banda *in* Castile,

WAS set up by *Alphonsus* II. King of *Leon* in *Castile*, in the City of *Victoria*, *A. D.* 1332. (or *Palencia* 1330. or *Burgos* 1368. according to others) not long before his Coronation, the better to secure himself against his Enemies. Soon after the Solemnity was celebrated at *Burgos*, in the Monastery of St. *Mary Royal*, where the Candidates, conducted by the King to the Altar, and depositing their Arms, spent the Night in Watching and Prayer. The Morrow after Mass, they were invested with a red military Belt or Ribbon, of four Fingers broad, which came a-cross the Body over the right Shoulder, and so under the left Arm, and was the Ensign from whence they took their Denomination. This Order was chiefly to Honour the Nobility; and at first none were admitted but the younger Sons of Noblemen [excluding elder Brothers] or Persons well-descended, or Esquires, who had serv'd in Court or Camp Ten Years at least. It was anciently of great Esteem, and Kings have vouchsafed to take its Ensign; but at length it was disus'd.

18. *The Order* de la Calza,

INSTITUTED at *Venice A. D.* 1400. from the Example of the *Knights* de la Banda, in Honour of the Inauguration of Duke *Michele Steno*. It consisted of a Society of particular Noblemen and Gentlemen, who voluntarily met together, and elected a Chief among themselves. They took an Oath to observe their Articles, part whereof was, the Honour of the City, where noble and splendid Regales were made; and with such like magnificent Divertisements did they entertain King *Henry* III. of *France*, and other noble Personages. It receiv'd the greater Lustre, by the

Addition of several Italian Princes; and the most conspicuous Families were receiv'd into it. Their Habit, on Solemn Days, was a Crimson Senator's Vest appearing very splendid. Their Ensign, a Sun in a Sheild painted in their Banners. It arriv'd to such Profuseness, that in 1590. it was wholly laid aside.

19. *The Order of St.* Mark *in* Venice,

Is here reckon'd, because the Knights are dignify'd with a Title and particular Ensign of Honour at their Creation. The Ceremony is after the Manner of *Knights Batchelors*, by Dubbing with a Sword, and their Title a bare Mark of Honour, having no Laws or Statutes, or particular Obligations enjoyn'd. It had the Denomination from St. *Mark* the Evangelist, whose Body was translated to *Venice*, 828. and became the Titular Angel and Guardian of that City, his Picture being display'd in their Banners. The exact Time of its Institution is not certainly determin'd. The Badge that adorns these Knights, is, a Gold Chain put over their Shoulders at their Creation, whereat depends a Medal, on one side whereof is the Symbol of St. *Mark*, *viz.* a winged Lyon, holding in his right Paw a drawn Sword, and in his left an open Book, with this Motto, *Pax tibi Marce Evangelista meus*. On the Reverse, the Duke surviving is beautify'd with a particular Impress. Sometimes represented on his Knee, receiving a Standard from the Hands of St. *Mark*. This Medal is worn on a Cross enamell'd Blew. The Duke confers this Honour, either privately in his Chamber, or publickly in a full College. The Senate have the Power of creating this Order; and they who receive it by their Sanction, the Dignity is greater than from

the Hands of the Duke himself. Absent Persons are invested by Letters Patents; and to aggrandize their Honour and Title, style themselves *Knights of St.* Mark.

20. *The Order of the* Seraphims, *or* Seraphick Knights, *otherwise sirnam'd of* Jesus,

WAS begun by *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden* 1334. in Memory of the Siege laid to the Metropolitan City of *Upsala*. The Collar was compos'd of Seraphims and Patriarchal Crosses.

21. *The Order of the* Sword *and* Military Belt *in* Sweden.

BY whom or when founded we have no Memoirs. The Collar made up of Swords, with Belts twining round them (the Symbol of Love and Justice) the Swords somewhat inclining towards the Point, and so joyn'd Two and Two, Point to Point, plac'd round in a Circle.

22. *The Order of the* Knot *in* Naples.

WHEN *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, warr'd against *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*; not so much to dispossess her of the Kingdom, as to revenge his Brother *Andrew*'s Death, whom this *Joan*, his Wife, had strangled 1351. On the 26th of *May*, the Queen and *Lewis* Prince of *Tarantuni*, being crown'd King and Queen of that

Realm on the same Day, in Commemoration of so pacifick an Union, and to tear up all their Enmities, the Prince instituted this Order; into which enter'd, at that Time, Threescore and Ten Lords. Their Habit was White, and their Ensign a Knot (the Emblem of Love and Friendship) intermixt with Gold. This Order expir'd in a short Time.

23. *Knights of the* Annunciade *in* Savoy.

Ame VI. Earl of *Savoy*, instituted this Order, under the Title of *The Collar* 1362. in Honour of the Fifteen Divine Mysteries of the *Rosary*. *Favin*, on a mistaken Ground, calls it *The Order of the Snares of Love*, in regard its Founder had receiv'd of his Lady, a Bracelet made of the Tresses of her Hair, plaited in Love-knots, and that the four Letters, afterwards interlac'd by the Founder, should signifie *Frappes*, *Entres*, *Rompes*, *Tout*. It is conspicuous enough at the first Erection it was call'd of *The Collar*, and so remain'd till *Charles* III. or *Le Bon* Duke of *Savoy*, bestow'd on it the Title of *The Annunciation*, from the Picture of the Annunciation which he annex'd to *The Collar*, 1518. The Founder appointed the Number of his Knights to be Fifteen, among whom Sir *Richard Musard*, an *Englishman*, is recorded 1434. and 1568. their Number was encreas'd to Twenty, that being solely lodg'd in the Breast of their Sovereign. *Riene* Castle, in *Buger*, was their principal Seat; they had a Chartreuse to entertain Fifteen Priests to celebrate Fifteen Masses to the Honour of the Fifteen Joys of the blessed Virgin, and to the Soul's Health of these Knights; and here were their Ceremonies and Chapters held, until *Charles Emmanuel* I. exchang'd it and other Places for the Marquisate of *Saluces*, 1607.

on the Anniversary of the Feast and Celebration of the Order (being fix'd upon the Day of the Annunciation) were translated first to the Church of St. *Dominick* at *Montmeiller*, and afterwards by him to the Hermitage of *Camaldule*, upon the Mountain of *Turin* call'd *l'Eremo Assis*. The ancient Collar was of Gold, Three Fingers broad; in barbarous Characters were ingraved these Letters, F E R T, and one Knot (commonly call'd the *Savoy Knot*) at the end of each *Fert*; which, with Three other Knots entwin'd one within another, made up the Circumference *pendant* at the Collar without any Figure. These old Characters were suppos'd to be the Initials of *Fortitudo ejus Rhodum tenuit*, alluding to *Amadeus le Grand*, who so valiantly defended *Rhodes* against the *Turks*, 1310. But that this was long before the Devise of the House of *Savoy*, is manifest from the Coins of *Lewis de Savoy*, Baron *de Vaud*. who dy'd 1301. the Monument of *Thomas de Savoy*, who dy'd 1233. whereon was lying at the Feet of his Portraiture a Dog with a Collar about his Neck, inscrib'd *Fert*, as an integral Word, and from a Brass Coin of the said Earl's, on the Reverse whereof are Two Knots of the Model before spoke of, and the Word *Fert* in the midst. There is the Ectype of a Silver Coin of *Peter de Savoy*, (who erected in *England* the noble Pile of that Name in the *Strand*, *temp. H.* III.) wherein is represented the Devise *Fert* in *Gothick* Characters, the true Interpretation of which Word cannot be explain'd. This ancient Collar is still in vogue and daily worn, but now called *The little Collar*, fashion'd of Gold or Silver gilt, about an Inch broad, and of different weight. The Knights wear it about their Necks, close to the Collar of their Doublet. Duke *Charles* III. as he much restor'd the Splendor of this Order, *Anno* 1518. introduc'd the larger one, only

worn upon high Days. It weighs about Two Hundred Crowns, and is compos'd of the Word *Fert*, interwoven with Knots, severed with Fifteen Roses of Gold, whereof Seven are enamell'd with White, and Seven with Red, and border'd with Two Thorns. The Figure of the Annunciation is enamell'd in various Colours, *pendant at three Chainets* to another Rose-colour'd both White and Red. He first appointed the great Mantle of Crimson Velvet, his own being furr'd with Ermines, but the rest of the Knights with Miniver, fring'd and border'd with *Savoy Knots* in fine Gold; under this Mantle is worn a Surcoat of fine Damask. Duke *Emanuel Philibert*, his Son, alter'd the Colour of the Mantle to Azure, and lin'd it with White Taffaty, of which Silk he made the Surcoats. *Charles Emanuel* chang'd the Mantle into an *Amaranthus* or Purple Colour, seeded with Roses and Flames in embroidery of Gold and Silver, and lin'd with Cloth of Silver tissu'd Blue, now in use; under which, instead of the White Taffaty Surcoat, is now worn a White Satin Suit embroider'd with Silk, the Hose gather'd upwards in the fashion of Trouses.

24. *The* Thistle *in* France,

WAS instituted on *New-Year's Day* 1370. by *Lewis* II. Duke of *Bourbon*, upon his Marriage with *Anne*, Daughter to the Count *Daulphine* in *Auvergne*. The first Solemnities of this Order were perform'd at *Nostre Dame de Maulins* in *Bourbonnois*, where he founded a College of Twelve Canons, in Honour of the blessed Virgin; the Intent was, to corroborate his Interest for the Aid of the Duke of *Orleans*, against the Faction of the House of *Burgundy*, and by joyning of Flowers *de Lys* and Thistles (the Symbols of Hope

and Courage) emblematically to express the Nobleness of his Spirit against all the Power of Fortune. He ordain'd the Number of Knights to be Twenty Six, comprehending himself and his Successors, Dukes of *Bourbon*, as Chiefs, and oblig'd them to wear daily a Belt, a Girdle of Watchel coloured Velvet, lin'd with Crimson Sattin embroider'd with Gold, and therein the Word *Esperance* curiously wrought. The Girdle was fasten'd with a Buckle and Thong of Gold, bearded and chequer'd with Green, enamel'd in Form like the Head of a Thistle. On the Anniversary of the Festival (the Conception of our Lady) the Knights wore Cassocks or Surcoats of Carnation Damask with White Sleeves, girded as before; the Mantle of the Order was sky-colour'd Damask with broad Welts of Gold Embroidered on the Collar, and lined with Red Satin, but the Mantlet of Green Velvet, the Bonnet was also of Green Velvet; at the Point of the Band hung a Tassel of Crimson Silk and Threads Gold, the Lining of Crimson Taffaty, and turn'd up after the antique manner, whereon they had embroided the Golden Shield with the Word *Allen*; the great Collar was of Gold, of the weight of Ten Marks, enamelled with Green, distended like Network, which was filled with Flowers *de Lys* (together with the Letters of the Impress) plac'd in a Lozenge of Red Enamel; at the Bottom of the Collar, in an Oval of Gold (the Circle whereof was enamelled with Green and Red) appeared the Figure of the Patroness, the Virgin *Mary*, irradiated with Gold, and crowned with Twelve Silver Stars, a Crescent of the same under her Feet, enamell'd with Purple and Sky-colour; at the End of the Oval depended the Head of a Thistle enamelled Green, but bearded White. The Founder took an exact Patern for the Order of the *Garter*, with

which he acquainted himself while he was Prisoner in *Windsor* Castle.

25. *The Order of the* Dove

WAS begun by *John* I. King of *Castile* in *Segovia*, 1390. or, as others, 1379. to encourage his Nobles to prosecute the Noble Acts of his Grandfather King *Henry* III. but the Founder dying the same Year, before it had taken root, it became of small Continuance.

26. *The Order of the* Argonauts *of St.* Nicholas

WAS instituted by *Charles* III. King of *Naples*, 1382. to preserve Amity among the Nobles, to compose Enmities and suppress Seditions. If any of these Knights, upon a Variance, refused a Reconciliation, the Ensigns were to be forfeited. Others say the Design was to advance Navigation, to which their Ensign alludes, being a Ship floating upon the Waters in the midst of a Storm, having this Motto, *Non credo tempori*. In the Convent of that sumptuous Church which St. *Nicholas*, Bishop of *Smyrna*, erected, was the grand Feast held on the Anniversary of that Saint. This King appointed a White Habit for the Knights, and prescribed them laudable Constitutions; but for want of a settled Revenue, their Splendor expired with their Founder.

27. *Knights of St.* Anthony *in* Hainault.

ALBERT of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, and *Zeland*, designing an Expedition against the *Turks* and *Moors*, instituted this Order, 1382. The Ensign thereof was a Golden Collar wrought after the Fashion of an Hermit's Girdle, at which hung a Walking-Staff, and a little Golden Ball.

28. *The* Porcupine *in* France,

WAS erected by *Lewis* of *France*, Duke of *Orleans*, 1393. to honour the Solemnization of the Baptism of his eldest Son *Charles*, by his Wife Daughter to the Duke of *Milain*. He chose the Porcupine for his Devise, with this Epigraph, *Cominus & Eminus*; not only out of the aspiring Hopes conceived of this Child, but also to intimate something of Revenge against *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, his mortal Enemy; the Porcupine being an Emblem both Offensive and Defensive. Others make *Charles* aforesaid the Founder of this Order, 1430. in Imitation or Emulation of the Golden Fleece, instituted by *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*. Their Number, including the Founder, was Twenty Five; their Habit, Surcoats of Violet Velvet, and over them Mantles of Watchet Velvet lin'd with Carnation Satin; the Collar was formed of Gold Chains, at the End whereof hung a Porcupine of Gold upon an enamelled Hillock of Grass and Flowers, which Creature was also embroidered on the Knights Belts.

29. *The Order of the* Lily *or* Lilies *in* Arragon *or* de la Jarra de S. Maria, *of the Vessel of St.* Mary,

WAS erected by *Ferdinand* King of that Country, called the infant of *Antiquera*, 1403. and dedicated to the Blessed Virgin. *Favin* ranges it under the Denomination of the Title of the *Looking-glass of the Blessed Virgin in* Castile, instituted in Memory of a Victory King *Ferdinand* obtained in that Kingdom against the *Moors*, 1410. whence he transplanted them with him into *Arragon*, 1413. when he received the Crown, where it flourished under the Sons of that King, and then the Line was extinct.

30. *The Order of the* Dragon overthrown *in* Hungary,

WAS instituted, *A. D.* 1413. by the Emperor *Sigismond the Glorious*, 1418. for the Defence of the Christian Religion, and to crush or oppugn all Hereticks and Schismaticks, and for the Satisfaction he receiv'd in conferring Peace to the Churches of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, by the Aid of the Council of *Constance*. It was in high esteem shortly after in *Germany*; but the Order and Founder had very near the same Period. The Knights wore daily, as their Ensign, a *Green Cross flory*, on solemn Days, a Scarlet Cloak, and on the Mantlet of Green Silk a double Chain of Gold (others say a Green Ribbon) at the End of which hung a Dragon dead with broken Wings, in posture of being overcome (the Symbol of Heresy) enamelled with Variety of Colours.

31. *The* Equites Tusini *in* Bohemia, *or else both in* Bohemia *and* Austria.

THIS Order had its Name from *Toca*, a Cap or Coif. The Archdukes of *Austria* were its Founders; which they enacted to engage their Subjects in Defence of the Christian Faith against *Turks* and *Hereticks*, conferring upon the Knights towards their Support whatsoever they acquired in the Wars, which was a respite to themselves, after almost Two Hundred Years Charges, and Military Expence; indeed the Encouragement proved so good a Bait, that they cleared their Provinces almost of all *Turks* and *Schismaticks* that infested them. Their Badge was a plain *Green Cross*, and their Habit Red.

32. Ordo Disciplinarum,

WAS instituted by the *Bohemian* Kings, or rather the *Austrian*, to be a Curb upon the *Turks* and *Hereticks*, at least to prescribe the Confines of the Kingdom. The Collar of the Order had a White Eagle. These Knights flourished in *Germany*, in the Reigns of *Sigismond* and *Albert* Emperors.

33. Orde de la Scama, *in* Castile,

WAS instituted by *John* II. King of that Realm, about the Year, 1420. to excite his Nobility to fight against the *Moors*, which produced so good Effect, that in a short time the *Moors* were shamefully overthrown. That King granted them Privileges, gave them their Statutes and Rules; but upon his Death the Splendor hereof was greatly eclips'd. Their Ensign was a Cross composed of the Scales of Fishes. They were obliged to defend *Castile* against the *Moors*, to dye in Defence of the Faith, and when the

King went to War they marched before him. Their Ensign was a Cross composed of the Scales of Fishes, the *Spanish Scama* bearing the same Signification as the *Latin Squama*.

34. *The Order of the* Golden Fleece,

HAD its Original from *Philip* II. Duke of *Burgundy*, Sirnam'd *the Good*, the 10th of *Jan.* 1429. at his Marriage with *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Portugal*, in the City of *Bruges* in *Flanders*, to perpetuate the Memory of his great Revenues raised by Wools with the *Low-Countries*. Some say in Commemoration of *Gideon*, who with Three Hundred Men vanquished a numerous Army of the *Midianites*; or of *Jacob*'s *Fleece*, viz. the Party-coloured and streaked Fleece, after the Example of *Jason* and his *Argonauts*, whose Expedition to *Colchos* he intended to make his Patern by a Voyage into *Syria* against the *Turks*. He founded it to the Glory of the Almighty Creator, and Redeemer, in Reverence of the Virgin *Mary*, and St. *Andrew* the Apostle, who was Patron thereof, and whose Festival was celebrated on that Day, but afterwards translated to the 1st of *May*, by reason of the shortness of the Days, and the Fatigue aged Knights would find to convene in an intemperate Season. The Knights at first were Twenty Four, beside the Duke, chief and supream, who reserved the Nomination of Six more at the next Chapter; but *Charles* V. encreased them, 1516. to Fifty. Duke *Charles* and *Maximilian*, Sons to the Founder, annex'd many Privileges to them, which were confirmed, 1556. For their Habit Three different Mantles were ordain'd them at the grand Solemnity; the first Day, of Scarlet Cloth, richly embroidered about the Lower

End, with Flints struck into Sparks of Fire and Fleeces, with Chaperons of the same; and the same Day, after Dinner, to proceed to Vespers in Mantles of Black, and of the Colour of Chaperons; the Day following they were to hear Mass habited as themselves thought fit; but Duke *Charles* aforesaid prescribed them Mantles of White Damask for that Day's Ceremony, and changed their Cloth Mantles into Velvet. The great Collar is composed of double Fusils, placed Back to Back, Two and Two together, in form of the Letter B, representing it both Ways, to signify *Bourgoigne*. And these Fusils are interwoven with Flint-stones (in reference to the Arms of the ancient Kings of *Bourgoigne*) seeming to strike Fire, and Sparkles of Fire between them, the Device of the Founder, at the End whereof hung the Resemblance of a Golden Fleece, enamelled proper. To the Flint *Paradine* ascribes the Motto, *Ante ferit quam Flamma micet*; and to the Fleece, *Pretium non vile laboris*. The Jewel is commonly worn in a double Chainet or Males of Gold, linked together at convenient Distance, between which runs a small Red Ribbon, or otherwise it is worn in a Red Ribbon alone. The Emperors of *Germany* descended from *Philip* Archduke of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy* and Count of *Flanders*, were the Sovereigns of it, till *Charles* V. gave the Guardianship of it to the Kings of *Spain*, which he perform'd on the 25th of *October*, 1556. conferring it on his Son King *Philip* at *Bruxelles*, when he took the Collar from his Neck, and with his own Hands put it over his Son's Shoulders in the Presence of divers of the Knights, with this Form, *Accipe, fili mi, quem e collo meo detraho, tibi præcipuum Aurei velleris torquem, quem Philippus Dux Burgundiæ cognomine bonus Atavus noster, monumentum Fidei Sacræ Romanæ Ecclesiæ, esse voluit & hujusce*

Institutionis ac Legum ejus, fac semper memineris: Since which the Honour of being Chief of this Order remains at this Day in that Crown.

35. *The Order of St.* George *at* Genoa,

WAS given by *Frederick* III. Emperor of *Germany*, in honour of St. *George* the titular Saint and Patron of *Genoa*. The Ensign is a plain Cross *Gules*, and worn by the Knights at a Chain of Gold about their Neck. The Dukes of *Genoa* are Chiefs thereof; and in regard their Dignity lasts but two Years, the Order is much impair'd thro the Inconstancy and Alteration of the Times.

36. *The Order of the* Croissant, *or* Half-Moon *in* France,

WAS erected in the City of *Anjou*, 1464. or according to the *Saincte Marthes*, *A. D.* 1448. by *Rene* of the House of *Anjou*, King of *Jerusalem* and *Sicily*, &c. Duke of *Anjou*, &c. The Intent thereof was the Honour of God, Support of the Church, and Exaltation of Knighthood; over which he declared himself and his Successors, Dukes of *Anjou* and Kings of *Sicily*, Chiefs. He also chose St. *Maurice*, Knight and Martyr, for Patron, and held the first Ceremonies in the Church of *Angiers* dedicated to his Name. The Symbol which the Knights wore on the right Side of their Mantle, was a Golden Crescent, whereon in Red Enamel was this Word *L'oz*, signifying *L'oz en Croissant*, whereby they were spur'd forwards to search after the Increase of Valour and Reputation. At this *Crescent* was fasten'd as many small Pieces of

Gold, fashion'd like Columns, and enamell'd with Red, as the Knights had been engag'd in Battels and Sieges; for none could be adopted into this Order, unless he had well trod the Paths of Honour. The Knights were Thirty Six, others say Fifty, in Number. For their Habit they wore Mantles of Red or Crimson Velvet, and a Mantlet of White, with the Lining and Surcoat of the same.

37. *The Order of the* Ermin *in* Britanny,

WAS erected by *Francis* I. Duke of *Bretagne*, to perpetuate the Memory of his Grand-father *John* the Conqueror, or else in Imitation of other Orders in *France*; and thereupon he new built his Castle of *Ermin*. The Number of these Knights were Twenty Five. Their Habits were Mantles of White Damask lin'd with Carnation, and the Mantlet of the same. The great Collar was of Gold, compos'd of Ears of Corn in *Saltire*, bound above and beneath with Two Circles of Gold, imitating the Crown of *Ceres*, denoting the Care of Husbandry, and was sometimes called *The Order of the Ears of Corn*. At the End of this Collar hung the *Mus Ponticus*, or Ermin, passing over a Turf of Grass diaper'd with Flowers, at the Edge whereof was imboss'd this Epigraph in *French*, *Amaire*, the Device of his said Grand-father, by which he made known his Courage; and rather than fail in the least Punctilio of his Word, he would undergo any Misfortune. This Order ended when the Dukedom of *Bretagne* became annex'd to the Crown of *France*, by the Marriage of *Anne*, Dutchess of *Bretagne*, to *Charles* VIII. and *Lewis* XII. both *French* Kings.

38. *The Order of the* Ermin *in* Naples

OWES its Institution to *Ferdinand* I. King of *Naples*, at the Expiration of the War which he was engag'd in with *John* of *Lorain*, Duke of *Calabria*, 1463. being induc'd thereto by the Treason and Confederacy of his Brother-in-law *Marinus Marcianus*, Duke of *Sessa*, who design'd to murder him, and transfer the Kingdom to the Duke of *Calabria*: But the Plot being defeated, instead of bringing him to Justice, he not only pardon'd him, but instituted this Chevalry, admitting therein all the Noblemen of Title and Figure in the Kingdom, and generously appointed him one of the first Knights. The Collar was of Gold, intermix'd with Mud or Dirt, to which depended an Ermin and this Motto, *Malo mori quam fœdari*, alluding to the clean Nature of the Animal.

39. *The Order of St.* Michael *in* Naples,

HAD its Original from the same King *Ferdinand*, in honour of St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel, Patron of *Apulia*. The Habit of the Knights was a long White Mantle embroider'd with Ermins, and the Collar of Gold compos'd of the Letter O, to which hung in an Oval the Epigraph *Decorum*. By the Habit it seems to be the preceding Order, if that was dedicated to St. *Michael*.

40. *The Order of St.* Michael *in* France.

Lewis XI. King of that Realm, considering how his Affairs were entangled, to re-unite the Affections of his Nobility to himself, instituted these Knights,

1469. giving them their Denomination from St. *Michael* the Arch-Angel, the titular Angel and Protector of *France*, in Reverence of whom their ancient Kings were wont to solemnize this Feast-day with great Magnificence, and keep an open Court. Their Number at first were to be Thirty Six, whereof the King and his Successors were Chief: But it afterwards proceeded to Three Hundred. The Collar is compos'd of Escallop-Shells of Gold, joyn'd one with another and double-banded, fasten'd on small Chains of Gold, at the End of which is annex'd an Oval of the same; and therein, on an Hillock, is the Figure of St. *Michael* combating and trampling down the Dragon. The Motto, *Immensi tremor Oceani*. The Habit was a Mantle of White Damask hanging down to the Ground, furr'd with Ermin, having its Cope embroider'd with Gold, and the Border of the Robe interwoven with Escallops of Gold; the *Chaperon* or Hood, with its long Tippet, was made of Crimson Velvet; but afterwards King *Henry* II. order'd this Mantle to be Cloth of Silver, embroider'd with Three *Crescents* of Silver, interwoven with Trophies, Quivers and *Turkish* Bows, *semied* and *canton'd* with Tongues and Flames of Fire; the *Chaperons* of Crimson Velvet should have the same Embroidery. Their Grand Festival was to be celebrated on *Michaelmas-day*, at the Church of *Mount Michael* in *Normandy*; but after wards transferr'd to *Bois de Vincennes* near *Paris*. There is an Herald of Arms to attend this Order, called *Monsieur St.* Michael. Upon the instituting *The Order of the Holy Ghost*, not only Care was taken to preserve this of St. *Michael*, and to rectify it, but the Knights had the Privilege allow'd them, that if they thought fit they were made capable of receiving that of *The Holy Ghost*, which no Stranger or Native could be enroll'd in that had

taken upon him any other Order. The Collar of St. *Michael* may be worn with that of *The Holy Ghost*, and it is now frequently us'd. The Evening before any receive *The Order of the Holy Ghost*, he is admitted into *The Order of St.* Michael.

41. *The Order of the* Elephant *in* Denmark.

KING *Christian* I. being at *Rome* upon a religious Account, Pope *Sixtus* IV. among other Honours, invested him with this Order, in Memory of the Passion of our Saviour; and withal ordain'd the Supreme or Chief in his Successors, Kings of *Denmark*.

THIS King founded the magnificent Chapel of the Three Kings in the Cathedral Church of *Roschilt*, (Four Leagues from *Copenhagen*) where the Knights were to assemble upon the Death of any of their Fraternity. He admitted thereunto divers Kings, Princes and Noblemen. Its chief Ensign was the Figure of an Elephant, on whose side (within a Rundle) was a Crown of Thorns, with Three Nails all bloody, in Memory of the Passion. The Knights were oblig'd to Acts of Piety, Alms-Deeds, and certain Ceremonies, especially upon those Days on which they wore the Ensigns. King *John* valu'd it so highly, that he wore them on every solemn Festival. He advanc'd it to that Pitch of Grandeur, that our King *Henry* VIII. and *James* V. King of *Scotland*, accepted it.

Hertholm, a learned *Dane*, in a particular Treatise of this *Elephantine Order*, says, The Badge was meerly Military, anciently given as a Memorial and Incitement to the *Danish* Princes, who took upon them the Defence of Christianity against the *Moors*

and *Africans*.

HERETOFORE the Knights wore a Collar of Gold compos'd of castellated Elephants and Crosses, something like the *Crosses ancrees* (*Menenius* calls them Spurs) at which hung the Picture of the Virgin *Mary* to the Middle, holding Christ in her Arms, and surrounded with a Glory of Sun-beams. But that long since laid aside, they now wear only a Blue Ribbon, at which hangs an Elephant enamell'd White, adorn'd with Five large Diamonds set in the Middle. These Elephants, in the Reign of King *Christian* IV. had in the same Place, within a Circle, the Letter C, and in the Center of it the Figure 4, denoting *Christianus Quartus*.

THIS Honour is usually conferr'd on the Days of the King's Coronation. *Frederick* III. brought into use, in Imitation of *The Garter*, an embroider'd Glory of Silver Purple wrought upon the left Side of their Cloak or Vest, on which was embroider'd Two Crowns within a Rundle, bearing this Motto, *Deus providebit*. The late King, his Son, chang'd the Motto to, *Pietate & Justitia*; but all the Knights created by his Father are oblig'd to continue the former Motto.

42. *The Order of the* Burgundian Cross *at* Tunis,

WAS instituted on St. *Mary Magdalen*'s Day, 1535. by *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Spain*, after he had restor'd *Mulleasses*, King of *Tunis*, to his Kingdom, to reward those Commanders who had behav'd themselves well in the Victory. It was the Day wherein he made his pompous Entry into *Tunis*, when clad in the Coat he usually wore in Battle,

whereon was embroider'd a *Burgundian Cross*, which Cross he made the Badge, and added a Steel striking Sparks of Fire out of a Flint, with this Inscription, *Barbaria*; and for a more ornamental Decoration, gave a Collar of Gold, whereat hung this Badge.

43. *Knights of the* Holy Ghost,

WERE instituted by the *French* King, *Henry* III. 1578. to unite his Nobles more firmly in their Obedience, to encourage them to persevere in the *Romish* Religion, and to illustrate the State of his Nobility. It was so call'd by reason he was born on *Whitsunday*, 1550. elected that Day, 1573. King of *Poland*; and on that Day, 1574. came to the Crown of *France*. It was to consist of One Hundred Knights, besides the Sovereign or Great Master, which Office is inseparable from the Crown of *France*. A long Mantle of Black Velvet turn'd up on the left Side, and open'd on the right, was also appointed for the Habit, being at first embroider'd round with Gold and Silver, consisting of Flowers *de Lys* and Knots of Gold, between Three sundry Cyphers of Silver; and above the Flowers *de Lys* and Knots, were thickly powder'd Flames of Fire. This great Mantle was garnish'd with a Mantle of Cloth of Silver, cover'd with Embroidery made after the same Fashion, excepting only, that instead of Cyphers there were wrought Doves of Silver, and both these Robes double lin'd with a Satin of Orange-Tawney. The great Collar worn over the Mantle, was at first compos'd of Flowers *de Lys*, canton'd or corner'd with Flames of Fire, interwoven with Three Cyphers and divers Monograms of Silver; one was the Letter *H* and a *Greek Lambda*, both double, for the King's

Name and the Queen's, *Lovisa de Lorain*; the other Two were reserv'd in the King's own Mind. But these Cyphers were taken off the Colour and the Embroidery of the Robes by King *Henry* IV. and for a Mark of his Victories, Trophies of Arms were interlac'd instead thereof, with the Letter *H* crown'd (the Initial of his Name) whereout arose Flames and Sparks of Fire; and for the like Reason the *H* has been chang'd into *L*, both by *Lewis* XIII and XIV. At this Collar hung a Cross richly enamell'd in the midst, whereon was figur'd a Dove in a flying Posture, as descending down from Heaven with full spread Wings: And that an Epigraph might not be wanting, some have attributed to it this, *Duce & Auspice*. Besides these Ornaments, the Knights wear a Black Velvet Cap, with a White Plume; their Breeches and Doublets are of Cloth of Silver, and their Shoes White ty'd with Roses or Knots of Black Velvet. The Badges ordain'd to be ordinarily worn, are a Cross of Yellow or Orange-colour Velvet, like a *Malta* Cross, fix'd on the left Side of their Breast, except in military Expeditions, and then they are permitted to wear them of Cloth of Silver or White Velvet, having a Silver Dove, and at the Angles or Corners, Rays and Flowers *de Lys* of Silver. They have a Cross of the Order made of Gold (like the *Malta* Cross) with a Flower *de Lys* in each Angle, to be worn about their Necks in a Blue Ribbon, and to be enamell'd White about the Sides, but not in the Middle. Such as are Knights both of St. *Michael* and *The Holy Ghost*, are to bear the Figure of St. *Michael* on one Side, and of a Dove on the other. The Anniversary is held on the first Day of the New-Year, but the first Part of the Ceremony begins always on the last Day of the Old, when it was instituted; and the Place for celebrating thereof is the Church of *Augustin* Fryars in *Paris*.

44. *The Order of* The precious Blood of our Saviour Jesus Christ *of* Mantua,

WAS instituted, 1608. by *Vincentio de Gonzago* IV. Duke of *Mantua*, and II. of *Montferat*, for Defence and Propagation of Christianity, and in Honour of Three Drops of Blood of our Redeemer; as also to set forth more nobly the Nuptials of his eldest Son *Francisco*. It was confirm'd by Pope *Paul* V. and consisted of Twenty Knights, the Founder and his Successors to be Great Masters. The Collar is compos'd of Ovals of Gold, some extended in Length, others in Breadth, alternately, and interlink'd with small Anulets: Those in Length have these Words rais'd in White Enamel, *Domine probasti*; on the other in Breadth is a Grey Crucible fill'd with small Rods of Gold, and placed on a Trevet of Black Enamel over Flames of Fire, intimating, that they who incorporated in this Society, should hold inviolable Faith and Concord in the greatest Trials and Emergences of Life; at the End of the Collar is *pendant* a larger Oval of Gold, in which are figur'd two Angels standing upright, holding between them a Chalice crown'd, in the Table whereof are painted Three Drops of Bloods enamell'd Red, and round the Oval, *Nihil isto triste recepto*.

45. *The Order of the* Amaranta,

OWES its Institution to *Christina*, Queen of *Sweden*, about the Year 1645. in honour of a Lady of that Name, of great Beauty, Courage, Modesty and Charity. The chief Ensign is a Jewel of Gold

compos'd of Two *A*'s, adorn'd with Diamonds on both Sides, and join'd together by reversing one of them, being set within a Circle of Laurel Leaves wreath'd about with White, and on the Four Sides this Motto, *Dolcenella memoria*; which Jewel the Knights wear either in a Gold Chain, or a Crimson or Blue Ribbon, as they best like of. His Investiture is with this Ceremony: The Queen being seated under her State, an intended Knight kneels before her, when she acquaints him with her Inducements to confer on him this Honour, enumerating his Services and Merits: This done, he takes an Oath, still kneeling and holding his Hands between the Queen's, to defend her Person from Harm, and the Persons of his Brother Knights; to incite Justice, Vertue and Piety, and discountenance its Opposers; after which the Queen puts about him (in the manner of a Baudrick) a Crimson Silk Scarf with the Jewel fasten'd thereto. To an absent Prince or Personage, she sends the Jewel, accompany'd with her Letter, which supplies the Place of a personal Investiture. Among many others have been several Kings and Princes. Sir *Bulstrode Whitlocke* has been elected Knight of this Order.

46. *The Order of the* Black Eagle,

WAS instituted by *Frederick* King of *Prussia*, and Elector of *Brandenburgh*, soon after he had the Title of King conferr'd upon him.

§ 2. 1. In the *West-Indies*, *Montezuma*, King of *Mexico*, set Knighthood in the highest Splendor, ordaining certain military Orders, with several

Badges and Ensigns. The most honourable among the Knights were those that carry'd the Crown of their Hair ty'd with a little Red Ribbon, having a rich Plume of Feathers, from which did hang Branches and Rolls of Feathers upon their Shoulders. They carry'd as many Rolls as they had done gallant Exploits in the Wars; and the King himself and his Sons were of this Order; which *Purchas* calls *Eagle Knights*.

2. THERE was another Order, call'd *Of the Lyons and Tygers*. These Knights being commonly the most valiant in the Wars, always bore with them their Badges and Armories.

3. OTHER Knights there were, as *The Grey Knights*, not so much respected as the rest. They had their Hair cut round about the Ears: They made War upon their Enemies with Ensigns like other Knights, and were only arm'd to the Girdle, while the most Honourable were *Cap-a-Pee'd*. All Knights might carry Gold and Silver, be array'd in rich Cotton, have the use of painted and gilt Vessels, and wear Shoes; but the common People only the earthen sort; neither might they carry Shoes nor Attire themselves, but in a gross Stuff. Every Order had their Lodging assign'd them in the Palace, distinguish'd by their proper Ensigns: The first was the Lodging of the Prince, the second of *Eagles*, the third of *Lyons and Tygers*, and the fourth of *Grey Knights*.

THE Province of *Cinaloa* (near *New Mexico*) created their Knights by giving a Bow, and setting them to encounter a Lyon or some other wild Beast.

THE *Inguas*, or Lords of *Peru*, dedicated their Children to Honour, by adorning them with *Guarras* or Ensigns. They pierced their Ears, whip'd them with Slings, smeared their Faces with Blood, in order they should be true Knights to the *Ingua*. Those of

Royal Extraction, before they received the Order of Knighthood abstained Seven Days from all manner of Nutriment, except a little raw Grain and Water, and after being heartned and brisked up again, performed some Military Exercises, also Racing, Wrestling, Leaping, Shooting, Slinging, throwing the Dart and Lance, *&c.* and enduring to be beaten on the Hands and Legs with Wands; these being as it were the Tests whether they could endure the Hardships of War or no; for if they did not sustain them manfully, they were denied Knighthood. The Ceremonies being performed by boaring an Hole in the Ears, putting on gallant Shoes, and wearing of the Breeches, which before they were restricted, adorning their Heads with Flowers, and having the Privilege of an Herb that none but themselves cou'd make use of, and lastly giving an Axe into their Hands. *Menenius* calls these Knights *Oreiones*, from the *Spanish Orejas*, flop or loll-eared, in the *Latin Auriculares*, from the Leaf which they bore hanging in their Ears, or because they only negotiated Affairs with the Emperor, and had his Ear at all times.

IN *Japan* there's an Order of Knights called *Mengoras*, part of whom are called *Bonzees*, living in Fraternities, as our Religionists in *Europe*. Some of these have the Charge of their Idols, and the Service relating to their Temples, others follow the Wars. They profess Chastity with such Severity, that no Woman is allow'd to enter their Cities. They govern the Kingdoms they conquer, and are so very opulent that some of them possess 60000 Duckets *per Annum*; and have a publick Armory well stored to make use of upon any Exigence, which is maintain'd by a daily Contribution. Women have been excluded their Share in this Way of Honour, tho' their Courage and Valour have equalized the *Amazons* of old; the

Example is of the noble Women of *Tortosa* in *Spain*, or the *Femme* Cavaliers of the *Torchi*. *Micheli* barely calls them *Chavalleros*, or rather *Chavalleras*, seeing the *Latins* have had the Words, *Equitissæ* & *Militissæ*, to express, *Virago's* and *Heroines*.

DON *Raymond*, last Earl of *Barcelona*, having in the Year 1149. reduced the City of *Tortosa* from the *Moors*, on the Thirty First following they laid a fresh Siege to it, in hopes to recover it. The Inhabitants were at length reduced to great Streights; they desired Relief of the Earl, but he not being in a Condition to answer their Request, they had Thoughts of a Surrender; which the Women to prevent put on the Apparel of the Men, and by a resolute Salley forced the *Moors* to raise the Siege. The Gallantry of the Action the Earl acknowledged by granting them several Privileges, and to perpetuate the Memory instituted this Order, somewhat like a Military one, and none were to be admitted, only those brave Women, and the Honour to derive to their Descendants, and assigned them for a Badge a Thing like a *Fryer's Capouche*, sharp at the Top, after the Form of a Torch, of a Crimson Colour, to be worn upon their Head-Cloaths; that at all publick Meetings the Women should have Precedence of the Men, and should be exempted from all Taxes, and that all the Apparels and Jewels left by their dead Husbands should be theirs.

A more general Ornament of Honour peculiar to the Fair Sex is the *Cordon*, which some will have to be an Order, or Equivalent thereunto. The Institution is attributed to *Anne Britaigne*, Wife to *Charles* VIII. of *France*, who instead of the Military Belt or Collar, bestowed a Cordon or Lace on several Ladies, admonishing them to live chastly and devoutly, always mindful of the Cords and Bonds of our

Saviour, and to engage them to a greater Esteem of it, she surrounded her Escutcheon of Arms with the like Cordon; from which Example the Arms of unmarried Ladies and Gentlewomen are usually adorn'd with them.

CAP. IV.

Of the Castle, Chapel and College of Windsor, *&c.*

Having dispatch'd the several Orders of Knighthood, and trac'd them from their proper Fountains, we come now to treat of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*; an Order, that not only grants Merit, and Honourable, and Valiant Exploits at Home, but what Imperial Heads and Persons, fam'd for the Antiquity of their Race, or Gallantry of Actions, have always esteem'd a further Advancement to their Glory therein to be enroll'd. For the better Explanation, it will be necessary to begin with the Description of the Castle, Chapel, and College of *Windsor*. The Place claims no greater Antiquity than of the *Saxons*, named by them *Windleshore*, and, as *Cambden* conjectures, had the Denomination from the Winding of a Shore thereabouts, as did *Wandsworth* in *Surry*, heretofore written *Windlesworth*. The first authentick Notice is from the Donation which King *Edward the Confessor* made thereof to the Monks of *Westminster*, (as the Charter expresses it) *For the Hope of eternal Reward, the Remission of all his Sins, the Sins of his Father, Mother, and all his Ancestors, to the Praise of Almighty*, &c. he grants *Wyndleshore*, with all its Appurtenances, as an Endowment and perpetual

Inheritance, to the Use of the *Monks* there, and at *Westminster*, that served GOD. Those Monks enjoy'd it not long, for King *William the Conqueror*, in the first Year of his Reign, being greatly enamour'd with the pleasant Situation and Commodiousness of the Place, situate so near the *Thames*, and the Wood fit for Game, invited *Eadwin*, the then Abbot, and the *Monks*, to accept in Exchange for it, *Wokendune* in *Essex*, a Mansion called *Ferings*, with all its Members and Hamlets, together with Fourteen *Sokemen* and their Lands, and one Freeholder, and Three Houses in *Colchester*, all in *Essex*, since which it has remained in the Crown.

The King being thus possess'd, forthwith built a Castle upon the Hill, which, in *Doomsday Book*, contained half an Hide of Land, and is there noted to be Parcel of the Mannor of [*Clivore*] *Clure*. This Castle King *Henry* I. rebuilt, and beautified with great Magnificence, and, in the Tenth Year of his Reign, held his *Whitsontide* there with great State and Splendor. Shortly after, in a Charter of Peace between King *Stephen* and Duke *Henry*, (King *Henry* II. afterwards) this Castle was called *Mola de Windesor*, the Fortress of *Windesor*. Within this Castle was King *Edward* III. born, (commonly called *Edward* of *Windsor*) and was baptized in the old Chapel; and so great was his Affection to that Place, that he constituted it the Seat of the most noble Order of the *Garter*; and to embellish it the more, he founded the College of the Chapel of St. *George*, and much enlarged, and beautified the Castle.

For this Work he appointed several Surveyors, whom he assigned to press Hewers of Stone, Carpenters, and such other Artificers as were thought useful and necessary, as also to provide Stone, Timber, and all other Materials for them. *William de*

Wyckham (who attained to be Bishop of *Winchester*) was one of these Supervisors, and had that Place conferr'd on him by Letters Patent, *October* 30. *Ed.* III. And a Grant of the same Fee was likewise allowed to *Robert de Bernham*, viz. One Shilling a Day, while he was at *Windsor*, Two Shillings when he went elsewhere about that Affair, and Three Shillings *per* Week to his Clerk; afterwards he was chief Custos and Surveyor of this Castle, of the Mannors of Old and New *Windsor*, and of other Castles, Mannors, *&c.* belonging to the King, to provide Workmen, and look after the Repairs, and in those Mannors to hold Leets and other Courts, Pleas of Trespass and Misdemeanours.

About the 34th of *Ed.* III. it is presumed the most considerable Enlargement of the Castle was made, seeing there was then great Store of the ablest Diggers and Masons impress'd, by virtue of Writs directed to the several Sheriffs, with Command under 100 *l.* Penalty to send them to *Windsor* the *Sunday* after the Feast of St. *George*, to work at the Kings Charge, from whence they were not to depart without *Wyckham*'s License, Security having been first taken by the Sheriffs, and returned into *Chancery*. *London* found Forty; *Essex*, in conjunction with *Hertford*, Forty; *Wilts*, *Leicester*, with *Worcester*, *Cambridge*, with *Huntington* Forty, *Kent*, *Gloucester*, *Somerset*, with *Devon*, and *Northampton*, one with another, found also Forty a-piece. And because divers of these Workmen, for Gain and Advantage, clandestinely left *Windsor* to the Hindrance of the Work, all Persons were forbid to employ or retain them under Forfeiture of all they had, and likewise to arrest those that withdrew themselves from the Work, and commit them to *Newgate*. *A.* 36. *Ed.* III. many of them being swept away by the Pestilence,

the like Writs were directed to other Sheriffs, under a Hundred Pound Penalty, to send able Men; whereupon the Counties of *York* sent Sixty, *Derby* Twenty Four, *Salop* Sixty, *Hereford* Fifty, *Nottingham* Twenty Four, *Lancaster* Twenty Four, and *Devon* Sixty. *A.* 37. *Ed.* III. The noble Edifice was ready for Glazing, and of Twenty Four of that Occupation impress'd for the King's Service, Twelve were to be employed at *Windsor*. In this Year and the next a great Proficiency was made, and vast Quantities of Stone were amassed, dug out of the Quarries of *Wellesfor*, *Newel*, and *Carby*, and other Places. From the 37th to the 43d, the Building of the Castle was diligently pursued. We find no Addition to this august Pile till his 48th Year, and after that Time nothing more during his Reign, so that it is supposed this Famous Piece for Magnificence and Strength was then chiefly finished, *viz.* the Great Hall of St. *George*, the Lodgings on the East and South side of the Upper Ward, the Keep or Tower in the Middle Ward, the Chapel of St. *George*, the Houses for the Custos and the Canons in the Lower Ward, with the whole Circumference of the Walls, their several Towers and Gates, as in the present Posture they remain.

IN succeeding Times King *Hen.* VII. added that stately Fabrick adjoining to the King's Lodgings, in the Upper Ward. King *Hen.* VIII. re-edified the great Gate at the Entrance into the Lower Ward. King *Edw.* VI. began, and Queen *Mary* perfected the Conveying the Water, from *Blackmore-Park* in *Wingfield* Parish, into a Fountain of curious Workmanship erected in the Middle Ward, which supplied all the Castle. Queen *Elizabeth* made a Terrace Work on the North side of the Castle; from whence there is a pleasant Prospect down upon *Eaton-bridge*, the *Thames*, and the adjacent Country. King *Charles* I. *A. D.* 1636.

built the Gate at the East end of the Terrace, which leads into the Park. And lastly, King *Charles* II. greatly beautified and repair'd the Fabrick, and furnish'd it with a curious Armory; and, in fine, every Thing is so fitly disposed and ordered, that they are worthy of the Notice of every nice and curious Traveller.

CAMDEN elegantly describes its Situation in Prose in this manner: *From an Hill* (says he) *that rises with a gentle Ascent, it enjoyeth a most delightful Prospect round about; foreright, in the Front, it overlooketh a Vale, lying out far and wide, garnished with Corn Fields, flourishing with Meadows, deck'd with Groves on either side, and watered with the most mild and calm River* Thames. *Behind it arise Hills every where, neither rough nor over high, attired, as it were with Woods, and even dedicated, as one would say, by Nature, to hunting Game.*

And thus *Denham's* Muse pourtrays it:

Windesor, **the next (where** Mars **with** Venus
dwells,
Beauty with Strength) above the Valley swells
Into my Eye, and doth it self present
With such an easy and unforc'd ascent,
That no stupendious Precipice denies
Access, no horror turns away our Eyes;
But such a Rise as doth at once invite
A Pleasure, and a reverence from our sight.
Thy mighty Masters Emblem, in whose face
Sat Meekness heightned with Majestick Grace;
Such seems thy gentle height, made only proud
To be the Basis of that pompous Load.
Than which a nobler weight no Mountain bears
But Atlas **only that supports the Spheres**.

This Castle is under the Government of a Constable, so call'd in the Reign of King *John*, and has bore that Denomination ever since: The Office is of great Antiquity, Honour and Power, but of small Revenue, for it is partly Military and Civil; as Military he commands the Castle and any Garrison placed therein, and is obliged to defend it against all Enemies whatsoever; all the Prisoners brought hither are committed to his Charge, and is answerable for all that is in the Castle to the King, under whom he is Commander, as a Civil Officer. He is Judge of a Court of Record held there by Prescription, for determining, by way of Common Law, all Pleas between Party and Party, arising within the Precincts of the Forest of *Windsor*, and Liberties thereof, which compriseth many Towns; and all legal Processes issue out in his Name. He is allowed a Deputy learned in the Law, who is called the Steward of the Court of Record, and is Keeper of the Constable's Seal of Office. This Officer supplies the Constable's Place as a Judge of the Court of *Common Pleas*, from whose Judgment the Appeal is by Writ of Error returnable in the *King's-Bench*, or *Common Pleas* at *Westminster*. The Constable is likewise Forester and Warden of the Forest of *Windsor*, which is an 120 Miles in compass. He hath under him one or more Lieutenants at his Pleasure, and may imprison any Trespasser in Vert and Venison Convict, having a Prison in the Castle for that Purpose, named the *Coalhole*. He hath the Freedom of using the Sports of the Forest, which is granted to no Person without his or the King's License, and signs all Warrants to kill Deer, (except what the King signs) and is to fell Timber and Wood.

He that was *Chastelain* (the *French* Word for Constable) in *William the Conqueror*'s Reign was *Walter Fitz Other*, from whom the Family of the

Barons of *Windsor* are descended, and the Earls of *Plimouth*, bearing the Surname of *Windsor*, *Temp. Car.* II. Prince *Rupert* was Constable.

WE come next to the Chapel of St. *George*, which is situate in the Lower Ward or Court of this Castle, and so named by King *Edw.* III. shortly after he had founded the College mention'd in the next Section; he having pulled down the old Chapel erected there by King *Henry* I. and dedicated to King *Edward the Confessor*, to raise a more stately Structure in its stead; to bring which Matter to Perfection, in the 24th Year of his Reign, *John de Spoulee* had the Office of Master of the Stone-Hewers, and had Power to provide Masons, and other Artificers, to whose Care they were entrusted. In *Anno* 25. *Ed.* I. *John de Dorchester*, Sub-Constable of the Castle, was appointed to keep a Controul upon all the Provisions bought for the Works of the Chapel, as well as on the Payments, and all other Affairs relating thereunto. To this Fabrick he erected several Houses adjoining, for the Custos and Canons to reside in; and afterwards King *Hen.* IV. gave them the void Place in the Castle call'd the *Woodhall*, nigh the great Hall, for building of Houses and Apartments for the Vicars, Clerks, and Choristers, and the other Ministers, assigned for the Service of the Chapel; but King *Edw.* IV. observing the Walls and Foundation of the Chapel sapped and consumed, and esteeming the Fabrick not stately or spacious enough, designed another more noble and excellent in its Room: In order to it *Richard Beauchamp*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, was constituted Master and Surveyor of the Work, who had Power from the King to remove all Impediments, demolished divers of the Officiary Houses, and other irregular Piles and decay'd Walls, and dug up their Foundations, particularly those ancient Buildings on

the East side of the Chapel, which extended unto the Walls on the North side of the Castle, where the Towers, *viz. Clurey*'s Tower, and *Le Amenery*'s Tower, and *Barney*'s Tower, were situated; as also on the South side of the Chapel, unto the Belfry there, exclusively; the Materials whereof he might bestow upon any Buildings in the Castle, as he thought convenient. How well the Bishop discharged this Office, appears from the Preamble of his Patent, whereby that King conferred on him the Chancellorship of the *Garter*, in which is set forth, *That out of meer Love towards the Order, he had given himself the Leisure daily to attend the Advancement and Progress of this goodly Fabrick*.

FROM this Erection of K. *Ed.* IV. arose the elegant and beauteous Structure now standing, enlarged in Length at least an Hundred Fathom (tho' it did not arrive to its Perfection until the Reign of King *Henry* VIII.) together with the Dean and Canons Houses on the North side of the Chapel, and those of the Petty Canons raised at the West End, in form of a Fetter-lock (one of King *Edward* the IVth's Badges) and so vulgarly call'd. *Temp. Henry* VII. Sir *Reginald Bray*, Knight of the *Garter*, became a liberal Benefactor, finishing the Body of the Chapel, and rearing the Middle Chapel on the South thereof, which still retains his Name, and where his Body lies interred, as is manifest by his Arms, Badges, *&c.* cut in Stone, and by his last Will. *Anno* 21. *Hen.* VII. *John Hylmer* and *William Vertue*, Free Masons, undertook the Vaulting the Roof of the Choir (a curious Piece of Architecture) for 700 *l.* and finish'd it by *Christmas*, 1508. *Anno* 8 *Henry* VIII. the Rood Loft, and Lanthorn, were erected, with the Contributions raised by the Knights Companions. Near to the East end of this Chapel, was a little Fabrick of Free-Stone,

raised by Cardinal *Wolsey*, call'd the *Tomb House*, in the Middle whereof he designed to erect a Monument for King *Henry* VIII. and had almost finished it before he died; but this was demolished, 1646. by command of the *Long Parliament*; and all the Copper Figures, exceedingly enriched by Art, carry'd thence. This Place King *Charles* I. intended to enlarge, for the Interment of his own Royal Body, and those of his Successors; but those villainous Times drawn on, they with much ado afforded him but a mean obscure Place near the first high Place in the Choir of this Chapel, in the same Vault where the Bodies of King *Henry* VIII. and his last Queen yet remain.

IN this Chapel, besides many of the Knights Companions, repose the Body of King *Hen.* VI. removed from *Chertsey* Abbey in *Surrey*, deposited under the Uppermost Arch at the South side of the Altar, without any Monument or Inscription, and likewise that of King *Edw.* IV. under a large Stone of Tuch, raised within the opposite Arch, at the North side of the Altar, but without Inscription, having on the outside of his Grave a Range of Steel gilt, to inclose it from the North Isles, cut excellent well in Church-work.

OVER this Arch hung this King's Coat of Mail, cover'd over with Crimson Velvet, and thereon the Arms of *England* and *France* quarter'd and richly embroider'd with Pearl and Gold, interwoven with divers Rubies; which Trophy had remain'd over his Monument ever since his Interment, till plunder'd by Captain *Fogg*, 1642. who at the same time sacrilegiously robb'd the Chapel of all its Altar-Plate.

WITHIN this Chapel were several Chantries endow'd with Lands and other Revenues, for Chaplains and Priests to sing Masses for the Souls of their Founder's Kindred.

William of *Wickham*, Bishop of *Winchester*, in 3 *Hen.* IV. gave Two Hundred Marks to the Dean and Chapter, to buy Twenty Marks *per Annum* to maintain one Chaplain.

18 *Ed.* IV. The Feoffees of *Richard*, Duke of *Glocester*, gave the Mannors of *Bentfieldbury* in *Essex*, *Knapton* in *Norfolk*, and *Chetlesworth* in *Suffolk*, for a daily Mass.

22 *Ed.* IV. Sir *Thomas St. Leger* founded a Chantry of Two Priests, who were to officiate in the middle Chapel on the North Side of the Church; and the said King, by his Will, ordain'd Two Priests to serve at his Tomb, with an Exhibition of Twenty Marks yearly a-piece.

9 *Hen.* VII. There was another Chantry Priest assign'd for *Thomas Pasche* and *William Hermer*, &c. who was to perform his Office at the Altar on the North Side the new Church.

13 *Hen.* VII. *Margaret*, Countess of *Richmond*, founded a Chantry for Four Chaplains, to celebrate Mass in the East Part of the new Work of the Chapel.

18 *Hen.* VII. *William*, Lord *Hastings*, founded a Chantry for One Priest, on the North Side of the Choir, about the middle whereof this Lord lies.

21 *Hen.* VII. *Charles Somerset*, Lord *Herbert*, (afterwards Earl of *Worcester*) left a Secular Priest for a daily Mass, *&c.* to be said in the South Chapel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, where he lies interr'd. Both these Lords have built Appartments adjoyning for their Chantry Priests, now to be seen and distinguish'd by their Arms, garter'd and cut in Stone over their several Doors.

TO these we shall add the Foundation of the new Commons, erected over against the North Door of the Body of St. *George*'s Chapel, by *James Denton* one of

the Canons, *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. for the Lodging and Dieting such of the Chantry Priests, Choristers and stipendiary Priests, who had before no certain Place where to hold Commons in, which he furnish'd with all proper Utensils, the Charge amounting to 489 *l.* 7 *s.* 1 *d.* in lieu of which the Choristers were to say certain Prayers when they enter'd the Chapel, commemorate his Death, and pray for his and the Souls of all the Faithful departed.

IN this Chapel of St. *George* there were heretofore several Anniversaries or Obits held and celebrated, which we pass over. And as it was usual for some of the military Profession to spend the Remains of their Lives in pious Speculations, for their King and Country, and the Salvation of their own Souls, Permission was allow'd to the well-dispos'd *Knights of the Garter*, who retir'd from the Noise and Bustle of the World, to make their Abode there; yet so as to maintain themselves out of their own Revenues. King *Henry* VIII. ordain'd that the Sovereign should assign them convenient Appartments within the Castle; and the like Favour he granted to other Knights, tho' not of the Order; but the Lodgings to be such as the Sovereign and Knights Companions should decree: However, we do not find the Knights Companions made use of the Benefit, but only for their better Accommodation at the grand Feast of the Order, *&c.* A Motion was made, 14 *Car.* I. that they might have Lodgings assign'd them in the great Court, which they offer'd to repair at their own Charge, since all the Officers had Conveniencies in the Castle, but the Knights Companions none, which the King did not dissent to, provided it be without Exclusion of the great Officers of State.

§ 3. WITHIN the Chapel of the Castle, erected by King *Henry* I. was founded a College for Eight

Canons, to be maintain'd by an annual Pension out of the Exchequer. King *Edw.* II. founded here a Chantry for Four Chaplains and Two Clerks; as likewise a Chapel in the Park of *Windsor*, under the same Regulation, for Four more Chaplains, whom King *Edw.* III. remov'd and joyn'd to those before settled in the Chapel of the Castle, and built Habitations for their better Accommodation, on the South Side thereof.

THE Foundation we treated of here was confirm'd by Letters Patent, dated at *Westminster*, *Aug.* 6. 22 *Edw.* III. three Quarters of a Year before he erected *The Order of the Garter*, when he laid the Foundation of the ancient Chapel a-fresh, in honour of God, the Virgin *Mary*, St. *George* and St. *Edward the Confessor*; and ordain'd, that to King *Henry*'s Eight Canons there should be annex'd One Custos, Fifteen more Canons, and Twenty Four Alms-Knights, together with other Ministers, all under the Power of the Custos, and these to be supported out of the Revenues wherewith this Chapel should be endow'd: Upon which Pope *Clement* VI. 1351. by his Bull directed to the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and Bishop of *Winchester*, approved in part the King's Intention.

THE next Year the Statutes and Ordinances of the College commenc'd, by Virtue of the Pope's Authority, the King's Command, and Consent of the Bishop of *Salisbury*, in whose Diocess the Chapel is situate. By which Statutes, *Winchester* (one of the Pope's Delegates) instituted a College, within the Precincts of the Chapel of St. *George*, consisting of one Custos, Twelve Secular Canons, Thirteen Priests or Vicars, Four Clerks, Six Choristers, and Twenty Six Alms-Knights, besides other Officers.

DEAN.

§ 4. THE first Custos was *John de la Chambre*, constituted Nov. 14. 22 *Edw.* III. to whom succeeded *William Mugg*, on the 18th of June following: Which *Mugg* is the first, if the Institution of the College bears Date by Papal, and not Kingly Authority. After him were others that were call'd by the same Title; till the last Year of King *Henry* IV. when *Thomas Kingston* was presented by the Name of Dean; and his Successor, *John Arundel*, observing divers Endowments granted to the College alternately, by the Name of Custos, Dean and Custos, or lastly of Dean only; and doubting this Variation of Titles in Time might bring Inconveniences upon the Foundation, petition'd the Parliament, 8 *Hen.* VI. whereupon the King, by Letters Patent under the Great Seal, granted that the said *John* should be *Custos sive Decanus* for Life, and his Successors *Custodes sive Decani*, Wardens or Deans of the Free Chapel of St. *George*, within the Castle of *Windsor*; and that the Custos, or Dean and Canons thereof, and their Successors, by that Appellation, should have and hold, to them and their Successors for ever, all Lands, Tenements, *&c.* Liberties, *&c.* devolv'd upon the College at any Time before: So that here was a kind of new Incorporation, by the Title of Custos, or Deans and Canons only; at least this was a great Step to compleat the Privilege they after enjoy'd, when thro' the Interest of *Richard Beauchamp*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, then also Dean of *Windsor*, and Chancellor of the Order, King *Edw.* IV. by Letters Patent dated *Dec.* 6. in the 19th Year of his Reign, model'd them by the Name of Dean and Canons of the Free Chapel of St. *George* within the Castle of *Windsor*, one Body corporate in Thing and Name, with a perpetual

Succession, and capable in Law to purchase, receive and take Lands, *&c.* in Fee and Perpetuity; to have a common Seal, and might plead and be impleaded by that Name; and for better Security, the Letters Patent of Incorporation were, within Three Years after, pass'd into an Act of Parliament now in force.

THE Authority of the Custos or Dean consists in being President over the rest of the College; to govern, direct and order them their Goods and Estates. He has all manner of Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over them, with a Reservation of Power of Appeal to the Chancellor of *England*, who is Visitor of that College.

WHEN any Persons lead Lives inordinate, he with the Chapter (in Cases where no particular Penalty is appointed) may reprehend or correct at Discretion; and in Matters of Discord, shall within Eight Days reconcile the contending Parties, or do Justice. After thrice Admonition, may expel from the College all Sowers of Discord, Backbiters and Whisperers, that are below the Degree of a Canon. And that there be no defect of Government, when the Dean has Occasion to be absent above Eight Days, he shall appoint One of the Canon Residents for his Deputy, in whose absence he has the Title of Lieutenant, and on all Occasions to exercise his Office; for the Statutes allow him Sixty Days in a Year for Non-residence; which space the Royal Visitation, 1552. enlarg'd to One Hundred and Ten Days; and the Lord Chancellor *Hyde* granted him Liberty of Six Weeks absence. But in the Vacancy of the Custos, the Chapter has all his Power conferr'd on them; which Chapter ought, within Two Days after the Vacancy made known, elect one of the Resident Canons, under the Title of President, to govern the College until they be provided of another Custos.

CANONS.

THE Canons, by the Letters Patent of the first Erection, were appointed to be Twenty Four, including the Custos; but upon the Institution of the College by the Bishop of *Winton*, there was ordain'd, as afore-noted, One Custos, Twelve Secular Canons, and Thirteen Priests or Vicars, in all Twenty Six, compleatly the Number of *The Knights of the Garter*: And for a fuller Distinction between these Canons Secular and the Priests, the first Twelve are, in a Bull of Pope *Innocent* VIII. nam'd *Majores Canonici*, the others *Minores*, or Petty-Canons. To these Twelve Seculars were assign'd so many Prebendships in the Chapel of St. *George* (as also Stalls in the Choir and Place in the Chapter) together with that held by the Custos, whence they are frequently styl'd Prebends, and have a sacerdotal Power; for if they are not in full Orders before they are instal'd, they must, within a Year after they have enjoy'd their Prebendship, be ordain'd a Priest, or quit the Benefice.

BY the Bull of Pope *Clement* VI. the Right of presenting the Canons, Priests, Clerks, Alms-Knights and other Ministers, were reserv'd to the Founder and his Successors; yet we find the first Canons were presented to the Custos, by the Founders of *The Order of the Garter viz.* the Twenty Five first Knights Companions, every one presenting singularly; yet this was but with the Sovereign's Permission, *Pro hac vice*; and that none of them should be entitled to it hereafter but the Sovereign alone. And because it might the more effectually be observ'd, the Custos was oblig'd upon every Canon's Death, to signify the same to the Sovereign, that he might pitch on One to succeed; which being nominated, he is approved, instituted, and instal'd, by the Custos or Dean, to

whom he swears Canonical Obedience, and Observance of the Statutes.

THE principal Duty of these Canons (and of all the other Ministers of the College) is continually to attend upon the Service of God in the Chapel of St. *George*; and the Statutes run upon each Day's Omission of a Canon Resident, to be mulcted his *quotidian* Distribution 12 *d.* And tho' we find no License of Non-Residence granted them by their Founder, yet there is mention of Canons Resident and Non-Resident, for whom great Defalcations are appointed to be made, to prevent such Neglects, because the residentiary Canons bear not only the Burden of that Duty belonging to the Chapel, but the Expence of Hospitality and other Works of Charity, occasion'd from their residing at *Windsor*.

Richard Beauchamp, Bishop of *Salisbury*, obtain'd Power from *Sextus* IV. to make new Statutes, and dispens'd with the old Ones; and in 1478. he gave to the Dean and every Canon Fourteen Days of Non-Residence in every Term, to wit, Fifty Six Days in the Year. By the Visitation, 1552. they obtain'd a Dispensation for Eighty Days; and the Lord Chancellor *Hatton* yet gave them a further Permission to Two Hundred and Two Days, which the Lord Chancellor *Hyde* confirm'd; so that there remains One Hundred and Sixty Three Days in the Year, in which the Canons ought to be resident with Hospitality, to be consonant to their Statutes.

THE Canons are particularly oblig'd to pray for the Sovereign, and for the happy Estate of the Order. If any Knight Companion, or other Person, should bestow Ten Pounds *per Annum*, in order to be Partaker of the Prayers appointed for the Benefactors of the College, his Name was to be inscribed amongst them, and he also prayed for. Which Article, tho'

King *Hen.* V. confirmed, yet with this Restriction, it should not be admitted without the Consent of the Sovereign, or the Knights-Companions of the Order. 4 *Edw.* VI. some one of them were enjoyned to commemorate the Benefactors in a Discourse upon the *Tuesday* next after the third *Sunday* in *Lent*, and on the first *Tusedays* in *June*, *September* and *December*, and not only to set forth the Munificence of the Founder, and of King *Hen.* VIII. but of all others, so as to excite their Auditors to an Emulation, in the Increase of Religion, and setting forth of God's Glory.

THE civil Obligations of these Canons are to attend the Sovereign (or his Deputy) and the Knights Companions at their grand Feast, and at the Feasts of the Installation, or when the Sovereign or Knights Companions shall come to the Chapel of St. *George* upon a Religious Account. On those solemn Days, over their Ecclessastical Habit they wear a Murrey Mantle, (at this Day a Taffaty Robe, in Fashion like the three inferior Officers of the Order) with the Arms of St. *George* arched within a Rundle on the Right Shoulder.

PETTY CANONS.

Those now call'd Petty Canons in the Patent of Foundation went undistinguish'd with the *Canones Majores*: only in the Bull of Pope *Clement* VI. to the Archbishop of *Canterbury* and Bishop of *Winton*, for instituting the College, they are called *Presbyteri*; and by the said Bishop in the very Words of his Statutes, *Presbyteri seu Vicarii*, by which last Name they are styl'd at the first Erection of the Garter. Their Number was originally Thirteen, only King *Henry* the

VIIIth's *English* Statutes mention Eight petty Canons, besides Thirteen Vicars, (but the *Latin* takes Notice only of Thirteen Priests, some called *Canonici Minores*, others *Vicarii*.) *Ann.* 1. *Edw.* VI. Twelve Priests were appointed, and named Petty Canons, that is, Four to be added to the Eight mention'd in the Statute of King *Henry* VIII. Yet in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Ordinances for the continual Charge, the Petty Canons thereby provided for are Thirteen, agreeable to the ancient Number of Vicars; but at this Day they are reduced to Seven, and one of them Subchanter.

The Vicars at their Admission are bound to be Priests, at least Deacons, and at the next Ordination they must commence Priests. Their Statutes oblige them to continual Residence; and if absent from Matins or from the grand Mass, they are amerced 2 *d.* and for every Canonical Hour, the Mass of the Virgin *Mary*, or for the Defunct, a Penny: All which Forfeitures were to be deducted out of their Sallary, and divided among those Vicars that duly attend these Duties. But the Statutes 1 *Edw.* VI. state the Forfeit of Absence from Matins to be one Half-penny, and the like from Procession, Communion or Even-Song, to be paid to the Poor's Box. And not only they, but all other Ministers of the Chapel, if they leave the College above Twenty Days, without Reasons sufficiently approved of by the Residentiary Canons; or any of the Society that lead a vicious or scandalous Life, after the Fact manifestly proved before the *Custos*, are to be expelled; but an Absence less than Twenty Days, without Leave granted, is punishable at Discretion.

Each Vicar enjoy'd at first an annual Pension of 8 *l.* paid after this Manner, *viz.* every Kalendar Month 8 *s.* for their Diet, and at the Expiration of every

Quarter Day the Surplus was consign'd for other Necessaries they stood in need of. King *Ed.* IV. encreased their Pensions to Twenty Marks a-piece; to which Queen *Elizabeth* (they being then called Petty Canons) advanced 13 *s.* and 4 *d. per Annum* to each out of the Lands confirm'd on the College by King *Ed.* VI. and now their yearly Sallaries are encreas'd to Thirty Pounds. Out of these Petty Canons is elected a Subchanter, (and commonly the same Person is the Dean's Vicar) who has the Cure of Souls, marries and buries, &*c.*

CLERKS.

For the Service of the Choir at the Foundation were allotted Four Clerks, one whereof was to be instituted a Deacon, and another a Sub-deacon before their Admission, and these two were design'd (upon Vacancy) to the Vicars Places. But for the other Two, Institution into lesser Orders, in which they were to continue, were sufficient. Each of the Two first sort had Eight Marks *per Ann.* and the other Two but Six. King *Ed.* IV. encreas'd their Number to Thirteen, and allow'd them 10 *l. per Ann.* They are mention'd to be Thirteen in *Hen.* VIII's Statutes. 1 *Ed.* VI. they were encreas'd to Fifteen; but here appointed to be Laymen, wearing Surplices in the Choir, each having the same Allowance. 4 *Ed.* VI. a Model was proposed to augment the Number of these Fifteen Clerks to Twenty. But in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* they were again reduced to Thirteen, as at this present they remain, (one of them as Organist hath a double Clerk's Place, and consequently reckon'd for Two) and an Augmentation to each of 2 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* three Farthings yearly; which being at

first opposed by the Dean and Prebends, they at length (5 *Eliz.*) consented to allow them 40 *s. per Ann.* a-piece, not out of the new Lands, but out of other Payments which the Dean and Chapter should otherwise receive; and 1662. they encreased their annual Pensions to 23 *l.* a-piece. They are obliged to be present in the Choir at Divine Service as well as the Petty Canons, and under the same Forfeitures; nor may they or the Petty Canons go out of Town above Three at once, lest the Choir should be left unprovided.

CHOIRISTERS.

For the Service of the Choir were appointed Six Choiristers, and they to be of the Clerical Order at their Admission; to each of which was allow'd Five Marks *per Ann.* And as the Deacon and Sub-deacon were plac'd in the College only in Addition to the Vicars, and design'd to succeed them in their Vacancies; so also were there Six secular Children, endued with clear tuneable Voices, to succeed the Choiristers, when they perceiv'd a Roughness or Alteration in their Voices. King *Ed.* IV. encreas'd the Number of Choiristers to Thirteen, and allow'd them annually Six Marks a-piece, and which was again confirm'd by King *H.* VIII's Statutes. Yet the Injunction of 1 *Ed.* VI. reduced them to Ten; but Queen *Elizabeth* establish'd the former Number, and gave in Augmentation among them all of 3 *l.* 11 *s.* 8 *d.* They are now reduced to Eight, and their present Exhibition is 12 *s. per* Month.

§. 5. The Alms Knights we shall treat of in a

threefold Estate: 1. Under the Foundation; 2. When disjointed thence by Act of Parliament; and, 3. As established anew by Queen *Elizabeth*.

1. THEN, King *Edward* III. out of the great Regard he had to military Honour, and those who had bravely behav'd themselves in his Wars, yet after chanced to fall in decay, made a Provision for their Relief and comfortable Subsistence in old Age, by providing for them in this his Foundation, and making a Coalition in one joint Body with the Custos and Canons; these he call'd *Milites Pauperes*, and we Poor or Alms-Knights. The stated Number at first were Twenty Four, equal to the Custos and Canons at the first Erection. But shortly after, upon his instituting the Order of the *Garter*, Two more were added (as there was to the first Canons) to make the compleat Number of the Knights-Companions of that Order, which were Twenty Six, as we find stated at the Ordination of the College by the Bishop of *Winchester*, the Pope's Delegate.

THE Intention of the Founder was for those that were real Objects of Charity, as he describes them, *viz.* poor Knights, infirm in Body, indigent and decay'd, or as the Statutes of the *Garter* qualifies them, such as thro' adverse Turns of Fortune were reduced to that Extremity that they had not wherewithal to sustain themselves, to live so genteelly as was suitable for a Military Condition, which for greater Caution was reiterated in the Statutes of King *Hen.* V. King *Hen.* VIII. and in the Orders of Queen *Elizabeth*; for it was express'd, in case any Estate of 20 *l. per Annum* devolved on them, such Knights were to be discharged the College, and they were to proceed to a new Election.

AT the first each Knight-Companion of the Order presented his Alms-Knight, but ever after their

Election was to be at the Disposal of the Sovereign. Their Habit was a Red Mantle, with the Escutcheon of St. *George*, without any Garter to surround it. Their Exhibition, after their first Election was 12 *d.* a-piece every Day they were at Service in the Chapel, or resident in the College, besides 40 *s. per Annum* for other Contingencies, it being the stated Allowance appointed to each of the Canons Residents.

ABOUT the Beginning of King *Hen.* VI's Reign, their *quotidian* Distributions and Annual 40 *s.* had been unpaid upon the Account of some Dissentions risen between them and the Dean and Canons; but upon Complaint of *John* Bishop of *York*, Lord Chancellor of *England*, and Visitor of the College, 10 *Hen.* VI. they were redressed, and their Arrears of both discharged, without any Deduction, and likewise obtained this Clause, That if the Treasurer of the College became negligent in future Payments, he should lose his own *Quotidians*, from the Time of his voluntary Omission, and the same to be divided among the Alms-Knights. Their Duty was to pray for the Sovereign and the Knights Companions, to be every Day present at High Mass, the Masses of the Virgin *Mary*, at Vespers and Compline, and in default to be mulcted their 12 *d. toties quoties*, which was to be converted to the Use of the other Alms-Knights, then residing in the Castle of *Windsor*; notwithstanding which Decree, the Dean did afterwards break in upon them, and disposed of these Forfeitures at his Pleasure, till 2 *Rich.* II. *Adam*, Bishop of St. *David*'s, then Chancellor of *England*, and Visitor of the College, redress'd it, and another Complaint of like Nature being made of the Deans disposing of Donations and other Liberalities of the Knights Companions in wrong of the Alms-Knights, this Chancellor decreed an equal Distribution

between the Alms-Knights and Canons, till the King and Council should otherwise determine.

These and other Differences between the Dean and Canons and Alms Knights, grew up to that height, that they became irreconcileable, insomuch as in the Act of Parliament, 22 *Edw.* IV. for incorporating of the Custos and Canons, by the Name of Dean and Canons, the Alms-Knights were not only omitted; but this Clause inserted, *That the Dean and Canons, and their Successors, should for ever more be utterly quit and discharged from all manner of Exhibition or Charge of or for any of the said Knights*. And this under the Cover, That the King has greatly augmented the Number of the Ministers of the Chapel, that the Revenue was insufficient to maintain both them and the Alms-Knights; but in the Dean and Canons Answer to the Knights Petition to repeal this Act, the Cause is alledged, For that some of these Knights used their utmost Endeavours before this Act, to incorporate themselves, and to be exempt from the Obedience and Rule of the Dean and Canons.

AFTER this Act, which struck off their Quotidian Portions and Fees assigned by King *Edward*'s Foundation, how the Alms Knights subsisted we find not; but so soon as King *Hen.* VII. came to the Crown, they petitioned the King and Parliament for Repeal of the Act, 22 *Edw.* IV. and alledged it was obtained without their Knowledge, or being called thereunto, which Plea availed not at all; but on the contrary, the Dean and Canons, some Years after, got an Exemplification thereof under the great Seal, dated *Feb.* 4. 18 *Hen.* VII.

AND it is very evident from King *Hen.* VIII's Letter to the College, that what they did in this Nature after this Act commenced, was merely upon Courtesie; for he returns them Thanks for a Pension of Twenty

Marks conferred upon *Peter Narbone*, whom he had recommended to an Alms-Knights Place, and Promises to burthen them no more with Requests of this sort, but that he would settle Lands for their Maintenance. So great was their Caution, *Narbone* was by Covenants indented between him and the Dean and Canons, to relinquish his Pension upon that King's settling Lands on the College, for the Provision of such Knights. In the Interval between the Disunion of the College and Alms-Knights, to their Establishment by Queen *Elizabeth*, their Habit and Badge continued the same, and was so confirmed by *Hen.* VIII's Statutes. It may be collected by his last Will, there was an Intention to draw the *Garter* about the Escutcheon of St. *George*, which Projection came to nothing, and expired. In this Interval it is observ'd that several Persons of considerable Rank and Distinction became Alms-Knights; some of which were rendred great Objects of Charity; among which Number was Sir *Robert Champlayne*, a valiant Knight, an Honour to our Nation, for his renowned and martial Services abroad. He was of King *Henry* VI's Party in the Civil Wars against King *Edw.* IV. Immediately after whose coming to the Crown he left *England*, and travelled into *Hungary*, (with an Equipage of Three Servants and Four Horses) where in the Assistance of *Mathous Corvinius* King of *Hungary* against the *Turks*, he behaved himself very gallantly; but prosperous Fortune not always attending him with Success, he receiv'd many Wounds; and at length was taken Prisoner, lost all, and forced to pay 1500 Ducats for his Ransom; for the Attestation of which he had the Great Seals of the King of *Hungary*, the Archbishop of *Crete*, Legate *de Latere* in *Hungary*, the Emperor of *Germany*, the King of *Sicily*, the Count *Palatine* of the

Rhine, and the Duke of *Burgundy*; and lastly, a Declaration thereof under the Privy Seal of King *Edw.* IV. And being reduced to so low an Ebb of Fortune, he was, thro' *Hen.* VII's Favour, admitted an Alms-Knight.

But some obtained Admittance, probably out of Devotion, rather than Poverty, as *Thomas Hulme*, *Clarenceux* King of Arms, *Temp. Edw.* IV. *Lodowick Carly*, the King's Physician, and *John Mewtes*, Secretary of the *French* Tongue, both *Temp. Hen.* VII. and *Bartholomew Westby* made second Baron of the *Exchequer*, 1 *Hen.* VIII.

IT is evident King *Hen.* VIII. designed a Re-establishment of half the ancient Number of Alms-Knights, *viz.* Thirteen; for which purpose he appointed by his Will 600 *l. per Annum*, in Mannors, Lands, and Spiritual Promotions, settled upon the Dean and Canons, and their Successors for ever, upon the Proviso's that they should find Two Priests to say Mass at his Tomb, to commemorate yearly Four Obits for him, and at every Obit distribute 12 *l.* in Alms, likewise to pay 12 *d.* a Week to those Thirteen Alms-Knights, who were to have once a Year a long Gown of White Cloth, and a Mantle of Red, besides Five Marks annually, to such one among them as should be constituted their Governor, and so much for a Sermon every *Sunday* throughout the Year. In Performance of which Will, King *Edw.* VI. in the first Year of his Reign, did confer several Lands upon the College; but 600 *l. per Annum* of these Rents were by the Dean and Canons paid back, to be employed on erecting of Houses for the Alms-Knights, intended to be settled by King *Hen.* VIII. This Work began not till the 3d and 4th of *Philip* and *Mary*, and was finished the 5th and 6th of their Reign, the Charge amounting to 2747 *l.* 7 *s.* 6 *d.*

These Houses are situate on the South side of the Lower Ward of the Castle, and contain Thirteen Rooms, besides an Hall, a Kitchin, and a Pastry; the Stone was brought from *Reading*, the Timber from the Forest, and the Lead, and Apparels for the Chimnies, from *Suffolk Place* in *Southwark*. At a Chapter of the *Garter*, held the 1st of *June*, the 4th and 5th of *Philip* and *Mary*, the Houses being then near finished, a Debate arose about placing some Alms-Knights therein, if possible, by *Michaelmas* following, whereupon the Marquiss of *Winton*, Lord-Treasurer, had Orders to assign Lands for their Maintenance; and towards the compleating of this the Queen had nominated Nine of the Thirteen designed; but falling sick in *August*, a stop was put to the Affair, till Queen *Elizabeth* coming to the Crown confirmed her Sister's Grants to the Nine nominated Knights, and made up the Number full Thirteen, ordained by King *Henry* VIII. under which Establishment they still remain; for afterwards, *viz. Aug.* 30. in the first Year of her Reign, minding the Continuance of King *Edward*'s Foundation, the Intent of her Progenitors, and Advancement of the Order of the *Garter*, and King *Henry* VIII's Will, for the Support of Thirteen poor Men decayed in Wars, to be called Thirteen Knights of *Windsor*; and having erected certain Orders for their better Regulation, and declar'd how and in what manner the 600 *l.* given by her Father should be employ'd for the Maintenance of these Knights and their Successors, she lastly declared, That the Dean and Canons should for ever cause these Rules and Orders to be observed.

Impr. That there be Thirteen Poor Knights, all Gentlemen, one whereof to be Governour, that have spent their Time in the Wars, or other Service of the Realm, having little or nothing to live upon, to be

elected by the Sovereign and Successors.

2. *It.* The Governour and Knights must be unmarried, yet that the Crown may dispence withal; and upon their marrying are to lose their Place.

3. *It.* None deformed, and convicted of Heresie, Felony, or any notable Crime, is to be admitted of the Thirteen, and after admittance, so convicted, to be expelled.

4. *It.* Each Knight to have yearly, for their Liveries, a Red Gown of Four Yards, and a Mantle of Blue or Purple of Five Yards, at 6 *s.* and 8 *d. per* Yard.

5. *It.* An Escutcheon of St. *George* embroidered without the *Garter*, to be upon the Left Shoulder of the Mantle.

6. *It.* The Charges of the Cloth, Lining, Making, and Embroidering, to be paid by the Dean and Chapter, out of the Revenue of the Foundation.

7. *It.* That the Knights attend, Morning and Afternoon, Divine Service, within the College, in their ordinary Apparel, without a reasonable Let to be allowed by the Governour.

8. *It.* That they keep their Lodgings appointed, and Table in a common Hall appointed, and to have their Provisions by a common Purse, except for a reasonable Cause any be licensed to the contrary by the Dean, and that License not to endure above Twenty Days in a Year, excepting only for Sickness.

9. *It.* They are not to haunt the Town, nor Publick Houses, nor call any Woman into their Lodgings, without reasonable Cause and License of the Dean.

10. *It.* Twelve of them to be obedient to him appointed to be Governour, and all Thirteen to the Dean and Chapter, in the Observation of these Statutes.

11. *It.* The Thirteen Knights to have Places within

the Church, where the Dean and Canons shall think best to hear the Divine Service together.

12. *It.* To be present at the quarterly Service, for the Memory of the Patrons and Founder of the College, and especially of King *Hen.* VIII. and Queen *Elizabeth*, and have each of them, at that Time, 20 *d.* and the Governour 2 *s.* The said Service to be the *Sundays* next before the Quarter-days, the *Annunciation*, St. *John Baptist*, *Michaelmas*, and *Christmas*.

13. *It.* Any of the Twelve Knights disobeying the Governour, in any of these Statutes, to incur the Forfeiture the Dean and Chapter shall put on him, the Governour to report the Offence, which if more heinous, the Dean and Chapter are to give a Warning, and register the same, and after a second Warning Expulsion is to follow; the like Punishment to the Governour, disobeying the Dean and Chapter in the Observation of these Statutes.

14. *It.* The Penalties of the Punished to be imployed by the Dean and Chapter at their Discretion, upon any of the Ministers or Choristers of the Church.

15. *It.* Upon the King or Queen's coming to or going from *Windsor*, the Thirteen Knights are to stand before their Doors in their Apparel, and do Obedience.

16. *It.* At the keeping of the Feast of St. *George*, they are to stand likewise in their Apparel before their Doors, at the coming and going out of the Lieutenant, and of other the Knights-Companions.

17. *It.* At every Feast of St. *George* they shall sit together in their Apparel at one Table, and have Allowance of Meat and Drink at the Royal Charges.

18. *It.* They are daily in their Prayers to pray for

the Sovereign and the Knights-Companions.

19. *It.* They are always to lie in their Lodging, and upon lying out of them and the College, without License from the Dean, to forfeit 12 *d.*

20. *It.* If Lands or Revenues of 20 *l. per Annum* fall to any of the poor Knights, he is to be removed, and another put into his Place.

21. *It.* They are every Day (excepting Cause of Sickness) to be present at Divine Service in the College, as aforesaid, and receive a daily Distribution of 12 *d. per* Day, to be paid them monthly, if it may be, or at least in such sort as the other Ministers of the Chapel be paid; and he that shall absent himself one Day, without leave from the Dean, shall lose his Distribution of 12 *d.*

22. *It.* The Governour is to keep a Book, and register, the Absenters, and other Defaulters of the Statutes, whereof he shall deliver one to the Dean, and another to the Steward, or him that payeth the poor Knights, who by Order of the Dean is to make proper Defalcations at the Time of paying them.

23. *It.* The Dean once a Year is to appoint a Day and Hour, at which the poor Knights are to be warned to be present, to hear these Statutes read, and any Knight absenting after that Warning, and without License, is to forfeit 6 *s.* 8 *d.*

24. *It.* Any elected poor Knight, before he take any Commodity of his Room, shall take a corporal Oath before the Dean, to be faithful and true to the Crown, and that for the time of their tarrying there to truly observe the Statutes and Ordinances upon the Penalties contain'd in the said Statutes.

THE 25th Article is a Dispensation for those poor Knights chosen before these Statutes, who were not certainly known Gentlemen, yet Men well reported

for Honesty, and meet to be relieved; but with an Intent that none hereafter be admitted, unless a Gentleman born, agreeable to the first Order.

The annual Allowance of each, upon this new Establishment, is 18 *l.* 5 *s.* to be paid by the Dean of *Windsor*, (but their Governour has 3 *l.* 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* more) besides their Gown and Mantle mentioned in their Statutes. King *James* I. doubled this Pension, and made it payable out of the Exchequer quarterly.

To these Thirteen Alms-Knights, *temp. Car.* I. Five more were added, Two of the Foundation of Sir *Peter la Maire*, Knight, and Three of Sir *Francis Crane*, Knight, Chancellor of the Garter; for Sir *Peter*, by his last Will, dated *Jan.* 8. 1631. bequeath'd 1500 *l.* to charitable Uses, to be dispos'd as Sir *Francis* (who had marry'd his Sister) should think fit, within Four Years after his Death; whereupon Sir *Francis*, determining to erect certain Houses in *Windsor*-Castle, for the dwelling of Five Alms-Knights, design'd the said 1500 *l.* towards that Use, and what was deficient made up at his own Cost, charging his Brother Executor, Sir *Richard Crane*, by his Will, dated *Aug.* 27. 1635. to see the Pile which he had began, finish'd. Sir *Francis* also bequeath'd 200 *l. per Annum* to be settled in Lands, by his Executors, for the perpetual Maintenance of Five Alms-Knights, after the rate of 40 *l. per Annum* to every one of them; but his Executor growing slack in the Performance, the Work being rather expos'd to Ruin, than forwarded by him; upon Complaints made to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions in Chapter, Orders were issu'd out to quicken him, and a peremptory Letter, dated *Mar.* 7. 1639. to go on with the Work faithfully; which Commands he evading, and bad Times coming on, the Building was totally neglected. Sir *Richard Crane* afterward dying, by his

Will, dated *Sept.* 20. 1645. he appointed that his Mannor of *Carbrooke* in *Norfolk*, should stand bound for ever for Payment of the said 200 *l. per Annum*; whereupon, by Inquisition taken at *Windsor*, *Mar.* 4. 1652. (by Virtue of a Commission upon the Statute *Anno* 43 *Eliz.* for charitable Uses) the Mannors of *Woodrising* and *Wesfield*, &c. in *Norfolk*, were found liable to satisfie for building and finishing the said Five Houses, and payment of the 200 *l.* yearly; and further, that the Arrears thereof, from Sir *Francis Crane*'s Death, came at that time to 3200 *l.* some Contest ensu'd in *Chancery*; nevertheless the 200 *l. per Annum* was, *July* 19. 1655. decreed to be paid out of all the Lands which were Sir *Richard*'s, and the building of the Houses out of his personal Estate. At Two Years Expiration arose that fair Pile of Building, between the Chancellor's and Garter's Towers, against the West Wall, in the lower Ward of the Castle, which was begun again and finish'd the next Year; the Expences amounting to 1700 *l.* But for a final End of this Suit, it was decreed, *Jan.* 27. 1659. the Mannor of *Carbrooke* should stand charg'd with 200 *l. per Annum*, payable half-yearly at *Michaelmas* and *Lady-day*, or within Thirty Days after, for the Maintenance of Five Alms-Knights, together with 30 *l.* yearly for Repairs, payable also then; which annual Sum of 230 *l. Anno* 12 *Car.* II. in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, *Jan.* 14. the King decreed the Chancellor of the Order, for the Time being, should receive and dispose thereof thus: 200 *l. per Annum* among the Five new Alms-Knights quarterly, at the Four usual Feasts of the Year, and to employ the residue upon Repair of the new Buildings erected for their Lodgings; which Powers were inserted in the Patent for his Office, bearing date the 20th of the same Month. And it was moreover decreed, that these Five

Knights should be subject to the same Rules and Government of the Thirteen of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Foundation, and made equal Partakers of the same Privileges, and wear the like Habits.

KING *Charles* I. taking into Consideration the Donation of Sir *Francis Crane*, which made the Alms-Knights Eighteen, (tho' they were not yet settled) intended to make up Twenty Six, as they were at the Institution of the Order; to compleat which Design, a Chapter was held at *Whitehall*, *Apr.* 18. 1637. for the Knights-Companions to consider the best Way how the same might be effected, and report their Opinions; but nothing was done thereupon, and this Affair waits a more propitious Opportunity.

§ 6. THE other Ministers of the College and Chapel of St. *George*, call'd *Ministers* in the Foundation Patent, are the superior Officers, *viz.* The Chantor, Steward and Treasurer.

THE Chantor is elected from among the Canons, whose Office is chiefly to govern those that sing in the Choir, and such as are employ'd about Divine Service. Before the Reformation he appointed who should begin the Antiphones, celebrate Masses, and read the Lessons, Epistles and Gospels. To his Care was committed all the Books, Crosses, Chalices, Vestments, and all the Sacred Ornaments of the Chapel. He receives the Offerings there made, and Accounts for them; for all which Services an annual Pension of 5 *l.* is allow'd him.

THE Steward and Treasurer are annually chosen on the Morrow after *Michaelmas-day* from out of the Canons Resident. To the Steward's Office appertains the Government of all the Revenues of the College, the Rents and Profits whereof he is to pay the

Treasurer. In his Custody are repos'd all the Ornaments, Jewels, and other Treasure of the Chapel, not committed to the Chantor, under the Obligation of rendring an Account; and his yearly Pension is 5 *l.*

THE Treasurer is to distribute to the Custos, Canons, Vicars, *&c.* their Pensions and Allowances, which if he fail Eight Days after their prefix'd Times of Payment, he is debar'd of his own *quotidians*, as Canon Resident, until such Arrears be discharg'd; as likewise the Steward, if he be found delinquent. His Pension is also 5 *l. per Annum*. There is one Treasurer to receive the Rents of the old Lands, and another chosen from the Canons to receive the new, who have been allow'd the like annual Pensions. The former is term'd *Seneschallus veteris*, the latter *Seneschallus novæ Dotationis*.

MOREOVER, there is a Steward of the Courts, and Clerk of the Lands, which is an Officer under both the before-mention'd Stewards. He keeps the Courts by himself or Deputy, and is a Barrester at Law, and the standing Council for the College. His yearly Pension is 20 Nobles. But the Council *in Spiritualibus* is usually a Graduate in the Law.

THE Chapter-Clerk enters and registers all Acts of the Chapter-House; he draws and engrosses all Indentures, Patents, Grants, Leases, *&c.* which pass the common Seal of the Dean and Canons. His Pension is 3 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d. per Annum*. The Under Stewardship and Chapter Clerkship heretofore were enjoy'd by one Person, but of late they are divided, and now he must be a Barrester at Law.

OF the Virgers Institution the Statutes of the College make mention, that in Procession and other Solemnities, they were to go before the Dean and Canons, bearing their Rods, for which Service they

were to have annually a Robe, and 6 *d. per Diem*. And besides these, there are Two Sextons, Two Bell-ringers, a Clock-keeper, and a Porter who attends the shutting and opening of the Gates.

§ 7. FOR the Endowment of the College we shall only treat upon those Lands given to the Maintenance of this Foundation by the Founder himself, or by his Successors, or by Sovereigns of *The Order of the Garter*, such as have been Knights-Companions.

KING *Edw.* III. by his Letters Patent of the Foundation [22 *Edw.* III.] aforesaid, gave them [the Custos, Canons, Alms-Knights and Ministers] the Advowsons of the Churches of *Wyardesbury* [*Rasbury*] in *Lincoln*, *South-Tanton* in *Exeter*, and *Uttoxater* in *Coventry* and *Litchfield* Diocess, in Frank Almoigne, free from all Secular Exactions; which License, to appropriate the same to the College, notwithstanding the Statute of *Mortmain*, he appointed as much out of his Treasure for their Support, as amounted to an immoveable Estate of 1000 *l. per Annum*; and lest there might be any Defect in the Knights Title to *Uttoxater* and *South-Tanton*, *Henry* Earl of *Lancaster*, 23 *Edw.* III. and *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, that Year had special Licenses granted them in Right of Patronage to the said Two Advowsons, and they to receive the same. Another such License, 28th of *January*, 24 *Edw.* III. was given to *William de Bohun* Earl of *Northampton*, for assigning to the Custos and Chaplains the Advowson of *Dodyngton* in *Com. Oxon*, which he held of the King *in Capite*. The 28th of *January* following, this Royal Founder conferr'd on them (by the Name of Custos and Chaplains of his

free Chapel at *Windsor*) one Messuage, Seventeen Acres of Land, one of Pasture, and 3 *s.* Rent, in *Wyrardesbury* in *Com. Bucks*, which had been convey'd to him by *Richard de Gloucester*, Heir to *Isabel de Ditton*; and the 22d of *May* ensuing granted unto them the Advowson of *Dachet* near *Windsor*.

Anno 25 *Edw.* III. the King gave them the Advowsons of the Churches of *Eure* in *Com. Bucks*, of *Riston* in *Com. Norfolk*, and of *Whaddon* and *Caxton* in *Com. Cantab.*, and in *May* that Year the Advowson of *Simondesbourne* (surrender'd *temp. Edw.* IV. to *Richard* Duke of *Gloucester*) and of St. *Stephens* of *Saltash*. The first of these Queen *Philippa* purchas'd of Sir *John Darcy*, and the other of *Edward* the Black Prince; and gave them both, first to the King, that by his Grant afterwards to the College its Title might be more corroborated. The same Year, *October* 26. the King bestow'd on them 100 Marks *per Annum*, out of the Farm of the Town of *Northampton*, to be paid by the Bailiff of the Town at *Easter* and *Michaelmas* by equal Allotments: And it was at the Founder's Instance (therefore worthy to be inserted) that the Town of *Yarmouth*, 26 *Edw.* III. under their Common Seal, granted them a Last of Red Herrings yearly, well dry'd and cleans'd, to take the Corporation into their Prayers; tho' some say it was a Penance enjoyn'd them for murdering a Magistrate.

IN the 26 *Edw.* III. the Founder granted them and their Successors the Mannor of *Eure* near *Weybrigg*, in *Com. Bucks*, the Mannor of *Craswell* in *Bray* in *Com. Berks*, and a Wear call'd *Braybrook*, situated in the *Thames*, with all the Lands in that Parish convey'd unto him by Sir *John Philibert*, together with the Knights Fees, Advowsons, *&c.* belonging to those Mannors. He gave to the Custos and College soon after the Seisin thereof, as also of a Wood call'd

Temple-Wood in *Stoke-Pogeys*, convey'd to the King by *John de Molyns*: But deeming all the Lands too small for the End he intended, 28 *Edw.* III. the King granted the Custos and College, by Letters Patent, a Pension of 100 *l. per Annum* out of the Exchequer; and upon the vacating the same, 34 *Edw.* III. he gave them yearly Lands of 101 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* out of the Possessions of religious Aliens, which fell into his Hands by Occasion of the *French* Wars: But lest these Possessions should be again restor'd upon a Treaty of Peace, they were to receive the annual Sum of 101 *l.* 11 *s.* 11 *d.* out of the Exchequer, till they were provided of Lands of the like Value. Upon several Restrictions, he granted them 51 *l.* 9 *s.* 9 *d.* yearly to be receiv'd out of 126 *l.* which the Prior of *Takkele* paid him for the Farm of that Priory, it being then in the King's Hand by reason of the War with *France*. And by reason the Revenues did not amount to 1000 *l. per Annum*, as he design'd at the Foundation, in the 35th Year of his Reign, he granted them so much Money yearly out of the Exchequer, as would make up the Deficiency, till Lands or Rents of that Value should be settled on them. Lastly, 39 *Edw.* III. the Founder bestow'd on them a Piece of Ground in *New Windsor*, (whereon had stood an House of *John* of *London*) in lieu of the great Garden South of the Castle, formerly given them by him; and also a Garden opposite thereunto on the other side of the Way. Besides these Largesses of the Founders, there were others made by pious and devout Persons, said to be incorporated into the first Foundation, and made up that Revenue which *William* Bishop of *Winchester* adjudg'd sufficient for the Support of the College, which we shall silently pass over with the bare mention only.

THE Mannor of *Dodyngton*-Castle; two Pastures

call'd *Frith* and *Ashcroft*; the Chapel of *Langeley*; the Parsonages of *Estriton*, *Langeley-Maries*, *Wantynge*, *Shaldeborne*, *Wedonbeek*, *Glynde* and *Ryslepe*; the Pensions of the Vicarages of *Wantynge*, *Clyffe*, *Tylthey* and *Gottesford*; and the Portions of *Bassyngborne* and *Prestwyke*, in *Haseley* magna, *Chalgrave*, *Adewelle*, *Aston*, *Rowhand*, *Sevyndon*, *Kyngeston* and *Henton*, in *Stoke-Basset*, and *Clopecote* in *Gatehampton*; *Whytechyrche*, *Maplederham*, *Retherfeld*, *Esthenreth Stretham*; of *Thornecroft* in *Letherhed*; of *Totynbeek* in *Wodesdon*; *Evington*, *Woodmershthorne*; of *Fordham*, *Ethrope*, *Newenham*, and in *Tollesworth*.

IN succeeding Times other considerable Donations were made by the Sovereigns and Knights Companions (omitting others.) Some of which, as they fall in our way, we shall speak of.

13 *Rich.* II. that King gave them a Croft in *Northmolton*, with the Advowson of that Church.

9 *Hen.* V. *John*, Duke of *Bedford*, third Son to King *Hen.* IV. conferr'd on them the Priory of *Okeborne* in *Wilts* (a Cell to *Bec* in *Normandy*) with all its Appurtenances: Which Donation was confirm'd by King *Hen.* V. and afterwards by King *Edw.* IV.

7 *Edw.* IV. that King, who had a singular Respect for the College, conferr'd on them the Mannor of *Atherston* in *Com. Warwick*, the Mannors and Advowsons of *Chesingbury* in *Wilts*, and of *Quarle* in *Hantshire*; the Church and Priorate of *Uphaven*, and the Deanry or Chapel of St. *Burien* in *Cornwall*, with an Addition of an annual Pension, which the Abbot of *Sautrie* discharg'd for the Church of *Fulburne*, to the Abbey *de bona Requie*, and another yearly Income of 20 *l.* paid by the Abbot of *Rousford* for the Mediety of the Church of *Rotheram*.

13 *Edw.* IV. he consign'd to them the Mannor or

Priorate of *Munclane*, in *Com. Hereford*.

14 *Edw.* IV. he gave unto them the Custody, Patronage, and free Disposition of the Hospital or Free Chapel of St. *Anthony*, *London*, (a Preceptory to St. *Anthony* of *Vienna*, with all the Liberties, Privileges, Lands, *&c.*) upon the first Vacancy. The same Year he endow'd them with the Priorate of *Brimsfield* in *Com. Gloucest.* the Mannor of *Blakenham* in *Suffolk*; the Priorate of St. *Elene* in the *Isle of Wight*; the Priorate or Mannor of *Charleton* in *Wilts*; and all the Lands, *&c.* in *Northmundon*, *Compton* and *Weleigh*, in *Sussex* and *Southampton*; the Mannor of *Ponyngton* and *Widon* in *Dorset*, together with an annual Pension of 12 Marks, payable by the Priory of *Monte acuto*, with all the Lands, Tenements, Rents, Advowsons, *&c.* annex'd to the said Priorates and Mannors. The same Year he bestow'd on them the Mannor of *Membury* in *Com. Dorset*; the Lordships of *Preston* and *Monkesilver* in *Com. Somerset*; the Advowsons of *Puryton* and *Wollavington* in that County, together with the Knights Fees, Advowsons, Profits, Rights, *&c.*

18 *Edw.* IV. his Feoffees, the Queen, the Arch-Bishop of *York*, and others seised to the Use of the King, demis'd to them the Mannor of *Wykecombe*, call'd *Bassetsbury*, the Fee-Farm of the Town of *Great Wykecombe*, the Mannor of *Crendon* in *Com. Bucks*, and the Mannors of *Haseley* and *Pyrton* in *Com. Oxon*: And that Year the King gave unto them the Advowson of the Church of *Cheshunt*, being of his own Patronage, provided the Vicarige was sufficiently endow'd, and a compleat Sum of Money annually distributed among the poor Parishioners, according to the Diocesan's Ordinance. To these he united the Custody or Deanry of the Free Chapel of *Wolverhampton* in *Com. Staff.* to the Custos or Dean

of this College, and his Successors for ever; which Church, *cum membris*, is exempt from not only the Jurisdiction, *&c.* of the Bishop of *Litchfield* and *Coventry*, but by a Papal Bull from all Legates and Delegates; nor is it subject to any terrene Power, but the King of *England* alone, and under it to the perpetual Visitation of the Keepers of the Great Seal, *pro tempore*.

20 *Edw.* IV. he resign'd to them the Advowson or Patronage of the Prebend of *Ewern* in *Com. Dorset*, with all its Rights and Privileges: And lastly, in the 21st Year of his Reign, he granted them Two Parts of the Mannors of *Old Swynford* and *Gannow*, in *Com. Wygorn*. and the Reversion of the Third Part of them, with the Advowson of the Church of *Old Swynford*; nor was he thus munificent alone, but excited and spurr'd on others to the like Example, licensing, in the first Year of his Reign, all his Subjects to confer what they pleas'd to the Dean and Canons, within the Value of 300 Marks *per Annum*, as well such as held of him *in Capite* or otherwise, notwithstanding the Statute of *Mortmain*; and afterwards increas'd this License to Lands of 500 *l. per Annum* Value, (which King *Hen.* VIII. extended to 1000 *l.*) Hereupon, *Anno* 20 *Edw.* IV. *John*, Duke of *Suffolk*, and *Elizabeth* his Wife, the King's Sister, were permitted to assign to them the Mannor or Lordship of *Grovebury*, otherwise call'd *Leighton Busard*, in *Com. Bedford*, the Church of *Tintagell* in *Cornwall*, as also Nineteen Messuages, Seven Tofts, One Hundred and Forty Acres of Land, Fourteen of Meadow, One Hundred and Forty of Pasture, One Hundred of Wood, and Four Shillings Rent in *Newford* and *Blanford*, in *Com. Dorset*, and Seventy Messuages, Twelve Tofts, Five Hundred Acres of Land, One Hundred of Meadow, Two Hundred of Pasture, Forty of Wood, and Twenty

Shillings Rent, in *Stokeley*, *Northall*, *Edelesburgh* and *Rodenach*, in *Com. Bucks*, and Twenty Messuages, Eight Tofts, Three Hundred Acres of Land, Sixty of Meadow, Two Hundred of Pasture, Forty of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Compton St. John*, in *Com. Sussex*, and Ten Messuages, Nine Tofts, Two Hundred Acres of Land, Twenty of Meadow, One Hundred of Pasture, Ten of Wood, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Portsmouth* and *Burghegge*, in *Hampshire*, and One Messuage, Three Tofts, Sixty Acres of Land, Six of Meadow, Forty of Pasture, and Twenty Shillings Rent, in *Stodeham*, in *Com. Hertford*, held of the King *in Capite*, without any Restriction whatsoever, for which the Duke and Dutchess were to be had in the perpetual Orisons of the Dean and Canons. The same Year Sir *Walter Devoreux de Feners*, Knight, together with Sir *John Devoreux* and others his Feofees, made over to them the Mannor, Church, and perpetual Advowsons of *Sutton Courtney* in *Com. Berks*.

All the before-mentioned Endowments are called the Lands of the old Dotation, to distinguish them from those confirmed on the College by King *Edw.* VI. which are term'd the Lands of the new Dotation; of which hereafter. But several of them given by King *Edw.* IV. the College never possessed, *viz. Atherston*, *Quarle*, *Uphaven*, *St. Burien*, *Fulburne* Pension, *Brimfield*, *St. Elen*, *Charleton*, *Blakenham*, *Ponyngton*, *Wedon*, *Old Swynford*, and *Gannow*, and of some others they were seized but a short time, *viz. Chesingbury*, the Lands in *Newford*, *Blandford*, and *Portsmouth*. Besides these, the College was dispossess'd of *Gottesford*, *temp. Hen.* VI. of *Cheshunt*, *temp. Hen.* VII. *temp. Hen.* VIII. or a little before of *Wodemershthorn*, *Tylthey*, *Retherfeld*, *Levyngdon*, *Stoke-Basset*, *Stretham*, *Totingbeek*, *Fordham*, *Elthorp*,

Newenham, and *Tollesworth*; afterwards they surrendred into the Hands of King *Hen.* VIII. *Eure*, *Clyff*, *Ashton*, *Rowhand*, *Kingston*, *Esthenreth*, *Northmundon*, *Compton*, *Weleg*, *Compton St. John*, and *Shobingdon* Portion; and upon the *Reformation* the College lost at least 1000 Marks *per Annum*, in the Profit made by St. *Anthony*'s Piggs, which the Appropriation of the Hospital of St. *Anthony*'s *London* brought to it, and no less then 500 *per Annum*, the Offerings of Sir *John Shorne*'s Shrine at *Northmarston* in *Com. Bucks*, a Man of great Piety and Veneration with the People, and sometime Rector there. The Advowson of this Church was appropriated to the Dean and Canons, by the Convent of *Dunstaple*, *temp. Edw.* IV. in exchange for *Wedenbeck* in *Com. Bedford*.

THE Dean and Canons having convey'd unto K. *H.* VIII. the Mannor and Rectory of *Ivor* in *Bucks*, the Mannor of *Dammery-Court* in *Dorset*, and other Lands, Rents, Portions, and Pensions in the Counties of *Somerset*, *Hants*, *Middlesex*, *Oxford*, and *Sussex*, to the yearly Value of 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.* for which they had no Recompence in his Life, that King, by his last Will, ordered them an Equivalent upon the Commutation and Agreement of an Exchange; which Will, King *Edw.* VI. his Son and Successor performed, as well for the Assurance of Lands, to the yearly Value of 600 *l.* to the Dean and Canons for ever, to the Uses in the Will, as for the Assurance of other Lands, of the annual Value of the said 160 *l.* 2 *s.* and 4 *d.* wherefore by Letters Patent, dated the 7th of *October*, in the First Year of his Reign, he granted them the Rectories of *Bradnynche*, *Northam*, *Iplepen*, *Ilsington*, and *Southmolton* in *Com. Devon*, the Tithe of Corn of *Otery*, in that County, as also *Blossoms-Inn* in St. *Laurence-lane*, *London*, the Tithes of Grain, *&c.* of the Rectory of *Ambrosbury*, in *Wilts*, and all the Tithes of

Bedwyn, *Stoke*, *Wilton*, *Harden*, *Harden-Tunrige*, *Knoll*, *Pathall*, *Chisbury*, *East-Grafton*, *West-Grafton*, *Grafton-Martin*, and *Wexcomb*, the Prebend of *Alcannyngs* and *Urchefounte*, the Rectories of *Urchefounte*, *Stapleford*, *Tytcombe*, and *Froxfeild*, all in *Com. Wilts*, and all the annual Pension of 8 *l.* issuing out of the Manner of *Icombe* in *Com. Gloucester*, the Rectory and Vicarige of *Ikelington* in *Cambridgeshire*, the Rectory of *East-Beckworth* in *Surrey*, the Reversion of the Portion of Tithes of *Trequite* in *Cornwall*, and the Rent of 13 *s.* 4 *d.* reserved upon the same, the Rectory and Church of *Plympton*, and the Chapels of *Plymstoke*, *Wembury*, *Shagh*, *Sandford-Spone*, *Plympton*, *St. Maurice* and *Brixton*, in *Com. Devon*, the Rectory of *Isleworth* and *Farickenham* in *Com. Middlesex*, and *Shiplake* in *Com. Oxon*, the Reversion of the Rectory of *Aberguille*, and of the Chapels of *Llanlawet* [*Llanbadock*] and *Llanpenysaunt*, with the Rent of 30 reserved thereon, the Reversions of the Rectory of *Talgarth*, with the reserved Rent of 11 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* the Reversion of the Rectory of *Mara* in *Com. Brecknock*, and 6 *l.* Rent, and that of St. *Germains* in *Cornwall*, with 61 *l.* 13 *s.* and 4 *d.* Rent, to have and to hold, *&c.* forever, except the Tithes of *Woolpat* and *Fitzwaren* in *Wilts*, the Vicarige-House of *Ikelington*, Marriage-Money, Dirge-Money, and Mass-Money, and the whole Profit of the Bedrolls of *Ikelington*; nevertheless to pay the Crown in the Court of *Augmentation*, for the Rectories of *Aberguille*, *Talgarth* and *Mara*, the Chapels *Llanbadock* and *Llanpenysaunt* 4 *l.* 2 *s.* 8 *d.* in the Name of Tenths, and for all Rents, Services, *&c.* of the other Rectories, *&c.* 48 *l.* 7 *s.* 4 *d.* annually at *Michaelmas*. Moreover, within all these Premises, the King granted them Court Leets, or Views of Frankpledge, and to levy Fines, Amerciaments, Free Warrens, Waifs, and Felons Goods, and all other

Profits, *&c.* whatsoever, and the said Rectories, Tithes, Pensions, Rents, and all other Gifts and Grants in the Possession of the Dean and Chapter, were confirmed to them by Act of Parliament, 2 *Jac.* I.

THE ancient Rate of these New Lands in the King's Books was 661 *l.* 6 *s.* and 8 *d. per Annum*; but according to the improved Rents, as they were then turned over to the College, 812 *l.* 12 *s.* 9 *d.* out of which 160 *l.* 2 *s.* 4 *d.* was yearly allowed them in Requital of their Lands passed to King *Hen.* VIII. and 600 *l. per Annum*, for accomplishment of his Will; but the remaining Sum, *viz.* 52 *l.* 10 *s.* 5 *d.* was reserved in lieu of Tenths, to be paid into the Court of *Augmentation*; nevertheless, this last reserved Sum was not assented unto by the Dean and Canons to be so paid, because the Charges issuing out of the Lands were larger than were expressed in the Rental. And we find that, shortly after, the Rents of St. *Germains*, *Northam*, *Ilsington*, &c. part of the New Lands, were received and accounted for, according to the old Rate in the King's books, to wit, 162 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d. per Annum*, in Recompence for the Lands conveyed to King *Hen.* VIII. and out of which they paid a yearly Surplusage of 2 *l.* 2 *s.* 1 *d.* This Sum, together with the Rents of the rest of the New Lands, being upon the said Improvement accounted to be 597 *l.* 17 *s.* 11 *d.* made in all 600 *l. per Annum*; and this was laid out by the Dean and Canons for some time towards erecting the Alms-Knights Apartments.

THUS stood the Lands accounted for till the Settlement made by Queen *Elizabeth*, who in the First Year of her Reign appointed the Dean and Canons to convert the Rents of these New Lands to such Uses and Intents as she had set down in a Book signed with her Sign manual, and annexed to an Indenture

made between her and the Dean and Canons; by which Indenture they were obliged to apply the Rents and Profits of these Lands, as was prescribed in the Book, and to observe the Ordinances therein, and upon Default, to abide such Orders as the Crown, or any Knight-Companion, deputed by the Sovereign, shall set forth.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
In this Book the Total of the Revenue reckon'd at the ancient Value	661	06	08
The Annual Charge and Disbursements therein set down	430	19	06
And so Remains	230	07	02

Which Remainder has been and is assigned for Payment of Tenths to the Crown, Vicars, Curates, Annual Stipends, Officers Fees, Reparation of the Premisses, and for the Relief of the Dean and Canons, in Maintenance and Defence of the said Lands.

AND to the End the Queen might know how the Revenue was disposed of, she gave charge that her Lieutenant and the Knights-Companions should annually (at the Feast of the Order held at *Windsor*) state the Accompt, and see how the Income was expended, and that her Lieutenant should yearly be put in mind of it by one of the Officers of the Order. This Ordinance was renewed, 21 *Jac.* I. and the Chancellor of the Order was appointed to be the Remembrancer, and in Obedience thereunto, the Account of these new Lands (which begins at *Lady-Day*, as that of the old Lands doth at *Michaelmas*) was afterwards exhibited in Chapter, and in particular

that Account, 9 *Car.* I. which was submitted to the Sovereign and Knights-Companion's Consideration, who referred the Inspection thereof to the Knights-Commissaries, who were to consult over the Affairs of the Order.

§. 8. THE Privileges of the Chapel and College are Ecclesiastical and Temporal: As to the first, Pope *Clement* VI. exempted the Chapel, College, Canons, Priests, Clerks, Alms-Knights and Officers, from all ordinary Jurisdiction of Archbishops, Bishops, Archdeacons, and all Judges and Officers, and received them within the Protection of the Papal-See; and granted a farther Privilege, That the Custos should have Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction over the Canons, Priests, *&c.* as also the Cure of their Souls, notwithstanding any Papal Constitution, Provincial, or Synodical, yet allowing that the Custos should receive that Cure from the Diocesan of the Place. In Consideration of this Exemption, the Custos was to pay annually, on St. *George*'s Day, a Mark in Silver, to the Pope's Chamber. Two Years preceding, the Chapel was called the King's Free Chapel, which Title it still enjoys; for it owes Subjection to none but the Sovereign of *England*, the Supream of the Church, as heretofore it stood divided between the King and See of *Rome*. The Privilege of Exemption included in the Confirmation of Liberties, made by the Founder in his Charter, dated *Anno Regni sui* 47. and all other Emoluments granted by him, are confirmed by Act of Parliament, 8 *Hen.* VI. As the College has its sole Dependance on the Crown, it is visitable only by the Lord-Chancellor, whose Visitations and Power are reserved to him by the Statutes of the College, and himself called in the King's Commission for Visitation, 2 *Rich.* II. Governor of the said Chapel, as well in Spirituals as Temporals, and, under the King,

immediate Custos. And so jealous were the Dean and Canons, lest the Power of the said Exemption should be infringed, that when *Sixtus* IV. had granted the Bishop of *Salisbury*, and themselves, to make new and interpret the ancient Statutes, they soon obtained a Revocation of that Authority, lest the said Bishop (in whose Diocess the College is situate) being so unpowered, might by Degrees bring them under his Jurisdiction, in prejudice to their Exemption. And, *A. D.* 1485. to prevent such design, the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, &c. were commission'd to see the Bull revoked, and *Salisbury* enjoyned not to intermeddle further in the College Affairs. Moreover other Bishops, and the Chancellor of *England*, were to renew, alter, or new make such Statutes as might accrue to the Advantage of the College.

If the Archbishop of *Canterbury* be present in the Chapel, he sits below the Dean, nor can he consecrate there, without his License. And this is very remarkable, that at the ratifying the Peace between King *Charles* I. and *Lewis* XIII. *A. D.* 1629. in the Chapel at *Windsor*, Dr. *Wren*, then Dean of the College, gave the Oath to the *French* Ambassador, and not the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, tho' he was then present.

The Dean and Chapter are to weigh well and debate at their yearly Chapters all things fit to be dispatched in reference to the College Affairs, and whatsoever Determination they come to, not repugnant to their Statutes, all Persons are firmly obliged to observe.

The Deans have no Institution from any Bishop, but his Institution, Investiture, and Installation into the Custos-ship, Canonship, and Prebendship, is conferred from such of the Canons Resident, to whom the King (who collates) doth recommend him.

Other Marks of Exemption appear in the constant proving of Wills before him, or in his Absence before his Lieutenant. In using the Power of Excommunication within their Jurisdiction (the Precincts of the College) granting a Dispensation for eating Flesh in *Lent*, a farther Mark of their Privilege appears, that the Ordination for the Chantry Priests were confirmed by the Dean and Chapter, and not the Bishop of the Diocess, as were the Statutes of the new Commons. The Dean is exempt from paying all Synodals, or Procurations, nor can any of the King's Chaplains preach in the Chapel of St. *George*, unless he be a Canon there, or have License from the King, or from the Dean and Canons. They send no Delegates to the Synod, and when the Point was debated, 1640. it was carried in the Negative, as being against their Liberties, and might intitle them to the Payment of Subsidies; nor are they intitled to any Share in the Government of the Church, more than the Colleges in the Universities, where there are many nominal Deans. In short, when by the Act of *Uniformity*, 14 *Car.* II. every Clergyman was bound to subscribe before the Archbishop or his Ordinary, the Canons subscribed before the Dean; and tho' some of them subscribed before the Bishop, yet was it with a Salvo, saving the Rights and Privileges of this Free Chapel.

THEIR Temporal Immunities and Privileges are these, as granted them by Charter, 6 *Mar.* 27 *Edw.* III. and confirmed by several of his Successors.

THE Custos and Canons were free from paying Aid upon making the King's eldest Son a Knight, and marrying his eldest Daughter, and exempt of all Aids to the King's Contributions and Tallages.

WHENSOEVER the Clergy should give a Tenth, or other Imposition, out of their Spiritualties, or the

Commons give a Tenth, Fifteenth, or other, out of their Temporalties, Subsidy, or the King tax his own Demean, or the Pope impose any Money to be raised upon the Clergy, to give it the King, this College and their Possessions were to stand freed thereof.

THEY were discharged from any Contributions of arraying Soldiers, and from sending them to guard the Sea-Coasts, and from every Fine and Composition of the like Nature. Their Houses within the Castle of *Windsor*, as elsewhere, are quit from any Livery of the King's and Queen's Stewards, Marshals, Purveyors, Officers, and Servants, and from the like Officers of the Peers or Nobles, and the said Officers were not to intermeddle there, without Leave of the Custos and Canons.

NO Duke, *&c.* or Nobleman, nor any Stewards, Marshals, Escheators, Sheriffs, Coroners, Bailiffs, or Officers, nor other Person of what Condition soever, upon any Pretence, were not to lodge or remain in their Houses without their Consent.

THE Custos, Canons, and their Tenants, were not to pay any Toll, Paviage, Piccage, Barbicanage, Terrage, Pontage, Murage, Passage, Payage, Lestage, Stallage, Tallage, Carriage, Pesage, and from Scot and Geld, Hidage, Scutage, working about Castles, Parks, Bridges, Walls for the King's Houses; and from Suits to the County, or Hundred Courts, and Wapentakes, or Court Leets, Murder, and common Amerciaments, before either King, Justices of the Bench, or Itinerant, and from every like Custom had an Immunity.

WITHIN their Lands, Fees, and Precincts, the Chattels of all Felons and Fugitives were seized to their own Use. All Fines for Trespasses, and all other Contempts and Misdemeanors, *Fines pro licentia concordandi*, and for all other Causes, Amerciaments,

Redemptions, Issues, and Forfeitures whatsoever, *Annum Diem Vastum & Streppum*, and all Things which might belong to the King and his Heirs, and all Wrecks, Waifs, and Strays, were granted them.

NO Purveyance of Corn, Hay, Horses, Carts, Carriages, Victuals, or any Goods, Chattels, or any thing whatsoever, should be carried off by any of the King's Officers, upon their or their Tenants Land.

THEY were to be free from paying any Pension, Corrody, or other Sustentation to be granted to the Crown.

THEY were to have free Warren in all their Demain Lands wheresoever, and that altho' they lay within the Bounds of the King's Forest.

THAT they should enjoy for their Conveniency a weekly Market on *Wednesday*, at their Mannor of *Ever* in *Bucks*, and Two Fairs to last Eight Days, one on the Eve and Feast of St. *Peter* and St. *Paul*, and Two Days after the other, upon the Eve and Feast of St. *Peter ad Vincula*, and Two Days following.

THAT they should, in all their Lands have Socage and Sackage, Infangthef, Utfangthef, and View of Frankpledge, with Thewe, Pillory, and Tumbrel for punishing Malefactors, and Power to erect Gallows upon their own Soil for executing those apprehended in their Jurisdiction.

THEY were to be exempt of all Suits and Pleas of the Forest, and of all Charges or Fees which the Officers of the Forest might demand, and from the Expeditation of their Dogs and Suits of Court there; as likewise all from Gelds, *Dane* Gelds, Knights Fees, Payments for Murder and Robbery, Building or Repairing of Bridges, Castles, Parks, Pools, Walls, Sea Banks, Causeways, and Inclosures; and of all Assizes, Summonses, Sheriffs Aids, their Bailiffs, or Officers,

bearing of Treasure, and all other Aids whatever; as also from the common Assessments and Amerciaments of the County, and Hundred, and all Actions relating to them; they were discharged from the Payment of Ward-penny, Aver-penny, Tithing-penny, and Hundred-penny, and quit from Grithbreck, Forestal, Homesoken, Blodwite, Wardwite, Hangwite, Fightwite, Leyrwite, Lastage, Pannage, Assurt, and Waste of the Forest; so that such Waste be not committed in the Forests, Parks, and Woods belonging to the Crown, and then reasonable Satisfaction, without Imprisonment, should be accepted.

ALL Writs and Attachments were returnable to them, as well relating to the Pleas of the Crown as other, thro' all their Lands and Fees, and no Sheriff, Bailiff, or Officer, should execute any such there, unless in Default of the Custos and Canons, and they to have and hold Leets, and Lawdays, and Cognizance of all Pleas betwixt their Tenants, as well of Trespasses and Contracts, as others. And lastly, They were to have and hold Wards, Reliefs, Escheats, Forfeitures, and other Profits, Issues, and Emoluments whatsoever, within their own Fees, from all their Tenants, which might appertain to the Crown, as if the Tenants did hold of the Crown or others *in Capite*.

CAP. V.

WE come now to treat of the most Noble and Illustrious *Order of the Garter*; which, if we consider either its Antiquity, or the Nobleness of the Personages, that have been enroll'd, it excels and outvies all other Institutions of Honour in the whole World. It owes its Original, as is confessed on all Hands, to *Edward* III. King of *England* and *France*; yet as to the Occasion, there are several Opinions which we shall rectifie. The vulgar and more general is, that the Garter of *Joan*, Countess of *Salisbury*, dropping casually off as she danced in a solemn Ball, King *Edward* stooping took it up from the Ground, whereupon some of his Nobles smiling, as at an amorous Action, and he observing their sportive Humour, turned it off with a Reply in *French*, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*; but withal added, in disdain of their Laughter, *That shortly they should see that Garter advanced to so high an Honour and Renown as to account themselves happy to wear it.*

BUT upon Examination of this Tradition, let others judge what Credit it bears to establish its Belief; for Sir *John Froissart*, the only Writer of the Age that treats of this Institution, assigns no such Original, nor for 200 Years after is there any thing to the Purpose in our other Historians, till *Polydore Virgil* took occasion to say something of it; but had it been Fact, some *French* Historian or other, would not have

neglected to register it at a convenient Time with a Scoff and Ridicule, since that Nation was so ready to deride King *Henry* V's Design of invading them with a Return of Tennis Balls.

IN the Original Statutes of this Order, there is not the least Conjecture to countenance the Conceit of such a Feminine Institution, no not so much as laying an Obligation on the Knights-Companions to defend the Quarrels of Ladies (as some Orders then in being enjoyned;) nor doth the Author of that Tract entitled *Institutio clarissimi Ordinis Militaris a prænobili subligaculo nuncupati*, prefaced to the Black Book of the *Garter*, let fall the manifest Passage to ground it on.

AS to what *Polydore* says, he is not so confident to ascertain the Person whose Garter it was; but cautiously declining that, says, it was either the Queen's, or the King's Mistress's; and if it were the latter, yet doth he omit her Name and Title, both which (on what Authority we find not) are supplied by modern Historians, who call her *Joan* Countess of *Salisbury*, the same elsewhere celebrated by the Name of the *Fair Maid* of *Kent*, (whom *Edward* the Black Prince, afterward married) whereas no Historian ever gave the least Inuendo that King *Edward* III. ever courted her as a Mistress. *Selden* points at her when he calls the Lady, from whom the Garter slipp'd, Countess of *Kent* and *Salisbury*: But about the Time when this Order was founded she in truth was dignified with neither Honour; for altho' she was Daughter to *Tho.* of *Woodstock*, Earl of *Kent*, and had been sometime the reputed Wife of *William Mountague*, second Earl of *Salisbury*, yet then she cou'd not properly be accounted Countess of *Salisbury*. She was actually Wife to Sir *Thomas Holland*, (one of the First Founders of the Order.) Nor

was she yet (tho' afterwards) Countess of Kent, because her Brother *John* Earl of *Kent*, at the Institution of this Order, survived, and died not till 26 *Edw.* III.

THAT there was a Countess of *Salisbury* with whom King *Edward* III. became greatly enamour'd, *Froissart* reports after this manner, *That this King having relieved a Castle of that Earl's in the North, wherein his Countess had been besieged by the* Scots (*the Earl himself being at that time Prisoner in* France;) *upon sight of her extraordinary Beauty he fell in love with her; but she so virtuously demeaned her self, during his Abode there, that he declined further Solicitation.* However, some time after, the King out of Desire to see her, proclaim'd solemn Justs in *London*, whither this Countess and other Ladies being invited, came up. This Castle it seems was *Wark* upon *Tweed* in *Northumberland*, which King *Edward* had formerly bestowed on her Husband, for his good Service past, when he first espoused her, being then but a Knight.

ALTHO' it should be admitted that this Countess of *Salisbury* was the King's Mistress, yet must it be remark'd, That she was Wife to *William Mountague*, Kt. created Earl of *Salisbury*, *Anno* 11 *Edw.* III. Mother to *William* the before-mention'd second Earl, that her Christian Name was *Catherine*, not *Alice*, as *Froissart*, not *Joan*, as others call her, Daughter to *William* Lord *Granston*, and that she expired 28 *Edw.* III. But that the whole may appear, what indeed it is, a meer Fable, we shall insert the Judgment of Dr. *Heylin*, who took great Pains in this Particular. *This*, says he, *I take to be a vain and idle Romance, derogatory both to the Founder and the Order first published by* Pol. Virgil, *a Stranger to the Affairs of* England, *and by him taken upon no better ground than* Fama Vulgi, *the Tradition of the common People, too*

trifling a Foundation to so great a Building.

OF the same Contexture with the former is another Tradition in *Andrew du Chesne*, *That the Queen departing from the King to her own Apartments, and he following soon after, chanced to espy a Blue Garter lying on the Ground (supposed to have slipp'd from her Leg) whilst some of his Attendants carelesly passed by it, as disdaining to stoop at such a Trifle; but he knowing the Owner, commanded it to be given him; at the Receipt of which he said, You make but small account of this Garter; but within few Months, I'll cause the best of you all to reverence it alike*. Some suppose that the Motto was the Queen's Answer, when the King asked her, *What Men would conjecture of her, upon her losing her Garter in such a manner?*

BOTH Relations are far distant from Fact; nevertheless it has thus far'd with other Orders of Sovereign Foundation, and an amorous, instead of an honourable Account, has been falsly render'd of their Institution; as for Instance, *The Order of the* Annunciade, and that of *The Golden Fleece*.

THERE is a third Opinion grounded on a Relation made of King *Rich.* I. who, whilst his Forces were employ'd against *Cyprus* and *Acon*, and extremely tir'd and harrass'd with the Siege, he, by the Assistance and Mediation of St. *George* (as imagin'd) was inspir'd with fresh Courage, and bethought himself of a new Device, which was to tie about the Legs of a Number of Knights, a Leathern Thong Garter, for such had he then at hand, whereby they being emulated to future Glory, with Assurance of Reward if they prov'd victorious, they might be excited to behave themselves intrepidly and well, much after the Examples of the old *Romans*, among whom were distributed various Crowns for several Causes, to adorn the Soldiers: But if King *Richard* I.

did make use of this Device in the *Holy Land*, as a Signal or Mark of Distinction of a Party, upon some warlike Exploit, yet that he took Occasion to create a distinct Order of Knighthood thereupon, there is not sufficient warrant to believe; (for it is only put down in the Preface of the *Black Book*, but not in any Part of the Annals of the Order; nor can it plead higher Antiquity than the Reign of King *Hen.* VIII. when written.) All the Advantage that can be made of it, is, to heighten the Reputation of that Saint among the *English*, by which Means the Garter came to be dedicated to him, and not that it contributed to its Institution.

§ 2. THE true Motive was therefore, neither the Ladies Garter, or King *Richard*'s Leathern Thong, that it owes it Original to: But King *Edward*, being a Person of consummate Vertue, gave himself up to military Affairs; and being engag'd in War for recovering his Right to *France*, made use of the best Martialists of the Age, did thereupon first design (induc'd by its ancient Fame) the Restoration of King *Arthur*'s *Round Table*, to invite hither the Gallant Spirits from abroad, and endear them to himself; and adjudging no Place more requisite than *Windsor*, upon *New-Year's-Day*, *A. D.* 1344. he issu'd out Letters of Protection for the safe going and return of Foreign Knights, to try their Valour at the Solemn Justs to be held there on *Monday* after the Feast of St. *Hilary* following (which happen'd *Jan.* 19.) And these Letters of Safe-Conduct continu'd in force until the *Octaves* of the Purification of our blessed Virgin ensuing, being the 18th Year of his Reign. At the Time appointed, he provided a great Supper to begin the Solemnity, and then ordain'd this Festival to be annually at *Whitsontide*; and immediately after these

first Exercises were over, for a future and better Accommodation, he impress'd Workmen and Carriages for erecting a particular Building in the Castle, and therein plac'd a Table of Two Hundred Foot Diameter, where the Knights should have their Entertainment of Diet, at his Expence of 100 *l. per* Week; to which Building he gave the Name of *The Round Table*. And as at these great Conventions the Days were spent in all Kinds of noble Feats of Arms, Justs and Turnaments, so were a great Part of the Nights consum'd in publick Balls and dancing with the Ladies that attended the Queen thither; and perhaps it was hence conjectur'd, that at some of these Balls the Queen's Garter, or the Garter of *Catherine*, Countess of *Salisbury*, might slip off, and the King's taking it up occasion Smiles in the Bystanders; and afterwards, when the King had modell'd his intended Order, a Garter offering it self for its chief Ensign, might add to the Conjecture; but that it was the principal Cause, is a groundless Imagination. And tho' King *Edward* advanc'd the Honour of the Garter, as to denominate the Order, yet was it not to enhance Reputation to, or perpetuate an effeminate Occasion, but to adorn Martial Prowess, with Honours, Rewards and Splendor; to increase Vertue and Valour in the Hearts of his Nobility, that so true Worth, after long and hazardous Exploits, should not enviously be depriv'd of that Glory which it hath intrinsically deserv'd, and that active and hardy Youths might not want a Spur in their Progression in the Paths of Vertue, which is to be esteem'd glorious and eternal.

IT is further observable, that the *French* King, *Philip de Valoys*, in Emulation of this Seminary at *Windsor*, set up a *Round Table* at his Court, and invited Knights and valiant Men of Arms out of *Italy* and *Almaine*

thither, lest they should repair to our King *Edward* III. which meeting with Success, prov'd a Countermine to his main Design; who perceiving that his Hospitality towards strange Knights, upon Account of reviving King *Arthur*'s *Round Table* was too general, nor did sufficiently ingratiate them to his Person, but being unconstrain'd and at Liberty, did after their Departure take what Side they pleas'd in the ensuing Wars, he at length resolv'd upon a Projection more particular and select, and such as might oblige those whom he thought fit to make his Associates, in a lasting Bond of Friendship and Honour: And having issu'd forth his own Garter for the Signal of a Battle, that was crown'd with Success, (which is conceiv'd to be the Battle of *Cressy*, fought about Three Years after his erecting the *Round Table*;) upon so remarkable a Victory, he thence took Occasion to institute this Order, and gave the Garter Preheminence among the Ensigns of it, whence that select Number, whom he incorporated into a Fraternity, are styl'd *Equites Aureæ Periscelidis*, and vulgarly *Knights of the Garter*. By this Symbol he design'd to bind the Knights and Fellows of it mutually unto one another, and all of them joyntly to himself, as Sovereign of the Order; nor was his Expectation frustrated, for it did not serve only as a vehement Spur and Incentive to Honour and martial Vertue, but also as a golden Bond of Unity and internal Society; and for this Consideration *Cambden* aptly calls it a Badge of Unity and Concord.

By the Symbols of this Garter the Knights are reminded, with all Religiousness, Sincerity, Friendliness, Faithfulness and Dexterity, not to leave the Pursuit of whatsoever they take in hand, nor to enterprize any Thing contrary to the Statutes of the Order; neither to frustrate the Rights of Peace and

Friendship, nor vilify the Law of Arms, or proceed in any Thing farther than Faith and Compact, or the Bond of Friendship will admit. Moreover, in the binding of the Leg with this enobled Ensign, there was given this Caveat and Exhortation, that the Knights should not pusillanimously (by running away from Battle) betray the Valour and Renown which is ingrafted in Constancy and Magnanimity. Nay, so exactly did the Founder contrive the whole Habit into the Signification of the Garter, that he ordain'd his and the Knights-Companions Robes and Ornaments to be all alike, both for Materials and Fashion, intimating thereby, That they ought to conserve brotherly Affection among themselves. The great Collar of the Order was made of equal Weight, and like Number of Knots and Links, in Token of the like Bond of Faith, Peace and Amity inviolably to be observ'd and retain'd amongst them: In fine, all Things were so design'd, that every one might plainly perceive how much these Things tended to the Maintenance of Amity and Concord.

IN further reference to the establishing this Order, the aforesaid King calling together the Earls, Barons, and principal Knights of his Kingdom, *Freely*, says *Froissart*, *and obligingly declar'd his Mind to them concerning this Affair*: To which *all of them being well inclin'd, entertain'd the Motion with equal Joy and Applause, deeming it would prove a very great Advancement to Piety, Nobility and Vertue, and likewise an excellent Expedient for the uniting not only his Subjects one with another, but all Foreigners conjunctively with them, in the Bonds of Amity and Peace*. And 'tis very improbable the prudent Founder should summon his Nobles to consult about the Grandeur of an Order, that had taken its Rise from so slight an Occasion as the dropping of a Garter from a

Lady's Leg. Now, to draw the Tye of Friendship more close, the King caused those who were (or should be) of the Order, to be call'd *Fellows*, *Associates*, *Colleagues*, *Brethren*, and *Knights-Companions*, and the Order it self a *Society*, *Fellowship*, *College of Knights*, and *Knight-Companionship*; and their Habits to be all alike, to represent how they ought to be united in all Chances and various Turns of Fortune; Co-partners both in Peace and War, assistant to one another in all serious and dangerous Exploits; and thro' the whole Course of their Lives to shew Fidelity and Friendliness one towards another. There are other Reasons assign'd, much to the same Effect, That the Order was instituted *to fortifie the Confidence of the King, the Kingdom and Martial Vertue*; that is to say, *to strengthen the Faith of the Subjects towards them, and for their greater Security*, and *because the Garter carries with it a Bond or Tye of Fellowship, and is a Symbol of Amity between Princes, being Companions of the same Order*.

IN the last Place, if we look upon the Statutes of its Institution, we shall find the Injunctions wholly Military, and so are the Words of Admonition pronounc'd at the putting on the Ensigns of the Order: And the Ground of the Institution (in the Preamble to King *Henry* VIII's *Exemplar*) is said to be *for the Honour of God and Exaltation of the Catholick Faith, joyn'd both with Piety and Charity, in establishing a College of religious Men to pray for the Prosperity of the Sovereign of the Order and the Knights-Companions, and to perform other holy Duties*; as also *ordaining a Maintenance for a Company of Alms-Knights, who have not otherwise wherewith to support themselves*; but not one Word relating to the Engagement on behalf of the feminine Sex.

AND whereas King *Edw.* III. had laid Claim by his

Title to the Kingdom of *France*, and in Right thereof assum'd its Arms, he from the Colour of them, 'tis said, caus'd the Garter to be made Blue, and the Circumscription Gold: And it may, without straining, be inferr'd from the Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*, that he retorted Shame and Defiance upon him that should dare to think amiss of so just an Enterprize, as he had undertaken for recovering of his lawful Right to that Crown; and that the Magnanimity and Bravery of those Knights, whom he had elected into this Order, was such as would impower and enable them to maintain the Quarrel against all who thought ill of it. Consonant to this is the Conjecture of *Harpsfield*, that this Apophthegm was design'd to put the Knights-Companions in mind, *Not to admit any Thing in their Actions, or among their Thoughts, derogatory to themselves and their Honour*.

THAT Age did exceedingly abound with Impresses, Motto's and Devices, and particularly King *Edw.* III. was so excessively given up to them, that his Apparel, Plate, Bed, Houshold-Furniture, Shields, and even the Harness of his Horses, and the like, were not without them, many of which now to descant upon would be a fruitless Attempt, seeing the Occasion of the Invention, and the Circumstances are lost, that should illustrate them; and others, by reason of their Brevity, seem'd insignificant, in regard something was designedly omitted, and left to be understood, which cannot now be rightly supply'd, so as to arrive at the Mind of the Inventor. Of this Number may be this Motto, *It is as it is*, which was embroider'd upon a Doublet of that King; tho' there are others which seem more easy to be decypher'd; as that daring Motto wrought upon his Surcoat and Shield provided to be used at a Turnament,

Hay, Hay, the Wythe Swan;
By God's Soul I am the Man.

§ 3. THE Time when the Order was instituted, Historians differ widely about; *Selden*, *Cowper*, and others, from *Froissart* (who wrote *temp. Rich.* II.) would have it in the 18th of King *Edw.* III. But since *Froissart* errs, in making the Number of Knights-Companions no fewer than Forty, which is a grand Mistake, Why might not he trip in Point of Time, and confound the Year of its Erection, with that wherein the Founder renew'd the Order of *The Round Table*, *Windsor* being the Place for both. For should we admit, that during some Part of the Solemnity held in this King's 18th Year, when the Accident of the Lady's Garter slipping off happen'd, what other Inference can be made, but that he had only an Intention to put in Execution somewhat afterwards? Not that an Order was actually erected at that Time: Besides, the Jollity of the Season, the Greatness of the Concourse, and the Splendidness of the Festivity, it was too busy a Time to suffer much Consultation tending thereunto; or at least to mould and model a Design so compleat and substantial, as it appears to have been even at first. If we joyn *Fabian*, he is plain, that tho' the King design'd the Institution at the End of the Festival, (which he places between *Candlemas* and *Lent*, in the 19th, and not 18th Year of that King) *Yet was it not then*, saith he, *but afterwards establish'd by him.* Nevertheless, Mr. *Selden* elsewhere observes, it had its Original in the 24th Year of the said King. And our industrious *Stow* (with whom *Lily*, *Speed*, and *Segar* agree) tells us, *That the first Feast of the Order was celebrated* A. D. 1350. which exactly agrees to the 24th of *Edward* III. But *Polydore Virgil* places it

after the 25th of *Edward* III. We must therefore have recourse to some other Proofs for elucidating this Point, since this Chronological *Æra* of the true Time of its Institution hath wonderfully slipp'd the Pens of all Writers.

ADMITTING then that the erecting this Order was first thought of by King *Edward*, at some of those grand Assemblies of *The Round Table*, held after the *French* King had set up the like; yet was it not mature, or brought to any Perfection, till after his glorious Victories and Triumphs over the *French* and *Scots* in the Battles of *Cressy* and *Nevil*'s Cross, (in the last of which the *Scotch* King, *David*, was taken Prisoner) and until King *Edward* had *Calais* surrendred to him, as will appear very conspicuous.

AMONG the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe, is one containing the Account of all the King's Liveries, from *Michaelmas Anno* 21, to the 31st of *Jan.* 23 *Edw.* III. In the same are divers Things mention'd to be adorn'd with Garters, which were provided against the first grand Feast of St. *George*; and among the rest, the Royal Robes, *viz.* his Mantle, Surcoat and Hood; likewise a Bed of Blue Taffaty was bedeck'd with Garters, containing the Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*. There were made for the Sovereign Three Harnesses, whereof Two were of White Velvet, wrought over with Garters *de blu & diaspris per totum compedmein cum Woodhouses*; and the Third *de Velvetto Ynde cont. Lappekin quisseux & caligas*, wrought over likewise with Garters. Had the Roll been divided into Years, or had distinguishing Marks of Time upon it, we might have been guided with more Certainty as to the true Year of the Institution. However, we may thence conclude it was not founded in the 18th of *Edw.* III. because that the Sovereign's Robes were not made until the 22d Year

of his Reign at soonest; perhaps not till the Beginning of the 23d. But to put the Matter beyond dispute, the Founder's Statutes fix the Time of Institution to his 23d Year; so do the Statutes of King *Henry* V. and the Preface to the *Black Book*, *Leland*, *Mills* and Dr. *Heylin*. To conclude, when he had fix'd upon the Day and Place for celebrating the first grand Feast of this Order, he sent his Heralds into *Germany*, *France*, *Scotland*, *Burgundy*, *Hainault*, *Flanders* and *Brabant*, to invite all Knights and Esquires, (with Assurance of Safe-Conduct and Liberty for Fifteen Days, both before and after the grand Solemnity) to shew their military Prowess and other publick Exercises there to be perform'd, proper to the Place and Occasion; agreeable to which Invitation, sundry Knights and Gallant Men came over to signalize their Valour; and what made the Solemnity more glorious, King *Edward*'s Queen was there present, attended with Three Hundred of the fairest Ladies, in all imaginable Splendor and Gaity.

§ 4. THE Patrons of the Order were several, under whose Protection (according to the Custom of the Age) King *Edw.* III. put himself and all the Knights-Companions, that the Affairs of the Order might be defended, preserved and govern'd.

THE *first* and chiefest which he elected, was the *Holy Trinity*, which in a more especial Manner was invocated to the Aid and Assistance of this Order.

Secondly, King *Edward* III. intitled peculiarly the *blessed Virgin* Mary, accounted then the general Mediatrix and Protectress of all Men; unto whom King *Edward* IV. was so strictly devoted, that he thought some additional Ceremonies requisite to her farther Honour, and thereupon ordain'd, that on her

Five Solemnities the Knights Companions should annually (as accustom'd on the Feast of St. *George*) wear the Habit of the Order as long as Divine Service was celebrating, (unless they had sufficient Cause of excuse) bearing on the right Shoulders of their Robes a golden Figure of the Virgin *Mary*; and that they should go in the same Manner and Habit upon all *Sundays* throughout the Year; and lastly, that on the same Days for ever they should say Five *Pater Nosters*, with as many *Ave Maria's*.

Thirdly, St. *George* of *Cappadocia*, a most choice Champion of Christ and famous Martyr, was also elected one of the Patrons to this Order by King *Edward* III. not so much as he was a Professor of the Christian Faith, or for that he was an armed Soldier or Knight of Christ, but so much the more because in those Wars, which were waged by the Christians against the Infidels, he by several Appearances manifested his Presence as a most certain Encourager and Assistant to the Christians; the Relations whereof may be seen in Dr. *Heylin*'s History, who hath laboriously and judiciously maintain'd the History of this Saint, against those that will not allow him a Place in Heaven, or a Being in the Church. In like manner the learned *Selden* hath avouch'd him to be the special Patron, Protector, Defender, and Advocate of this Realm of *England*; and has made it plainly appear in what Veneration he hath been honour'd abroad, especially among the Eastern Nations. To whose corroborating Testimonies we shall add, That this Title of Patron to our Nation, as given to St. *George* by the Founder of this Order, in a Patent granted to the Dean and Canons of the Chapel of St. *Stephen* at *Westminster*, and St. *George* at *Windsor*, which dischargeth them from Payment of Tythes; as also by King *Henry* VIII. in the Preamble of

his Statutes. And tho' in general he is styl'd the Principal Patron of the Affairs of *Christendom*, and a tutelar Guardian of military Men, yet among all Christians the *English* did excel; and in this Nation the Founder of this Order, in making choice of such an approv'd expert Captain and Patron, in particular Respect of whom the Knights had the Title of *Equites Georgiani*, St. *George*'s Knights, and the Order it self came to be call'd the *Ordo Divi Sancti Georgii*, The Order of St. *George*.

IT is remarkable, that *Du Chesne*, a noted *French* Historian, acknowledges it was by the special Invocation of St. *George* that King *Edward* III. gain'd the Battle of *Cressy*, which afterwards bringing to his Remembrance, *He founded*, says he, *a Chapel within the Castle of* Windsor. But if we may ascend a step higher, and give credit to *Harding*, it's recorded King *Arthur* paid St. *George* particular Honours, for he advanc'd his Picture in one of his Banners, which was about Two Hundred Years after his Martyrdom, and very early for a Country so remote from *Cappadocia* to have him in Reverence and Esteem.

Lastly, The Founder added a fourth Patron, whose Name himself bore, *viz.* St. *Edward the Confessor*, his Predecessor, King of *England*; and we find he was wont to be invocated by this Founder, as well as St. *George*, in any great Difficulties and Streights. *Walsingham* gives an Instance at the Skirmish of *Calais*, *A. D.* 1349. when King *Edward*, in great Anger and Grief, drew out his Sword, and most passionately cry'd out, *Ha St.* Edward, *Ha St.* George; which his Soldiers hearing, ran presently to him, and rushing violently upon the Enemy, put many of them to the Sword. These Four Patrons we find recorded together in the Preamble of the Foundation of *Windsor* College by King *Edward* III. tho' in the Preamble to his

Statutes of the Order, and to King *Henry* V's Statutes, St. *Edward the Confessor* is omitted; nevertheless he is enumerated with the rest in the Preamble to King *Henry* VIII's.

§ 5. As to the Honour and Reputation of this Noble Order, either in Comparison with others, or in Reference to it self, it challenges the Precedency of Antiquity, before the eldest Rank of Honour of that Kind any where establish'd.

Secondly, The Statutes of the Foundation were so exquisitely and judiciously devised and compacted, upon such solid Foundations of Honour and Nobleness, that they afterwards became a Precedent to other Orders; and gave the Plan to those Two of *The Golden Fleece* and of Monsieur St. *Michael*, as is manifest by comparing their Statutes.

Thirdly, It is no small Honour that accrues to this Order, that the Number of these Knights-Companions were never encreas'd, but as they were Twenty Six with the Sovereign, so they now thus continue, *ut Pretium faciat raritas*; for the infringing this Article hath split several other military Orders into Contempt and Ruin, as nothing more tarnishing, or throwing a sully on the Worth of Glory and Honour, than when render'd so vulgar, and indifferently disposed without Distinction and Merit, as is exemplify'd in *The Order of the* Star, and the now declining *Order of St.* Michael.

Fourthly, It has receiv'd more additional Lustre by being honour'd with the Companionship of divers Emperors, Kings and Sovereign Princes, who esteem'd it the Summit of their Glory, and the highest Trophy of additional Honour, to be enroll'd in the Number. Insomuch that some of them with

Impatience courted the Election. For we find recorded in the Register, *A. D.* 1672. Eight Emperors of *Germany*, Three Kings of *Spain*, Five *French* Kings, Two Kings of *Scotland*, Five Kings of *Denmark*, Five Kings of *Portugal*, Two Kings of *Sweden*, One King of *Poland*, One King of *Arragon*, Two Kings of *Naples*, besides divers Dukes and other free Princes; as One Duke of *Guelderland*, One Duke of *Holland*, Two Dukes of *Burgundy*, Two Dukes of *Brunswick*, One Duke of *Milan*, Two Dukes of *Urbin*, One Duke of *Ferrara*, One Duke of *Savoy*, Two Dukes of *Holstein*, One Duke of *Saxony*, and One Duke of *Wertemberg*, Seven Count Palatines of the *Rhine*, Four Princes of *Orange*, and One Marquis of *Brandenburg*.

Fifthly, It entitles those Knights and Noblemen, whose Vertue hath rais'd them to this Pitch of Greatness, to be Companions and Associates with Emperors and Kings, a Prerogative of an high Nature, and a sufficient Recompence for the greatest Merit. We shall close up all with the high Elogy bestow'd on it by the learned *Selden*, *That it exceeds in Majesty, Honour and Fame, all Chivalrous Orders of the World.*

CAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order.

ORDER and Regularity is not only the Beauty and Symmetry of Government and Societies, but also greatly contributes to their Establishment and Perpetuity. Statutes and Rules are as well the Bounds to determine, as Bonds to unite Fellowship and Societies together; and if either fall into disuse, or be unadvisedly broken, they open a Field to Dissolution and Ruin.

SUCH like Considerations mov'd and excited the victorious King *Edward* III. (after he had determin'd the Erection of this most renown'd *Order of the Garter*) to *devise and institute several laudable Statutes and Ordinances, to be duly observ'd and kept within the said Order*; which being collected into one Body, are call'd *The Statutes of Institution*.

THE Original of these was ordain'd to be kept within the Treasury of the College of *Windsor*, but hath long since wholly perish'd; yet a Transcript of them is recorded in the Reign of King *Henry* V. in an old Book call'd *Registrum Ordinis Chartaceum*. Two more ancient *Exemplars* of this Body of Statutes are also in being; the one in the Library of the Lord *Hatton*, and the other in the *Black Book* of the Order; and comparing them together, I shall here give from

the *Latin* the Heads they consist of.

1. THE King of *England*, his Heirs and Successors, are to be Sovereigns or Superiors of this Order.

2. NONE are to be admitted, unless he be a Gentleman of Blood, and that he be a Knight and without Reproach.

3. THE Knights-Companions were to be Twenty Six, each to have at *Windsor* a Mantle and Garter for the better Splendor of the Order; to wear the said Habit whensoever they go to the Chapel of St. *George* or Chapter-House, to hold a Chapter, or do any thing relating to their Order. In like manner they are to wear the Habit upon the Vigils of St. *George*, in their Procession from the King's Lodgings to the Chapel or Chapter-House, and returning back, and during Supper, continue so habited till it be over, and likewise on the Morrow of St. *George*'s Day, at Chapel, Dinner-time, Supper-time, and afterwards all the said Day, until the Sovereign or his Deputy shall deposite the Ensigns of the Order, and decree their Departure.

4. THERE were to be Thirteen Canons Secular, who at the Time of their Institution, or within a Year, were to be Priests, and as many Vicars already Priests, or to be made so at the next Ordination, answerable to the number of the Knights-Companions; these religious Persons to be presented by the several Founders each one, and upon the Death or Vacancy of such presented, the Sovereign of the Order ever afterwards to have the Nomination of them, who were bound to pray for the good Estate of the Sovereign and his Kingdom, and particularly for this Order.

5. THE Canons were to wear a Purple Mantle, with

the Arms of St. *George* in a Roundle upon their right Shoulder.

6. THERE were to be Twenty Six poor veterane Knights, each to have a competent Subsistence, their Election to be after the manner of the Canons aforesaid.

7. THESE Knights were to have a Red Mantle, with the Arms of St. *George*; but without any Circle of the Garter about it.

8. IF the Sovereign could not be present at the solemn Festival of St. *George*, his Deputy was to supply his Place at the Charge of the Sovereign; but such Deputy was not to make any new Ordinances, tho' he has License to correct or amend the old Ones.

9. EVERY Year, upon the Vigils of St. *George*, the Knights-Companions within the Realm, or elsewhere, if conveniently, are to assemble, at *Windsor* Castle, and be present there at the Celebration of Divine Service, in the Habit of the Order, where placed regularly in their Stalls or Seats, directly over their Heads their Helmets and Swords, *&c.* are to be hung up, and remain as long as such Knights live, in Honour of them, and to signify the Defence of the Church, to which they are obliged as a Military Order; but in case the Feast of St. *George* happens to fall within the Quindene or Fifteen Days after the Feast of *Easter*, then it was to be prorogued to the *Sunday* next following, accounting Fifteen Days from *Easter* Day, that every Knight-Companion might have reasonable time to come, nor be forced to ride upon any of the Three *Easter* Holy-days.

10. THAT they meet in St. *George*'s Chapel yearly, on the Eve of St. *George*, at the Hour of Three in the Afternoon; and if they come not at the Time assigned, without a just Excuse, which the Sovereign

or his Deputy allows, their Penalty is to be according to the Ordinance of the Chapter; which is, That they shall not enter into the Chapter Door for that time, but stay without, and shall have no Voice in any thing that is done in the said Chapter; and if they come not before the Beginning of Vespers, they shall not enter into their Stalls, but shall tarry below before the said Stalls in the Choiristers Places during Vespers. The like Penalty is ordain'd for not coming to the Mass or Morning-Service betime, and at Vespers, on St. *George*'s Day; and whosoever shall absent himself wholly from this Solemnity, without sufficient Excuse and Leave from the Sovereign or Deputy, he is not to enter within his Stall the next Feast after, but shall stay below, and before his Stall, as it is said at Vespers, and in the Morrows Procession must walk before the Three processional Crosses, [now the Choiristers,] and at Mass [Service] shall sit below until the Offering, and he to offer last. After which he is to come before the Sovereign, or his Deputy's Stall, and ask Pardon, which re-instates him in his Stall. Absenting the next second Time upon the Feast, without Leave, he has no Stall allowed him until he hath given and offered a Jewel upon St. *George*'s Altar, to the Value of Twenty Marks, which is to be double every Year until a Reconciliation.

11. WHERESOEVER they be, they must wear their Blue Robes from the Beginning of the first Vespers, on the Eve of St. *George*'s Day, to the second Vespers on the Morrow inclusive, *&c.*

12. IF any Knight-Companion appears publickly without his dignifying Garter, upon challenging the same, is to pay half a Mark to the Custos and College.

13. AT the Times of Offering, each associated with

the other who holds the opposite Stall, are to march in Procession together to make their Offerings; but alone, when his Consort is absent, and so that in all Processions the Sovereign goes last.

14. IN the Morrow after the Solemnity of St. *George*'s Feast is over, before their separating, a Mass *de Requie* or Office *de Defunctis* was to be used, at which the Knights-Companions were all entirely to be present, without necessary Impediment shown to the Sovereign or Deputy for Liberty to depart.

15. THEY were to leave their Robes at *Windsor* always, to be ready for them there upon any sudden Occasions that might evene.

16. JOURNYING near *Windsor*, in Honour of the Place, unless lawful Cause obstructs, they must take it in their Way, and assuming the Habit of the Order the Canons wore, devoutly to meet and conduct them into the Chapel; where, if it happens to be time of Divine Service, they are to hear the same; if not, they are to be detained no longer than while the Canons shall say the Psalm *de profundis* for the Defunct, and during their own Offering: But if any had riden thro' the Town, without visiting the Chapel and offering there, for every Neglect he must go one Mile on Foot from the said Chapel, to shew his Obedience, and offer an Half-Penny in Honour of St. *George*.

17. UPON first Notice of the Death of any of the Order, the Sovereign shall ordain a Thousand Masses, every Foreign Prince shall cause Eight Hundred, a Prince of Wales Seven Hundred, a Duke Six Hundred, an Earl Three Hundred, every Baron Two Hundred, and every Knight Batchellor One Hundred Masses to be celebrated for the Good of the Soul departed; which neglected for a Quarter of a Year after notice of such Death, the Masses are to be doubled; upon half a Year's Neglect, again doubled;

and so from Time to Time in like Form till the End of the Year, and then the Year's to be doubled.

18. UPON sure Notice of the Death of a Knight-Companion, the Sovereign, or his Deputy, is to converse by Letters, the Remainder [not Strangers] that are within the Kingdom, to meet him within Six Weeks in some convenient Place, and elect another; which assembled, at least Six, with the Sovereign or Deputy, every of them present is to name Nine of the worthiest and sufficientest Knights without Reproof that he knows, whether native Subjects or Foreigners, sobeit they hold no contrary Party, or be against the Sovereign, *viz.* Three Earls, or of sublimer Title; Three Barons, and Three Knights Batchellors, which Names the Bishop of *Windsor*, for the Time being, was to write, or, in his Absence, the Dean or Register, and, in their Absence, the oldest Residencer in the College, and after shew them to the Sovereign, who is to chuse out of them him that has the most Voices, and whom he esteems the most beneficial to the Crown and Kingdom. Every Knight failing to appear at an Election, without an approved Cause, was to pay to the Custos and College the Penalty of a Mark, and at his next coming to the Chapter shall kneel upon the Ground, in the midst of the Chapter, before the Sovereign or Deputy, until Reconciliation.

19. SOON after Election, the Knight-Companion elect is to have a Garter, in token of his Election, and that he is a Fellow of the Order; and as soon as decreed to take Possession of his Stall, but not before, is to have a Mantle, which, if he dies before he receiv'd, he was not to be accounted as one of the Order, because he wanted Possession; nevertheless he was to have one half of the Masses abovesaid, because he had the Garter deliver'd to him and nothing beside. If he was not installed within a Year

after his receiving the Garter, and especially if within the Realm, and without reasonable Excuse to be allowed of by the Sovereign or Deputy, his Election became void, and they might proceed to a new one: Moreover, neither the Sword nor Helmet was to be put upon his Stall within the Castle, before his coming; to the End, that if the Knight elect came not, his Atchievements might not be unhandsomly taken down and abused, but honourably removed into the Choir for the publick Use and Profit of the said College.

20. EVERY Foreigner elected was to have Certification of such his Election from the Sovereign, at the Sovereign's Charge, who was to send him the Garter and the Mantle, and a Copy of the Statutes of the Order, under the Common Seal of the said Order, within Four Months after the Election, the better for him to advise on; which being accepted, of whatsoever Condition he be, he was obliged within Eight Months after to send a sufficient Proxy, according to his State and Dignity, a Knight irreprehensible to be installed in his Room, and who was to bring with him a Silk Mantle of the Blue Colour of the Order, also a Sword and Helmet to remain at *Windsor*, which Mantle was be put upon the right Shoulder of the Proxy, by the Sovereign or Deputy at the time of Installment, when he is introduced to take the Stall in the Name of his Lord and Master; neither was he to deposite the same till the End of Divine Service; after which he was not to wear it, nor be admitted in the Chapter-House, or have any Suffrage, by virtue of any Powers vested in him; but this Favour Foreigners elected by Proxy were to have, that could not personally come themselves, they were to be Partakers of the whole Masses and Orisons of the Order; whereas, if they

died before the Installation, they were to have but a Moity of them.

21. UPON the Death of any Earl, [or of Superior Dignity] Baron, or Knight Batchellor, his Successor, whether Earl, [or of Superior Dignity] Baron, or Knight, was to have a vacant Stall of his Predecessor, without any changing of Places, except the Prince of *Wales* alone, who was to have always the next Stall, and opposite to the Sovereign; so that it may happen for a Knight to have an Earl's Place, or an Earl a Knight's Place; and this because the first Founders might be known.

22. EVERY Knight-Companion at his first Entrance, was to give a certain Alms, according to their Eminence and Degree, for the perpetual Maintenance of the Canons and Poor Knights, *viz.* the Sovereign Forty Marks, a Foreign King Twenty Pounds, a Prince of *Wales* Twenty Marks, a Duke Ten Pounds, an Earl Ten Marks, a Baron a Hundred Shillings, and a Knight Batchellor Five Marks, that by these pious Donations they might justly entitle themselves to the Name and Privileges of the Order; wherefore, before these Payments were rightly performed, their Sword and Helmet [Atchievements] were not to be hung up, and for Foreigners the Sovereign was obliged to pay himself.

23. UPON the Death of any of the Founders his Arms, in a Plate of Metal, was to be fixed upon the Back of his Stall, and their Successors were to have the like, but to be placed underneath their Predecessors, and not to be so great as those of the first Founders.

24. AT Admission every Knight-Companion must promise and swear personally, or by Proxy, faithfully to observe the Statutes of the Order, and none are to be installed by Proxy but Foreigners only, which

cannot conveniently come in Person.

25. IF the Sovereign be out of *England* at the Installation of any Knight-Companion, or could not attend himself to do what appertains to him in that Point, he might impower and authorize any of the Fellows to officiate for him.

26. THAT there be a Common Seal or Signet Keeper, whom the Sovereign was to assign.

27. EVERY Knight-Companion was to have a Copy of the Statutes under the Seal of the Order, the Original sealed likewise with the said Seal, to remain for evermore within the Treasury of the College, and upon the Death of any Knight-Companion, his Executors were to send back such Copy to be deliver'd to the Custos or Warden.

28. NO Knight-Companion was to go out of the Realm and Dominion of *England*, without the Knowledge and Licence of the Sovereign, who of Grace and Favour is bound to grant it upon a Military Expedition, or other notable Act appertaining to the Honour of Knighthood, in Preference and Advancement of this Order of St. *George*.

29. THEY were not to arm themselves against each other, but in the Wars of their Sovereign Lord, in his right and just Quarrel; and if it happen'd that any of the Order should be retain'd in the Cause and Quarrel of any Lord, and the adverse Party desir'd another Knight-Companion on his Side, that latter Knight is by no means to agree but to excuse himself in all Things, because his Fellow was armed on the other Side, and was retain'd before him. And every Knight was bound to except and agree, at his being retain'd, that he may have his Discharge from the Wars, upon any of the Order's being engaged in Arms

before him for the contrary Party; and if the second retained knows not of it, upon notice that any of his Fellows were retained before him, and armed on the contrary Side, the second retained Knight was to excuse himself to his Master, and relinquish the Quarrel.

30. ALL Licences given to the Knight-Companions to travel in quest of Honour by Military Exploits; also all Certificates, mandatous Letters, Certificates, and other Writings whatsoever relating to the Order, were to be issued out by the Sovereign, under the Seal of the Order, to remain in the keeping of one of the Order, during the Sovereign's Pleasure. And if the Keeper of the Seal absent himself upon reasonable Cause, he was to leave the Seal with another of the Fellowship that the Sovereign should appoint, to the Intent that the Seal at no time be out of the Presence of the Sovereign, he being within his Dominion. And in like manner concerning the Seal in the Absence of the Sovereign or the Deputy.

31. IF any Knight-Companion for Devotion sake should desire to dwell at *Windsor*, he was to maintain himself at his own, and not at the College Charge.

32. ANY other Knight, not of the Order, upon the Account of Devotion, that would reside there, was to be provided for at the Appointment of the Sovereign, and the Fellowship also. Any Knight or other Person giving 10 *l.* yearly Rents or Lands, or more, to the College, to participate of their Prayers and Suffrages, he was to be registred in the Calendar of Benefactors, and continually be pray'd for by the Canons and Poor Knights.

33. UPON the Death of any Canon, the Custos or Warden is to certify the same by Letters to the Sovereign, if beyond Sea, to know whom he pleases to present to the Canonship.

34. THERE was to be a Register appointed by the Sovereign and Fellowship, the most intelligent Person of the College, who was to be present at the Chapters, to record their Elections and the Electors, their Punishments, and Causes of them, with their Reconciliations, all Acts whatsoever administred in their Council, from Chapter to Chapter yearly; for the faithful Execution of which Office he was to be sworn at his Admission therein; and whatsoever had been register'd was in the Beginning of the following Chapter, on the Vigils of St. *George*, to be publickly recited before the Sovereign and the whole Fellowship, that what was amiss and incorrect might be mended and reduced to due Form.

§ 2. BESIDES these Statutes there are Two other Bodies, or Exemplars establish'd since, the one by King *Henry* V. the other by King *Hen.* VIII. King *Henry* V. finding the Glory of the Order declining, removed the Grand Festival and other Solemnities, and commanded a strict Observation of all the Founder's Statutes, and brought many more to like Perfection, which he subjoined to such of them, where they might be properly and are as follow:

To Article	3. THAT the Knights should mark their Obeisance in the Choir first to the Altar, and next to the Sovereign, or in his Absence to his Stall.
	8. THAT the Deputy should elect, if the Sovereign (when abroad) had not Six Knights with him.

9. THAT the Feast of St. *George* should not be kept upon St. *Mark*'s Day, nor the Days of St. *Philip* and *Jacob*, nor of the Holy Cross, neither upon any Days which should happen in the Festivals of the Ascension or Pentecost, or other solemn Feasts ordained by the Church to the interrupting their Divine Service.

12. That when a Knight should ride out he might wear a Blue Silk Ribbon instead of his Garter.

14. That the Order and Manner of Offering up the Atchievements should be as is there prescribed, *viz.* before they offer their Money, their Swords should be first offered by Two Companions, which the Sovereign or his Deputy should appoint, and afterwards their Helmets with their Crests, by Two others of the Order.

20. That Knights absent in the Sovereign's Service might be install'd by Deputy.

31. That the Sovereign should take a Signet of the Order abroad with him, to be fixed to all the Acts he does in Foreign Parts relating to this Order, in Distinction to those done at home.

34. That no Charge should be admitted upon the College by the Custos or Canons, without the Sovereign's Consent likewise.

THE Statutes with these Additions (as the Statutes of Institution) this King caused to be translated into *French*, and transcribed into a Roll, which was

ordered to be presented to every Knight-Companion under the common Seal of the Order. In after Times it was transcribed into Books; and by a Decree, *Anno* 3 *Hen.* VII. an Original Book of these Statutes and Institutions, fair written, was to be reposed in the College of St. *George*, and the Scribe or Register to have Transcripts of them in Readiness, to present the elected Knights withal.

THE last and largest Body was first began, and received the finishing Stroke by King *Hen.* VIII. chiefly in regard some of the former Statutes wanted Explication and others Contraction. And for the compleating of which Purpose, on St. *George*'s Day, *Anno* 9 *Regni sui* he summoned all the Knights-Companions to convene next Year at the Time of the Solemnity, about the Abrogation of what tended to darken the Honour of this Order (if any such were), and for the Advancement of what might promote the Grandeur and Lustre of it. But these Resolves came to no Perfection till *May* 28. *Anno* 11 *Regni sui*, when he entred upon this Reformation with all magnificent Ceremony imaginable, for being accompanied with Nineteen Knights-Companions of the Order proceeding in Cavalcade to the Chapter-House, and taking into Consideration their former Statutes of Knights-Companions, with all due Reverence implor'd the Sovereign to reform and explain them as he should think convenient, which he brought to a successful Period, by the Advice and Consent of the Society assembled: That done, all present entreated the Sovereign, kneeling, that where any of them had been peccant against the Order, he would please to remit, and issue out a general Pardon, which he granted and ratify'd in Chapter next Day. This was a Task of Three Years compleat before it rose to Perfection, *viz. April* 23. *Anno* 14 *Hen.* VIII. for then

the Sovereign, out of right singular Love, well-temper'd Zeal, and entire Affection to this most noble Order, to the Estate of Chivalry, and the Continuance and Encrease thereof; as also at the humble Request and instant Importunity of the then Knights-Companions, and by their Advice, Counsel and Consent, did interpret and elucidate all the Obscurities, Doubts and Ambiguities of the former Statutes and Ordinances. Divers Affairs contain'd in Fifty of them being explain'd and amended; he made likewise necessary Additions, the Original whereof being sign'd and seal'd, were commanded to be carefully laid up in the Treasury of *Windsor* College, to remain as a Standard to succeeding Times; yet they have not been seen there these many Years past.

THE Articles and Clauses added to the former Statutes, in this last Body, are these:

To Article	
	1. That the Interpretation of the Statutes, *&c.* belongeth to the Sovereign.
	2. The Three Points of Reproach declar'd, and what is meant by a Gentleman of Blood.
	4. Of the Prerogative of the Feast.
	5. How the Feast is to be observed by absent Knights.
	6. Attendance on the Sovereign, if he be not at the Feast.
	7. That the Sovereign's Deputy may correct Things in Chapter.
	12. The offering up of Atchievements, and a Taper arm'd with an Escutcheon.
	13. Canons to sit in the lower Stalls, when any Knights are present.
	14. That Six Knights make a Chapter.

20. The Manner of Installation set down.

21. Clause for a Foreign Knight's Deputy to be conducted from the Chapter-House to the Stall; and for making an Election void, if the Knight send not his Proxy within Seven Months.

23. For advancing and translating of Stalls.

25. Plates not to be larger than the first Founders, except Strangers.

27. The Time Three Months prefix'd for the Executor of a deceas'd Knight-Companion to send back the Copy of the Orders deliver'd to him at his Admission, which might be also sent to one of the principal Officers of the Order.

38. Concerning the Collar of the Order.

THIS Body of Statutes was compil'd in *Latin*, and is recorded in the *Black Book* of the Order. It was translated into *French* and *English* by Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, Kt. then Garter King of Arms. The *English* Version annex'd here to this Treatise, is what hath since been deliver'd (instead of the former Statutes) to all succeeding Knights-Companions, according to the Injunction; but of late Times appointed to be sent to Foreign Princes and other elect Knights abroad, sealed with the Great Seal of the Order, affix'd to a Label of Blue Silk and Gold.

§ 3. THERE have been several Endeavours since the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. for reforming the Statutes. As first, King *Edward* VI. who as Sovereign, by the

Orders themselves, had an undoubted Prerogative set him to alter and reform many Things which seem'd inconsistent with the Religion he establish'd. To which Purpose, at a Chapter at *Greenwich*, held *April* 23. in the Third Year of his Reign, the Lord *St. John*, the Earl of *Arundel*, and Sir *William Paget*, were to peruse and make them agreeable to the King's other Proceedings, by the Assistance and Advice of the Protector, the Duke of *Somerset*, and other Companions. This was follow'd by a subsequent Order pass'd in the Chapter at *Greenwich* the Year after, that the Statutes should be reform'd and corrected as they thought expedient: And for the better Accomplishment of their Design, at the next Feast, *April* 24. 5 *Edw.* VI. another Order commenc'd, impowering the Duke of *Somerset*, the Marquess of *Northampton*, the Earls of *Warwick*, *Arundel*, *Bedford* and *Wilts*, to peruse and amend the Statutes and other Books of the Order, which were brought to some tolerable Degree of Perfection; for thereupon a new Body was collected (in general very much altering the Laws of the Order) and publish'd *March* 17. *Anno* 7 *Edw.* VI. But this King within Four Months after expiring, Queen *Mary*, his Sister and Successor, the very first Thing she transacted was to abrogate and make them void; wherefore we need not mention them, as never in use and unrevived. For the Execution of which Purpose, she conven'd a Chapter at St. *James*'s, the 27th of *September* following; and it was then decreed, that the said Laws and Ordinances, as inconvenient, impertinent, and tending to Novelty, should be disannulled, and no Account to be made of them for the future; and for the quicker Execution, Sir *William Petre* (that Day admitted Chancellor) had Orders to see them speedily expung'd out of the Book of Statutes, and

forthwith defac'd, lest any Memory of them should remain to Posterity; and only those of her Father, *Hen.* VIII. and his Royal Predecessors, should be retain'd.

IN this Affair King *Philip*, her Husband, appear'd no less zealous; for on the 5th of *August*, 1 and 2 *Philip* and *Mary*, (which was the 3d Day after he had been invested with the Habit) himself being present at a Chapter at *Windsor*, it was ordain'd, That all Acts and Decrees in the Great Book, [*i. e.* the *Black Book* aforesaid] which were repugnant and disagreeable, either with the ancient and receiv'd Statutes of the Order, or else with the Laws of the Realm, should clearly be abolish'd and erased, by the Marquis of *Winchester*, the Earls of *Arundel*, *Pembroke*, and the Lord *Paget*.

NO sooner was Queen *Elizabeth* fix'd on the Throne, but soon after, *viz.* on St. *George*'s Day, in the second Year of her Reign, a View of the Statutes was committed, by Commission, to Four of the Knights-Companions, *viz.* the Marquis of *Northampton*, the Earls of *Arundel* and *Pembroke*, and the Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, who were thereby impower'd to peruse and consider those Statutes with the utmost Care and regard, if any of them were repugnant to the Religion, Laws and Statutes of the Realm; and if any such were recorded, to represent them faithfully to the Sovereign, that she, in Conjunction with the Knights-Companions, might establish such Decrees concerning them as she should think fit; but that any thing was done in pursuance hereunto, doth not appear; for the Transcripts of her Father's Body of the Statutes, throughout the Time of her Reign, were presented to the Knights-Companions at their Installations; and the Practice of her Time was pursuant to the Direction therein, except in some few

Things now and then added or alter'd at future Chapters, when there arose fresh Matters for such Expedients.

KING *James* I. her Successor, revolv'd something towards a new Regulation; and in order to put it in Execution, the 14th of *May*, in the 9th Year of his Reign, decreed, That Commissionary Letters should be granted to the Earls of *Nottingham*, *Worcester*, *Pembroke* and *Northampton*, to empower them to examine the Registers and other Monuments which pertained to that Order; and where any Passage should be found obsolete or obscure, to make it conspicuous and clear; where Contrariety appear'd, fitly to reconcile it; yet with no Design of innovating any Thing, but an Intention of renewing all, as near as might be, to the first Standard and most ancient Institution of the Order; saving always Power to himself, as Sovereign of the Order, to add or diminish any Matter (according to the Occasion) as it should seem agreeable to his Prudence for the Honour of this Most Noble Order. What Progress they made in this Commission, the Memoirs of that Time are silent in; but some few Years after, this Affair was reviv'd, and another was issu'd forth, to the Earls of *Nottingham*, *Worcester*, *Southampton*, *Arundel* and *Montgomery*, and the Viscount *Lisle*, all Knights-Companions, dated *April* 26. in the 16th Year of his Reign; which Six, or any Four of them, were thereby constituted to take an exact Survey of all the ancient Statutes and Articles of the said Order; and authoriz'd to call before them all such Persons, whether Officers of the said Order, or others, as could give any Light or Information concerning that Affair; and after a serious Deliberation, to pen down what in them they conceiv'd meet to be explain'd, and what to be added, whereby to render the Order

more illustrious, that the same being presented to the Sovereign and the Society, at a Chapter holden, might be resolv'd on in part, or in all, to be put in Execution, if it seem'd so good to that King.

THIS Affair mov'd very slowly; but towards the latter End of his Reign, the Earls of *Worcester*, *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, *Surry* and *Leicester*, Five of the Six Commissioners above-nam'd, having held divers Conferences, and debated several Matters represented to them, and at a Chapter convened at *Whitehall* the 19th of *May*, *Anno* 20 *Jac.* I. did present to the Sovereign certain Articles, subscribed with their Hands, which, for the Honour of the Order, they thought requisite to be duly observ'd.

BY the first of which they made Provision for a further Progression and Advancement of the illustrious Institution, in proposing, that every Year a Commission from the Sovereign should be granted, or continu'd to such Knights of the Order as the Chapter should pitch on, to deliberate and weigh all Affairs that fell under the Order, and that the Year after, an Estimate, by the Knights in Chapter, should be exhibited, of their Resolutions and Proceedings by Virtue of the said Commission. This, with Eight other Articles, were confirm'd by the Sovereign and Twelve of the Knights-Companions, the 22d of *May* following, in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*; and so prosperously their Endeavours succeeded, that on the Feast-day of St. *George*, at *Windsor* in the ensuing Year, the Earl of *Worcester*, (being then the Sovereign-Deputy) with Ten Knights-Companions more, gave their assent to Eight other Articles (most of them concerning the Alms-Knights) which the Morning after had the Approbation of the Sovereign; and before the Celebration of Divine Service, by his Deputy and Companions assembled in the Chapter-

House, the Observation thereof was duly decreed.

KING *Charles* I. design'd and endeavour'd the most compleat and absolute Reformation of any of his Predecessors; and at the Solemnity of St. *George*, held at *Windsor* the 6th of *October*, in the 6th Year of his Reign, He commission'd Nine Knights-Companions, *viz.* the Earls of *Mulgrave*, *Pembroke*, *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, *Surry*, *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, *Dorset*, *Holland*, *Berkshire* and *Suffolk*, with command to assemble Four Times in a Year, to take into their Consideration the Affairs of the Order; all which, but the Earls of *Mulgrave* and *Dorset*, met at *Whitehall* the 2d of *January* following, where some few Matters fell under their Consultation. This Commission was seconded by one of a larger extent about Three Months after, and directed to the said Knights-Companions, or to any Eight, Seven, Six, Five or Four of them, empowering them to meet and devise, and exactly preponderate all the Statutes and Ordinances of the Order, as well such as were established at the Foundation, as those that had been since made, by Explanation or Addition, and to weigh advisedly whether any Thing had been enacted, that had caused Doubt or Ambiguity, or stood in need of any Change or Amendment; and if upon mature Deliberation by them thus conven'd, there should appear any Contrariety or Defect, for want of plain Expression, or other Omission, fit to be supplied, tending to the Honour of the Order, That then the Sovereign might, upon Return of their Proceedings, resolve upon some general Declaration in Chapter, to reform and reduce into one Body all the Statutes and Ordinances thereof, that the same being compil'd and settled in one perfect Model, might be so consign'd to Posterity, free from all future Questions and Doubts.

NEVERTHELESS not any thing was done upon this Commission, tho' it stood in force even from the 6th to the 13th Year of this King's Reign; but where the Neglect lay History does not fully inform us, tho' it may be conjectur'd by what follows.

AT the Feast of St. *George*, celebrated by Prorogation at *White-hall*, for the Year 1636. upon the 17th, 18th, and 19th Days of *April*, 1637. divers Petitions for Reformation, and reducing of Matters to their pristine Constitution, were presented to the Sovereign by the Chancellor, and read; some of which, more especially, tending to set off and encrease the Honour of the Order, were received and decreed by the Sovereign, and the rest referr'd to the said Knights-Commissioners. The first of those Decrees which at that time had its Sanction, was to revive and renew the Powers given in the former Commission; and thereupon a new one, dated the 7th of *May* following, was issued under the Great Seal of the Order, and directed to the Earls of *Mulgrave*, *Darby*, *Pembroke*, and *Montgomery*, *Arundel*, and *Surry*, *Kelly*, *Salisbury*, *Dorset*, *Holland*, *Barkshire*, *Suffolk*, *Lyndsey*, *Exeter*, Marquiss *Hamilton*, Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Darby*, *Moreton*, and *Northumberland*, or to Three or more of them, to meet and consult of any Matters contain'd in the Statutes, or for Honour of the Order. These Knights-Commissioners were endow'd with all the plenary Powers given in the foresaid Commission, dated 6 *Car.* I. unto which was granted a further Addition, for the better effecting the Sovereign's Care: That Three or more of them should meet at the Sovereign's Court, and begin to put the said Commission in execution in *Whitson* Week next ensuing, attended and assisted by the Chancellor of the Order, and all, or any other Officers, or such of

them as they should fix on, or find serviceable. And being assembled, to have free Liberty to hear, propound, and debate of whatsoever shall fall under their Cognisance, or that they should conceive conducible to the Honour and perfect Establishment of so Illustrious and Noble a Body. And to prepare all Matters of such their Resolutions and Debates to be laid before the Sovereign at the next Feast of St. *George*, and so successively at every Chapter so appointed by him, to receive his full Determination, Approbation, and Royal Assent, with further Power to adjourn from time to time, after the first Opening and Reading of the said Commission; their Meetings to be in such Places, and on such Days as should seem most convenient to them.

NOW who wou'd suppose, that after so Noble an Intention of the Sovereign, and his earnest Solicitude to issue forth a second Commission, his hearty recommending and exciting their Deligence for a speedy Dispatch, and lastly, his expecting an Account of their Transactions the next Feast, these honourable Persons, Companions of the Order, should need a Spur to accomplish so laudable a Design; but it was so.

FOR altho' the Commission was opened at *White-hall* the 30th of May following, in the Presence of the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland*, Marquiss of *Hamilton*, and Duke of *Lenox*, Commissioners; yet Sir *Thomas Row* Chancellor, in his Letter to Dr. *Christopher Wren*, dated the 4th of *June*, 1637. sadly complained, That it was much as he could do to draw together Five of the Knights-Companions, to open and read the Commission, and this *quasi in transitu*, was in Confusion and Hurry, and all that was transacted was to appoint another Convention at Court in *Midsummer* Week then next

ensuing, and charge the Chancellor to prepare Matter (for Propositions and Observations upon the Statutes) fit for their Consultations against that Appointment, according to the Tenor of the Commission. And in another Place writes, That he found such Difficulty to procure Meetings, and as certain *non Chalance* in every one, as if it were but a ceremonious Affair, and so few hearty in it, that he feared he and the Officers should wait to little Purpose: And so indeed it fell out; for albeit he attended in *Midsummer* Week, according to their Direction, yet there was nothing dispatch'd, save only the adjourning of their Meeting to *London*.

SOME little Progress was afterwards made in this Affair at *White-hall* the 8th of *February* following, where Three of them were present, *viz.* the Earls of *Berkshire*, *Lindsey*, and *Northumberland*, who order'd the Chancellor, Register, and Garter, to prepare an Abbreviation of the Statutes, and reduce every thing of one Head into an Act, to keep up to Method, and avoid Confusion.

THE 1st of *February* after, another Assembly of Seven of the Knights-Commissioners was held at *White-hall*, in whose Presence a few Points were debated; but little or nothing concluded.

§ 4. AS concerning the Annals of the Order, or the Books wherein the several Resolutions and Decrees occasionally made in Chapters, and wherein other historical and ceremonial Matters relating to it are recorded, it will not be amiss to give some Account of them in this Place.

THE first, in Order of time, is an old Paper Book written in *French*, call'd *Registrum Chartaceum*, hitherto fortunately preserv'd in the Paper Office at

White-hall, which probably was begun by *John Coningham*; for we find him, 1414. (a little before the Annals commenced) made Canon of *Windsor*, and Register of the Order, and in regard the same Hand-Writing is carry'd on from the Beginning of the Book down to 16 *Hen.* VI. inclusive, where follows an *Hiatus* till *Anno* 23 *Hen.* VI. that the Annals began to be set down with another Hand; and that he shortly after died in 1445. Henceforward these Annals are entred with promiscuous Hands, which may be presumed the proper Hand-Writings of the Registers of this Noble Order, as they succeeded each other in the Office.

AFTER we find *Richard Sidnor* mention'd in the Register *Anno* 16 *Hen.* VIII. (who subscribed his Name at the foot of every Leaf) the Annals were pen'd in one Hand until *Anno* 26 *Hen.* VIII. that *Robert Aldrydge*, D. D. and one of the Canons of *Windsor* succeeded him; and then 'tis evident the Writing also was changed to an old set *Roman* Hand, which ran on to the End of 29 *Hen.* VIII. in which Year he was advanced to the Bishoprick of *Carlisle*; and this Book breaks off in the 31st of his Reign.

BESIDES this there is another Book that goes by the Name of the *Black Book*, wherein the Annals of the Order are transcribed in *Latin*, concerning which there pass'd a Decree, *Anno* 3 *Hen.* VII. that it should be fairly copy'd out, and afterwards that the Sovereign should be put in Remembrance of it; but neither of these Decrees was put in execution, nor was this confirm'd till towards the End of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. This Book differs very little from the *Registrum Chartaceum*, for therein is nothing enrolled relating to the Order (except one of the Exemplars of the Founders Statutes, and a Catalogue of the first Twenty-five Knights-Companions) before

the 4th Year of King *Henry* V. the Annals of the Order, until that time, being entirely lost. It hath the same Hiatus or Intervals from 16 to 23 *Hen.* VI. from 7 to 10 of *Edw.* 4. from 4 to 7 *Hen.* VII. and from 10 to 14 *Hen.* 7. It also runs parallel therewith for the most part, and that it was compil'd by Dr. *Aldrydge*, whilst he continu'd Register, is collected from some Passages in the Preface of all the Sovereigns, ending with King *Henry* VIII. The Transcription of this Book was finish'd *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VIII. for so far is written, as also the Appendix, with one and the same Hand; (in a middle-siz'd Text) but *Anno* 32 *Hen.* VIII. another Hand appears, which, with some Variation, is continu'd to the End of 5 *Edw.* VI. where this Book breaks off.

THE Register of the Order was oblig'd to provide Two Books, and therein to enter the Ordinances, Statutes, and Acts of this Noble Corporation, one to be lodg'd at the Chapter House at *Windsor*, and call'd, *Index Windesoriensis*, and the other being a Duplicate of the former, to remain in his own Custody, ready to expose to the View of the Sovereign, whensoever he should demand it; this latter was called *Aulæ Registrum*.

AS to the general Directions for Compiling these Books, and the Particulars they are to consist of, we are inform'd from the said Statutes and Constitutions; for besides the Entry of all the Scrutinies taken in Chapter and Elections made thereupon, it is his Office to record the Penalties inflicted on Knights-Companions, and the Reconciliation of all Delinquents with other Acts, and their Causes appertaining to the Order, all which are decreed to be recited before the Sovereign and Knights-Companions at the Beginning of the Chapter yearly, if Occasion be, to correct and reduce into

Method. Moreover he is to record all the Policies in War, Exploits, Transactions, and memorable Atchievements, both of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, according as he can best attain the Knowledge of them, by his own diligent Search, or the Assistance of Mr. Garter, which having consign'd to Writing from Year to Year, is to be perused at the next Chapter by the Knights-Companions, for their Approbation and Correction; and being reiterated the second time in the Chapter, he is to see that they be fairly engrossed in the said Book, for a perpetual Remembrance.

AND because the time perfix'd for Rehearsal of these Particulars in Chapter, had in succeeding Years been imploy'd in other Affairs. In one of those Articles which the Knights-Companions exhibited to King *Jac.* I. the 19th of *May, Anno Jac.* R. 20. and ratified the 22d of *May* following, it was decreed that nothing of this Nature, or any other Act in Chapter, should be registred before it had been perus'd and pass'd the Consideration of the then Knights-Companions, or at least Four of them, who when they should set Times apart to consult of the Affairs of this Order (for which they were chiefly commission'd) might then also make Use of such Opportunities as should give this Business Dispatch with more Conveniency. Upon mature Consideration had of those Injunctions, the then Register at a Chapter held 19 *Nov.* 22 *Car.* II. presented the Continuation of the Annals of this Order, which he had ranged in order to register in the *Liber Carolinus*, and submitted them to the Approbation of the Knights-Companions, whom the Sovereign had commission'd to inspect the Affairs of the Order; which Tender, when they declin'd, he propos'd that it might pass the Examination of the Prelate; but they

not giving their Assent to it, in regard the Register himself was under the Obligation of an Oath, to deal with the utmost Fidelity in his Reports, it was decreed, That the said Annals should be fairly recorded in the Book, without any further Inspection.

BESIDES the abovemention'd Particulars, there were Materials of another Nature, decreed to be collected by the Chancellor of the Order and Garter King of Arms, to be digested first, and after entred by the Register; for whereas one part of the Chancellor's Duty was to make a Narration every Year in Chapter, at the Feast of St. *George*, of the illustrious Exploits of the Knights-Companions, as well as the Actions that tend to eclipse their Glory; so the Register was to note these, and record them from a perpetual Æra or Memorial of their Honour or Disgrace.

AND it is part of Garter's Duty diligently to enquire after the Valiant, Fortunate, and Renown'd Acts, both of the Sovereign and the rest of the Knights-Companions, and relate them with all Exactness to the Register, for his Engrossing: But how sparingly these are put in execution, the Annals themselves bear witness. However, Sir *Edward Walker* Garter-King has drawn up an Account of the shining Actions and Characters of the Knights-Companions, beginning with *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, and continuing it down to his Son, which he deliver'd Dr. *Ryves* the Register, for the Use afore-directed.

AMONG the Articles establish'd at the Feast of St. *George*, 21 *Jac.* I. the last is, That the then Register should compose a Book, wherein should be orderly transcribed the Form and Manner of all the Solemnities, Ceremonies, and Processions, at the Celebration of the Order; as also of taking down and offering the defunct Knight's Atchievements, that the Knights-Companions might have free Recourse to it;

but such Book never was extant.

For the Safety and Preservation of the *Annals*, the Knights-Commissioners determined the 22nd of *May, An. Jac.* I. 20. That a secure and convenient Place within the Castle of *Windsor* should be appointed, in which all Acts concerning the Order should be reposed, and to which every Knight-Companion at all times might have access. And upon the Remove or Decease of the Register of the Order, the Book, containing the Account of all such Transactions, should be committed to one of the Knights of the Order.

The second of these Books is called the *Blue Book*, so call'd, being bound in Blue Velvet; it begins with the first Year of Queen *Mary*, and ends at the 18th of King *Jac.* I.

The third being bound in Red Velvet, is denominated the *Red Book*; it commences where the *Blue Book* leaves off, and treats of the like Acts and Entries, and is carry'd down to 14 *Car.* I: having first given a full Account of the Installation of the Prince, afterwards King *Charles* II. And as to great part of this Work, it was perform'd by the elegant and judicious Dr. *Matthew Wren*, Bishop of *Ely*, and Register of the Order, whose excellent Pattern his Brother and Successor Dr. *Christopher Wren* hath copy'd in its following Tract. This Bishop compiled a MS. *A. D.* 1631. wherein, by way of Comment upon King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, he hath compendiously shewn what Alteration there hath passed in the Law of the Garter, a Work performed with great Judgment, and exceedingly useful to the Curious.

The fourth and last Book is, *Liber Carolinus*, and commences 1640. wherein the *Annals* are brought down to the beginning of 1670. by *Ryves*, then Register. And in a Chapter conven'd at *Windsor* the

16th of *April, Anno* 13 *Car.* II. it was decreed, That there should be Two of these Books compiled, the one printed in *Latin*, in the Custos of the Register at *Windsor*; and the other in *English*, to be reserv'd at *Whitehall*, and call'd, *Registrum Aulicum*.

CAP. VII.

The Habit *and* Ensigns *of the Order*.

THE Habit and Ensigns of this most Noble Order are most eminently distinguishable and magnificent, and consist of these Particulars, *viz.* Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, George, and Collar; for as the *Romans* were very exact and particular in assigning each Degree a peculiar Habit and Vesture, by which the Quality and Rank of their Citizens might be discernable, the Distinction of Apparel was afterwards taken up by divers other Nations, whence every Military, as well as Ecclesiastick Order of Knighthood, did appropriate to it self a peculiar Dress, Ensign, or Badge, as a Mark of Distinction one from another, to set off the Lustre and Honour of their several Societies.

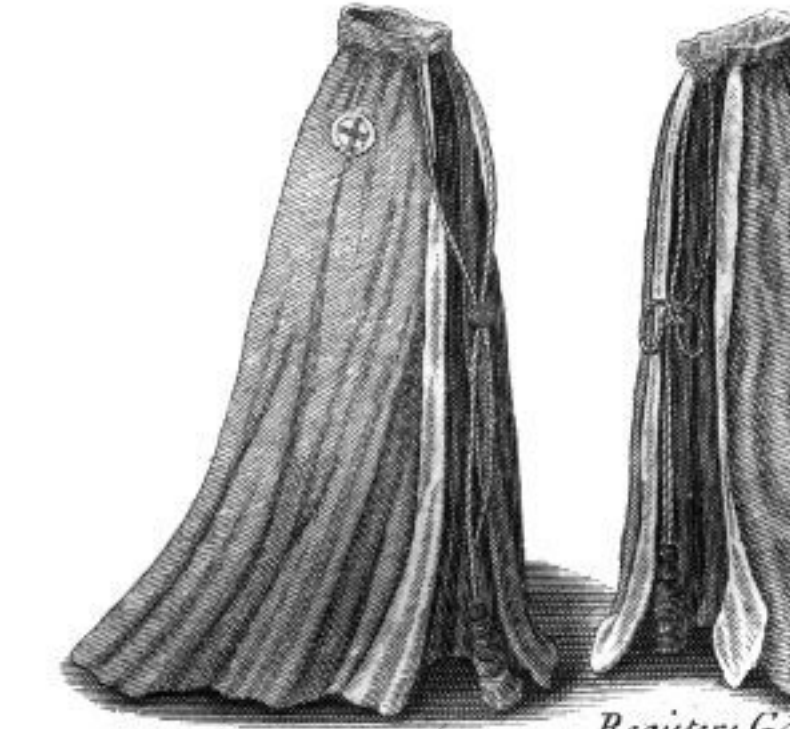
The four first, *viz.* the Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, and Hood, were assigned the Knights Companions, by the Founder, and the George and Collar by King *Henry* VIII. and all these together are called the whole Habit or Ensigns of the Order, which we shall treat of succinctly, beginning with the Garter.

The Royal Garter challengeth the Preheminence, for from it this famous Order receiv'd its Denomination: It is the first part of the Habit presented to Foreign Princes and Absent Knights, and

that wherewith they, and all other elect Knights, are first adorn'd; and of so great Honour and Grandeur, that by the bare Investiture with this Noble Ensign, the Knights are esteem'd Companions of the greatest Military Order in the World.

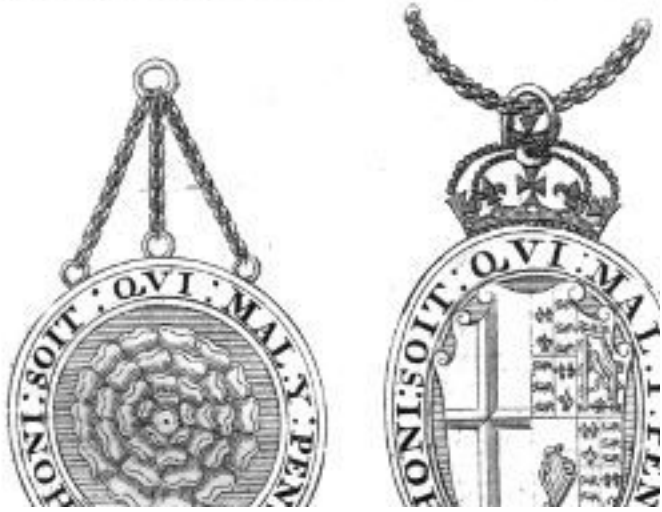
The Materials whereof it was compos'd at first, is an *Arcanum*; nor is it described by any before *Polydore Virgil*, and he but in general: As to the ornamental Part of it, it was adorn'd with Gold and precious Stones, and had a Buckle of Gold at the End, to fasten it about the Leg; but there's no doubt but it was wrought with rich Embroidery, and the Motto rais'd with Gold, Pearl, and sundry Sorts of Silk, as may be guess'd from the Garters anciently plac'd on the left side of the Knights-Companions Mantles, and those other little embroider'd Garters, wherewith their Surcoats and Hoods were heretofore embellish'd.

The present Habits, Ensigns and Badges, belonging to the Officers of the Garter.

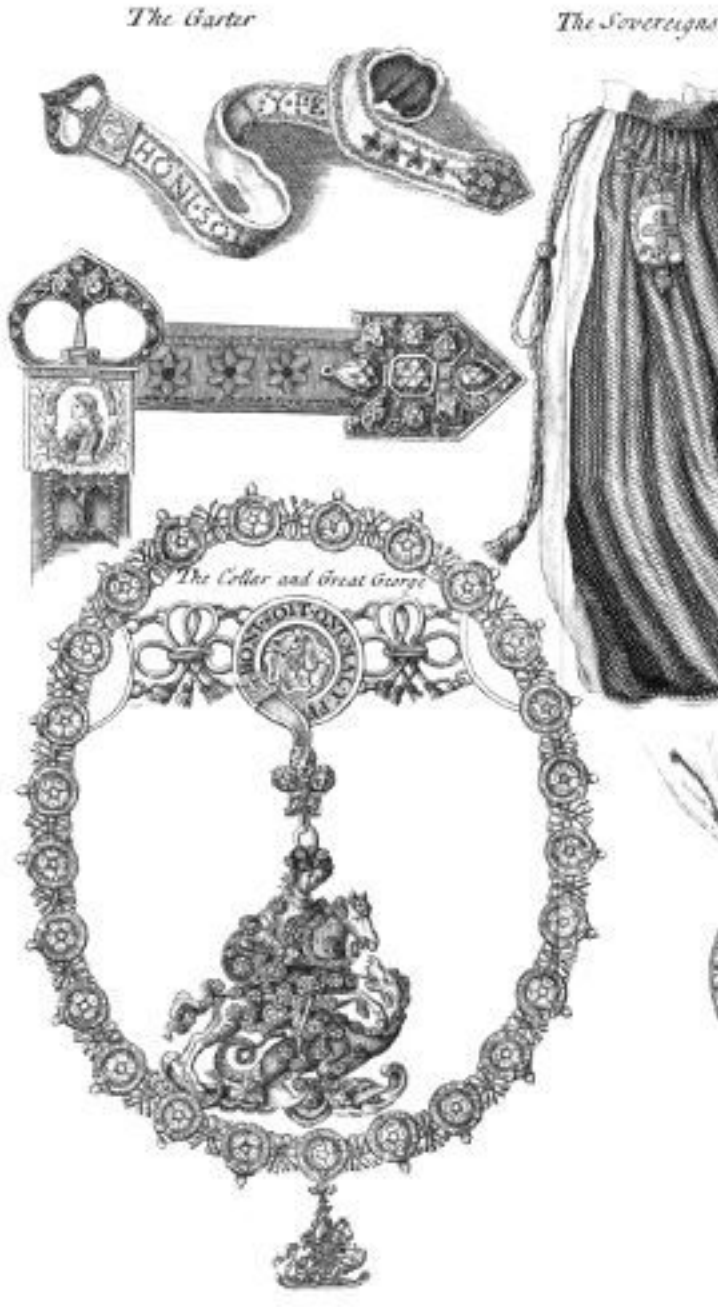


The Prelate & Chancellors Mantle.

Registers, Ga
Black Rods, M



The Prelate & Chancellors Mantle. Registers, Garters & Black
Chancellors Badge Garters Badge Bl


The Garter
The Sovereigns
HONI SOIT
The Collar and Great Gorge

Chancellors Badge Garters Badge Black Rods Badge The Gart George Ribbond & George A Knight

BUT of those wrought in the last Age, we have more particular Satisfaction; for we find the Garter sent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, *Anno* 1 and 2 *Philip* and *Mary*, was set with Letters of Goldsmith's Work, the Buckle and Pendant of the same, and on the Pendant a Ruby, and a Pearl hanging at the End. The Garter made for *Francis* II. *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, was richly wrought with Letters of Gold, set off and garnish'd with Stones, the Buckle and Pendant weighing Three Ounces and an half-quarter, was richly set with Rubies and Diamonds. The *French* King *Henry* IV. had a Garter of Purple Velvet embroider'd with Letters of Gold, and deck'd out with Diamonds and Rubies. And the Garter of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, was embroider'd with Gold and Pearls: But that Garter sent to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, outvied all others conferr'd by former Sovereigns, each Letter of the Motto being compos'd of small Diamonds; and for every Stop, a Diamond within a Range of Diamonds, above and below, on the sides of the Garter, and besides other Diamonds on the Buckle, and about the same, to the Number in all of 411.

THE Garter which King *Charles* I. wore upon his Leg at the Time of his Martyrdom, had the Letters of the Motto compos'd likewise of Diamonds, which amounted to the Number of 412. It came to the Hands of Captain *Preston* (one of the Usurper's Captains) from whom the Trustees, for Sale of the King's Goods, receiv'd it, and sold it to *Ireton*, sometimes Lord Mayor of *London*, for 205 *l.* But after

the Restoration, the King's Attorney-General proceeding upon an Action of *Trover* and *Conversion*, Verdict was given for the King against him for 205 *l.* and 10 *l.* costs of Suits, in *Trinity* Term, 16 *Car.* II.

THE Motto of King *Charles* II. was set with Diamonds upon Blue Velvet, and the Borders wrought with fine Gold Wire; the Diamonds which framed the Letters of the Motto, were Rose Diamonds, much of a Size or Proportion; but those which framed the Stops, Table-Diamonds; the Total which set each Letter, compos'd the Stops, Ilot Holes, and adorn'd the Buckle; the Table was Two Hundred and Fifty; the Hinge of the Buckle was pure Gold, and on it the Sovereign's Picture to the Breast, curiously cut in Flat-stitch, crown'd with a Laurel and the military Garb of the first *Roman* Emperors; the Table or Pendant was Gold, and on the back-side thereof engrav'd St. *George* on Horse-back encountring the Dragon.

THIS noble Ensign, the Garter, was at the Erection of the Order appointed to be wore on the left Leg, a little beneath the Knee, which Usage still presides: And the placing it thus, on the Sepulchral Portraictures of Knights-Companions, was an early Custom; for on the Alabaster Monument of Sir *William Fitz-warin*, who was interr'd in the North-side of the Chancel at *Wantage* in *Com. Berks*, 35 *Edw.* III. he lies there with his Surcoat of Arms upon his Breast, and the Representation of a Garter (but without Motto) carv'd upon his left Leg. In the same Posture lies Sir *Richard Pembridge*, elected a Knight-Companion, *temp. Edw.* III. and is portraicted on his Monument in the South-side of the Cathedral of *Hereford*, below the Pulpit, and encompass'd with a Rail of Iron-Spikes.

THE next Monument whereon the Garter was

depicted, was that erected for Sir *Simon Burley*, (beheaded *A. D.* 1388.) and rear'd in the North-Wall near the Choir of St. *Paul*'s, *London*. Thence-forward the Practice became more frequent, and then the Motto began to be cut thereon; insomuch that it is now the constant and just Practice to do it, whensoever the Knights-Companions are exhibited in Effigies.

AND altho' this Ensign was first design'd in Ornament to the left Leg, yet it was not confin'd so solely thereto, but was anciently us'd to incircle the Escutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, worn by the Sovereign and Knights-Companions on their Mantles, who within a small space after us'd it to surround their own proper Coat of Arms, which their Successors have retain'd as their peculiar Privilege, permitting it to none but to their principal Officer, the Prelate of the Order.

THE first Example that occurs, is the before-mention'd of Sir *Francis Burley*, where, on the Front, towards the Head, is his own Arms empaling his first Wife's, set within a Garter, (wanting the Impress;) but another having the same Empalement, (plac'd below the Feet) is surrounded with a Collar of SS. of the same Form with that about his Neck.

THE Monument also of *Joan*, Wife of *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Westmoreland*, on the South-side of the Choir, in the Cathedral of *Lincoln*, bears the Arms of *Nevil*, empaling those of *Joan*, his Wife, (who dy'd *A. D.* 1410.) Incircled within a Garter, and fix'd on this Lady's Monument, Daughter to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, is there such a Collar of SS. placed about a Square; but the Paint being faded, was render'd unintelligible.

ANOTHER antique Instance is that Escutcheon, *Sable, Three Ostrich Feathers Argent*, surrounded with

the Garter, affix'd in the Glass-Windows of *Greenwich*-Church in *Kent*, by *Humfrey*, Duke of *Glocester*, and Supported with a Greyhound and an Antelope. It is reported, these Three Feathers were the Ensign of King *Henry* IV. which were conferr'd by *John* of *Gaunt*, his Father, who bore them for his Device, and placed in a *Field Sable*, as here, but the Pens were powder'd with *Ermin*, for a difference from the Black Prince's Feather, which were *Argent*, as the King's Pen was *Or*, and the Duke of *Somerset*'s Compony *Argent* and *Azure*.

THE Arms of Sir *Lewis Robessart*, Lord *Bourchier*, Knight-Companion, *temp. Hen.* V. we find encompass'd with a Garter on each side his Monument, in *Westminster-Abbey*.

AT the Interment of *Richard* Duke of *York*, Father to King *Edw.* IV. at every Corner of the Majesty-Escutcheon (set over the Image of the Defunct) was an Escutcheon of the Arms of *France* and *England quarterly*, and *Four Angels Gold*, holding the same within a Garter. And so some of the Funeral Escutcheons of *John* Viscount *Wells*, (who dy'd 14 *Hen.* VII.) were surrounded with the Garter, as others bearing his Lady's Arms.

AT the Interment of *Thomas* Duke of *Norfolk*, in *Thetford-Abbey*, (who dy'd 16 *Hen.* VIII.) there was provided a Shield of his Arms within a Garter, and a Coronet affix'd over it; a Target also of the Arms of *George*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, within a Garter, was born at his Funural, *Anno* 33 *Hen.* VIII.

IT was the Custom, (begun about the Reign of *Hen.* VII.) when the Obsequies of any Foreign Prince were celebrated in *England*, to paint an Escutcheon of such Prince's Arms within the Collar of the Order, whereof he was Sovereign or a Fellow-Companion; as those of the *French* King, *Charles* VIII. celebrated at St. *Paul*'s,

London, had Escutcheons of the Arms of *France*, within the Collar of the Order of St. *Michael*, at each End of the Hearse; and when the Obsequies of *John* King of *Portugal* were solemniz'd at St. *Paul*'s, there was, among others, one large Escutcheon of his Arms within the Collar of the *Golden Fleece*. The Funeral Rites of the Emperor *Charles* V. being perform'd in *Westminster-Abbey*, 22 and 23 *Dec.* 1558. there were Ten great Escutcheons compass'd with Garters, to shew he was a Fellow of this Order: And upon the same Account, where Princes were Sovereigns of one, and Companions of another Order, their Hearses were hung with Escutcheons of their Arms, surrounded with the Collars or principal Badges of both those Orders; as at the Interment of *Francis* I. the *French* King, celebrated at St. *Paul*'s, *London*, 1 *Edw.* VI. the Escutcheons were the Arms of *France*, encompass'd within the Garter of St. *George*, and Collar of St. *Michael*. At the Obsequies of *Hen.* II. of *France*, *Anno* 1 *Eliz.* at St. *Paul*'s also, there were some Escutcheons of his Arms, incircled both with the Garter and Collar of the *Golden Fleece*, having been a Knight-Companion of both these Orders: Under the Joysts was a Majesty Escutcheon of Black Taffaty of this King's Arms, within a Garter crown'd with an Imperial Crown, and in several Places of the Hearse were fasten'd other Escutcheons of his Arms within this principal Ensign of the Garter.

KING *Hen.* VIII. was the first that introduc'd into his Great Seal the Eschutcheon of his Arms incircled within a Garter, as may be seen placed on either side his Portraiture sitting on his Royal Throne; since him, all succeeding Sovereigns have born their Arms after that Manner, not only in their great and Privy-Seals, but in those other appertaining to their Courts of Justice, and generally in all Matters where their

Arms were visible (except Coins); in Imitation of whom, the Knight-Companions have done the like.

BUT there were *An.* 21 *Car.* 1. certain Half Crowns stamp'd in the West of *England*, containing the Sovereigns Arms, so encompassed, regally crowned and supported; and this was the first Money whereon the Royal Garter appeared. After him King *Charles* II. having an Eye to the Advancement of the Honour of this Order, caused the irradicated Cross of St. *George* encompass'd about with the Royal Garter to be publickly stamp'd in the Center of his Silver Coin, struck upon the Recoinage of it, *Anno* 14. *Car.* 2.

THERE were other Medals heretofore stamp'd upon several Occasions, wherein the Garter was designedly express'd, and enclosing Shields of their Arms; as that in the Year 1619. *Frederick* Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, was crowned King of *Bohemia*, and *Robert Cecil* Earl of *Salisbury* created Lord Treasurer, both Knights Companions of this Noble Order: Moreover, Gold Rings have been cast into the Figures of Garters; the Ground on the outside enamell'd with a deep Blue, through which the golden Letters of the Motto appearing, set them off with an admirable Beauty. And it seems such Rings were in vogue since the Preface to the black Book of the Order makes mention of wearing the Garter on the Leg and Shoulder, and sometimes likewise subjoins the Thumb, *interdum Pollice gestare*; by which we may naturally conjecture, that Gold Rings were formed into the Fashion of Garters, and bestowed by some new installed Knights upon their Relations and Friends to wear in Memorial of so great an Honour conferred upon them.

AMONG the Officers belonging to the Order the Prelate is permitted to bear his proper Arms (impaled with those of his See) within the Garter, and the rest

only to wear the Badges of their Offices, surrounded with the same to express their peculiar Relation.

BESIDES the Manner of bearing Arms, within the Garter of this Order, the Garter either in whole or part, hath been by Way of Armory, but without the Motto; as in the Seal belonging to the Office of Garter King of Arms, where the Garter (enclosing a Crown) is placed on a Chief, between a *Lyon* of *England* and a *Flower de Lys* of *France*. And to instance in Family, we find Argent Three *Demy-Garters Azure*, buckled and garnished, *Or*, granted by King *Hen.* VII. to his Servant *Peter Nerborne*, and sable a Garter, *Or*, between Three Buckles of the Second, to be born by *Buckland* or *Bowland in Com. Northampton*.

§. 2. THE second Ensign of the Order is the *Mantle*, which is the Chief of those Vestments which the Sovereign and Knights-Companions make use of upon all solemn Occasions relating to the Order. That this Pattern was derived to us from the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, is not at all to be disputed, since it so little varies in Fashion from their *Pallium* or *Toga*; for the *Grecian* Pallium was a sort of long Cloak, which only wanted a Collar or Cape, and the *Roman Toga* as proper to them, as the *Pallium* to the *Grecians*, and the Custom as Antique as *Romulus* himself; for he is recited by *Plutarch* to have worn it. The Pallium is more fully described to be a kind of upper Robe that covered the whole Body, made fast on the right Shoulder with a Fibula or Clasp. It was usually worn over the Tunica or short Coat, whence the Proverb *Tunica Pallio propior*, and is more particularly observed to have been a Garment fashioned without Sleeves, that reached down to the

Ancles.

IN describing this upper Robe, called the *Mantle*, (the Sovereigns being distinguished from the Knights-Companions, only by a long Train) we shall first set down its various Appellations it is mentioned by in the Records of the Order; Secondly, the Materials whereof it consists; Thirdly, the Colour; Fourthly, the Quantity; and last of all the Ornamental Trimmings, that nothing be omitted to satisfy any curious Enquirer.

NAME.

IN the Founder's Statutes it is called *Mantellum*, and in *Hen.* V. *Manteau*, both which we render *Mantle*. But the Exemplar of the Founder's Statutes entred in the black Book, and the Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. call it *Trabea*, which *Rosinus* reckons among the different Kinds of *Mantles* or *Gowns*. And in 20 *Art.* of King *Hen.* VIIIth's Statutes, it is applied both to the *Mantle* and *Surcoat*; sometime it is stiled *Chlamyda*; sometime *Stola*; but in other Places more pertinently, *Pallium* and *Toga*.

MATERIALS.

THAT Mantle prepared for the Founder against the first Feast of this Order, appears to be fine Woollen Cloth, and it is not improbable this Material was chosen, rather than any other richer, to the Intent the Founder might give the Preference to our native Commodity, altho' there's permitted in the Statutes of Institution a permission for the Proxies of Foreign

Princes to bring over with them Mantles of Silk and Velvet when they came to receive possession of their Principal Stalls, either because other Countries were better stored with such Commodities than our *English* Cloth, or that it might be more agreeable to represent the State and Grandeur of Foreign Princes, as accounting Silk or Velvet the nobler Representation.

WHAT Duration the wearing Cloth had, is not directly set down, but the first time we discover their Mantles to be of Velvet, is about the beginning of the Reign of King *Hen.* VI. which Sort of Silk hath thence remained until this Day. About this Period, 'tis observed, that the Mantles of Foreign Princes were made here of Velvet, for so was that transmitted to the King of *Portugal*, elected *Anno* 1346. Concerning the Mantles of the Knights-Companions, there is no doubt but they were of the same Materials with those made for the Sovereign, *viz.* at first of fine Woollen Cloth, and when the Sovereign exchanged it for Velvet, they followed his Example; but we cannot meet with equal Satisfaction in this Point, because the Knights-Companions provided this Robe at their own Expence; and their private Accounts herein passing thro' so many Contingences, were of no great Durability. But their Surcoats were of the Sovereigns Donation, and consequently the Particulars of them remain on Record in the Rolls and Accounts of the great Wardrobe.

THE Colour of these Mantles is appointed by the Statutes to be Blue, and of this Colour was the Founders; by which, as by the Ground-work of the Royal Garter, it is not improbable he alluded to the Colour of the Field in the *French* Arms, which a few Years before he began to Quarter with those of *England*. But the Colour of the Surcoat was changed

every Year, as will appear by and by. Of the same Colour were the Velvet Mantles, made *temp. Hen.* VI. who tho' he altered the Stuff, did not vary the Dye. It is apparent, that the blue Colour was retained to King *Edw.* IVth's Reign, for when this Sovereign transmitted the Habit and Ensigns of the Order to *Julian de Medicis*, the Mantle was of blue Velvet.

BUT in King *Hen.* VIIIth's Statutes there's no mention at all of the Colour of this upper Robe, save only of the *Mantle*, which the Proxy of a Foreign Prince was enjoined to bring with him when he came to assume the Stall of his Principal; which, tho' it does not come directly up to the Point, yet it is to be observed to be of blue Velvet. And it's highly probable that the blue Colour remained still to be used; for within a few Months after the compiling the said Statutes, it's plain, the Mantle sent to *James* King of *Scotland*, was of blue Velvet, and in the ancient Form of Admonition and Signification appointed to be spoke at the Investiture of Foreign Princes, and then in Plea it is called *the Mantle of celestial Colour*. Likewise the Mantle sent to *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Ph.* and *Mar.* was of the same Composure.

IN Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, upon what Ground History is silent, the Colour of Foreign Prince's Mantles was changed from Blue to Purple, for of that Colour were the Mantles sent to the *French* Kings, *Charles* IX. *Anno.* 6 *Eliz.* and *Hen.* III. *Ann.* 27 *Eliz.* So also to the Emperor *Maximilian* 9 *Elizabeth*, to *Fredrick* II. King of *Denmark*, *An.* 24 *Eliz.* to *Joh. Casimire* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Anno* 21 *Eliz.* to *Christiern* IV. King of *Denmark*, *An. J. R.* IV. But that sent to *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg* in the same Year, was a mix'd Colour of Purple and Violet.

THUS the Purple Colour came in Request, and continued till about the 12 of King *Charles* I. when he

determining to restore the Colour of the Mantle to the primitive Institution, gave Directions to Mr. *Peter Richaut*, Merchant, to provide himself with a Quantity of rich blue Velvets from *Genoa*; and upon their arrival into *England*, signify'd his Pleasure by Sir *Thomas Rowe* the Chancellor, That all Knights-Companions should purchase as much of the said Velvet as would furnish them with new Robes against St. *George*'s-Day next ensuing; compliance to whose Will, all the Knights paid Obedience, at the Rate of Thirty seven Shillings a Yard, being the Price the Sovereign paid to Mr. *Richaut* for the Velvet of his own Robes. And the first Essay of these Mantles was to honour the Installation of the Prince, afterwards King *Charles* II.

AND because there were many Knights-elect to be installed after the Restoration, it was ordained at the Chapter held at *Whitehall* the *14th* of *Jan. Anno* 12. *Car.* 2. (called to consider of the Preparations of the grand Feast then at hand), That Directions should be given to the Master of the Wardrobe to negotiate Abroad for excellent Velvets of Skie Colour, and Crimson, and other Materials agreeable for the Mantles and Surcoats, both of the old Knights-Companions, and those that were then to be installed; which was accordingly effected, and they were transmitted in time to accommodate them at the said Feast.

THO' the just Number of Ells of Cloth for the Sovereigns Mantle at the first Institution are not set down, yet in the Total for his Mantle, Hood, and Surcoat, there was allowed ten Ells of long Cloth. The Mantle of King *Henry* VI. took up one Piece, five Ells and three Quarters of blue Velvet; and those sent to *Frederick* II. and *Christian* IV. Kings of *Denmark*; and to the *French* King, *Henry* III. contained each

twenty Yards of Velvet.

THIS we find to be the Allowance for Foreign Princes, and are the more full and extensive, by reason of their long Train, which being more scanty in the Mantles of Knights-Subjects, eighteen Yards was sufficient to make one of them. The full Length of King *Charles* II. from the Collar behind to the end of the Train, was three Yards the Length of the foreside, one Yard and three Quarters from the Foot along the bottom to the fixing on of the Train, was two Yards, and from thence the Length or Compass of the Train, two Yards.

THE left Shoulder of each of these Mantles have from the Institution been adorned with a large fair Garter, containing this Motto, *Honi soit qui mal y pense*. These were distinguished from the lesser Garters, anciently embroider'd upon the Surcoats and Hoods of the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, by the Name of *Garters Gross*.

WITHIN this Garter was the Arms of St. *George*, *viz.* Argent a *Cross Gules*, and was heretofore wrought in Sattin, with Gold, Silver and Silk; but in descending Times greater Expence and Magnificence became the Practice of the Order, for it was embordered upon Velvet with Damask, Gold, and sundry Sorts of Purls, Plates, *Venice* Twists and Silks, and the Letters of the Motto and Borders of the Garter composed of fair Oriental Pearl. The Garter fix'd upon the Mantle of King *Charles* II. was encircled with large Oriental Pearl, so were the Letters of the Motto and the Cross within the Garter, the Diameter of which was seven Inches, but the Depth from the upper Part to the end of the Pendant, ten Inches.

Temp. Hen. VI. it seems to have been the Mode to embellish the Mantle with three or four Velts drawn down the sides, and round the bottom, as it appears

by the Monument of *John Talbot* Earl of *Shrewsbury* in the South-wall of the Chancel of *Whitechurch in Com. Salop*.

ABOUT that Time the Lining of this Robe was white Damask, and afterwards white Sattin; but of later Date it was lined with white Taffaty, which continues yet in vogue.

FOR exemplary Ornament, the Mantle had fixed to its Collar a pair of long Strings, anciently woven of blue Silk only (called *Cordons*, Robe-strings or Laces); but of later Days, twisted round and made of *Venice* Gold and Silk of the Colour of the Robe, at each end of which hung a great Knob or Button, wrought over and raised with a rich Caul of Gold, and Tassels thereunto of like Silk and Gold.

AND at the Collar was usually fixed an Hook and Eye of Gold for its firmer affixing of it to the Shoulders.

§. 3. THE Third Ensign of the Order is the *Surcoat* or *Kirtle*, which altho' we find no Place for it in the Founder's Statutes, is nevertheless as ancient as the Mantle or upper Robe, that is only taken Notice of there, for such a Vesture King *Edward* III. then made, together with his Mantle and a Hood to celebrate the first Feast of the Order in.

ITS Original it owes to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; amongst whom this Garment had its determinated *Tunica*, and was worn next under the *Toga*, but amongst them was both narrower and shorter; it was girt close to the Body with a Girdle, and so fitted, that the Hem of it reached a little below the Knee, or to the middle of the Ham. It was the proper Mode of the *Roman* Citizens, and by its trimming were the three Degrees among them known; for the Senators

Tunicks were embroidered or purfled over with broad purple Studs, the Knights with narrow ones, and the Plebeians plain.

IN setting forth the Surcoat, which was heretofore annually bestowed by the Sovereign or the Knights-Companions, and therefore called his *Livery*, we shall, as in the Description of the Mantle, treat somewhat of the Name, Materials, Colour, Quantity and Garnishing of it.

AS to the Name in the old Rolls of the great Wardrobe, it is stiled *Roba*, but more properly as the Founder's first Surcoat is called *Tunica*, which Name it bears in the red Book of the Order. In *English* it is rendred *Gown*, *Kirtle*, *Surcoat*, *Undercoat* and *Robe*. The Appellation of *Gown* is attributed to *Surcoats* of the Sovereigns and Foreign Princes, *Temp. Hen.* VI. *Edw.* IV. and *Hen.* VII. But since, and very lately, it hath been bestowed also on the Surcoats of Knights-Companions; and that of *Kirtle* sometimes given to those sent to Foreign Princes, as appears by the Books of Warrants in the great Wardrobe, but the rest are Terms of a later Date: As the first Mantles, so the first Surcoats were composed of Woollen Cloth, and tho' the Cloth of the Mantles was in some space after changed for Velvet, yet the Surcoats continued afterwards to be of Cloth, at least till after the Office of Chancellor of the Garter was erected by King *Edward* IV. as is manifest by the Precedent of this Livery in the Sovereigns great Wardrobe; but in process of Time they became Velvet, which sort of Silk is yet retained.

THE Colour of this Vesture was anciently changed every Year, commonly into Blue, Scarlet, Sanguine in Grain, or White. But the Colour of the Mantles remained the same as at the Institution, until Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, and then it commenced Blue: And

'tis remarkable, that the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions, were always of the same Colour with the Sovereigns.

THE Founder's first Surcoat was of the same Cloth and Colour with the Mantle, *viz.* Blue, but in the 34th Year of his Reign he altered it to Black, and of the same Colour were those he conferred that Year upon these following Knights-Companions, *viz.* the Black Prince, the Earls of *Ulster*, *Richmond* and *Salisbury*, *Edmund* of *Langly*, Sir *Richard la Vach*, Sir *Hugh Wrotesly*, Sir *Reginald Cobham*, Sir *Bartholomew Burghest*, the Lord *Mohun*, Sir *Walter Manney*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *Walter Paveley*, Sir *William Fitz Warin*, Sir *Miles Stapleton*, the Earls of *Stafford*, *Warwick* and *Suffolk*, and Sir *Thomas Ughtred*: The Motive that induced him to pitch upon this sable Colour, was conceived to be a kind of Humiliation, because the Pestilence began again to spread its Malevolence, which had furiously raged Eleven Years before. The Surcoats which the Sovereign gave the Dukes of *Lancaster* and *Clarence*, and Fourteen other Knights, *Anno* 37. *Edward* III. were of Cloth, Sanguine in Grain. Those Twenty four provided for the Feast of St. *George*, *Anno* 7 *Richard* II. were Violet in Grain, whereof one was for the Sovereign, the other Twenty three for the Knights-Companions, following *John* King of *Castile*, and *Leonard* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Earls of *Cambridge*, *Buckingham*, *Derby*, *Kent*, *Warwick*, *Stafford*, *Salisbury*, *Northumberland* and *Nottingham*, the Lords *Nevil*, *Basset*, and *John Holland*, Sir *Guy Bryan*, Sir *William Beauchamp*, Sir *Thomas Percy*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Sulby*, Sir *Lodowick Clifford*, Sir *Simon Burley*, Sir *Richard Burley*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton* and Sir *Soldan de la Trane*.

Anno 11 *Richard* II. there were ordered against St. *George*'s Feast Twenty three Surcoats of white Cloth

for the Sovereign, and Twenty two Knights-Companions; and the 12 and 19 Year of the same King, the Sovereign bestowed on the same Persons Surcoats of long blue Cloth, after the Original Model. The Twenty two Surcoats made up for the Feast of St. *George*, *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. were of white Cloth; *Anno* —— *Henry* VI. the Sovereigns Gown or Surcoat was of Scarlet, as was that sent to the King of *Portugal* in the 13th Year of the same King. *Anno* —— *Henry* VI. the Sovereign had white Cloth; and so were the Surcoats given to Twenty Knights-Companions more in the —— Year of his Reign. Afterwards the beforementioned Four Colours began to be disused, for the Surcoat presented to *Julian de Medicis*, *temp. Edward* IV. was purple Velvet, and towards the latter end of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. and since, it is upon Record, the Surcoats of the Sovereign and all the Knights-Companions were Crimson Velvet, nor did the Colour suffer a Mutation in the Surcoat, tho' King *Charles* I. restored the Mantle to its first primitive Colour, *Anno* 12 *Regni sui*.

THERE has been some disproportion in the Quantity of the Cloth allowed in the Provision against one and the same Feast, for *Anno* 34 *Edward* III. the Earls of *Stafford*, *Warwick*, and *Suffolk*, as also Sir *Thomas Ughtred* had then for each of their Surcoats six Ells of Cloth (perhaps the tallness of their Stature required it) when the other Fifteen Knights were allowed but five Ells, being the same Quantity the Sovereign's Surcoat had contained in it at the same time.

THE Dukes of *Holland* and *Clarence*, *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. with the Earls of *Arundel*, were allowed Eight Ells a-piece, the Dukes of *Bedford*, *Gloucester* and *York*, the Earls of *Westmorland* and *Warwick*, the Lords

Grey, *Fitz Hugh* and *Roos*, six Ells apiece; the Earls of *Dorset*, with six Barons and five Knights Batchelors, but five Ells apiece. Afterwards, when the Number of Ells of Cloth, Garters and Furrs came to be ascertained for each Degree, all the Knights-Companions (even the Prince of *Wales*) were not to exceed five Ells: But since Velvet came in Plea, the Allowance for Surcoat and Hood hath been eighteen Yards, when the Surcoat reached down to the Feet; but now it being the Fashion to wear it shorter, the Allowance is stinted to Ten. The Length of King *Charles* II's Surcoat was one Yard and an half, and of the Sleeve one Yard wanting a Nail.

THE Ornamental Trimmings of these Garments are next worthy of Note, especially at the Time of Instituting this Order, for they were then, and a long time after, powdered all over with little Garters, embroidered with Silk and Gold-Plate, in each of which was neatly wrought the Motto, *Honi soit, &c.* Besides, the Buckles and Pendants to those small Garters, were Silver gilt; of these Garters there were no less than 160 upon the first Surcoat and Hood made for the Founder.

IN King *Richard* II's Reign, the little Garters that adorned the Surcoats of the Sovereign, and the other Knights were wrought in Embroidery upon blue Taffaty with Cyprus, and Soldat Gold and Silk of divers Colours, and the Letters Gold. And as the Sovereign was not limited in the Proportion of Cloth or Velvet for his Surcoat, no more was he confined to the Number of Garters, wherewith to adorn it; nor do I find that any of the Knights-Companions were, until the Precedent of the Livery of the Garter was settled, for *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. the Dukes of *Holland* and *Clarence*, the Earl of *Arundel*, the Dukes of *Bedford* and *Gloucester* had each of their Surcoats adorned

with 120 Garters, but the Duke of *York*, and the rest wore but 100. The Settlement in the Precedent of the Livery was, in relation to Degrees of Honour, a greater or less Number of Garters: Thus,

A Duke	120	Garters.
A Marquis	110	
An Earl	100	
A Viscount	90	
A Baron	80	
A Baronet	70	
A Knight-Batchelor	60	

ABOUT the Reign of King *Henry* VI. the Sovereigns Number of Garters did not much exceed those which the Founder allow'd to himself at the Institution; for the Surcoat and Hood of the said King consisted of 173; and the King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Henry* VI. 120 Garters. But this Drapery of their Robes became at length quite obsolete, perhaps when Cloth was altered to Velvet, and the plain Surcoat hath to this Day continued in Use.

WHILE these Surcoats remained of Cloth, they were lined with Bellies of pure Minever Fur, only the Sovereigns was purfled with Ermin; and of these, it seems, a like Proportion was at first stated to all the Knights-Companions, *viz.* 200 Bellies. Yet in the Reign of King *Richard* II. some Difference began in the Allowance to the Knights-Companions, for a Baron, and all Degrees upward had 200 Bellies; but under a Baron 120 only. However, *Anno* 1. *Henry* V. the Barons were tantamount to the Knights-Batchelors, for all Degrees above a Baron were allow'd, a Fur of 200 Bellies. But the Barons and Knights-Batchelors Furs were only 120 Bellies.

AFTERWARDS, by the Precedent of the Garter, there was another Proportion limited, the Prince, a Duke, a Marquis, an Earl, had each of them Five Timber of pure Minever allowed to a Surcoat; but the Viscount, Baron, Baronet and Batchelor-Knights but Three Timber apiece. In time these Furs were disused, and the Surcoats came to be lined with white Sarcenet, to which, *temp. Eliz.* white Taffaty succeeded, and that still continues.

WHAT became of the old Surcoats, since the Knights-Companions had new ones every Year, the Black Book of the Order informs us, That on the Eve of the Feast of St. *George*, the Knights wore to Vespers, the Sovereigns Livery or Surcoats, used by them the preceding Year, which after that Night they threw off, (for the new Surcoats were worn on the Feast-Day); but the Ensigns and Ornaments of this Kind were disposed of to the Use of the Colledge.

THE Hood and Cap comes in the next Place to be spoken of, which Hood in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, and the Black Book of the Order is called *Humerale*; but in the Rolls of the Great Wardrobe, *Capucium*. In the *French* it is *Chaperon*, a Word used in the Statute, *Anno* 1. *Richard* II. *C.* 7. and also retained in the Old *English* Copy of *Henry* VIII's Statutes made of his Reign, and annexed to this Treatise. They were anciently wore for Defence of the Head against the Inclemencies of Weather, but of later Times Caps and Hats have supplied their place. How they sat upon the Head, may be observed in the Portraitures of the first Founders; as also with some Variety of Fashion in succeeding Ages: Yet is not the Hood quite thrown by, since 'tis still kept reclining upon the Back, almost like a Pilgrim's Hat.

THIS Hood was ordained, and is yet retained as part of the Habit of this most Noble Order. And tho'

neither it nor the Surcoat is mentioned in the Statutes of Institution, or in either its Exemplars, nor doth King *Henry* V. lay any Stress upon it, yet it is of equal Antiquity with the rest, as appears from the Rolls of the great Wardrobe, and *Henry* VIII's Statutes have made remarkable Observation of it, for the Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, and Collar are called the Habit of the Order: And in the Black Book, *Anno* 22. *Henry* VII. at the Investiture of *Philip* King of *Castile*, the Mantle, Kirtle, Hood and Collar are expresly called *Whole Habit*.

IT was heretofore, and now is generally made of the same Materials as the Surcoat, and was anciently trimmed and set off with a small Proportion of Garters lined with Cloth of a different Colour, and such as would best strike the Sight; but now with Taffaty, as is the Lining of the Surcoat.

AS to the Cap, which was instituted to succeed the Hood; it hath been, and yet is, fashioned of black Velvet lin'd with Taffaty; but the Figure hath several Times varied; for *Temp. Henry* VIII. it was flat, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign it was a little raised in the Head; but in King *James*'s Time they were much more high-crown'd. This Cap hath been usually adorn'd with Plumes of White Feathers, and Spriggs, and bound about with a Band set thick with Diamonds; so was the Cap for the Installation of King *Charles* II. and sometimes the Brims have been tack'd up with a large and costly Jewel.

THIS Custom of wearing Caps and Feathers at the Grand Solemnities of the Order, had, for some Time, about the Beginning of King *James* I. Reign, been omitted, and thereupon, in a Chapter held the 13th of *April*, *Anno* 10. *Jac.* I. this commendable Custom was re-establish'd.

TO these may be added the Cross of the Order

encompass'd with a Garter, which by the Sovereign was ordain'd the 27th of *April*, 2 *Car.* I. to be worn upon the Left Side of the Cloaks, Coats, and riding Cassocks of the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, of the Prelate and Chancellor at all Times, when they were not adorn'd with their Robes, and in all Places and Assemblies (but not embellish'd with Pearls and Stones) that the wearing thereof might be a sufficient Indication to the World, of that Height of Honour they arriv'd to from the said most Noble Order, instituted for Persons of the greatest Merit and Worth.

AND it was not long after e'er the Glory or Star, as it was usually call'd, having certain Beams of Silver, that shot out in Form of a Cross, was introduc'd and annex'd to it, in Imitation (as thought) of the *French*, who after the same manner wore the chief Ensign of the Order of the *Holy Ghost*, being the Representation of a Dove irradiated with such like Beams.

AND whereas some Painters affirm the Symbol of the Holy Ghost to be thus adorn'd congruous enough, yet censure it improper for a Garter, let them consider that King *Edw.* IV. erected his White Rose with the like Glory, whereof both the Stone Work and Wood Work of St. *George*'s Chapel in *Windsor*, manifestly illustrate, whose Antiquity makes a Precedent for it long before the Institution of the Order of the *Holy Ghost*; but this King assum'd this Device upon appearance of three Suns, which suddenly united together into one immediately, before his successful Victory at *Mortimer*'s-*Cross*, a happy *Æra* he thought himself oblig'd to perpetuate. And they mistake who suppose it to be the Garter that is thus irradiated, whereas it is something else more worthy of the Glory, for from it, not the Garter, do the Rays diffuse, *viz.* the inclos'd Cross of the

Order, celebrated as glorious, since it darted its bright Beams from Heaven, when it appear'd to *Constantine the Great*; as the same is represented on a Silver Medal: On the one Side whereof was a *Bust in profile*, or side Face of King *Charles* I. and on the Reverse, this Badge of the Order, within a Garter, inscrib'd, *Honi*, &c. a Cross irradiated, dispersing its Beams in a Rhombular Form of Eight Angles, beyond the Orbit or bounding Lines of the said Garter, having for Circumscription, *Prisci decus Ordinis Auctum*, 1629.

§ 5. HAVING finish'd our Discourse concerning the Robes of the Order, we shall speak of the Robes and Hoods assign'd to the Queen, Knights-Companions Wives, and other great Ladies, by the Donation of the Sovereigns, set off and embellished with Minute Garters, and lin'd with Rich Furs, which Robes they were adorn'd with during the Solemnity of the Feast of St. *George*, a Custom almost as ancient as its Institution. The first Mention we find recorded of the Feminine Habit occurs, *Anno* 7. *R.* II. when the Queen, the Sovereign's Mother, the Dutchess of *Lancaster*, the Countesses of *Cambridge*, *Buckingham*, *Pembroke*, *Oxford*, and *Salisbury*, the Ladies *Philippa* and *Catherine*, Daughters to the Duke of *Lancaster*, and the Lady *Mohun* had such kind of Robes and Hoods provided for them. They were made of Cloth, Violet in Grain, like as the Sovereign and Knights-Companions that Year, the Robes lin'd with Fur, but the Hoods with Scarlet, and both embroidered over with little Garters, and the Proportion of Cloth, Furs, and Garters, were stated according to their several Ranks and Degrees; for the Queen had Eight Ells, and Half an Ell of Scarlet for the Lining of her Hood. The Sovereign's Mother had allow'd her one whole Piece,

and a double Proportion of Scarlet; but from the large Quantity it is conceiv'd she had Two Robes and Hoods made at this time: Besides, the particular Number are but Eleven Persons, and cannot else reach the Total of the Robes that were made up and expressly set down to be Twelve. The Dutchess of *Lancaster* had the Allowance of Half a Piece, and Half an Ell of Scarlet; the Countess of *Cambridge* Seven Ells of Cloth and Half an Ell of Scarlet, and the rest of the Ladies the same Proportion of Cloth with the Knights-Companions, *i. e.* each Five Ells a-piece, and Half an Ell of Scarlet. According to their Cloth was also their Proportion of Minever; the Queen's Allowance was Two Furs, each containing Three Hundred Bellies of pure Minever; the Sovereign's Mother had twice that Proportion, the Dutchess of *Lancaster*, and Countess of *Cambridge* had the same Allowance as the Queen; but all the rest of the Ladies had only one Fur of Two Hundred Bellies. Besides the embroidered Garters to deck out the Twenty-four Surcoats of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, and the Twelve Robes for the Queen, and other Ladies, amounted to the Number of 2900.

AGAINST the Feast of St. *George*, *Anno.* 11. *R.* II. there were prepared Fifteen Robes and Hoods for the Queen and other Ladies, of the same Livery and suit with the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, *viz.* White long Cloth, and Blue Cloth for the Lining of their Hoods, bearing the same Proportion in all Things as the former, *Anno* 13. *Rich.* II. the Ladies Robes and Hoods were Sanguine Cloth, and the Lining of their Hoods Cloth in Grain. And in the 19th *Rich.* II. they were Blue Cloth, and long Cloth in Grain for Lining their Hoods. In both these Years we find the Dutchess of *Aquitaine* had double the Proportion of Cloth allow'd her (as had also the

Dutchess of *York*) *viz.* Fourteen Ells, (the Queen having then but the former Allowance of Eight Ells) and yet her Proportion of Lining, both for the Robe and Hood, was no more than allow'd the Queen.

BUT *Anno* 1 *Henry* V. the same Quantities of Cloth, Minevers, and Garters, were the same to Ladies of all Degrees, and that was to each Five Ells of White Woollen Cloth, only the Queen-Mother had Eight Ells of White Cloth and Eight Ells of Black Cloth, a Fee containing Two Hundred Bellies of Minever, and an Hundred embroidered Garters, and 12 *Henry* VI. the Master of the great Wardrobe was commanded to make ready the like Livery, both for Colour of Cloth, number of Ells, Bellies of Minever, and Garters, for the Countess of *Suffolk*, against the approaching Feast of St. *George*.

A plainer Narrative is made of these Liveries, *Anno* 16 *Edw.* IV. when at the Feast of St. *George* at *Windesor*, the Queen, the Lady *Elizabeth*, the King's Daughter, and Dutchess of *Suffolk*, the King's Sister, had for their Livery Murrey Gowns embroidered with Garters.

BESIDES these Robes worn by the Ladies at the Festivals of the Order, there seems to be some Imitation of wearing a Garter also on their Left Arms, as the Knights did on their Left Leg, as it is observ'd on the Countess of *Tankervile*'s Monument, where she is so pourtray'd.

AFTER a long Disuse of these Robes, *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. there was an endeavour to restore it; for the Deputy Chancellor sollicited the Sovereign in Chapter, That the Ladies of the Knights-Companions might be granted the Privilege to wear a Garter of the Order about their Arms, and an upper Robe at Festival Times, according to ancient Usage, upon which Motion the Sovereign gave Order that the

Queen's Pleasure should be known herein, and the Affair left to the Ladies particular Request, and the Year ensuing, upon the Deputy Chancellor's Report at another Chapter at *Windesor*, it was then left to a Chapter to be called by the Knights-Companions, to preponderate of every Circumstance, how it were fittest to be effected for the Honour and Lustre of the Order; which was appointed to be held at *London* about *All-hollantide* next; But the unhappy War breaking out, this Matter entirely broke off.

§ 6. THERE remains now the Collar and *George*, brought in by King *Henry* VIII. And first, of Collars in general, which is an Ornament not of late, but ancient Invention, and the wonderful Consent of most Nations plead for it: Sacred Writ sets down the Collar of Gold for one of the Ornaments *Pharaoh* conferr'd upon *Joseph*. The Images of *Isis* and *Osiris* were represented with such like Collars, in a manner, extending to their Shoulders, as *Kircher* informs us. Their Workmanship seems wonderfully curious, being intersected with various Lines, and divided with Tablets and precious Stones. The Collar was of an illustrious Original among the *Romans*, and gave Denomination to the Family of *Torquati*, descended from *L. Manlius*, whom the Soldiers surnam'd *Torquatus*, because he fought with a Champion of the *Gauls*, *Anno V. C.* 392. and, having foil'd him in fight, cut off his Head, and then pluck'd off his Collar, bloody as it was, and put it about his own Neck. In further Memory of which Action were found several *Roman* Coins referring to *L. Torquatus*, Consul with *L. Cotta*, *Anno V. C.* 688. And it's remarkable that when one of another Tribe was adopted into this Family, he did also assume this Badge of Honour, as in the Coin of *D. Junius Silanus*, tho' the Fashion of the

Work somewhat differ'd from the former.

IN pristine Times none but Kings and Princes wore Collars, and therefore their Use seems of Dignity and Power, as is evident from *Daniel*, where the *Assyrian* Kings used this Ornament. Afterwards Men famous for Wisdom and Council, had them as a distinguishing Badge, as in the Example of *Joseph*, and from the Proclamation of *Belshazzar* King of *Babylon*, who proposed it as a Præmium to him that could interpret the Hand-Writing upon the Wall. And Men famous for Military Atchievements had it conferr'd upon them, in Recompence of their Merits; thus Collars were of the Number of the *Dona & Præmia Militaria* among the *Romans*, and the Honour of receiving them thought worthy to be consign'd to Posterity in Marble Inscriptions. From them the later Emperors receiv'd it, and we read of investing a Knight of the *Holy Sepulchre* with a Collar at his Creation; where, as soon as the Ceremony of his Ordination is over, the Padre Guardian Kisses the new Made Knight, and puts about his Neck (according to the mode of the Ancients) a Golden Collar, with a Cross hanging at it.

MOST aptly therefore have the Sovereigns of Military Orders annex'd this Ornament of the Collar to their Habit, and conferr'd it on the Fellows and Companions, many of whom have meritoriously deserv'd it for their great Wisdom and valorous Exploits, and for this reason it was instituted in additional Glory to the Ensigns of the Garter, compos'd in a peculiar manner, in Relation to the Name and Title; to the wearing of which the Sovereign oblig'd both himself and Knights-Companions, and his and their Successors.

THIS Collar was ordain'd to be of Gold Thirty Ounces Troy weight, but not to exceed it; howbeit

that Collar sent to *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, weigh'd Thirty-four Ounces and a Quarter, and that of King *Charles* I. 35 Ounces and an Half; which, after his Sufferings, fell into the Hands of *Thomas Harrison*, one of *Oliver*'s Major-Generals, and was by him delivered to the Trustees for Sale of the King's Goods: They, 1649. sent it to the *Mint*, with divers of the *Regalia*, to set the Stamp on work for the first Gold that the upstart Common-wealth coin'd.

IT was appointed by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, that this Collar should be compos'd of Pieces of Gold in Fashion of Garters, the Ground enamelled Blue, and the Letters of the Motto Gold; in the midst of each Garter, Two Roses plac'd, the innermost enamelled Red, and the outermost White, contrarily in the next Garter, the innermost Rose enamelled White, and the outermost Red, and so alternately; but of later Times these Roses are wholly Red.

THE Number of these Garters are so many as be the ordain'd Number of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions; at the Institution they were Twenty-six, being fasten'd together with as many Knots of Gold, and this Mode hitherto has continu'd invariable; nor ought the Collar to be adorn'd or enrich'd with precious Stones, (as the *George* may be) such being prohibited by the Law of the Order.

AT the Middle of the Collar before pendant, at the Table of one of the Garters in the Collar is to be fix'd the Image of St. *George* arm'd sitting on Horseback, who having thrown the Dragon on his Back encounters him with a Tilting-Spear. This Jewel is not encompass'd with a Garter or Row of Diamonds, as in the lesser *George*; but in round Relief. It is allow'd to be beautified and sett off with Diamonds and other Enrichments, at the Pleasure of the Knight-Companion who possessed it, and upon that Score it

hath been frequently adorn'd with Variety of costly Work, whereon the Diamonds, and other precious Stones, being set to that Advantage as might, upon its Motion and Agitation, dart forth a resplendent Lustre.

BEFORE the Establishment of this Article by King *Henry* VIII. it appears that the Knights-Companions were invested with Collars at their Installations, for the Black Book makes mention of a Collar among the Ensigns of the Garter, wherewith *Philip* King of *Castile* was invested, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. but whether a Collar of SS's, or of another Model, is not specifi'd: Nevertheless this Scruple is in part clear'd up by an old Memorial of the Ceremonies, at the Creating *Henry* Lord *Stafford* Earl of *Wiltshire*, 1 *Henry* VIII. where it is said in the Annals, that after he was invested with the Robes of his State and Dignity, the Collar of the Garter was put about his Neck at constituting him a Knight of the Order. And to make it more conspicuous in a Vellum Book of the Statutes sent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, sign'd 1508. by the Register *T. Rowthale*, and in another of *Edward Stanley* Lord *Monteagle*, elected *ann.* 6. *Hen.* VIII. the Forty First Article, enjoins a Collar to be worn by each Knight-Companion expresly called the Collar of the Order, which tho' it be not in all Respects consentient to that prescribed by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, yet there is not much Variation, and 'tis reported to be a *Gold Collar coupled together by several Pieces of Links, in Fashion of Garters, with a Vermilion Rose, and the Image of St.* George *hung thereat.* The Reason of the Knights-Companions wearing it at the Times appointed, the License for putting it to mending, the Command not to enrich the Collar, but the *George* only; and under a Penalty not to sell, pawn or alienate it upon any Necessity whatsoever,

are wholly the same as was afterwards enjoyn'd by King *Henry* VIII. So that he did but only annex to his Body of Statutes a Decree, which for the greatest part had been put in practise before. In the 11th *Hen.* VIII. upon Interpretation of the Eleventh Article of the Statutes, the Collar is there enumerated as part of the entire Robes that a Knight-Companion is oblig'd to wear, for a more convincing Proof, That the Collar of Garters was used before King *Henry* VIII's Reign, the Monument of Sir *Giles Daubeny* plainly Delineates (who departed 22 *Henry* VII.) in *Westminster-Abbey*, where his Portraicture in the Robes of the Order is adorned with such a Collar as King *Henry* VIII's Statutes do afterwards describe.

As the Garter sent to *Gustavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, so the great *George* (pendant at his Collar weighing Seven Ounces) was set with large and resplendent Diamonds, to the Number of Eighty-Four.

In what Regard this Noble Ensign of Honour the Collar, hath been with the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions, not only of the Order of the *Garter*, but other Military Orders, may be collected from the Pictures of some of them, as well as from their Seals, Coins, and Medals, for in these they have been pleased to exhibit their Effigies and Escutcheons of Arms; and omitting Foreign Examples, the Collars, both of the *Garter* and *Thistle*, were express'd in the Coronation Medal of King *Charles* I. in *Scotland*, 1633. tho' in that of his Coronation at *Westminster*, and afterwards in that of King *Charles* II. 1661. the Collar of the Order of the *Garter* are only put over their Royal Robes.

These Ornaments of the Collars, have been affix'd sometimes encircling the Shields of their Arms; and in a Seal of *Charles the Bold* Duke of *Burgundy*,

Sovereign of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, plac'd to an Instrument dated, 1470. it is worthy of Remark, that Collar adorns the Neck of the Lyon of *Flanders*; but the Sovereigns of the *Garter* usually encompass'd their Arms, not within the Collar of the Order, but the Royal Garter, that being its principal Ensign; and sometimes, having no Shield of Arms, the void Space within the Garter, exhibits their Arms.

OBSERVABLE is the Seal of *Charles* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, wherein is a Shield quarterly of the *Palatinate* and *Bavaria*, obscuring the Lyon Guardant its Supporter, his Four SS's only appearing quadrangularly, and his Head a top ensign'd with an Electoral Crown; this Shield is encircled both within the Garter and Collar of the Order, and is the first Example wherein both these Ensigns are jointly together. It is very frequent to express the Collars of different Orders together: Thus I have seen the Arms of *Robert Dudley* Earl of *Leicester*, entour'd within the Garter, and a Collar of the Order of St. *Michael*, having been Knight of these Orders, and the Funeral Atchievement of the late *James Hamilton Douglas* Duke of *Hamilton*, had the Garter and a Collar of the Thistle about it. And in a Plate under the Effigies of the Duke of *Aspernons*, a Shield of his Arms quarter'd, is encompass'd with the chiefest Ensigns of those Three Orders, whereof he was a Brother and Companion, *viz.* with the Garter and the Collars of St. *Michael* and the *Holy Ghost*. And the older the Order is in the Roll of Antiquity, whose chief Ensign is there represented, the nearer ought it to be plac'd to the Escutcheon of Arms, being the more Honourable Post. A Mistake was committed in the marshalling these Collars, when the Duke of *Chevereux* affixed it over his Stall at *Windsor*, the Collars of St. *Mithael* and the *Holy Ghost* are plac'd nearer to his

Escutcheon than that of the Garter.

§ 8. AND whereas we have spoke of another kind of Collar, call'd a Collar of SS's, worn as Badges of lower and inferior Honour, it will not be amiss to inform our Judgment in other Affairs concerning them. *Wicelius* informs us from a Book in the Library of *Fulda*, where (in the Life of the Two Brothers *Simplicius* and *Faustinus*, both Senators, and suffer'd Martyrdom under *Dioclesian*) there is a Description of the Society of St. *Simplicius*, consisting of Noble Personages in their own Families, and describing the Collar wore as the Badge of it says, thus: *It was the Custom of those Persons to wear about their Necks Silver Collars, compos'd of double SS's, which denote the Name of Saint* Simplicius, *between these double SS's. The Collar consisted of Twelve small Plates of Silver, in which were engraven the Twelve Articles of the Creed, together with a single Trefoil: The Image of St.* Simplicius *hung at the Collar, and from it Seven Plates, representing the Seven Gifts of the Holy Ghost. As to the manner of their Martyrdom, they were bound together by the Neck to a Stone, and thrown over the Bridge into the River* Tyber.

AT what Time the Collar of SS's came into *England* is not fully determin'd, but it will appear at least Three Hundred Years since, and worn as an Ornament for Women, as well as Men; for on a Monument in the Collegiate Church of *Warwick*, the Figure of *Margaret*, Wife to Sir *William Peito* (said to be interr'd *Temp. Edw.* III.) hath a Collar of SS's drawn about, and set close to her Neck, which the Sculpture in *The Antiquities of* Warwickshire, by mistake, represented like a Ruff. There was also a Collar of SS's about the Neck of Sir *Simon Burley*'s Statue in St. *Paul*'s *London*.

IN the ancient Creation of an Esquire in *England*,

part of the Ceremony was the King's putting about his Neck a Silver Collar of SS's. And *Selden*, in his Titles of Honour contemns not the old Ballad, *The Tanner of* Tamworth, to prove the Creation of Esquires in King *Edw.* IV's Reign, by conferring such Collars on them. But that the Golden one was the undoubted Badge of a Knight, as may be instanc'd by many undeniable Examples, deduc'd from the Monuments of such Persons, *Temp. Hen.* VI. *Ed.* IV. *Hen.* VII. *Hen.* VIII. and since, and so legally appropriate thereto, that in the Act 24 *H.* VIII. made for Reformation of Apparel, there is a Proviso entred, That Knights, notwithstanding, might publickly wear a Gold Collar of SS's, tho' since it is grown obsolete and useless. *Favin* tells us that our *Hen.* V. instituted an Order surnam'd Knights of the SS's on the Day of the Martyrs St. *Crispine* and *Crispianus*; which tho' he found nothing of it in our *English* Historians, yet from the Chronicle of *Juvenal des Ursins*, where he treats of the Battle of *Agincourt*, he collected this following Relation.

"THE King of *England* exhorted his Men, and commanded, That if any had trespass'd against another, they should be reconcil'd and confess'd to the Priests, otherwise no good Success wou'd accrew to them in their Attempts. He advis'd them to be civil in their March, and to do their Duty well, and agreed upon these Conditions, That those of their Company who were not of gentle Extraction he wou'd make so from the Fountain of Honour, and give them Warrants, that for the future they should enjoy the Privileges the Gentlemen of *England* had; and to the End they might be distinguish'd from others, he granted them leave to wear a Collar powder'd with the Letter S."

AMONG the Variety of Collars of SS's now in

vogue, there are these following: The Lord Mayor of *London*'s Collar is compos'd of Gold, having a Knot (like one of those that tye the Garters together in the great Collar of the Order) inserted between Two SS*s*, and they again situated between Two Roses, *viz.* a White Rose within a Red, and in the Middle before the Breast is a large Portcullis, whereat hangs a most rich Jewel sett with large Diamonds.

THE Collars of the Lords Chief Justices of both the Benches, and the chief Baron of the *Exchequer*, are (in Memory of the said St. *Simplicius*, a Senator, and consequently a Gownman) form'd of the Letter S, and a Knot alternately, having a Rose set in that part of it which falls out to be in the Middle of their Breasts, and another on their Backs; the Five Flowers of these Roses are constituted of Five large Pearls.

THOSE Collars, which appertain to the Kings and Heralds of Arms, as well as to Serjeants at Arms, having been bestow'd by former Kings, and renew'd to them by King *Charles* II. to be worn upon Days of solemn Attendance, are compos'd of SS's link'd together. In the Middle of the Breast is a Rose, at each of which hangs Three small Drops of Silver; but the SS's in the Collars worn by the Kings of Arms are made somewhat larger than the other, and in that part lying on either Shoulder, is a Portcullis taken in between the SS's, which are wanting in the rest.

THE general difference of the Collars appropriate to the before-named Degrees, is this; Knights have allow'd them Collars of Silver gilt, but Esquires only Silver; and therefore in the Creating of an Herald, in part of that Ceremony, he is made an Esquire, by putting on him a Collar of SS's of Silver; and so is a Serjeant at Arms.

THE Kings of *England* have sometimes been pictured with a Collar of SS's about their Arms, in

like manner as the Garter doth surround them, as appears from an Impression of King *Henry* VIII's Privy Signet; whereon his Royal Arms crown'd are encircled with a Collar of SS's, to the lower End of which are affix'd Two Portcullisses.

§ 9. WE come now to the lesser *George* of the Order; and we do not find that the Effigies of St. *George* was at any time worn by the Sovereign or Knights-Companions, before the Breast or under the Arm, as now used till the 13th of *Henry* VIII. But then that King decreed in a Chapter held at *Greenwich*, the Morrow after St. *George*'s Day, That every Knight should wear loosely before his Breast the Image of St. *George* in a Gold Chain, or otherwise, in a Ribband, the same to be fasten'd within the ennobled Garter, for a manifest Distinction between the Knights-Companions, and others of the Nobility and Knights, who, according to the Mode of those Times, wore large Gold Chains, the ordinary Ensigns of Knighthood. And thus the wearing the Medal or Jewel, usually call'd the lesser *George*, to distinguish it from the other Work at the Collar of the Order, first receiv'd the Injunction, and hath since been frequently used.

THIS *George* was, for the most part, pure Gold curiously wrought, but divers of them were exquisitely graved in Onyx's and Agats, and with such a happy Collection of the Stones, that heightned and received their Beauty by the Skill of the Artificer, in contriving the Figures and History, the natural Tincture of the Stones have so fitted them with Colours for Flesh, Hair, and every thing else, even to Surprize and Admiration. In this Jewel is St. *George* represented in a Riding Posture encountring

the Dragon with his drawn Sword.

BY the last Article of King *Henry* VIII's. Statutes, it was allowed to be enriched at the Pleasure of the Possessor, (as is the great George) which for the most Part hath been curiously enamell'd, and the Garter about it sett with Diamonds. And of what weight and bigness these lesser *George*'s were, may be gather'd from that sent to the French King *Charles* IX. being an Ounce and an half and half quarter Weight. The Variety of Workmanship in those Gold Chains whereat this Jewel hung, was usually great, according to the Fancy and Pleasure of the Persons for whom they were wrought. But within a short Space, wearing the lesser George in Silk-Ribbands, as well as Gold-Chains, was promiscuously us'd and *ad Libitum*. (So were the Symbols of Foreign Orders, as divers Coins and Medals declare.) But the Colour of these Ribbands when they came first to be wore, was black. *John Dudley* Viscount *Lisle*, the Lords St. *John* and *Parr*, so used them at their Investiture, 35 *Henry* VIII. and several Pictures of other Knights-Companions about that time confirm the same. That small Chain whereat hung the lesser *George* transmitted to *Emanuel* of *Savoy*, *Ann.* 1 & 2 *Ph.* & *Mar.* was formed of twelve Pieces of Gold, in every of which was sett three small Diamonds, and of twelve other like Pieces, wherein were three Rubies and twenty four Pearls.

IT appears by a Letter of Sir *Richard* St. *George*, Kt. *Clarencieux*, dated *July* 10th, 1627. that the blue Ribband had some Years before been additional to the Ornament of the Order; and 'tis reported, that *Robert* Earl of *Essex* observing in *France* the Jewels of the Order of St. *Michael* and St. *Esprit* worn in blue Ribbands, upon his return was the principal motive those Ribbands whereat the *George* hung, were

exchanged into that Colour. And in a Picture of Queen *Elizabeth*, drawn towards the Declension of her Reign, her lesser George is represented hanging before her Breast in a blue Ribband. And this Colour was more caressed, and grew in great repute, by reason it was the Ground of the Garter, and nearest the Colour of the Mantle of the Order: So that toward the latter End of the Reign of King *James* I. because the dye of the Ribband had not been peculiarly express'd in any Statute, and the blue and azure accustomed for some Years past, it was decreed, That for the future it should be always of blue, and no other; nor in time of Mourning it self, should be changed.

THE Manner of wearing this Ribband in time of Peace, was of later Times pendant about the Neck, down to the Middle of the Breast, where the lesser George hung; but since, for the more Conveniency of Riding or Action, the same is spread over the left Shoulder, and brought under the right Arm where the Jewel hangs.

BUT where the Pictures of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions are drawn in Armour, there even to this Day the George is represented as fix'd to a Gold Chain instead of a blue Ribband, and worn about the Neck, not brought under the right Arm, as exhibited on the three Pound Pieces of Gold stamped at *Oxford* by King *Charles* I. 1643. and a Medal of *Charles* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, dated 1645.

AMONG the invaluable Jewels and other Curiosities of King *Charles* I. which came to the Hands of the Trustees appointed for Sale of his Goods, were these,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A George containing 161 Diamonds, Sold for	71	2	0

A George cut in Onyx, with 41 Diamonds in the Garnish,	37 0 0
A small George with a few Diamonds	9 0 0
A George with 5 Rubies and 3 Diamonds, and 11 Diamonds in a Box	11 0 0
A George cut in a Garnet	8 0 0
Total	136 2 0

THE George King *Charles* I. had at his Martyrdom, was curiously Engraved in an Onyx set about with twenty One large Table-Diamonds in the Fashion of a Garter. On the reverse of the said George was the Picture of the Queen set in a Case of Gold, the Lid neatly enamell'd with Goldsmith's Work, and surrounded with another Garter adorned with an equal Number of Diamonds, as was that of King *Charles* II. also sett with fair Diamonds; and after the Defeat given to the *Scotch* Forces at *Worcester*, 4 *Car.* II. was strangely preserved by Colonel *Blague*, one of that King's dispersed Attendants, who resigned it for safety to the Wife of Mr. *Barlow* of *Blare-Pipe-House* in *Stafford-shire*, where he took Sanctuary; from whom *Robert Milward* Esq; receiv'd and gave it into the Hands of Mr. *Isaac Walton*, (all Loyalists.) It came again to *Blague*'s Possession, then Prisoner in the Tower; whence making his escape, he restor'd it to King *Charles* II.

IT is worthy of Remark, that besides the Sovereign of the most Noble Order of the Garter, other Princes of Christendom have assumed the bearing St. *George* encountring the Dragon in like Posture, tho' not so anciently, nor upon the same Grounds and Foundation as they; probably having elected him Patron and Guardian of their Countries or Families; such as the Emperors of *Russia*, the Dukes of *Mantua*,

and the Counts *Mansfield* in *Germany*, as their Seals and Coins plainly demonstrate.

IN the Great Seal of *Borice Feodorwicke*, Emperour of *Russia* affixed to his Letter sent to Queen *Elizabeth*, dated at *Mosco*, *June* 12th, 1602, was a double Headed Eagle displaid, having each Head crowned, and bearing an Eschutcheon with the Representation of St. *George* upon its Breast. There is another of this Emperour's Great Seals, fixed to his Letter, dated *May* 31st. 1594. which he also sent to Queen *Elizabeth*. On one side is the above-said Eagle, having on his Breast an Escutcheon charged with an Horse currant; the Reverse the Figure of St. *George* encountring the Dragon with his Spear. The Great Seal of *Alexie Michaelowich*, Emperour of *Russia*, affixed to his Letters sent King *Charles* II. 1660. hath a like Eagle with a third Crown situated between the two Heads, and bearing in a Cartouch-Compartment upon his Breast, the Figure of St. *George*: Which Representation of St. *George* and the Dragon, we find assigned for Arms, to *Anne de Russie*, Daughter to *Jarislaus* King of *Russia* and *Muscovia*, given in Espousal to *Henry* I. King of *France*, 1051. and thus Blazon'd, *D'in St.* Marthe *de Gueules, a un homme a Cheval, d'argent, tenant une Lance en la main, qu'il darde en la gueule d'un Dragon renverse*.

THE Counts of *Mansfield* have frequently stamp'd it on their Coin. On one side is St. *George* encountring the Dragon with his Sword, with this Circumscription, *Sanct. Geo. Co. do. de Man.* on the reverse, his Arms circumscribed, *Mon. de Arc. Co. do. de Man.* Of those of the Dukes of *Mantua*, we may see one of *Vincentius* Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferat*, a Knight of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, wherein is his Effigies to the Breast, *Vinc. D. G. Dux MANT.* III. *MONTFERU.* on the Reverse St. *George* and the

Dragon, Motto, *Protector nostra aspic.* 1591. and *Casal* at the Bottom.

§ 10. *When the Habit or part of it ought to be worn is the next thing we shall speak of.*

THE more solemn Days and Occasions which require a fuller conformity, and the wearing the whole Habit, *i. e.* the Garter, Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, Collar, Great George, and Cap, are first, The High Festival of the Order, commonly called St. *George*'s Feast, whether it be solemnized on the 22d, 23d or 24th of *April*, annually, or any other Days within the Year by Prorogation, as is apparent by all the Bodies of the Statutes.

FOR, First it is ordained, That the Knights-Companions should be Arrayed in the whole Habit on the Eve of St. *George*, before the Sovereign proceeded to the Chapter to hear Divine Service, and being so Robed, should attend on the Sovereign to the Chapter-House, thence to the Chapel, and return with him back in the same manner, until after Supper, as well those that minded to Sup, as those that should not Sup; nor might they disrobe, until the Sovereign or his Deputy had put off his, or declar'd it seasonable for his or their doing so.

BY the same Statute they were enjoined to wear the whole Habit on the Feast of St. *George*, both at their Progression in the Morning to the Chapter-House or Chapel, at their return to Dinner from thence to the Second Vespers, and back to Supper, as also till Supper was over, and until the Sovereign or his Lieutenant took leave of the rest of the Knights-Companions.

Secondly, IT is manifest from King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, That the Eve, the Day of St. *George*, and

Morrow following, were to be observed with solemn Service, and holding of Chapters wheresoever the Sovereign was resident; tho' the Grand Feast were Prorogued to a longer Duration; and when by reason of such Prorogation, they should convene in any Place besides *Windsor* to attend the Sovereign for the Solemnization of St. *George*'s Day, they then must Adorn themselves with the whole Habit from beginning of the first Vespers, until the last Evening Service of the same Day.

Thirdly, ON such other Days of the Year whereon the Grand Feast is held by Prorogation, and during such Part of the Eve and Day of the Feast, as is before appointed when it is held on its proper Day.

Fourthly, BY absent Knights, whensoever the Grand Feast of St. *George* should be celebrated, and wheresoever they should happen at that time to reside, (if at Liberty, and not under restraint) to keep it in like manner as if then present with the Sovereign, or his Deputy in the Place where he should Celebrate the Feast. The time of wearing the whole Habit in this Point extends but to the End of the second Vespers, as in the second Instance above.

Fifthly, THE Knights-Companions are to wear the entire Habit at the Feasts of Installation when they assist at that Ceremony; where, if it commence in the Evening, they are not to disrobe themselves till after Supper; and being the next Morning habited as before, then to proceed to the Chapter-House or Chapel, and not to devest themselves till Dinner is ended.

THE less solemn Occasions are those, which require the wearing the Mantle or Collar of the Order only.

AND they are first, upon the Morrow after the

Grand Feast-Day, when the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceed to the Chapel, and make their Offering; then it sufficeth, that they barely put on the Mantle, which, Service being Finished, they were wont to leave it at the Chapter-House-Door as they retired out of the Chapel.

Secondly, As often as Chapters are called, and in what Place soever assembled, either for Elections, or other Causes, as it shall please the Sovereign to nominate: And as often as it is requisite for the Sovereign, or any of the Knights-Companions to enter into the Chapel of St. *George* at *Windsor*; and in reference hereunto, is the Article 15 *E.* 3. was that their Mantles should remain in the Vestry at *Windsor*, that upon any sudden emergency, they might be in readiness: for in the Inventory of the Chapel taken 8 *R.* 2. we find remaining at that time in the Vestry, a Mantle appertaining to the Sovereign, another to *John* Duke of *Britain*, a third to *John Holland* Earl of *Huntington*, another to *Edmund Langley* Earl of *Cambridge*, and one to *Thomas Holland*, Earl of *Kent*, all of them then surviving: And by a Decree past at the Grand Feast 1 *H.* 6. the Mantle of the young Sovereign was appointed to be left at *Windsor*, as the Statutes required; and this Article was confirmed by King *Henry* VIII. by Virtue whereof, the Mantles of the Emperor *Charles* V. and *Anna* Duke of *Montmorency*, were left in the Custody of the Dean and Canons of *Windsor*. And heretofore in the Bill of drawing up Matters necessary for the Installation of a Knight-Companion, there were usually two Mantles set down; one expressed to be left in the College, and the other for all other Occasions that might intervene.

These Mantles thus ordered to be reposed in the College upon emergent Occasions, were anciently

committed to the Custody of the Black-Rod, as granted by Letters Patent with the Office 1 *H.* 5. And after the Death of the Owners, devolved to the Dean and Canons of *Windsor*, either for the publick Use of the Knights-Companions when they casually came to *Windsor*, or else sold sometimes to the Heirs of the Deceased, or others who succeeded in the Order, as that of *Charles* V. was to the Earl of *Bedford*, and that of the Constable of *France* lent to the Earl of *Warwick*, *Ann.* 7 *Eliz.* which appears from the Accounts of the Chanter of the College, *temp. H.* 4. *H.* 5. *H.* 8. Q. *Eliz.* and *Jac.* 1. who in all times answered the full Benefit thereof to the College, as being a certain Perquisite to the Dean and Canons, which they accordingly had and enjoyed.

AND yet we find some of the College made over-bold with the Robe of *Sigismond* the Emperour, and sold it while he surviv'd. But the Archbishop of *York*, who, as Chancellor of *England*, visited the College, 1431. secured the Money from being distributed among those that sold it, and reserved the Dividend to the Dean and Chapter that should chance to be living at that Emperour's Expiration; and commanded for the Future under Pain of Excommunication, That no Dean and Canon should imbezil or aliene any Knights-Companion's Mantle while he was alive, but the same should be decently and faithfully kept and preserved. But we are informed, that this Statute was altered, *Ann.* 9 *Eliz.* and one drawn up to this effect, *That the Knights-Companions should be bound by Oath to take care by their Wills, that after their Decease, all the Ornaments which they had received should be restored, the Robes to the College, and the Jewels to the Sovereign that gave them.*

IN the last Place, the Times of wearing the Collar

of the Order, with the Great *George* appendant, which is not only enjoined to be worn (as part of the Habit) at the grand Feasts and Feasts of Installation, but also at other times when not any of the rest of the Habit is ordered (saving the Garter) is to be worn, as in special, *at the principal and solemn Feasts of the Year*, and other Feast-Days: To which a particular Order in Chapter, *Ann.* 4 *Eliz.* thus directs,

The Holy-days and Sundays within the twelve Days.
St. *Matthias* Day.
Holydays in *Easter*-Week.
St. *Mark*'s Day.
St. *Philip* and *Jacob*'s Day.
Holy-days in *Whitsun*-Week.
St. *Peter*'s Day.
St. *James*'s Day.
St. *Bartholomew*.
St. *Matthew*.
St. *Luke*.
St. *Simon* and *Jude*.
St. *Andrew*.
St. *Thomas*.

BESIDES these, the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions have been accustomed to wear this Ensign upon the Anniversary of the Sovereign's Coronation, of the *Gun-Powder Treason*, and, of later Times, on the Sovereign's Birth-day: So formerly upon some occasional Ceremonies not relative to the Order; as when a Knight-Companion hath been created into Titles of Dignity and Honour, he had the Collar of the Garter added to his Investiture, as appears in the Case of *Henry Stafford*, created Earl of *Wiltshire*, *Ann.* 1 *Hen.* 8. And at a Chapter held *May* 22d. 1622. That such Knights-Companions as should afterwards assist at the Funeral of any Knight-

Companion, should wear the Collar *apert* at the said Funeral. And it was so observed by the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Richmond*, the Earls of *Manchester* and *Sandwich*, at the Obsequies of *George Monk* Duke of *Albemarle*.

Howbeit, the Custom is otherwise as to wearing the Garter, the principal Ensign of the Order; for tho' it be injoyned to be wore at the grand Festivals, &c. yet it does not imply that it might be left off: For indeed it ought daily to be worn both by the Sovereign and Knights Companions. And therefore was it decreed even in its Institution, That if any Knight-Companion should in publick be found without one buckled about his Leg, upon Challenge he should be mulct a Noble to the Dean and College of *Windsor*. By King *Henry* VIII. the Fine was raised a Mark, payable as before to any of the five Officers of the Order, or to the Dean; besides which Fine, the Knight lies liable to a Check. But to alleviate the Strictness, and obviating other Inconveniencies, King *Henry* V. admitted of a Qualification; and in case of riding with Boots, ordained, That it might suffice if the Knight-Companion wore some Ribband or Silk-Lace to represent the Garter; tho' in this very Article there is a Proviso, That no Knight-Companion should enter into Chapter, without his Garter buckled about the Leg.

In short, King *Henry* VIII. ordained, That the Gold-Chain whereat the lesser *George* (in that Age) hung, should be worn all other days in the Year, except the Principal and Solemn Feasts, whereon the great Collar was ordained to be worn, and except in time of War, Sickness, or long Voyage, in any of which Cases, a Silk-Lace or Ribband, with the Image of St. *George* thereat, was sufficient; and the blue Ribband having since succeeded in Place of the Gold Chain,

the Injunction of this Statute extends to it in all particulars.

CAP. VIII.

§ 1.

CONCERNING the Officers appointed for the service of the Order, to give it a greater degree and augmentation of Honour, the Founder constituted a *Prelate*, *Register* and *Usher*, assigning them several Duties. Some of his Successors added the *Chanchellor* and *Garter*, and all of them Sworn to be of the Council of the Order; among these the *Prelate* and *Chanchellor* are usually nominated the Principal, the other three the inferiour Officers of the Order.

IN this Chapter we shall give some account of their Institution, Oath, Habit, Ensigns, Privileges and Pensions; for as to the nature of their Offices and their Duties, they are for the general, Recorded in the Black Book, under the Title *Constutiones ad Officiales Ordinis [Garterij] peculiariter attinentes*, &c. Upon the Establishment, *Anno* 13. *Hen.* VIII. 1521. and annex'd to his Statutes, and more particularly their Duties, will occur in several places of the ensuing Discourse, where they properly fall in to be Treated of, as follows;

THE Prelate is the first and primier Officer, and in the Founders Statutes, call'd *Prælatus Ordinis*; and that the then Bishop of *Winchester*, *William de Edyngton* was the first Prelate is very obvious from thence; he is an Officer of Honour only, and hath

neither Pension nor Fees allowed him by the said Constitutions; this Office is vested in the Bishop of *Winchester*, for the time being; and from the Annals of the Order it's manifest his Successors have continued Prelates to this Day, except the interruption only of a few Months, *Anno* 7. *Ed.* 6. immediately after the publishing this King's Statutes; wherein the other Four Officers were constituted anew, to attend the Order, but the Prelate wholly laid by.

WHAT high reputation this See hath been favour'd with, may be collected from an Act of Parliament, 31. *Hen.* VIII. concerning the Placing of the Lords in Parliament Chamber, and other Assemblies and Conferences of Council, whereby this Bishop had Place assigned him next to the Bishop of *Durham*, who hath place by that Act, next the Archbishop of *York*; tho' before in respect of the prehemenence of this noble Order, he had precedence and Place granted above all Bishops, and next unto the Arch-Bishops. At that Officers admittance he is oblig'd to take an Oath in the presence of the Soveraign or his Lieutenant, which consists of these particulars.

1. *To be present in all Chapters, whereunto he is Summoned.*

2. *To report all things truly without Favour or Fear.*

3. *To take the Scrutiny faithfully, and present it to the Sovereign.*

4. *To keep secret, and not disclose the Councils of the Order.*

5. *To promote and maintain the Honour of it.*

6. *To withstand and reveal what is designed to the contrary.*

THIS Oath is read in Chapter, by the Register of the Order, the Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, holding the Book, whilst the Prelate Kneels between the Sovereign's Knees.

Of the ROBE.

AS the Knights-Companions had their Surcoats bestowed on them, at the Sovereigns charge, and therefore called the Kings Livery, so had the Officers of the Order their Liveries or Robes out of the Sovereign's Wardrobe, and in particular the Prelate of the Order: For in the Rolls of the great Wardrobe, we find that *William de Edyngton* had allow'd him for his Robe of the Sovereign's Livery, against the Feast of St. *George*, Anno 37. *Ed.* III. one Cloth of Sanguine grain, and a large quantity of Furs for trimming it up: And we find this Robe so assigned the Prelate to be of the sute or colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats the same Year, *viz.* Sanguine in grain, and that he had a great allowance of Furr; for his being a Mantle was larger than any of the Knights Surcoats, tho' they are both call'd by the same name *Roba* in the Rolls of the Wardrobe, *Anno* 7. *Rich.* II. *William de Wyckham* then Prelate had the same allowance, one Cloth of Violet in grain and other Materials. But the Discrimination was in the Bellies of Minevers, whose Number was now much encreased, and that the same allowance was bestowed on him in the 11th and 19th Years of the said King. But in these three Instances the Colour of the Cloth was different, and suitable to the Knights-Companions Surcoats, those very Years, *viz.* Violet in grain, White and Blue, and *Anno* 12. *Hen.* VI. the Robe of *Henry Beaufort*, Cardinal and Prelate was White, as then were the

Surcoats of the Knights-Companions, whence it is evident the Livery formerly allowed the Prelate annually varied in Colour, as did the Knights-Companions Surcoats.

IN that ancient Precedent of the Liveries of the Garter, remaining in the great Wardrobe, wherein the Surcoats of the Knights-Companions are reduced to a Stated proportion in the measure of the Cloth, number of Furs and Garters, modeled out according to their state degrees, there the Prelate hath the following allowance for his Livery,

24 Yards of Woollen Cloth.
18 Timber pur
18 Timber gross. } Minever.
3 Timber de Biss.

BY all which it is manifest what Materials and colour the Prelate's Robe was of at the institution of the Order, and for a long time after, nor do we find any variation until the Reign of King *Hen.* VIII. and then this Habit was ordained to be Crimson Velvet, lin'd with white Taffaty, faced with blue, and thereon down the opening before upon the bordures, sundry Royal cognizances on the right side, the Rose of *England* Crowned, on the left side opposite one of King *Edw.* IV's. Badges, *viz.* a Rose within the Sun Beams Crowned; and then the aforesaid Badges again *vice versa*, with more Damaskings; on the right side the Flower de luce of *France* Crowned, and on the left side King *Edw.* III's. peculiar Badge, *viz.* The Sun Beams issuing out of a Cloud, and those Badges repeated in alternate situations; every Badge interpolated with an Area of Embroidered Damasking; Forty of these Clouds wrought of Gold, Silver and Silk, having in the middle the *Saxon* Letter

E of Gold, were provided to him several Garments made for that King 21 *Edw.* III. and Embellished with Stars. As the left Shoulder of a Knight Companions Mantle, so the right Shoulder of the Prelates Robe is injoyned to be Embroidred with a Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, encompassed with a Garter, and adorned with Cordons of blue Silk mingled with Gold. After a while the colour of this Robe became changed to Murray. The allowance of Velvet 16 Yards, of white Sarcenet for Lining 12 Yards, and a Garter for the Shoulder, Embroidred with Purls of Damask Gold. But 23 *Eliz.* for the Livery of Bishop *Watson* then newly admitted, the quantity of Velvet was encreased to 18 Yards; but the Lining and Garter remained as it was, so also the Cordon, having Buttons and Tassels of blue Silk, and *Venice* Gold; the like Robe in all particulars were made for Bishop *Cooper*, and Bishop *Bilson*, his Successars, *Temp. Eliz.*

ABOUT 12 *Car.* I. the Prelate and Chancellor Petition'd the Sovereign to restore them their ancient Rights and Privileges of Honour, in relation to their Ensigns and Robes upon their outward Garments, whereupon 13 *Car.* I. it was Ordered in Chapter, that the Knights-Commissioners (newly Established by that Chapter) should take into their consideration the Robes the Prelate and Chancellor were to be invested with, and certify the Sovereign the ancient Colour and Fashion; but nothing was effected untill after the Restoration, and then by Warrant under the Signet of the Order, Dated *February* 19. 13. *Car.* II. the Prelate had assigned him for his Livery of the Order, one Robe of Purple Velvet, containing 18 Yards, and 10 Yards of white Taffaty for Lining, as also the Arms of St. *George* within a Garter, wrought with Letters, and Purls of Damask, Gold and Pearls, having Laces, Buttons and Tassels of purple Silk, and *Venice* Gold;

but what inducements the Sovereign had for so changing the Murray Colour for Purple, has not reached our Intelligence. The time he is obliged to Wear this Robe, is in express text of the Constitutions, to be Yearly on the Vigil and Day of St. *George*, wheresoever he is at liberty, whether it be in Parliament, or any other solemn Occasion, or Festival whatsoever.

THE Honours conferred on this Officer, are, that his Post in all Proceedings and Ceremonies of the Order, is on the right Hand of the Chancellor; that he hath the Privilege of Marshalling his Arms within the ennobled Garter, and accordingly hath it been customary to surround them, impaling his See. He hath allotted him convenient Appartments within the Castle of *Windsor*, in a Tower Situated on the North-side, called *Winchester* Tower; and as often as he shall Arrive thither, or to any other Place at the Sovereign's Command, upon the Affairs of the Order, he ought to have allowed him of the Court Livery for Himself and Retinue, according to the Stipends, that Earls resident in Court do possess. 2 *Car.* I. This Officer (so well as the Chancellor) had the Honour allowed him, to Wear upon the left Part of his Cloak, Coat, and riding Cassock, at all seasons, when he should not be Invested with his Robe, and in all Places, and Assemblies, a Scutcheon of the Arms of St. *George*, but not inriched with Pearls and Stones. But not long after there was some restraint upon this Act, tho' I do not find it repealed.

§ 2. THE institution of the Chancellors Office, his Oath, Robe, Badge, and Pension next follows to be handled. At the Erecting this Noble Order, the common Seal was ordained to remain in the custody

of whomsoever the Sovereign should please to lodge it, but expresly to be one of the Knights-Companions; among whom in after-times, Sir *John Robertsack* is Stiled *Custos Sigilli Ordinis*, having the custody of it by Decree, 1. *Hen.* VI. by a Prolepsis of Speech, Styled Chancellor in the Black Book. But King *Edw.* IV. finding it requisite to fix the Office of Chancellor of the Garter, in a Person distinct from the Knights-Companions, and subservient to them, Decreed in a Chapter at *Westminister*, 16 *Regni sui*, That the Seal of the Order should be resigned to *Richard Beauchamp*, then Bishop of *Salisbury* to keep during pleasure, and he to be called Chancellor of this most noble Order; not long after by Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of *England*, Dated the 10th of *Oct.* 15. *Edw.* IV. this King declared, that tho' this Office was not expressed by the Founder's Statutes, yet was it nevertheless very useful, and therefore for the Advancement, and good of the Order, he constituted an Officer named Chancellor: And forasmuch as this Office was of great Import and Concern, and required an expert and able Person, it was His further Pleasure, that none but a Bishop should Execute it; moreover considering the Chapel of St. *George* at *Windsor*, was Founded within the Diocess of *Salisbury*, and having regard to the prudence and diligence of the said *Beauchamp*, who out of meer love to the Order, attended daily the progress of the Work, wherewith the King was then in hand for enlarging the Chapel at *Windsor*; he did therefore Ordain the said Bishop for the Term of his Life, Chancellor of the Order, and after his decease, his Successors, Bishops of *Salisbury*, should always have and hold the said Chancellorship; Nevertheless, provided that the King's Concession should be put in execution, by the Advice of the Knights-Companions, and without prejudice to

the Bishop of *Winchester*, in those things which ought by the Statutes of Institution to belong unto him.

THIS Office thus conferred upon *Beauchamp* personally for Life, and perpetually to his Successors, Bishops of *Salisbury*, by vertue of this Grant continued Chancellors, nor doth it appear that any other Person had been invested therein, until *Ann.* 7. *E.* VI. that Sir *William Cecil*, then principal Secretary of State, was made Chancellor.

FOR upon Reformation of the Order by that King, his Statutes wholly excluded the Ecclesiasticks, and appointed that the Chancellors-Office should be executed by a Knight qualified, with Honour and Reputation to manage a Post of that Care and Fidelity; he thereupon appointed Sir *William Cecil*, Chancellor; And here first entred a secular Person, notwithstanding which in a Charter to the Bishop of *Salisbury*, 4 *Eliz.* (containing the Charters of Queen *Mary*, *H.* VIII. and *H.* VII. and in another 4. *Car.* I.) the forementioned Letters Patents, made to *Beauchamp*, by King *Edw.* IV. are therein recited *totidem verbis*, and confirmed as a Tacit Reservation of the Right and Title of those Bishops, whensoever the Sovereign should have a benign and propitious Aspect towards that See. The first of these Bishops who concerned himself for recovering this high Station to that See, was Bishop *Cotton*, who upon the Death of Sir *Edward Dyer*, sometime Chancellor, Petitioned the Sovereign, 6. *Jac.* I. and prayed Restitution thereof to the Church of *Salisbury*; but before any determination, the two chief Justices, and chief Baron was advised withal, who were of Opinion, that this Office was not compleatly or sufficiently annexed to the Bishoprick of *Salisbury* by King *Edw.* IV. But *Cook* in his Institutes, reports the point Void, upon the incertainty of the Grant, for

that a new Office was Erected, and not defined what Jurisdiction or Authority the Officer should Exercise; and there's assigned a third Reason, That the Grant was in the Sovereign's disposal, because the Patent was obtained without Fee; with one or more of these Opinions, the Sovereign's judgment being swayed, He forthwith nominated Sir *John Herbert*, one of His privy Council to the Chancellor-ship, and so this affair remained Silent, until *Anno* 12. *Car.* I. when *John Davenant*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, upon Sir *Francis Cranes* decease, remonstrated to the Sovereign his Claim to this Office, whereupon at a Chapter held at *Windsor*, 5th of *Dec.* that Year, the Sovereign propos'd to the Knights-Companions present, that tho' he had made Election of Sir *Thomas Rowe* for his Chancellor that time, yet understanding a Claim made by the Bishop of *Salisbury*, that the Place was annexed to that See, he commanded the Lords-Companions to take the pretence of right into their considerations; to which proposition of the King's, they answered that they thought it not their duty to search for the Title of any Person, but that if the Bishop did produce his Evidence and Proofs, he might present it in Chapter to be considered.

UPON this Encouragement, the Bishop presented a Petition, which was read in the Chapter at *Windsor*, the 18th of *April* ensuing, to this effect, That King *Edw.* IV., by Letters Patent, had Erected this Office of Chancellor, and did then grant the same to *Richard Beauchamp*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, and his Successors for ever, in consideration that the Chapel of St. *George* was within their Diocess; that those Bishops had enjoyed the same, according to the Charter, which Charter had been confirmed under the Great Seal of *England*, by some other Kings and Queens, and lastly by the King himself. But that the use and

exercise of that Office had for many Years been discontinued from them, praying therefore an Hearing, and Examination, that the right of the said Church might be preserved and restored. To the substance of which it was objected.

First, THAT > the Great Seals of *England* did not work within, or upon the Statutes and Rules of the Order of the Garter.

Second, THAT no Grant could prescribe the present Sovereign, it being a Law Fundamental within the Order, *Suprema Lex* was *Suprema Voluntas*.

Third, THAT it did not appear by the Records of the Order, that the Office of the Chancellor was any otherwise conferred upon *Richard Beauchamp*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, than *quam diu Regiæ celsitudini complaceret*.

TO the *First*, It was answered by way of Exception, as to the Grant of Offices, forasmuch as the Great Seal of *England* was took into, and became legal within the Order in like cases; and not any Patent for an Office, had past under the Seal of the Order, but under the Great Seal of *England*, and in particular the Office of the Chancellor-ship, which had not been transacted, if any legal defect had been therein.

TO the *Second*, granting it was so as was Objected, it appeared that the Sovereign was as much at liberty to restore this Office to the See of *Salisbury*, as continue it to secular Dignities.

TO the *Third*, what was alledged out of the Records of the Order, related only to the time of delivering the Seals to Bishop *Beauchamp*: But afterwards when the Office was Erected by Letters Patent, it was then granted to him during Life. Something was replied from the Judges Opinions, even in this case, *Ann. Jac.* R. VI. But the Sovereign thought it was not then

well canvass'd and weighed, to permit the Chapter Acts of this Order, wholly independant from other Laws, to receive construction and determination from the common Law, and therefore declared that the Bishop ought to be heard; and to that purpose, gave him Orders to prepare the Vouchers and Proofs of his pretensions in vindication of his Petition, and to send them to be delivered to the Knights-Commissioners, elected for the affairs of the Order, for their consideration at the next Chapter, which was accordingly put in execution, and then refierred to them again to be considered, prepared and abbreviated, to be perused by the Sovereign, for his final determination. But the *Scotch* War shortly after breaking forth, and troubles running high at Home, the further Prosecution was laid aside, and not revived until the 19th of *Nov. Anno* 21. *Car.* II. When *Seth Ward*, Bishop of *Salisbury*, took encouragement upon the former grounds, and the Sovereign's favour, to set on foot this Claim, by a Petition presented to the Chapter then held at *Whitehall*, where, after a full debate and mature deliberation had of its equity and just Foundation, he obtained a Decree for Re-establishment of this Office on the Bishops of that See, upon the first vacancy, Dated the 19th of *Nov.* 1669. and present his Majesty the Sovereign, the Dukes of *York*, and *Ormond*, Earls of *Oxford* and *Manchester*, Prince *Rupert*, Earls of *Bristol* and *Sandwich*, and the Duke of *Monmouth*.

Of the OATH.

THE Oath the *Chancellor* takes at his Admission which we find to be the same with the Prelates, and in the like humble Posture upon the Knee, and

usually Administred by the Register of the Order. As to his Robe, it was at first the same with the Prelates, both for Cloth and Colour, but his proportion of Cloth far less, having allowed him but 5 Yards, when the Prelate had 24, nor but 3 Timber of Minever gross, where the Prelate had 19, beside a large quantity of other Furs; nor was the Colour confined to one kind, until the constitutions of this Office appointed it to be Crimson, as was the Prelates, for no doubt it was before annually changed, as his was to the Colour of the Knights-Companions Surcoats; however by the Picture of the ancient Habits of the Officers, it is conspicuous, it was debared the Royal Badges, wherewith the Prelates Rose was Embroidred; when the Colour of the Prelates Robe was changed to Murray, the Chancellors had the same Alteration and was Trim'd alike in all other particulars. The proportion allowed to Sir *Thomas Smith* for his Livery, *Anno* 14. *Eliz.* was 18 Yards of Murray Velvet, 12 Yards of Sarcenet for the Lining, one Garter wrought with Pearls of Damask Gold for the Shoulder, one Lace (or Cordon) with Buttons, and Tassels of blue Silk and *Venice* Gold, and the same Materials and Quantities were afterwards distributed out of the Sovereigns great Wardrobe, to the succeeding Chancellors.

BUT *Anno* 13. *Car.* I. The Prelate and Chancellor endeavouring a Reformation in this Habit, the Dye both of the Prelates and this Officers Robe was changed into Purple.

BESIDES this Robe, the Chancellor of the Order hath an honourable Badge of Distinction assigned him to wear, first granted to Sir *William Peters* and his Successors, the 9th of *October*, 1 and 2 *Ph.* and *Mar. viz.* a golden Rose enclosed within a Garter, which he and his Successors, Chancellors of the

Order, have ever since worn daily about their Necks; at first it was Pendant in a Gold-Chain, but since in a Purple Ribband. It seems something of this Design had been in Agitation a little before, so soon as the Chancellorship became vested in a Layman; for King *Edward* VI's Statutes did Ordain, *That the Chancellor should wear about his Neck a Cross of the Order, with a red Rose, in a white, of Gold, all compassed within a Garland of red and white Roses*.

AND because it was suggested to King *Charles* I. That there were different Accounts and Uncertainties contained in some Books concerning the Wearing of this Badge, He, by Warrant dated at *Oxford* the 16th of *December* in the 21st Year of his Reign, 1645. ordained Sir *James Palmer* Kt. and Bart. Chancellor of the said Order, (and his Successors) *should wear about his Neck at all times in Honour of his said Place, (that thereby he may be known to be of that Office and Dignity, as hath been accustomed) a Medal or Jewel of Gold enamelled with a red Rose, (within a Garter of Blue enamel, with this Sentence inscribed*, Hony soit qui mal y pense) *or such an one as we or the rest of the Knights-Companions of the said Most Noble Order of the Garter do or shall from time to time hereafter wear in our Collars of the said Order in particular Reference to us or them. And in the Reverse thereof, he shall bear the Escutcheon of St.* George *enamelled within a Garter also in reference to the Order it self, which he only shall wear hanging by a light purple Ribband, or in a gold Chain, as hath been accustomed.*

AMONG the Officers of the Order, the Chancellor is seated next beneath the Prelate, and in all Proceedings and Sessions, goeth, and sitteth, on his left Hand: And as it was ordered by the Constitutions of the Officers, That if the Chancellor hapned to be a Layman, he should be also a Knight, and have other

personal Endowments. So did King *Charles* I. conceive it requisite to confer some further Mark of Distinction upon this Officer, in relation to Place and Precedence without the Order; to which effect, there passed a Decree in a Chapter assembled by the Sovereign at *Whitehall*, the 23d of *April*, 1623. present, the Earls of *Mulgrave*, *Montgomery*, *Rutland*, *Carlisle*, *Holland*, *Suffolk*, *Pembroke*, *Arundel* and *Surrey*, *Salisbury*, *Dorset*, *Bark-shire* and *Northampton*, *That Sir* Francis Crane, *the present Chancellor, and all others that should succeed him in that Place hereafter, shall, in right of that Place, in all Assemblies, and upon all Occasions, be ranked and placed immediately after Knights-Privy-Councellors, and before the Chancellor of the Exchequer, the Persons holding both Places, being in* Pari gradu, *and consequently before all others, whom the said Chancellor is to precede*, &c.

AND to the intent the Chancellor of the Exchequer's Place may be certainly known, *May* the 20th, 21 *Jac.* I. it was thus established, *That the Knights of the Most Noble Order of the Garter, the Privy-Councellors, the Master of the Courts of* Wards *and* Liveries, *the Chancellor and Under Treasurer of the* Exchequer, *Chancellor of the* Dutchy, *the Chief Justice of the Court of* King's Bench, *the Master of the* Rolls, *the Chief Justice of the Court of* Common-Pleas, *the Chief Baron of the* Exchequer, *and all other Judges and Barons of the Degree of the Coif, should have Place and Precedency in all Places, and upon all Occasions before the younger Sons of Viscounts and Barons, and before all Baronets*, &c.

THE aforesaid Constitutions provide the Chancellor of the Order an Habitation within the Castle of *Windsor*, as well as the Prelate, which is the South-West Tower in the lower Ward of the Castle, call'd the *Chancellor's Tower*. The Possession thereof had

been for some time in the Power of others; and therefore by a Chapter convened at *White-hall*, *Nov.* 5th, 5 *Car.* I. it was restored unto Sir *Francis Crane*, then Chancellor of the Order, and after his Decease, to descend to his Successors. These Constitutions also ordained him the like Liveries at the Table and Court of the Sovereign, as were allowed to the Prelate.

AT the first Erection of this Office, the Chancellor had no Pension awarded him, until the Constitutions in reference to the Officers were Established. At that time there was conferr'd on him a Pension of 100*l. per Annum*, in consideration of his Employment, or else an allowance proportionate in Fees, Offices or other Promotions, over and above his Lodgings in the Castle, and Liveries at Court. But as to Fees and Perquisites, there are none to be Claimed by this Officer; and for that Reason, he not only possesses the said Pension, but all his disbursements allowed him, even to Paper, Wax, and Wafers; and indeed those who enjoyed the Office esteem'd it as a degradation of their Post, to receive either fee, or gratuity for any affair Transacted within the Order; and Sir *Thomas Rowe*, sometime Chancellor, affirmed *That his Office was an Office of Honour, and not of Fees, and that he had always excepted against Fees, for the disbursement of the Sovereign's Money*: Tho' he acknowledged some had bestowed on his Clerk a small gratuity, for the bare Ingrossing of an Alms Knights Patent, but nothing farther.

AND because the Custody of the Seals of the Order, appertains to this Officer; it will be here the fittest Place to mention something of them. By the Statutes of *Edw.* III. they were to have a Common Seal. This is confirmed by the Statutes of King *Hen.* V. and since named the Great Seal of the Order. The use of this is not only to Seal the Original Statutes, appointed to

remain perpetually within the Treasury of *Windsor* College, as also those Copies of which each Knight-Companion is obliged to conserve one, but likewise all Letters of Licence to any of the Knights-Companions desirous of winning Honour abroad, and all Mandates and Certificates, relating to the Order.

AFTER what Model the first Seal was compos'd, we have no exact Relation. *Polydore Virgil* tells us, That when the Founder of the Order had fixed Choice of St. *George* for its Patron, he represented him Armed, and Mounted on an Horse, bearing a Silver Shield, and thereon a Red Cross, but whether St. *George* thus designed, was on the first Seal, or only a Scutcheon of his Arms, as in latter times, is uncertain. But his Author observes that the Founder Habited his Soldiers in white Jackets or Coats, and on their Breasts and Backs sowed Red Crosses, parallel to the Arms assigned to St. *George*, as well as to the Kingdom of *England*, put under his Patronage, which Arms the Sovereigns of the Order, have ever since exhibited in their Standards. But besides this Common Seal King *Hen.* V. in the 9th Year of his Reign, Instituted a privy Signet, in case the Sovereign should be called out of this Kingdom upon weighty Affairs. The intent thereof was to affix it to all Acts passed by the Sovereign beyond Sea, to distinguish them from those of his Deputies in *England*. King *Hen.* VIII's Statutes, Ordain the making both of a Common Seal and Signet, and direct that the Arms of the Order should be Engraven upon each of them. The Common Seal used in his Reign was a Garter, within it a Shield having the Cross of St. *George*, impaling the National Arms, the said Shield encompassed with two Branches hanging from the Regal Crown, which debruses part of the Garter; the Signet being designed after the same manner, but

less: *Temp. Jac.* I. it suffered no other alteration, but only in the National Arms, by admitting the Quarterings of *Scotland* and *Ireland*, and new-fashioning the Crown, omitting the suspension of the Shield.

THERE was a Seal made at the beginning of the Reign of King *Cha.* I. which being esteemed too little for the Grandure and Honour of the Sovereigns Commissions, if was afterwards Decreed in Chapter, held 18th of *April.* 13. Car. I. *That a new one should be made of a larger Size, with the accustomed Arms and Motto, and the care thereof commited to Sir* Thomas Rowe, *Chancellor*; which Command he Executed with all due care and regard, as is manifestly evident by the nobleness of the design: One Representation being St. *George*, in Armour, adorned with a waveing Mantle, his Bever open, his Helmet plumed, holding a Shield of his Arms in his left Hand, and striking with a Sword in his right, his Body mounted on a bold Horse, Trampling over a Dragon, which Assails the Champion, the whole Figure is well contracted, and the Sun, a Rock, the Bones of devoured Men, and a Mountain in *Lointon*, in it is Circumscribed, *Magnum sigillum Nobilis Ordinis Garterij*; having the enrichments of festons between every Word placed pentagonally: The other Representation, is the Royal Garter imperially Crowned, enclosing a Shield of the Arms of St. *George*, impaling the Sovereign's Arms, the same Bordered with Fret-work, and other Ornaments in Cartouche. In the same decree, direction was given also for a new Signet, the former being thought too big for Letters, and this was an Oval shaped so from its Impression, which was the Garter Crowned, wherein was St. *George*, and the Sovereigns Arms impaled.

IT was at the same Chapter further decreed; "That

all Legations to deliver this Order to Foreign Princes, all other Acts, bearing the Stile of Commissions, all Patents of Offices and Fees, all Grants or Licences sent out of the Kingdom, should be Sealed with this Seal, which should be henceforward called the Great Seal of the Order; so also the Book of Statutes, sent to Elect Knights or Foreign Princes, being fixed to a Label of Blue Silk, and held according to antient Custom; and that all Letters concerning the Order, whether of signification of Election, or Lieutenancy, or Summons upon prorogation, or other Directions from the Sovereign, should only be Sealed with the Signet: Moreover, these Seals were appointed to be thenceforth Born before the Sovereign in all Publick Assemblies, during the Celebration of St. *George*'s Feast, or in other its Solemnities by the Chancellor of the Order, in a Purse of blue Velvet," and Command given to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, to provid one accordingly; on the foreside of which Purse was richly Embroidred (by a Gold-Smith) with *Venice* Gold and Silver, Gold and Silver Purls and Plates, and variety of *Naples* Silks, the Arms of St. *George* impaling the Sovereign, surrounded with a Garter Crowned, having a very fair Running Work, or Compartment round about it, the charge of which amounted to 13 *l.* 16 *s.* 10 *d.*

BY the Statutes of Institution, it was ordained, That in case the Knights-Companions, to whose care the Sovereign did commit the Seal of the Order, should upon lawful Occasions, be absent from Court, it behoves him to leave it behind him, with some other Knight-Companion to present, to the Sovereign, to the intent it might be always in readiness; but if the Sovereign be out of His Kingdom, then the disposal of it, was commited to the Deputies, and the Signet of the Order should have a Warrant for all such Acts

and Decrees as should be confirmed there.

THE distance from Court was by the Constitutions, restricted to 10 Miles, and by the Statutes of King *Hen.* VIII. to 20. upon consideration whereof we find Sir *Thomas Rowe* Chancellor, having some occasions, *Anno* 13 *Car.* I. to be absent above 20 Miles, tendred the Seals to the Sovereign, who was pleased to dispence with the Statutes, and permitted him to keep them nevertheless.

§ 3. THE Registers Oath, Mantle, Badge, Privileges and Pension, fall next under our consideration; he was one of the three, Constituted at the Institution of the Order, under the Title of *Registrator* and *Registrarius*, and so is called in the Statutes of King *Hen.* V. elsewhere in the Books of the Order, *Scriba* and *Actuarius*. What were the first Registers, names we cannot discover, till the Reign of King *Hen.* V. But it may be presumed, they were Canons of *Windsor*; because this Office was at first assigned to one of that College; besides the Registers from the Reign of King *Henry* V. to the beginning of King *Henry* VIIIth Reign, were also Canons of this College, among whom was *John Coningham*, (and the first found called so) as the Fragments of a Glass Inscription in *Clare* Church near *Windsor*, where he was Rector, attests. The first Dean of *Windsor*, Constituted Register of the Order was *John Vesey*, Anno 8. *Hen.* VIII. many of whose Successors in this Deanry, have since been admitted; nevertheless, as they were Canons not Deans of *Windsor*, and tis not improbable the Deans were Elected to this Office, as being enabled to support the Reputation of the Registership, with the Revenue of his Deanry, better than any of the Canons, with the addition of the Pension. But at a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 22d of *April*, 11 *Car.* I. The Sovereign thought it

convenient that the Office of Dean and Register should concenter in one and the same Person, as formerly, and therefore commanded this his Pleasuer to be Enrolled among the Annals of the Order, that so it might pass in the future Times, from Example into Rule.

BY the Constitutions of the Office, a secular Person is made capable of it, no less than an Ecclesiastick, how be it, *He is to be a Man of singular integrity*, eminent quality, a Knight, and signalized for Experience and Learning; but if an Ecclesiastick, then must he be a Person of consummate Erudition, *a professor of Divinity or Law, either Canon, or Civil*, and a Dignitarian in some Cathedral Church, or else a Canon at *Windsor*.

THE substance of his Oath in the Statute of the Institutions was, *That he should enter upon the Registry, with all Fidelity, the Scrutinies, Elections, Penalties, Reconciliations, and all other Acts relating to the Order*, to which was added, that he shall faithfully Discharge his Duty in all things. But in King *Hen.* VIIIth Days, the Oath enjoyned him, differs nothing from that of the Prelates and Chancellors.

AT his Admission, he takes this Oath Kneeling, while the Prelate used to pronounce the Words as *Anno* 1 *Mar.* 5. and 6. *Ph.* and *Mar.* but in his absence, as *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the Chancellor administred it. *Anno* 4. *Car.* I. the Prelate, Chancellor, and Register, took their Oaths at one time, and then it was thus Ordered; first the Register took it Kneeling between the Sovereign's Knees, the Black Rod holding the Evangelists, and the *Garter* read the Words out of the black Book; this done, the Register read the Words of the Prelates Oath, when he was Sworn; and in the last place, did the like to the Chancellor; after this manner did Garter read the

Words to the Registers, admitted 11 *Car.* I. and 12 *Car.* II. We cannot trace the Habit this Officer had assigned him at the Erection of the Order; but it afterwards appears, that his Allowance was the same with the Chancellors, consisting of 5 Yards of Woollen Cloth, and 3 Timber of Minever gross, equalent to what those Knights-Companions had allotted, who were under the degree of an Earl: The Habit he is pourtrayed in, at a proceeding of King *Hen.* VIIIth Reign, shews it to be Ecclesiastical, a black Gown, a Surplice over that, reaching to his Ancles, and thereon a Mantle of Furs; but the Constitutions of his Office restricted him to none, wherein there seems a defect, since they have assignd Habits to the Garter, and black Rod. Notwithstanding by a Draught of the Officers in their ancient Dress, it is plainly demonstrable to be a Mantle, somewhat of a Russel colour, Faced with a Pane of blue, whereon is Embroidred a Flower-de-luce Crowned Gold, then another Pane red, thereon a Lyon Passant gardant Crowned Gold, and so they are alternately placed to the bottom; to this Mantle belong Cordons of Silk, blue and yellow.

SINCE that time, not only the Registers, but also Garters and Black Rods, Robes, underwent some Alterations; for by a Decree in Chapter, called at St. *James*, *Jun.* 1. 4 and 5. *Ph.* and *Mar.* these Officers were assigned Mantles of crimson Satin, Lined with Taffaty, and a Scutcheon of St. *George*'s Arms, Embroidred on the left Shoulder, but not encircled with a Garter, having the same Buttons and Tassels as were appointed to the Prelate and Chancellor; the proportion of Satin assigned to each Mantle, was 14 Yards, and as many Yards of white Taffaty.

AND tho' the Registers Mantle was *Ann.* 27 *Eliz.* composed of the preceeding Materials, and had like

Trimming, yet they agree not in their Proportions, here being allowed 18 Yards of crimson Satin, and but 12 of Taffaty; from hence these Mantles continued immutable until the 20th of *Feb.* 13 *Car.* II. when there Issued a Warrant to the Master of the great Wardrobe, to prepare for this Officer, as also for Garter, and the Black Rod, for their Liveries Mantles of scarlet Satin, each containing 18, and 10 Yards of white Taffaty for Lining, but consonant in all other Punctilio's with the former; yet why the colour was altered, is not expressed.

THE Register seems to have been represented with a Scrowle in his Hand, for his Badge, and by the proceedings in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, Pictured with a Book, both proper Symbols of his Office. In Dr. *Christopher Wren*'s Registership, the Sovereign Commanded him to cover the red Book of the Order with crimson Velvet, and assigned for the Garter, two Pens in Saltire, interlacing the Garter above with these two Letters *C R* Crowned, all being richly Embroidred, (as also the Border) with *Venice* Gold and Silver, and various colours of *Naples* Silk, by *Harrison* the Sovereign's Embroiderer, with a Clasp, in Imitation of the Garter, surrounding the Representation of St. *George*, which cost 12 *l.* 17 *s.* 6 *d.* This Book he was Ordered to bear before his Breast, on all Solemn Occasions when he wore his Mantle, and for his better Convenience, he made a Belt and an Ouch to hang it by.

SO high a Regard had the Sovereigns of this Order, not only to this Officer, but likewise to Garter and Black Rod, that they took them into a particular Protection, and by the Constitutions of their Offices granted them, "That they, their Goods and Servants should severally remain under the Safe-guard of the Sovereign; and if any Injury or Violence should

chance to be offered them either by Subjects or Forreigners, whensoever they should exhibit their Complaint to the Sovereign, either himself or the Knights-Companions should afford them Justice; but if the adverse Party should refuse to submit his Cause to the Sovereign, then the Sovereign and Knights-Companions should shew themselves so far inclinable towards these Officers, as to be ready to allow them all favour, countenance, &*c.*" consistent with Justice and Equity.

UPON the strength and Security of this ancient Privilege, to avoid the prolongation of a Law Suit, Dr. *Christopher Wren* Register, Petitioned the Sovereign in Chapter, held at *Whitehall*, the 19th of *April*, 13 *Car*. I. against one *Thornhill*, who under Pretence of Digging for Salt-Peter, had so Undermined his Pigeon-house, Built on the Rectory of *Knoil Magna* in *Wiltsh.* that it fell down; and upon reading of the Petition, it was resolved by the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions, "That they would consider the Grant in the Constitutions, and, until it was farther declared, the Chancellor of the Order should have Power upon Information of any rigour upon Controverse begun in any other Court, to write Letters under the Signet of the Order, that all vexation against them should be superseded until Information of the cause were given to and determination in the Cause resumed by the Sovereign, or leave of him obtained to Proceed." After this it is set down, that *Thornhill* was Summoned before the Lords Commissioners of the Navy, and his negative Answer given in, and represented to the Sovereign in another Chapter, conven'd the 4th of *October* ensuing; whereupon it was ordered, "That the Chancellor should write to the same Lords Commissioners, and another to the

Earls of *Pembroke*, *Arundel* and *Dorset*, three of the Knights-Companions, to Empower them, that they or any three of them, should cause the said *Thornhill* to be brought before them, and likewise write to any of the Inhabitants of *Knoil*, to view and testifie the Truth, to hear any further proof on the behalf of either Party, and to give Sentence according to Justice, that so a tedious Suit of Law might be prevented, and the Dignity of this most noble Order protected." These Commands of the Chancellor being Executed, and Certificates returned from the Country, the Knights Companions, in a Chapter held the 23th of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. were moved to peruse them; but before they could meet, *Thornhill* fled, and the Prosecution of this business ceased. Upon the same footing was it, that the said Dr. *Wren* obtained from King *Cha.* I. His Gracious Protection for himself, Servants, and Estate, literally expressed in the late War, *as the Violaters of that Order would answer this our contrary at their Peril, Dated at* Oxford, *under the Signet of this our Order the* 12th *Day of* Dec. *in the* 19th *Year of our Reign*.

THIS Officer by the Constitutions hath a Pension of 50 *l. per Annum*, or proportionable in Fees, Offices, or other Emoluments; and *Ann.* 1. and 2 *Ph.* and *Mar.* the same numerical Pension was conferred on *Owen Oglethorp*, Dean of *Windsor*, out of the Exchequer, until some Ecclesiastical Preferment of like value should devolve on him. The same was confirmed to Dr. *Maxey*, by Decree in Chapter, 16 *Jac.* I. and afterwards to Dr. *Beaumont*, by Letters Patent, under the Great Seal of *England*, 20 *Jac.* I. but there needed no Allotment of Lodgings at *Windsor* to this Officer, as there was to the rest, since both the Canons and Dean were provided of Houses belonging to their Ecclesiastical Dignities within the College, at the

Erection of the Order.

§ 4. THE *fourth Officer of the Order is Garter*. He Was ordained by King *Henry* V. with the advice and consent of all the Knights-Companions, who for the Honour of the Order, was pleased he should be the principal Officer within the College of Arms, and chief of the Heralds. The Services enjoyned him, relating to the Order, were in preceding Times, performed by the *Windsor* Herald of Arms, an Officer created with that Title by K. *Edward* III. much about the time of his Erecting this Order, and an Annual Pension of 20 Marks, payable out of the Exchequer, by Letters Patent for Life, which was confirmed by King *R.* II.

SIR *William Brugges* was the Person first created Garter, and called in the Institution of his Office, *Jartier Roy d'armys des Anglois*, but elsewhere stiled *Willielmus Brugges, alias Dictus, Gartier Rex Armorum*. This Sir *William* became a great Benefactor to St. *George*'s Church at *Stamford*, and in the Windows of the Chancel caused to be Represented King *Edward* III. with his twenty five Knights-Companions kneeling, Habited in their Mantles and Surcoats of Arms, but now much shattered and defaced; *John Smert* his Successor had this Office conferred on him by Letters Patents, under this Title *Rex Armorum de Garteria*, and *John Wrythe* was stiled *Principalis Heraldus, & Officiarius inclyti Ordinis Garterij, Armorumq; Rex Anglicorum*, but Sir *Gilbert Dethick* leaving out *Heraldus* joyned *Principalis Rex*, which still continues.

IN the Constitutions of his Office he is called *Garterus, Rex Armorum Angliæ*, whom the Sovereign and Knights-Companions have decreed to be a

Gentleman of Blood and Arms, of unspotted Reputation, and Born within the Kingdom of *England*; besides as King *Hen.* V. did before, so doth King *Hen.* VIII. declare that he shall be chief of all the Officers of Arms, dependant upon the Crown of *England*.

THE substance of his Oath administred by the Register at his admission, whilst he humbly kneeleth at the Sovereign's Feet, in the Chapter House; is,

1. *To yield Obedience to the Sovereign, and Knights-Companions.*

2. *To keep Silence, and not disclose the Secrets of the Order.*

3. *To make Signification of the Death of each Knight-Companion.*

4. *To execute all things faithfully committed to his Care.*

5. *To enquire diligently after all the noble Acts of the Knights-Companions, and certifie them to the Register.*

6. *To be faithful in the exercise of his Office.*

AND such an Oath Sir *Christopher Barker* took at a Chapter held at *Greenwich* 28 *Hen.* VIII. when he was made Garter.

AS for a particular Habit, we do not find any inserted in the Great Wardrobe, whence it is presumed, he was at first distinguished from the rest of the Officers of the Order, by his Coat Embroidred with the Sovereign's Arms, like as the Provincial King's then wore. But after the Constitutions of the Officers were Established, there was assigned him a Habit or Mantle in all respects, resembling the Register, (saving that the Ground whereon the Lyons and flower-de-luces were Embroidred, was entirely Red) and this to be wore only at the publick Solemnities of the Order. Queen *Mary* Commanded it to be made of crimson Satin, and so it remained till

the Restoration, when the Colour was altered to scarlet.

THIS Officer is appointed to bear a white Rod or Scepter at every Feast of St. *George*, the Sovereign being present, gilded at both ends, and at the top the Arms of the Order impaling the Sovereign's Arms pourtray'd on an oblong Cube Crowned, but no directions are given in the Constitutions for this Crown, nor for that Ducal one on his Head wherewith his Effigies has been represented, and yet at all great Solemnities is never used that we can discover. There was assigned him by Queen *Eliz.* a Badge of Gold to be worn daily by him and his Successors, before the Breast, in a gold Chain or Ribband, and thereon Ennamelled the Sovereign's Arms, Crowned with an Imperial Crown, and both surrounded with the Garter: But Sir *Edward Walker* when made Garter, obtained the Sovereign's leave to Impale therein St. *George*'s Arms, with those of the Sovereign's, which Badge is alike on both sides.

THERE is an House appointed for his Habitation within *Windsor* Castle, called Garters Tower. It was by Chapter annexed for ever to the Office of Garter, and restored to Sir *William Segar*'s Possession, 2d of *May*, 1630. By the Constitution of his Office, he is to be allowed Barons Service in the Sovereign's Court, and his Table Served next after the Dean of the Chapel, with such Liveries as of old were accustomed.

IT appears that King *Hen.* V. after his erecting this Office, died before he had settled a Pension upon Sir *William Brugges*, for supportation of his little Estate, which the Knights-Companions taking into consideration, and that he might more honourably comport himself to the Service of the Order, till the young King should come to Age, they being

assembled in a Chapter, with the consent of the Prelate, decreed the said Sir *William* to receive of each of them at every Feast of St. *George*, as is set down, *viz.*

Of the Bishop of *Winchester* Prelate	5	Marks.
Dukes	5	

Of every	Earl	6	Nobles.
	Baron or Baronet	4	
	Knight Batchelor	2	

THE first payment was agreed to be pay'd down, and so to remain in force annually with request to the absent Knights, that for the Honour of the Order, and causes in the Instrument express'd, they would approve of their Ordinance which passed under the Seal of the Order, Dated at *Windsor*, 1422. Afterwards King *Hen.* VI. in consideration of his Services to his Father and himself, with consent of his Council, granted to the said *Brugges*, by Letters Patent, a Pension of 20 *l. per Annum*, out of the Fee Farm of the City of *Winchester* during his pleasure, which Pension upon the surrender of his Patent he granted anew to him and *Agnes* his Wife, for their Lives and the longer liver of them; and when this Office upon Sir *William Brugges* death, was devolved on *John Smert*, *Guyenne* herald (3 *April* 28 *Hen.* VI.) he had the yearly Sum of 20 *l.* granted him therewith for Life out of the Exchequer: But his Successor *John Wrythe*, *Norroy*, obtained an increase of Pension to 40 *l. per Annum*, made payable out of the small Customs of the City of *London*; this annual Sum was afterwards confirmed to Garter by the Constitution of his Office, and an Augmentation from the then Knights-Companions additional to the Pensions

granted by their Predecessors, upon the Death of King *Hen.* V.

Of	A Duke	4	Pounds.
	A Marquess	5	Marks.
	An Earl	4	
	A Baron	6	Nobles.
	A Knight Batchelor	4	

IN succeeding times the Sovereign thought fit to augment this Pension to 50 *l. per Annum*, (now payable out of the Revenue settled upon the Order,) and the Knights-Companions yet to enlarge their Sallery, which they did, (the Sovereign assenting) by the decree made in a Chapter held at *Windsor* 13, 14, and 15. *Sept. An.* 1617. wherein it was ordained, *That their Officer Sir* William Segar *Garter Knight, King of Arms of that Order should then, and from thenceforth have renew'd and paid unto him certain annual Fees and Pensions, anciently enjoyed by his Predecessors, with a surplus of* 10 *l.* per Annum, *which his Majesty's Act of Royal Bounty, hath given to his said Servant for his better support and maintenance, as also of Prince* Charles, *Prince of* Wales, *the Sum of* 8 l. *and of every Duke of the Blood* 6 l. *all other Estates*, viz. *a Duke not of the Blood* 4 l. *a Marquess* 5 *Marks*, *an Earl* 4 *Marks*, *a Viscount* 7 *Nobles*, *a Baron* 40 s. *and a Knight Batchelor that shall be of the Order*, 26 s. 8 d. *all which said Sums of Money, according to the several degrees of their Estates, are to be paid, (continues the Decree) unto the said Garter or his assigns yearly at St.* Georges*'s Feast, or immediately after, as well by the Knights then present, as by those that shall be absent, or hereafter are to succeed in the said Order; and after the decease of the said Garter, to his Successors for ever.*

AT St. *Georges*'s Feast, Celebrated at *Windsor*, 22, 23, and 24 of *April, Anno* 15 *Car.* II. Sir *Edward Walker* then Garter, representing by Petition, that the annual Pension of the installed Knights then in Arrear for one Year, amounted to 94 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* according to their proper proportion, the Sovereigns Share, (he being to pay for all stranger Knights) amounted at that time, to 32 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* and humbly praying that his Majesty would grant to him and his Successors an 100 *l. per Annum*, out of the Revenue settled to the use of the Order, in lieu not only of those said Pensions, payable from the Sovereign and Knights-Companions, both Strangers and Subjects; but for resigning his Claim to his annual Pension of 50 *l.* in consideration for preparing Scutcheons and removal of Atchievements. This Petition the Sovereign was pleased to refer to a Committe of the Knights-Companions, who, namely the Duke of *Albemarl*, the Earls of *Lindsey*, *Manchester*, *Sandwich*, and *Stafford*, who being attended by Garter, and weighing the event of the Petition, offered their opinions to the Sovereign, to grant him the said 100 l. *per Annum* in lieu of what he offered to quit, whereby the interest of this Office might be preserved in a more compendious Method than it was, his Majesty exempted from those small payments for Strangers, and the Knights-Subjects themselves were discharged from their annual Pension, and his Majesty ratifying the same shortly after, Sir *Henry de Vic*, the Chancellor, was ordered to pay unto Garter, and his Successors the said annual Pension of 100 *l.* which was accordingly put in Execution, as an Equivalent for all Fees and Salaries relating to the Order of the Garter.

THE Duty of this Officer in general is, to perform, or cause to be effected all Transactions whatsoever,

the Sovereign, or Prelate, or Chancellor shall enjoyn him, in relation to this Most Noble Order.

§. 5. THE fifth and last Officer is the *Black-Rod*. This Officer was instituted by the Founder, King *Ed.* III. but whether at the first Erection of the Order doth not appear. Howbeit, within a few Years after, 35 *E.* III. the King conferr'd to *William Whitehorse*, Esq; for Life, *Officium Hostiarii Capellæ Regis infra Castrum de* Windesore, with a Fee of 12 *d.* a Day out of his Exchequer.

Anno 3 *Hen.* IV. this Office is called *Officium Virgarij comitivæ de la Garter infra Castrum Regis de Windesore*; and under that Denomination was confirmed to *Thomas Sye*, with the Fees and Emoluments thereunto expressed. In the Patent to his Successor, *John Athilbrigg*, *Ann.* 1 *H.* 5. it is stiled, *Officium Virgarij sive Ostiarij*, &c. Afterwards it hath the Title, *Officium Virgæ-bajuli coram Rege ad festum Sancti* Georgii *infra Castrum Regis de* Windesore. And ever since it runs in the Patents by the Appellation of *Virgæ-Bajulus*, *Virgarius*, or *Nigri-vergifer*. But in the Constitutions of his Office, he hath the Title of *Hostiarius*; and under the restriction of these Qualifications, that he be a Gentleman of Blood and Arms, born within the Sovereigns Dominions; and if he be not a Knight at his admission into the Office, he ought then to be Knighted. As *Garter* was Entituled the Principal Officer of Arms, so was the *Black-Rod*, for the Honour of the Order, appointed the Chief Usher in the Kingdom. And as he is so, and frequently called Gentleman-Usher of the *Black-Rod*, so we shall wave, as we did in *Garter*, all things appertaining to his Employments, otherwise than what directly is included in this Most Noble Order.

IN a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 13th of *February*, 6 *Car.* I. It was decreed, *That the Office of the Black-Rod should from thenceforth successively, as soon as the same should become void* (*James Maxwell*, Esq; then enjoying it) *be annexed to some one of the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, whom the Sovereign should appoint.*

THIS was carried upon the Petition of the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, seconded by the Lord Chamberlain, the Earl-Marshal, and others, Knights-Companions; as is evident from another Petition of theirs to the Sovereign in Chapter, assembled at *Oxford*, the 17th of *January*, 20 *Car.* I. But some Years after this, 1642. the Lord *Lanrick*, Secretary for *Scotland*, had on Mr. *Maxwell*'s behalf, obtained the Sovereign's Warrant for Letters-Patent under the Great-Seal, for two Lives, *Maxwell*'s and Mr. *Alexander Thayn*, the longest Liver of them; whereby the said Decree was frustrate to the Gentlemen-Ushers; of which making Complaint in the last mentioned Chapter, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions (in regard this latter Grant was not only repugnant to the preceding Decree, and the Great-Seal surreptitiously gained, but ought likewise to have passed the Seals of the Order) order'd *Peter Newton*, Esq; to be presently sworn into this Office. Nevertheless, after the Restoration, *A. D.* 1660. *Newton* being then dead, the Gentlemen-Ushers, Daily-waiters, Petition'd again, and *Thayne* was demanded to put in his Answer; and the result of the whole was, after mature Deliberation in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 20th of *February*, 13 *Car.* II. the Decree which fix'd this Office to one of the Gentlemen-Ushers Daily-waiters, was confirmed, and *John Ayton*, one of the Petitioners, was sworn Gentleman-Usher of the Black-Rod, which was

performed by the Register in the Presence of the Sovereign, the Chapter sitting.

THE Form of the Oath given to this Officer, *temp. Hen.* VIII. was, *Truly and Faithfully to observe and keep all the Points of the Statutes of the Order as to him belonged and appertained.*

HE hath the like Habit with the Register and Garter before described, but his Ensign and Badge is somewhat different from Garter's; for first, it was ordained, *That he or his Deputy should carry a Black-Rod* (whence he hath his Title) *before the Sovereign, or his Deputy, at the Feast of St.* George, *within the Castle of* Windsor, *and at other Solemnities and Chapters of the Order.* On the Top of which there ought to be set a Lyon of *England.* This Rod serves instead of a Mace, and has the same Authority to apprehend Delinquents, and such have offended against the Statutes of this Most Noble Order. And where he apprehends any one of the Order, as Guilty of some Crime for which he is to be expell'd the Order, the manner of it is by touching them with this Black-Rod, and his Fee for it, is 5 *l.*

HE has assigned him a Golden Badge to be openly worn in a Gold Chain, or Ribband, before his Breast, composed of one of the Knots in the Collar of the Order which tye the Roses together, and encompassed with a Garter, being alike on both sides; which was conferred on him and his Successors, by Decree in Chapter, held the 24th of *April*, 8 *Eliz.*

'TIS as ancient as *Hen.* Vth's Reign, for there's a House in *Windsor* Castle granted to this Officer by Letters-Patent, during Life. And the same Provision is made for him by the Constitutions of his Office. It is situate on the South-side of the Castle in the middle Ward. The said Constitutions give him Baron-Service

at Court, and Livery thereto appertaining; and besides these, the keeping of the said Castle, and the two Parks adjacent.

KING *Charles* I. having taken into his Hands the little Park of *Windsor*, and bestow'd it upon *James Maxwell*, then Usher of the Black-Rod, He, at a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 5th of *November*, 1629. decreed, That as the Custody of the said Park was conferr'd on *Maxwell* in right of his Office; so the same should for ever after be annex'd thereto, and not to be disposed of but under the Great Seal of the Order, and that only to the Usher of the Order for the time being.

LASTLY, this Officer had anciently a Fee of 12 *d. per diem*, which we find continu'd down in the Letters-Patents, whereby this Office was granted. Besides which, the Constitutions of his Office allow him an annual Pension of 30 *l.* heretofore paid him out of the Exchequer, but by King *Charles* I. assigned him out of 1200 *l. per Ann.* settled upon the Order; touching which, and the Payment of the Officers Pensions upon the new Establishment, is the next Section.

§. 6. KING *James* I. taking into his Royal Breast, the Constitution of this Most Noble Order, that it was in the Nature of a Distinct Sovereignty, govern'd by Laws and Conventions proper to the Body, and himself as Sovereign in Matters immediately relating thereunto, had the sole and uncontroulable Authority of revising, adding, or explaining; and finding that the Pensions paid to the Officers of the Order (as those to the Alms-Knights) and some other Expences, had been anciently made payable out of his Exchequer by vertue of the Great Seals of *England*, or

otherwise by Privy-Seals; and conceiving it incongruous, that the Officers should claim their Pensions by vertue of any other Seal than that of the Order, for it is in some kind derogatory to the Honour of the Order, to permit other Seals to be used within the same: He thereupon with twelve Knights-Companions in a Chapter held at *Whitehall*, the 22d of *May*, 20 *Jac.* I. passed a Decree, *That all things concerning the Order should hereafter be ratify'd under the Seal of the Order only, and in particular, that the Grants of poor Knights Places, after their being Signed by the Sovereign, should be passed under the Seal of the Order only, and none other*. And the Year following, the Chancellor was ordered, *That he should take Advice of the Sovereign's* Attorney-General *how by Vertue of the Seal of the Order, the Pensions*, (given to the Poor Knights) *might be paid and receiv'd*, His Majesty's further Pleasure being, *That all Grants and Payments concerning the Order, should afterwards be confirmed under the Seal of the Order only, and by Vertue thereof*.

As to the Alms-Knights Patents, this Decree was of Force and Validity, but in the other Generals, how far it was pursu'd we know not; for in some of them it grew obsolete and useless. But in a Chapter called at *Windsor*, the 22d of *April*, 10 *Car.* I. a Debate arose about setting a Part of the Annual Summ of 1000 *l.* out of the Receipts of his Majesty's Exchequer, to be employ'd particularly in discharge of Expences towards the Feasts of the Order, Legations to Foreign Princes, Payment of the Officers Pensions, *&c.* disbursed for the Necessity and Reputation of this Noble Order. Afterwards at a Chapter held the 18th of *April*, 13 *Car.* I. that Sovereign ratify'd his Royal Assignation, and increased his Bounty to 1200 *l. per Ann.* setling it for those designs in a Perpetuity for

ever, and making it payable out of the Customs in the Port of *London*, but to be received by the Chancellor of the Order for the time being, as Treasurer of this Money, of which he was to give up an Account to the Sovereign and Knights-Companions yearly at St. *George*'s Feast. And in pursuance of this Ratification, the Attorney-General had Instructions to draw up a Book for his Royal Signature to Warrant its passing under the Great Seal of *England*, which was dispatch'd, the Letters-Patent bearing *teste* at *Westminster*, the 23d of *January*, 13 *Car.* I. Immediately after, Sir *Thomas Rowe*, the Chancellor of the Order, presented a List of the ordinary Fees and Charges of the Order, upon which it was agreed to, *That there should issue out a standing Commission to the Chancellor under the Great Seal of the Order to warrant the Yearly Payments, and he to be discharged according as the said Patent had provided.* This Commission passing the Great Seal the 3d of *May*, 14. *Car.* I. the Sovereign thereby impower'd the Chancellor to make payable out of the yearly Revenue of 1200 *l.* all and every the yearly Fees, Pensions, Salaries, and other Payments due and payable to the Officers of the Order, Alms-Knights, or others, appertaining to the Order, either by Charter, Grant, or Assignation under the Seal and Signet of the Order, or by any other Lawful way whatsoever, and in particular,

		l. *s.*	
To	Himself as Chancellor	100 0	*per Ann.*
	Register of the Order	50 0	
	Garter Principal King of Arms	50 0	
	Usher of the Black-Rod	30 0	

Thirteen Alms-Knights	237 5
Total	467 5

AND Sir *Thomas Rowe*, and in his Absence beyond Sea, Sir *James Palmer*, Deputy-Chancellor receiv'd out of the Sovereigns Receipts of Subsidies, Customs and Imposts, the 1200 *l. per Ann.* out of which they paid the Annual Pensions above-named, under the Title of *certain* and *ordinary Charges*, as also such as come within the Denomination of Accidental and Extraordinary Expences; of which kind in their time, were,

Mantles, when the Sovereigns pleas'd to bestow them on the Knights-Companions.

Plate for the Altar in St. George's Chappel *at* Windsor.

Embroidery of the Purse for holding the Seals.

Removal of Atchievements and Plates against Installations.

Escutcheons set up at St. George's Feast.

Privy Seals and Fees disburst for receiving the 1200 *l.* per Annum.

Fees for Installation of Foreign Princes and Stranger-Knights.

Parchment used in Dispensations and Prorogations.

Blue Wax for the Seals of the Order.

BY which we are easily inform'd, what ought to be accounted extraordinary Expences, towards the Discharge whereof this Sum was to be employ'd as far as it would reach, to mitigate the Cost the great Wardrobe formerly stood taxed with, Provisions of

the Order, both for foreign Embassies and Expences at Home.

THE Manner of the Chancellor's passing his Account, as directed by the said Commission, was thus done by Sir *James Palmer*, He humbly moved the Sovereign in Chapter held the 10th of *October*, 15 *Car.* I. That it would please him to view the Disbursements made for the Expences of the Order, which thereupon being Examined by the Knights in the Sovereign's Presence, the same were found agreeable to the Directions of the Commission, and the Payments justify'd by the Acquittance of every Officer to whom any Fee was due, no Payment having been made without the Sovereign's Hand first to Authorize it: All which being seen and allow'd, the Account (wherein his Disbursements exceeded his Receipts 37 *l.* 13 *s.* 10 *d.*) was esteemed Equitable and Just, and passed by the Subscription of *Charles* then Prince of *Wales*, the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Montgomery*, *Salisbury*, *Holland*, *Berk-shire*, Duke *Hamilton*, and the Earl of *Northumberland*.

§. 7. THE Executions of these Offices is the last thing here to be described: For tho' all the Officers are strictly obliged to give personal Attendance to their Offices; yet, in case of Sickness, Absence out of the Kingdom, or other emergent Reasons, the Sovereign is pleased to dispence with them, and constitute others to Officiate in their stead, who on such Occasions wear the Robe of that Officer whom they represent, so in case of Vacancy, the Absence of the Prelate at the Grand Feast celebrated at *Windsor*, 31 *Hen.* VI. is noted in the *Black Book* to have been upon just Cause, and the Bishop of *Bangor* officiated Divine Service, and next Morning celebrated the

Mass *pro defunctis*. The following Year, his Place in these religious Duties was supply'd by the Bishop of *Salisbury*, as *Ann.* 36 and 37 *Hen.* VI. and at all times of the Prelates absence, the Sovereign hath made known his Will what Bishop should supply for him. The Office of Chancellor hath been executed by Proxies, and to this may first be referred a Passage in the *Black Book*, where Dr. *Taylor* hath the Title of *Vice-Chancellor*. Of later times, when Sir *Thomas Rowe* was employ'd in an Embassy into *Germany*, Sir *James Palmer*, Kt. (one of the Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy-Chamber) was deputed by the Sovereign to the Chancellor-ship during his Absence, having the Purse with the Seals deliver'd to him the 4th of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. being sworn by the Register of the Order *durante deputatione & beneplacito Regis*, which Clause was likewise annex'd in the Deputy *Chancellor*'s Oath, 12 *Car.* II. Upon Sir *Thomas Rowe*'s return, and indisposition, 16 *Car.* I. Sir *James* was again deputed *Chancellor*, and a third time, 18 *Car.* I. continu'd Deputy *Chancellor* unto the Death of Sir *Thomas Rowe*, of which the Sovereign being inform'd at *Oxford*, 1644. reserved the disposal of this Office 'till Sir *James*'s return to Court, and then commanded him to wear the Badge and Ribband about his Neck, 'till a Chapter of the *Order* compleated his admittance.

In the Vacancy of the Register-ship, *Ann.* 2 H. VIII. *Thomas Ruthall* Bishop of *Durham*, supply'd it: And *Ann.* 18 and 19 *Eliz.* Dr. *Day*, Dean of *Windsor*, executed the Office, and attended at the Feasts of St. *George*, as Deputy-Register; Dr. *George Carew* then Register, having Licence by his Patent to execute it by himself or Deputy, being dispenc'd with by the Queen in case of Sickness, or other Impediment. After his Decease, Dean *Day* was commanded to

execute the Office during its Vacancy (being 14 Years) which he effected 'till he was advanced to the Bishoprick of *Winchester*, *An.* 38 *Eliz.* upon which, Dr. *Robert Bennet* (who succeeded him in his Deanry) was the same Year admitted Register. Afterwards, Dr. *Beaumont*, being much broken with Age, and other Diseases, Dr. *John King*, the junior Canon, supplied his Place.

THE Office of Garter hath been supplied by Deputation: For in those Embassies with the Ensigns of the Order to Foreign Princes, where special Occasions detained Garter at home, some of the Kings or Heralds of Arms, have been order'd upon those Employments, upon the Recommendation of Garter to the Sovereign; whereof there are several Instances; the last of *Gregory King*, Esq. *Lancaster*-Herald, who lately carried over the Habit to the Elector of *Hanover*. So also in case of Vacancy; for we find that *Clarencieux*, King of Arms, executed this Office after Sir *Gilbert Dethick*'s Death, in *January*, 27 *Eliz.* being then sent with the Earl of *Darby* to the *French* King *Henry* III. As also in Reference to the Preparations the 15th of *April* following, and Service performed thereat, and at the Feast of St. *George* ensuing.

THE Constitution of the Office of Black-Rod admit of a Deputy to bear the Rod before the Sovereign, where a lawful Occasion impedes his personal Service. And Sir *Peter Young*, (Chief Gentleman-Usher,) performed this Office at the Feast of St. *George* held at *Windsor*, *Ann.* 6 *Car.* I. *James Maxwell*, Esq. Black-Rod, was in *France* upon the Sovereign's Service; and after, being Mission'd by the King into *Scotland*, *Peter Newton*, Esq; supplied his Place at the Feast at *Windsor*, 8th, 9th, and 10th of *October*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I.

CHAP. IX.

§. 1.

We come now to treat of the Election of a Knight into the Order, according to the Statutes of Institution, which Ordains, That whensoever any Knight-Companion happens to depart this Life, *The Sovereign (or his Deputy) after certain Notice had thereof, should forthwith by his Letters, Summon all the Knights-Companions then within the Realm (who were able to come) to meet him within Six Weeks after such Notice, in what convenient Place soever he pleased to assign for the Electing a new Companion into the Society*. Thus did the Law of this Most Noble Order, in case of Death, and to prevent Vacancies, at first provide; wherewith we evidently find the Practice of elder Times did punctually concur: For as soon as Garter, in Discharge of his Duty, had made Certificate to the Sovereign of a Knight-Companion's Decease, or otherwise to the Register of the Order, all fitting Diligence was used to fill up the vacant Stall, within the Space limited by this Statute, or immediately after, and for the quicker Dispatch, Letters of Summons were issued to the Knights-Companions, to give personal Attendance at the Election. In an ancient one upon the Death of Sir *Henry Fitz Hugh*, Knight-Companion, *Temp. Henry* V. these particulars were no less pursuant to the Statutes, than worthy Observation.

"I. The Day whereon the defunct Knight-Companion died is therein set down.

"II. Direction is given for celebrating Masses, according to the Tenor of the Statutes.

"III. Intimation that a Stall is become void by the Knight's Decease.

"IV. The Law of the Order vouched, which appoints an Election of another Knight within six Weeks after Certificate made of the Death of the former, to avoid as much as may be an interval in Succession.

"V. The Sovereign's Power asserted where he sees Cause to Prorogue the Election.

"VI. An Injunction to attend personally at the Election, under a Penalty express'd in the Statutes.

"VII. The Day, Place, and Hour for Appearance is with certainty appointed, to the End all might Accommodate themselves to be present.

"VIII. The End of coming is mention'd with full Disposition and Preparation *to perform what the Statutes in this Case requir'd*.

"IX. Lastly, Direction is there given to the Knight summoned, that in case his coming to the Chapter was impeded, he should certifie the Reason of his Default against the time of his Appearance, of the Validity whereof the Sovereign was to be sole Umpire."

AND generally of these Topicks, and to this Purport were the Letters of Summons in succeeding times composed.

THE before-mention'd Branch of the Statutes of Institution hath been sufficiently enforced by Incorporating it into the Statutes, *temp. H.* V. and *H.*

VIII. nor hath it since undergone any Alteration; howbeit some further Addition and Explanation were annexed to them, 21 *Jac.* I. at a Chapter held at *Windsor* the 24th of *April* that year, where it was decreed, *That the Sovereign being advertised of the Death of a Knight-Companion, the Knights-Companions remaining at Court should move him to declare his Pleasure whether he would that Letters should be sent to all the Knights-Companions within the Realm to attend his Person for the Choice of a new Knight, at a Day by the said Sovereign appointed, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, or be pleas'd to defer the Election until the Feast of St.* George, *at what time Elections have been most usually made; and according as he resolv'd in what Place it should be, so it ought* (by Letters directed to the Knights-Companions within the Realm) *to be made known unto them.*

This Deferring, or Prorogation of the Election, was no new thing, tho' not indulged by the Statutes, or declared Law, before this 21 *Jac.* I. as is evident by the Letter of Summons sent after the Death of Sir *Robert D'Umfrevil*, Knight Companion, *temp. H.* 4. wherein Notice is taken of the Limitation given by the Statutes, after Certificate of Death, *viz.* Six Weeks, within the Space whereof a new Election was to commence; yet where a Chapter for Election could not conveniently be summoned within that limited Time, it was sufficient if the Soveraign declared as he did in the said Placart and entered in the Black Book, *That being then involved in other Business, he could not well attend this Affair, and therefore deferr'd the time for Election, unto the Eve of St.* George *next following.*

But of later Date, this formal Way of Summons by Letter, hath been discontinued, and only remained to such as are remote, and warned only by a verbal Message. For the Chancellor of the Order having

consulted the Soveraign's Pleasure, as to the Day and Place, usually acquaints Garter therewith, who thereupon goes immediately to the Knights Companions then at Court, and desires their Attendance at the Chapter, according to the Soveraign's Designation.

And here it is to be remarked, that no Knight Elect ought to be summoned to a Chapter of Election, or are rendered sufficient of giving their Votes therein, until they be compleatly installed, either in Person, or by Proxy. Nor indeed did any Necessity intervene, or require it till the late rebellious times, when the Castle of *Windsor* being Garrison'd by the Parliament's Forces, it was not possible for the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert*, to take Possession of their Stalls, as the Law of the Order enjoined. Therefore the then Soveraign, whose Right it is, did, 17 *Jan.* 1644, dispense with their Installations in St. *George*'s Chapel, for the present, and invested them with the Privileges of the Order, among which the Power of voting in Chapter, was one: Provided those Princes should first take the Oath given at Installations, and afterwards perform the accustomed Ceremonies, so soon as it should be thought convenient, and the Castle was restored to the Possession of his Majesty. In compliance to which Proviso they both then took the Oath, and on the Eve of the first Feast of St. *George* after the Restoration, the Duke was installed; and on the Eve of the second Feast, 15 *Car.* 2. by the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Berk-shire*; and the Prince by the Duke of *Albemarle* and Earl of *Lindsey*.

§. 2. *The Place of Election.*] BUT at what time soever the Ceremony of Election is purposed, the same ought to be Celebrated in Chapter, (for so is the

Assembly of the Sovereign and Knights-Companions call'd, where or whensoever conven'd) whether at the Solemnity of St. *George*'s Feast, the ordinary or most accustom'd Time, or on other Days specially set apart by the Sovereign; and when the Sovereign thinks fitting in the Interval of Feasts, to elect any Foreign Prince or other Person, Stranger or Subject, he often transacts it in peculiar Chapters called to that purpose, and then appoints both Day and Place, having that Prerogative. Some few Examples both of pristine, and of late Time, make it manifest and apparent.

Place.	Day and Year.	Knights elected.
1. Sign of the *Lion* in *Brentford*	*July* 11. 24 *H.* 6.	*Alb. de Vasques Dalmadea*, E. of *Averentia*. Lord *Beauchamp*. Lord *Hoo*.
2. Sov. Bed-Chamber at *Westminster*	*Nov.* 27. 25 *H.* 6.	Sir *Francis Surreyne*.
3. *London*, within the Bishops Palace.	*Feb.* 8th 39 *H.* 6.	*Richard* E. of *Warwick*. Lord *Bonvile*. Sir *Thomas Kyriel*. Sir *John Wenlock*.

4. Tower of *London*.	*August* 8. 14 *Ed.* 4.	*G. Ubaldus*, D. of *Urbin*. *H. Percy*, E. of *North*.
5. Star-Chamber.	*May* 15th. 15 *Ed.* 4.	*Edward* Pr. of *Wales*. *Richard* Duke of *York*. *T. Grey*, Mar. of *Dorset*.
6. Sovereign's Bed-Chamber in the Wardrobe, *London*.	*Febr.* 10. 19 *E.* 4.	*Ferdinand*, K. of *Spain*. *Hercules*, D. of *Ferrara*.
7. *Greenwich*,	*July* 14. 15 *H.* 8.	Lord *Ferrers*.
8. *Calais*.	*Oct.* 27th. 24 *H.* 8.	*A. Montmor.* E. *Beamon*. *P. Chabot*, E. of *Newbl.*
9. *Hampton-Court*.	*Jan.* 9th. 32 *H.* 8.	*Edward Seymour*, Earl of *Hertford*.
10. *Windsor*.	*Aug.* 6. 1 & 2 *Ph.* & *Mar.*	*Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.
11. *Whitehall*.	*Feb.* 8th. 20 *Eliz.*	*John Casimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*.

12. *York.*	*Sept.* 12. 16 *Car.* I.	*Thomas* Earl of *Strafford.*

BUT for the most Part since the Beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, *Whitehall*, the Sovereign's almost constant Court and Abode, hath been the usual Place whereunto all the Knights Companions have been specially Summon'd, and peculiar Chapters assembl'd for Election in the Intervals between the Vacancy and St. *George*'s Feast. However, while King *Charles* II. was in Exile, and wanted the compleat Number of Knights to constitute a full Chapter, he was necessitated not only to dispence with the Ceremony of Election in Chapter, but also in supplying the Defect of a Scrutiny, by making his own Election; yet after his Restoration, *Whitehall* recover'd her wonted Honour, and *April* the 1st. 13 *Car.* II. at a Chapter call'd and held in the *Bed-Chamber* there, the Duke of *Richmond*, the Earls of *Lindsey*, *Manchester*, and *Strafford* were elected.

§. 3. IN the next Place we are to consider what Number of Knights-Companions ought to be assembl'd to make up a compleat Chapter of Election.

BY the Statutes, there should be Six in Number at the least, besides the Sovereign or his Deputy; the due observance of which hath been so strict formerly, that Elections have been deferr'd where Chapters have been deficient in that Number; for Proof of which, the Duke of *Gloucester*, *Ann.* 9 *Hen.* VI. then Deputy to the Sovereign (at that Time in *France*) for Celebrating the Feast of St. *George* at

Windsor, forbore to proceed to Election, *because the Number of Knights-Companions there assembled was less than the Statutes requir'd*. And *Ann.* 10 *Hen.* V. no Election was Solemniz'd, tho' one Stall was void by the Death of the Lord *Clifford*, and probably for that reason; for the Earl of *Bedford*, then the Sovereign's Deputy, had but three Knights present with him, *Ann.* 22, or rather 23. *Humphry* Duke of *Bucks* being deputed to celebrate the Feast of St. *George* at *Windsor*, altho' there was at that Time four Stalls vacant, yet did no Nomination pass; one reason, *because there was not present a sufficient Number to compleat the Election*. So when the same King celebrated the Grand Feast personally at *Windsor*, *Anno* 31. *Regni sui*, having but three Knights attending him thereat, the Election was Prorogu'd for the very same Reason; in like manner 32, 33 and 34 *Hen.* VI. the Elections were retarded, for at the first of them there were present but two Knights-Companions, besides the Sovereign's Deputy; and at the Two last but four, besides the Sovereign, tho' the *Registrum Cartaceum*, *Ann.* 33. names five by adding the Duke of *Somerset*. At the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at *Windsor*, *A. D.* 1471. *Temp. Edw.* IV. the Sovereign fully resolving to Constitute an Election, and having but five Knights-Companions present, *Calys*, Pursuivant at Arms, was dispatch'd to *London* for Sir *John Astley* to repair thither and compleat the Chapter, rather than violate the Laws of the Order. *January* the 31st. 21 *Car.* II. being design'd for the Election of *Christopher* Duke of *Albemarle*, and there being Conven'd but five Knights at the Chapter, the Election was put off 'till the Third of *February* following, at which Time a proportionable Number of Knights being present, his Election receiv'd their Approbation.

§. 4. YET in cases of Necessity only, and to illustrate the Power and Prerogative of the Sovereigns, where the Exigency requires it, tho' not to be made use of where there is a possibility to perform the Rules and Injunctions of the Statutes, the Sovereigns for divers Reasons, have been induced to dispence with this Branch of the Statute for want of a plenary Number to compleat a Chapter. And the first Liberty observ'd herein, was made use of by King *Henry* VIII. *Ann.* 26. *Regni sui*, who upon the Death of the Lord *Montjoy*, very speedily assembl'd a Chapter at *Whitehall*, where no more than five Knights-Companions being present, the Absence of the rest were excus'd by special Grace and Favour, and the *Injunction of the Statute* (as the *Annals* subjoin) *concerning the Number of Nominators*, were by the same Clemency dispenc'd with, because of the Exigency of the Time and Place, and immediately upon taking a Scrutiny, *James* V. King of *Scotland* was elected into the Fellowship of this illustrious Order, but from that Time to the Rebellion, there occurs not any thing of this Nature; but the Wickedness of those Days created new Exigencies and Projections, which occasion'd, or rather inforc'd the Sovereign, King *Charles* I, most unwillingly to awaken and rouse up this dormant Prerogative, which he put in Execution at a Chapter purposely assembl'd for the Election of *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*, held at the City of *York* the 12th of *September*, 16 *Car.* I. where at that Time and Place he dispenc'd with the Defect of Number of Six Knights-Companions, having then with him Four only, some of the rest being engag'd in his Service against the *Scots*.

AFTERWARDS when several of the Knights-Companions so much adhered to the *Long Parliament*,

that all Summons were ineffectual to draw them to their Attendance upon their Sovereign, tho' but to celebrate the Grand Festival of their Patron (much less to the compleating Chapters of Election) to which they were obliged by the Oath taken at their Installment, the Sovereign was constrain'd to extend further his Supreme Authority; and thereupon at the Feast of St. *George*, celebrated at *York*, the 18th, 19th and 20th of *April, Ann.* 18. *Regni sui*, in a Chapter held on the Eve of the said Feast by himself and but four other Knights Companions, It was Order'd, *That Letters of Dispensation should be drawn up for the insufficient Number* (as wanting Six Knights) *to hold a Chapter of Election, and for Authorizing the Knights then present to deliver in their Votes according to Custom in other Scrutinies, that so the Sovereign might proceed to the Election design'd*. By vertue of which Dispensation, the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert* were elected Fellows of this noble Society.

THE like Dispensation was made at *Oxford* upon the 2d of *March, Anno* 20. *Car.* I. there being but five Knights-Companions present with the Sovereign; at which Chapter, *William* Prince of *Orange*, and *Bernard de Foix*, Duke of *Espernon*, were elected.

LAST of all, in reference to the holding three several Chapters preparatory to the Feast of St. *George*, and grand Installation celebrated at *Windsor* the 15th, 16th, and 17th of *April*, 13. *Car.* II (one of which Chapters was held for the Election of Four Knights, and to deliberate with the surviving Knights-Companions) the Sovereign was pleas'd the 29th of *March* preceeding, to pass the like Dispensation under the Signet of the Order, and his own Sign Manual, for this defect; and thereby made those three Chapters as legal as if the Number of Knights-Companions had been compleat.

§. 5. WE are now arriv'd at opening the Chapter, whereinto neither the Sovereign, nor any of the Knights-Companions are to be admitted without the Ornament, both their Mantles and Garters, as the Statutes ordain, and the Law is still in force, tho' the Chapter hath been assembl'd elsewhere than at *Windsor*. As for instance, one call'd at *Whitehall* for the Election of *John* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Anno* 20. *Eliz.* the Earl of *Huntingdon*, and the Lord *Grey* of *Wilton*, not having their Mantles then at Court, were not permitted to enter into the Chapter to give their Votes.

KING *Charles* I. determining to call a Chapter for electing the foresaid *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford* at *York*, where neither he nor any of the Knights-Companions then attending his Person, had the Robes of the Order with them; and taking into his Royal Consideration, the Statutes now mention'd, did by his Authority, as Sovereign of the Order, dispence with those Knights then present for coming into the Chapter without their Mantles.

AFTERWARD, upon other Emergencies that ow'd their Origin to the late Rebellion, the Sovereign did the like in some subsequent Chapters held at *Oxford*.

AFTER the Restoration, a Dispensation passed the Signet of the Order, dated the 10th of *January*, 12 *Car.* II. (the Great Seal being under the Hand of the Graver but not finish'd) He was necessitated to make use of his Supreme Authority for holding a Chapter the 14th of *January* following, in regard the Knights-Companions then in being were not as yet provided of new Robes.

PRESUMING then, that a full Number of Knights, (in Obedience to their Summons) are attending their Sovereign habited in their Mantles and Garters, and entred into the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, or other

Place appointed for this Assembly, the Sovereign having taken his Seat at the upper End of the Table, and given leave to the Knights-Companions to sit, the Occasion of their being call'd together is first declar'd either by the Sovereign himself, or the Chancellor of the Order by his Command.

THE next thing in Course, is to exhibit to the Sovereign Information of all the vacant Stalls; and if the Sovereign chance to be in Foreign Parts, an Information ought to be transmitted to him by his Deputy or Lieutenant; but if in *England*, and present in the Chapter, then to be presented him by the Chancellor, or in his Absence by the Register, or other Officer of the Order.

AFTER this they singly debate how the Place of the defunct Knight shall be supply'd, and sometimes (where two or more Stalls are found void) whether they shall be all fill'd up at that time, or if not, how many Knights shall be elected *pro hac vice*.

BUT when the Scrutiny is intended to be taken in the Choir of St. *George*'s Chapel at *Windsor*, these or the like particulars (referring to Election) are commonly consider'd of on the Feast-Day in the Chapter held immediately before Vespers, wherein it is most usually order'd, That the Scrutiny shall be taken in the Chapel that following Afternoon. And so it was decreed on St. *George*'s Day, *Anno* 5. *Edw.* VI. *viz. That the Elections of Knights should be taken that Even-song in the Chapel.*

THIS being effected, the Chancellor begins to collect the Knights-Companions Votes, and this is frequently term'd the taking the Scrutiny: For the ampler View of the Nature of which Action and Ceremony, we shall proceed to certain Considerations preparatory thereunto, beginning with what concerns the Nomination of the Persons to

be proposed to the Election.

§. 6. AND first, That Knights-Companions only present in Chapter, have the sole Right inherent in themselves, to nominate and propose Persons to the Sovereign's Election, consentaneous to the Bodies of the Statutes, that even from the Institution of this Most Noble Order, it hath not ever suffer'd any deviations.

IT is worthy of Remark, that *Anno* 26. *Eliz.* the Feast of St. *George* being Celebrated at *Greenwich*, the Earl of *Warwick*, and Lord *Burleigh* were seized with a Fit of the Gout, upon the Feast Day, which retarded them from Evening Prayer, whilst the Scrutiny was taken; whereupon we find their Indisposition of Body, and Absence, noted in that Scrutiny, where their Nominations should else have been set down, had they been present. And upon the same Occasion was what *Robert Cook*, Esq; *Clarenceux*, King at Arms, informs us, *That as for those Knights Companions who happen to be absent* when the Scrutiny is taken, altho' this Absence is *occasioned* by Accident of Sickness, or with the Soveraign's Licence, nevertheless, *in regard of this their Absence at that very time, their Votes may not be received.*

Those Knights Companions that come late to the Chapter, forfeit likewise the Privilege of giving their Votes for that time, which so happened to Prince *Rupert*, and the Earl of *Strafford*, at the Chapter held for the Election of *James* Duke of *Monmouth*, in the Privy Chamber at *Whitehall*, 29 *Mar.* 1663.

Altho' none of the absent Knights-Companions can give a Proxy to vote, or otherwise send their Suffrages into the Chapter or Chapel, there to pass in Nomination; yet formerly, *circa temp. H.* 5. *& H.* 6.

when divers of the Knights Companions were frequently employed in the Wars of *France*, and consequently so fixed to their Commands, that they could not personally attend the Feast of St. *George* at *Windsor*, it was usual for the Commander there in Chief, with Consent of those Knights Companions, to make a formal Certificate, or Presentment (but not to pass it by way of Nomination or Vote, for that the Law of the Order did not permit) to the Soveraign, or his Lieutenant and Knights Companions assembled at the Feast, of such Persons famous for martial Valour and Virtue, with an Account of their gallant Acts and Atchievements, (attested by other Persons of Honour) as were at that time, and in that Kingdom, in the Sovereign's Service, and seemed worthy Candidates for the Honour of the Election, to the intent victorious and brave Persons might be preferr'd to so noble and sublime a Post; an Example whereof we find preserved by the Industrious and Learned *Dugdale*.

"My Lord the Duc of *Bedford* remembreth, as by the Statutes of the Order of the Gartre, the Election of the Stalls voyde. He saith in the Voyc of the Brethren, and of the Fellowship, beyng at the tyme of the Fest, in the Presence of the Soverain or hys Deputy; that thinkyth to my said Lord, that for hys Acquital to Knighthood, that fytteth hym to give in Knowledge to the Kyng Soverain of the Ordre, and to his Fellowship of the same Ordre, the great Honours of the notable Knights, that from tyme to tyme exercyseth, and have exercysed in Knighthood; and especially in the Service of their Soverain Lord. And of such notable Knyghts as my Lord of *Bedford*, for the tyme remembreth him of, he hath by the Advyce of them of the Fellowship of the Ordre, being now in

France, in the Kyngs Service, and givyng in charge to the said Garter Kyng of Arms, of the Ordre, to shew theyr Names to the Kyng, and to expound Part of theyr Deeds, Acts, and of theyr Worthyness. First to expose the Honour of Sir *John Radeclyff* that hath contynowed all the tyme of the victorious Kyng that last dyed, whom Christe absolve, at the first landing of hym, at *Quies de Caux*, where the sayd *Radeclyff* receyved the Order of a Knyght, and after contynowed the Siege of *Hareflew*. And after with my Lord of *Excester* at the Battaile of *Vallemont*, and of *Quies de Caux*. And also sithen the deth of the sayd victorious Kyng, *Radeclyff* being Seneschall of *Guyen*, hath brought by hys Labour in Knyghthood to hys Soveraign Lord's obeysance within the Duchie of *Guyen* many dyverse Cities, Towns and Fortresses. And in especial deserved great and notable merits at the Siege of the City of *Bazates*, whych Siege was accorded, appointed, and set day of Battaile and of Rescous, the whych day was kept and houlden with great power on both Sydes, and under Banners displayed, the Enemyes doubtyng to fyght wyth *Radeclyff* required hym of apoyntment they to depart under saufe conduct from the said Field, the whych saufe conduct he graunted them for the term of eight days, like as they required the honour and empruse rested in the said *Radeclyff*, and to hys hygh meryte, for incontynent followyng was delyvered to hym, the reddyssion and possession of the sayd Cytty of *Bazates*. And also the sayd *Radeclyff* was at the Battaile of *Assincouert*, and hath contynowed and exercysed the Armys the Space of xxviij Wynters unreproched. And in the tyme of his Esquierhood was at the Battaile of *Shrewsbury* and at the Journey of *Husks* wyth the Lord *Grey* at the discomfiture and taking of *Owenson*.

Syr *Thomas Ramston*,
Syr *Rauff Butler*,
Syr *William Oldegall*,
Syr *Robert Harlyng*,
Syr *Gilbert Halsall*.

"*Item*, My Lord the Duc of *Bedford* beseecheth the Kyng Soveraign of the Order to have also for recommendyd to his good grace and highnesse other of his Subjects and Servants now being in hys Service in the Realme of *France*, whych hath done and yet doth take great payne by their knyghtly labour dayly to serve the merite of worthyness and prowess, as Syr *Robert Hungerford*, Syr *Thomas Beamont*, Syr *John Popeham*, Syr *Nicholas Burdet*, Syr *Rauff Nevill*, Syr *Edward Wyver*, Syr John *Robesart*, Syr *Tyre Robesart*, Syr *William Bretton*, Syr *Thomas Kyngston*, Syr *Richard Hankford*, and dyverse other."

BUT lest it may be suppos'd by some, that the Knights-Companions present in Chapter, can at their pleasures nominate or propose to elect such Persons as they deem meet, so they be qualify'd according to the Statutes, this Privilege is to be understood of Knights Subjects only: For in all Cases concerning Strangers, the Sovereign doth but barely grant them Sufferance, and may direct and confine the Knights-Companions to the Nomination of such as he at any time intends to Honour with Election, which Prerogative was particularly Asserted, 31 *Eliz.* and 3 *Car.* I.

IN the First of these Instances, the *Blue Book*, of the Order recordeth, That at a Chapter held immediately before Vespers on St. *George*'s Day, the Earl of *Huntingdon*, then Lieutenant for the Sovereign, made known to the Knights-Companions, *That the Sovereign*

did permit them, or leave it to their Pleasure to chuse into the Order whatsoever Foreign Prince they should by their Votes approve of.

HERE we have two Points that offer themselves to our Consideration. *First*, That the Knights-Companions have not the Liberty to nominate what Foreign Prince they please, but the same is derivative from the Sovereign, and only by his Permission. *Secondly*, To weigh the Paragraph well, that *Nominare* ought to be render'd or understood here by the Word *Eligere*, and that the Power delegated to the Knights-Companions from the Sovereign, was only to nominate, not elect; For it immediately follows, *That the Knights-Companions went from the Chapter to the Second Vespers; and while the Divine Offices were celebrating, the Prelate receiv'd their Nominations, and that very Evening the Lieutenant presented them to the Sovereign for her to consider of*; which had been insignificant and useless, if the Knights-Companions had been impower'd by her Licence to have made the Choice themselves. But the contrary is evident; for the next Morning, all the Knights-Companions attending the Sovereign in Chapter, she herself confirm'd there the Election not of any Foreign Prince, but of the Earl of *Sussex*, and the Lord *Buckhurst*.

IN the other Instance, *Anno* 3 *Car.* I. the Sovereign in a Chapter held before Vespers on St. *George*'s Day, signify'd it to be his Pleasure (Three Stalls being then vacant) that *out of Foreign Princes, the Nomination of whom*, (saith the Annals in that very Place) *belongs only to the Sovereign*, i. e. The Sovereign has the Prerogative to direct the Knights-Companions to name, or impose upon them the Nomination of such Foreign Prince he pleaseth they, the Knights-Companions, should pitch upon; which must

undoubtedly be understood to Nominate, or enter down into the Scrutiny, (not elect) *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and *Henry* Prince of *Orange*. For a little after, it is evident, when the Scrutiny was presented to the Sovereign, that himself, not the Knights-Companions, made Election of them.

AND it is further manifest, by the Scrutiny there inserted, that both those Princes were named by every of the Knights-Companions then present, according to the Sovereign's signification (which has been usually done at all other Times upon the like Occasions.) But concerning the third Person then to be Elected, the Sovereign, (intending him to be a Knight-Subject) left it entirely to their Pleasure to Nominate whomsoever they thought worthy of their Votes. Since this Time, the Nominations in like Cases, have been sufficiently acknowledg'd by the Knights-Companions themselves, to be a Prerogative belonging solely to the Sovereign. For to the End they might more expeditiously and clearly shew their Compliance, it was moved in a Chapter held at *Oxford*, *March* the 2d. 19 *Car.* I. *That it might become a Custom for the Sovereign to declare before-hand, whether he would elect any Foreign Prince, and whom, that so the Knights-Companions might be there to name him in the Scrutiny*.

§. 7. ANOTHER Consideration in our Progress towards the Act of Election, is appertaining to the Number, Qualifications and Dignities of the Persons nominated, which may be more conspicuously resolved from another Branch of the before-mention'd Article, *viz.* That every one of the Knights-Companions present at the Election should nominate

for himself nine very sufficient Persons, whom he should judge free from all Reproach and Scandal, whether Subjects to the Sovereign, or Foreigners, Provided they are known not to Favour or Abet any Party at enmity with him; that is to say, three Earls, or others of higher Degree, three Barons, and three Knights. Wherein the Things chiefly observable, we rank under five Heads.

For the First of these, their Number. Every Knight-Companion assembl'd in Chapter, is injoin'd to name Nine, neither more nor less. So also saith King *Henry* V's Statutes. Nor are King *Henry* VIIIth's. any ways dissonant. And in this particular, the Statutes have been hitherto inviolably observed, except in one Case. As to Numbers, and the Mysteries wrapt up in them, we shall not further insist upon. But why our Royal Founder selected this particular Number above all other, unless he had some Eye, and tacit Reflection on the Nine Worthies, or a treble threefold Cord and Symbol of perfect Stability and solid Amity, the Number Nine is accounted to signifie, can with no great Facility or Certainty be decypher'd.

As to the Second Point, they ought to be of unspotted Character. The Injunction in the Statutes of Institution takes Order, that the Persons designed for Election, should be *free from all Reproach, and of untaintted Reputation*; and according to those of King *Henry* V. are to be *the best and most sufficient Knights, and freest from Reproach*. To the same purpose the Exemplar in the Black-Book, *Such as are fittest*, and whom they who Nominate *believe to be free from Ignominy and Dishonour*. And to this Act of Nomination belongs part of the Second Article in *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes, *That no Knight-Companion should name any Person whom he thinks or esteems in his Conscience to have upon him any Spot of Reproach.*

But on the Contrary in another Place of the same Statutes it is Provided, That they be nominated and proposed *out of the Number of the most worthy and select Knights*.

How tender the Knights-Companions were in pristine Times of infringing this particular, is proved from a notable Passage which happen'd *Ann.* 39 *Hen.* VI. at a Scrutiny taken the 8th of *February*, in the Bishop of *London*'s Palace, where *John de Foix* Earl of *Kendal*, a *Gascoigner* by birth, (which makes the Example more eminent, that a Stranger should have so great Regard to the Honour of the Order) not being acquainted with the Quality and Merit of Knights and Honourable Persons amongst us so well and demonstrably as to nominate such whom he was confident were irreprehensible, forbore to mention any Persons at all. And certainly, seeing the Statutes put very considerable Qualifications upon the Deputies and Proxies, made choice for the Installation of Strangers (as elsewhere shown) much more Caution and Regard ought to be used both in the Nomination and Election of Knights into this radiant and illustrious Society.

THE third Head the Statutes render indifferently capable of being nominated or elected, either Knights Subjects, or Strangers, [Free Princes or their Subjects.] And it was so even at the Election upon the first Choice, where among the Twenty five Elected Knights, Twenty three of them were Subjects. And this was the constant Custom not only in the remaining Part of the Founders Reign, and during those of his three Successors, but has continued ever since, as appears from the Scrutinies taken and entred throughout the Annals of the Order.

OF those who have gain'd admission into this Noble Order by Election, we shall in the last Chapter

give an Account in a compleat Catalogue of them, and likewise insert the Names of such as have missed their Election, yet are not to be buried in Oblivion, out of this very respect, that by their standing Candidates, have the Fame of being enrolled in the Principal Register of Honour now in the Christian World. It cannot be supposed we should give a List of all, (for that were a Task too laborious, and wou'd prove too numerous) but only of those of eminent Quality in foreign Parts, with the *Æra* when the Scrutinies were taken.

A CATALOGUE *of some* STRANGERS *who have been nominated, but not elected.*

Rambrith de Walsey *Johannes de Voynada*	25 *Hen.* 6.
Franciscus Sforza, Dux *Mediolani*	28 *Hen.* 6.
Franciscus secundus, Dux *Britanniæ*	13, 14, 15, 22 *E.* 4.
Henricus quartus, Rex *Legionis* & *Castil.*	14 *Ed.* 4.
Matthius Corvinus, Rex *Hungariæ*	19, 22 *Ed.* 4.
Fredericus secundus, Dux *Austriæ*	22 *E.* 4. 1 *R.* 3.
Philippus quartus, Dux *Burgundiæ*	14 *Hen.* 7.
Franciscus Maria, Dux *Urbini*	1, 2 *Hen.* 8.
Uladislaus secundus, Rex *Hungariæ*	1, 2, 6 *Hen.* 8.

Christianus secundus, Rex *Daniæ*	6, 8 *Hen.* 8.
Dux *Barryæ*	8 *Hen.* 8
Comes *Galaciæ*	
Alphonsus Dux *Ferrariæ*	13, 15 *Hen.* 8.
Ludovicus secundus, Rex *Hungariæ*	13, 14, 15 *H.* 8.
Maximilianus Sforza, Dux *Mediolani*	14, 15, 16 *H.* 8.
Marchio Pescaræ	17 *Hen.* 8.
Johannes tertius, Rex *Portugalliæ*	17, 18, 26, 28 *H.* 8.
—— *Marchio Mantuæ*	18 *Hen.* 8.
Carolus Burbonus, Dux *Vandosme*	24 *Hen.* 8.
Gulielmus Dux *Clivensis*	32 *Hen.* 8.
—— Dux *Bavariæ*	
Dux *Alvæ*	1 & 2 *Ph.* and *M.*
Dux *Medinæ Cæli*	
Comes *Fereæ*	
Franciscus secundus, Rex *Galliæ*	
Franciscus tertius, Comes *Palatinus*	
Augustus Dux *Saxoniæ*	
Alphonsus secundus, Dux *Ferrariæ*	
—— Dux *Andegavensis*	
Dominus *Grabazenby*	24 *Hen.* 8.
Dominus *Humers*	

Dominus *Johannes Mounte*

Dominus *Harmibolt*

Dominus *Boysy*

THOSE Persons were render'd incapable of Nomination who were known to Act in contrary Interest to the Sovereign; as the *Exemplar* in the *Black-Book* expresseth more copiously, *Such as are not his Adversaries, or Abettors, or willing Defenders of his Adversaries*. Sometimes the Knights-Companions being more wary and discreet in Nominating them, to put either disrespect upon the Sovereign, or offer Violation to the Statutes.

IN the last Place, concerning the Degree, Rank and Dignity of the Nine Knights proposed to be Elected, the Statutes of the Institution set forth, That they be, *First*, Three *Earls*, or Persons of great Dignity. *Secondly*, Three *Barons*. And, *Thirdly*, Three *Knights*: Or, as it is in *Henry* V's Statutes, *Trois Contes ou de greegnear estat, trois Banerets, & trois Batchelers*. These Degrees are to be ranked in Three Classes, and they distinguish'd by Three Divisions, all including the Three Degrees aforesaid.

WHEREAS all other Bodies and Exemplars of the Statutes make positive mention of Earls only, yet the Statutes of *Hen.* VIII. in this Point are more ample, by expressing the first Class, *Dukes*, *Marquesses*, and *Earls*, or *Persons superior* to these in Degree, wherein the highest Dignity is comprehended.

WE may observe the different Title, *viz. Baneret* that *Henry* V's Statutes hath given us instead of *Baron*; and not only in this Article, but in all other where there is Occasion to treat of Barons; and yet the Record intends by it no other than the Person it mentions: For tho' a Banneret had its Denomination

à vexillo, it usually signify'd a Degree of Honour next below a Baron, both in a later and a modern Date; yet formerly among our Records, it is expressedly Synonymous to Baron, as is sufficiently clear'd up by our most Learned *Selden*; and in this Sense is to be taken here, and not as a distinct Title of lower Degree, because we observe the Bannerets rank'd in all Scrutinies before King *Henry* VIII. establish'd his Statutes (except one) with the Knights-Batchelors, not with Barons.

THE Title of the third and lowest Rank in this Classis in the Statutes of their Institution, are called *Milites Bachalauri*, and in those of King *Henry* V. *Batchelors*, and elsewhere *Bachalauri & Bachelauri Equites*, which in common Acceptation are the same with *Milites*, tho' thus render'd to evince their difference from Knights-Bannerets, who are of a superior Degree of Honour. And here we may observe, that there is no Place in a Scrutiny for any under the Degree of a Knight-Batchelor. And tho' Three of the Nine mentioned are set down to be Barons, and Three other Earls, or of higher Degree, yet must these Six be such as have had conferred on them the Order of Knighthood, else their Names are rejected, and neither given or taken in Nomination; for the Words of the Statute expresly are, *That each of the Knights assembl'd at the Election shall name nine Knights*.

THUS King *Charles* I. *Anno* 6 *Regni sui*, designing to invest *James* Marquess of *Hamilton* with this Order, conferr'd the Honour of Knighthood upon him immediately before his Nomination: And the Annals in that Place put this commentary Remark thereupon, *Because by the Statutes it is provided, that none should be elected into the Order that have not been dignify'd with the Title of Knight.*

YET the Ceremony of Knighting the Person designed to be elected, was not so strictly regarded, but sometimes this Branch of the Statute was either wholly passed, or else confounded with the second Article throughout the several Bodies of the Statutes, which prohibits the Choice or Election of any Person into the Society, as this doth the Proposal or Nomination. And thereupon perhaps it was conceiv'd, that altho' the Nomination, Election, and sometimes Delivery of the Ensigns of the Order was first dispatch'd and past, yet it was sufficient if the Honour of Knighthood was conferr'd afterwards; as in the Cases of *William* Earl of *Derby* and *Thomas* Lord *Burleigh*, *Anno* 43. *Eliz.* where the Register observes, That as soon as their Election was over, and they Usher'd into the Chapter, the Earl of *Derby*, (who it seems had not been Knighted before) was dubbed Knight with a drawn Sword, according to Custom, after which they had the Garter and George put on by the Sovereign her self.

IN like manner, *Ulrick* Duke of *Holstein*, and *Henry* Earl of *Northampton*, immediately after their Election, (the last Day of St. *George*'s Feast, *Ann.* 3. *Jac.* I.) and before they receiv'd the Ensigns of the Order, had the Dignity of Knighthood conferr'd on them by the Sovereign; and in like manner the Earl of *Sussex*, *Ann.* 3 *C.* I. which the *Red-Book* of the Order recites, *That as soon as it was understood that the Earl had not receiv'd the Order of Knighthood before, the Sovereign immediately drawing his Sword, Knighted him*; which was not done till after his Election and Investiture with both the George and Garter.

THUS did the Ceremony of Knighthood succeed the Election of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*, the 21st of *May*, *Ann.* 14 *Car.* I. for after he had been elected, and invested with the Ensigns of the Order by the two

Senior Knights (the Earls of *Pembroke* and *Montgomery*, and of *Arundel* and *Surry*) were intreated by the rest of the Knights-Companions, to present his Highness to the Sovereign in the Name of all the rest, to be initiated a Knight-Batchelor. He was conducted by the said Earls (his Supporters) into the Presence-Chamber in *Windsor-Castle*, where before the Chair of State, he most Solemnly receiv'd the Order of Knighthood from his Father King *Charles* I.

TO Honour which Knighthood, and the Memory thereof, Four of the chief Nobility then present were Knighted, *viz.* the Earls of *Essex*, *St. Alban*'s and *Elgin*, and Viscount *Grandison*, being conducted from the Great Chamber to the Sovereign's State, each between two Batchelor-Knights.

AFTERWARDS the Law in this Point began again to be more rightly understood; and by that Time *James* Duke of *York* came to be elected (which was the 20th of *April*, 18 *Car.* I. at the Feast of St. *George* celebrated at *York*) the Sovereign appointed, and accordingly conferr'd Knighthood upon him the Day before, which he receiv'd upon his Knees, being conducted into the Presence-Chamber between two of the Nobility, who were also Knights, the Marquess of *Hertford* and Viscount *Grandison*. In Honour and Commemoration whereof, Four other Noblemen receiv'd the Honour of Knighthood at that time, the Earl of *Carnarvan*, the Lords *George D'Aubignie*, *John Stewart*, and *Bernard Stewart*, each supported by two Knights.

AND thus Prince *Edward* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, being designed by King *Charles* II. to be admitted into this Noble Order, were both first Knighted at St. *Germains* in *France*, 1649. and afterwards had the Ensigns of

the Order sent unto them, by the Hands of Sir *Edward Walker*, Kt. Garter, who, in right of his Office, invested them therewith.

YET in the Case of Prince *Rupert*, who was elected with *James* Duke of York, *Ann.* 18. *Car.* I. His want of Knighthood became no impediment, because he was a Prince in another Country, *viz.* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, and might therefore justly challenge a Privilege to come within the Rule of foreign Princes.

BUT the Sovereign, to arrive as near to the Intention and Observance of the Statute as he could, (where there was a possibility to do it, and the Honour would be well accepted by the Prince) thought it requisite by Commission under the Great Seal of *England*, to impower *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surry*, and *George* Lord *Goring*, both being then in *Holland*, or either of them, to Knight the said Prince before putting on the Garter (seeing it could not possibly be done before his Election) which was intended to be sent by him by the Hands of Sir *John Burrough*, Garter. But Death intervening, the Sovereign's Intention was frustrated; altho' the Prince, upon his coming afterwards into *England*, receiv'd both the Garter and the George from the Sovereign himself at *Nottingham* nevertheless without Knighthood, which to excuse, it may well be alledg'd, that the Sovereign might not recollect this Part of the Ceremony, it being a Time of so great Turmoil and Fatigue, occasion'd by the then setting up of his Standard.

HOWEVER, upon the 17th of *January*, 1644. when a Decree past in Chapter then assembl'd at *Oxford*, That both the Duke of *York* and the Prince, should enjoy all Emoluments and Privileges of the Order, tho' they were not as yet Install'd (which Ceremony

was to be compleated assoon as *Windsor* was out of the Power of the Rebels.) The Prince, before he receiv'd his Oath, was conducted by the Earl of *Berkshire* and Duke of *Richmond* and *Lenox*, unto the Sovereign, and had conferr'd on him the Honour of Knighthood, there being at the same Time two of the Nobility Knighted in Memorial of that Solemnity, the Lord *Henry Seymour*, Second Son to the Marquess of *Hertford*, and the Lord *Capell*, conducted each between two Knights.

§. 8. We are now come to speak of the Scrutiny it self, in reference to which, we shall consider by whom it ought, or hath been usually taken, and the Manner and Form thereof.

By the Statutes of the Institution, the Collecting the Knights-Companions Votes, and entring them in the Scrutiny, solely appertains to the Prelate of the Order; and upon him is this Office devolved, not only by the other Bodies of the Statutes, but by the Constitutions of his Post, and the Obligation of his Oath, whose right we find duly asserted upon this Persons taking a Scrutiny, *Anno* 29 *Eliz.*

The Statutes likewise provided, That if the Prelate was at any Time absent, then the Dean of *Windsor*, or the Register, or the Senior Residentiary of the College, or the Secretary, or Scribe of the Order, should undertake the Employment; and elsewhere it is mention'd expressly, *In the absence of the Prelate, whose particular Duty otherwise it was*. And among the various Examples enroll'd in the Annals of the Order, these Examples abundantly confirm it. The Prelate of the Order collected the Suffrages from the Knights-Companions, *Anno* 9 *Hen.* V. when *John* Earl-Marshal, and Four other Knights were elected. The

like did *Henry Beaufort*, Lord-Cardinal, Prelate of the Order, upon the Election of *John* King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VI. And when the Duke of *Suffolk* was chose, *Anno* 26 *Hen.* VI. the Prelate then also gather'd the Suffrages; which he likewise did upon the Feasts of St. *George*, Celebrated in the 12th, 13th, 14th, 27th, 28th, 30th, 31th, 34th and 35th Years of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign. Sometimes the Scrutinies have been gathered both by the Dean of *Windsor*, and the Register of the Order jointly; as we find by the Election of *John* Lord *Talbot*, *Ann.* 2 *Hen.* VI. of Sir *John Falstaff*, *Ann.* 6 *Hen.* VI. and the Duke of *Quinbery*, *Ann.* 5 *Hen.* VI. all receiv'd at the Feasts of St. *George*, celebrated at *Windsor*.

IT is more than a bare Conjecture, that the Dean at those Times receiv'd the Votes from the Knights-Companions on the Sovereign's side, while the Register collected those on the Prince's; for 'tis observ'd, that in King *Henry* Vth's Reign, in Posts of different Natures, one whereof was to signifie the Sovereign's Pleasure to the Knights-Companions about their paying due Reverence, first to God, and afterwards to himself; and the other in a Ceremonial, which directs the Manner and Order of Mulcting the Knights-Companions; in both which, the Dean perform'd the Service on the right Hand the Choir (the Sovereign's side) and the Register on the left.

SOMETIMES the Register of the Order took them alone, as at the Election of *John* Earl of *Arundel*, *Anno* 10 *Hen.* VI. and those of the Earl of *Morteyn* and Sir *John Grey*, *Ann.* 14 *Hen.* VI. Moreover it's plain, that when the Office of Register was not fill'd, and *Thomas Ruthall*, Bishop of *Duresme*, executed it during its Vacancy, the Bishop himself, *Ann.* 2 *Hen.* VIII. collected the Suffrages. The like did *William Day*, Dean of *Windsor*, in the Absence of *George*

Carew, Dean of the Chapel and Register of the Order, at the Feasts of St. *George* held at *Whitehall*, *Anno* 18 and 19 *Eliz.*

THIS Duty was executed by the Register from the 15th Year of King *Henry* VIII. to the Period of his and his Son's Reign, as the *Black-Book* of the Order fully evinces; as also on St. *George*'s Day, *Ann.* 1. *Eliz.* by *John Boxhall*; and at the Feast of St. *George* held *Ann.* 1 *Jac.* I. by *Giles Thompson*, who in the several Times were Registers, yet we must not mistake that what they officiated was on their own behalf, but supply'd the Place of the Prelate.

IN the Beginning of Queen *Mary*'s Reign, we find the Chancellor of the Order began to perform this Service, being by King *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes adjoined to those other Offices before describ'd, to collect the Scrutinies in absence of the Prelate, and thereby made capable of the Employment, which afterwards is tacitly remark'd to be perform'd as if in his own right, when the Register has only effected it in the Chancellor's absence, tho' in reality it was no other, than as in the Instance of the Bishop of *Duresme* and Dr. *Day* aforesaid, who took the Scrutiny in the Vacancy of the Office, and absence of the Register.

Anno 4 *Eliz.* the Register in the Absence of the Chancellor (who was sick,) upon the Feast Day of St. *George*, collected the Suffrages. And *Ann.* 8. *Eliz. George Carew*, then Register of the Order, *took the Votes of the Knights-Companions in absence of Sir* William Petre, *Chancellor of the Order*. So also *Ann.* 4. *Jac.* I. where the Cause of the Chancellor's Absence is noted to be Sickness, and *Ann.* 6. *Jac.* I. to be Death.

IN the first of these Instances, we find the Prelate expressly set down to be there; in the two following, his presence is implyed, for it is said, that the Four

Officers of the Order did attend both Feasts, whereof, (the Chancellor being wanting) the Prelate must needs be one.

NOW all these Passages seem to relate to the Right of the Chancellors rather than the Prelates by this Remark, That every of the Scrutinies were taken in the Absence of the Chancellor, which looks something like a cautionary Remark that denoted the Right of Executing this Office to the Chancellor, rather than the Prelate.

WHEN a Deputy-Chancellor hath been admitted to Officiate in the Chancellor's absence, he, and not the Prelate, hath taken the Scrutiny, (tho' present) as at the Election of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*, the 20th of *May*, 14 *Car.* I. and at another taken the 22d of *May* following, and the same when the Suffrages were collected for the Election of the Duke of *York* and Prince *Rupert* at *York*, *Anno* 17 *Car.* I.

BUT there is one Passage more (upon taking a Scrutiny *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I.) which seems Advantageous to the Chancellor in this Point, where it is said, *That when the Knights-Companions had given their Votes* (as say the *Annals*) *THE CHANCELLOR WHO, ACCORDING TO HIS OFFICE, was to receive them, presented them to the Sovereign*. Howbeit, in truth there is no sufficient Foundation for the Register to insert this as done by the Chancellor, *by Virtue of his Office*, or any one Act or Chapter that hath suspended or made void, the Right of the Prelate, which is reserved by him, even by the Patent, for erecting the Office of Chancellor; especially in those Affairs, which, respecting the Order, ought by the Statute of the Institution to appertain to him. But since the stated Time of performing this Ceremony in the Chapel, the Prelate (if present) is presumed to be Officiating at the Altar, in discharge of another part

of his Duty, upon this consideration hath the Service been then imposed upon the Chancellor, and others.

Lastly, WE find the Scrutiny to be once taken by Garter, *Ann.* 16. *Car.* I. at the Election of *Thomas* Earl of *Strafford*. But this was at a Time, when not only the Prelate, but all the other Officers of the Order, excepting Sir *John Burrough*, Garter, were absent, and consequently this Service so executed, ought rather to be judged to have been done in the Prelate's than Chancellor's Right.

§. 9. BUT whosoever gather'd the Suffrages, the Time when they enter'd upon this Duty (in the Intervals of Feasts, where the Occasion requir'd a peculiar Chapter for an Election) was usually after the Chapter had been open'd, and the Matter of Election proposed by the Sovereign; after which he proceeded with all possible Reverence and Respect.

HOWBEIT upon an extraordinary Occasion (in the Interval of the Grand Feasts) the Sovereign hath sometimes called an Assembly of the Knights Companions, to be convened at the Castle of *Windsor*, who in the Choire of St. *George*'s Chapel (not Chapter-House) after the more solemn Manner, have deliver'd in their Nominations, and returning thence into the Chapter-House, he there continu'd the Election. Thus did King *Henry* VIII. upon the 7th of *June* in the 17th Year of his Reign, in reference to the Election of the Lord *Henry Fitz Roy*, (so stil'd in the Scrutiny, and rank'd among the Barons; for as yet he was not created Duke of *Somerset* and *Richmond*) and *Ralph Nevil*, Earl of *Westmorland*.

ON the 20th of *May*, *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. being *Trinity-Sunday*, the Sovereign caus'd a Chapter to be held that Afternoon in the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, for

the Nomination and Election of *Charles* Prince of *Wales*; at the Breaking up whereof, the Sovereign and Knights-Companions proceeded immediately to St. *Georges*'s Chapel, where at Evening-Prayer, (which was not within the Compass of the Feast, for that began not 'till next Day) the Scrutiny was taken.

AND besides those Examples which shew the Nominations have been collected (upon peculiar Occasions) in the Choire at *Windsor*, there are one or two Instances they have been also taken in the Chapel at *Whitehall*, as on the 15th of *May*, *Ann.* 1 *Car.* I. at the Choice of *Edmund* Earl of *Dorset*, *Henry* Earl of *Holland*, and *Thomas* Viscount *Andover*, as on the 4th of *July* the same Year, whereat the Duke of *Chevereux* was pitch'd upon.

THE Suffrages have commonly been collected at the Second Vespers, or in the Time of Evening-Prayer on St. *George*'s Day, or on that Day whereon the Feast of St. *George* hath been celebrated by Prorogation; and with this Distinction of Time, the taking of divers Scrutinies are mark'd.

HOWEVER, there occurs one Scrutiny gather'd in the Chapter-House at *Windsor* on the Eve of the Grand-Feast, at which the person immediately elected, was sent for in, and had the Ensigns of the Order conferr'd upon him, when immediately the Sovereign made his Progression to the Chapel, and after some small Interval, the Elect proceeded to his Installation. And this was the Case of *James* Marquess *Hamilton*, *Ann.* 6 *Car.* I. who lying under an Obligation to commence his Voyage next Morning towards *Germany* (whither he had the Commission of General of 6000 Foot in Assistance of the King of *Sweden*) occasion'd this his Sovereign's Indulgence, and quick dispatch.

WHEN the Scrutiny first began to be collected in

the Chapel, is treated of somewhat general and indefinite. *Ann.* 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9 *Eliz.* it was during the time of *Evening-Prayer*. And in like manner, *Ann.* 4 *Jac.* I. and 13 *Car.* I. And when the Feast of St. *George* was solemniz'd at *Whitehall*, the 18th of *April*, 13 *Car.* I. the *Annals* say, *That the Sovereign recreated himself with the Melody of Evensong, during which the Chancellor collected the Votes of the Knights-Companions*.

BUT in some other Places, the Time when this Matter was transacted is restricted to a precise Time, or some particular Part of Evening Prayer, as *Anno* 26 and 27 *Eliz. whilst the Choire sung the Service*, and the like *Anno* 14 *Jac.* I. but 4 *Car.* I. *while the Anthem was sung after the second Lesson*, but more frequently after the first Lesson, as in the 2 and 9 *Car.* I. *while the Anthem was singing*, or whilst they were hymning the Anthem of the blessed *Virgin called the Magnificat*, and which is all one with that, *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. viz. *assoon as the first Lesson was read*, or *at the first Lesson*, which is remembred to be *the usual Part of the Service, in which the nomination ought to begin*.

§. 10. THE manner of the Order the Knight-Companions Votes ought to be collected when the *Scrutiny is taken in the Choire*, when the Register informs us, upon the Celebration of St. *Georges*'s Feast at *Greenwich*, 28 *Hen.* VIII. as entred into the Black Book; "That he used his Diligence in going to and fro from one Side to the other, to demand and redemand the Suffrages from the Knights-Companions, according to the Variety and Disposition of their Stalls," which same Methods *in eisdem terminis* the Chancellor observed, *Anno* 24 *Eliz.* and without question was generally performed at

other Seasons, for the annals describe it to be perform'd *de more* 5 Eliz. or *juxta Ordines Constitutionis* Anno 26 *Eliz.*

THAT the Officer who collects the Scrutiny, is obliged to begin at the youngest Knight-Companion, and so proceed upward towards the Eldest, is evident from the Order mentioned to be in Vogue, *An.* 2 and 20 *Eliz.* as also 15 *Car.* I. But to give a more particular Account of this Ceremony, as it stood *temp. Car.* I. and doubtless long before, tho' not Recorded *in Scriptis*, is as follows.

First, THE Officer arose and went into the Middle of the Choire; directly over against his own Seat, he made two Reverences, first towards the high Altar, and next to the Sovereign, then he proceeded up to the Choire near the *hault pace* against the Stall of the junior Knight-Companion, and there made like Reverence; this done he went up to the Stall of the said junior Knight, and with a singular Reverence to him, only demanded whom he pleased to nominate, which having taken, (making to him a second Reverence,) he descended into the Choire, and thence passed to the next senior Knight on the other Side, (unless by reason of the vacancy of the Stall he Sits on the same Side with the junior) and having received his nomination from the second Knight-Companion, he again crossed the Choire to the Third, and in like manner he ascended according to the Seniority of the Knights-Companions present, (always crossing the Choire where there was occasion) until he arrived at the senior Knight-Companion; and having thus received all their Nominations, he returned into the Middle of the Choire, and after accustomed Reverences, took his Seat.

THIS Method in collecting the Votes as to the general, and in the Choire, ought likewise to be

observed when they are taken from the Knights-Companions in Chapter, they being ranked in due order on either Side of the Table, according to the Seniority of their Elections and situations of Stalls in the Choire; the Officer beginning with the junior and thence gradually ascending to the senior Knight.

AND that we may rightly apprehend after what form every Knight-Companion Ranketh the Names of those Persons he proposeth, and how each Classis is distinguished and divided, the following Scrutiny will manifest which was taken off, *May*, *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VI. upon the Vacancy of one Stall hapning by the death of Sir *Henry Tanke Clux* a *German*, and the first Scrutiny found Marshalled among the Annals of this most noble Order.

NOMINABANT.

	Principes.	Barones.	Equites.
Dux *Exoniæ*.	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *S. Stanley*
	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *J. Holland*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Dudley*	Dom. *J. Steward*
Marc. *Suffolc.*	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *J. Fengs*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Audley*	D. *R. Woodvyle*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Foix*.	Dom. *A. Ogard*
Com. *Salopiæ*.	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *R. Fengs*
	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Dudley*	Dom. *T. Stanley*

	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Foix*	Dom. *T. Kiriell*
Dom. *Sudeley*.	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Foix*	Dom. *R. Fengs*
	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *J. Fengs*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *G. Bonevile*
Dom. *Willoughby*.	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Wells*	Dom. *T. Kiriell*
	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	D. *J. Montgomery*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Laware*	D. *R. Shotesbroke*
Dom. *Scales*.	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Foix*	D. *E. Hungerford*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Clyfford*	D. *G. Beauchamp*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Laware*	Dom. *A. Ogard*
Dom. *Johannes Falstaff*.	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Boucer*	D. *R. Hungerford*
	Duc. *Norfolciæ*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *R. Roos*.
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	D. *Gray Ruffyn*	Dom. *A. Ogard*
Dom. *J. Beauchamp*.	Duc. *Warwici*	Dom. *Foix*	Dom. *R. Fengs*
	Com. *Devoniæ*	Dom. *Lovell*	Dom. *J. Fengs*
	Com. *Oxoniæ*	Dom. *Audley*	Dom. *R. Roos*.

IN the first Column each Knight-Companion hath his own Name perfixt to those Persons for whom he condescends his Vote, to the intent it may appear by whom the Knights candidates are nominated, and these are Ranked in three several Divisions.

THE first contains, The Degrees of Earls, Marquesses, Dukes, Princes, Kings and Emperors; yet at a Scrutiny taken *Anno* 24 *Hen.* VI. in a Chapter held at *Brainford*, *Albro Vasquez d'almadea*, (who immediately following, is Stiled *Comes Averentiæ*) is by a mistake Ranked; but in the second Division among the Barons, and twice among the Knights Votes of the Marquess of *Suffolk*, and Earl of *Shrewsbury*, but this Error perhaps owes its original for want of due knowledge, either of the Law in the Statutes or his Degree, the latter of which is the most feasible to conjecture; for being a Stranger, his Title might not be so generally divulged, nor is it taken notice of in the Scrutiny itself, tho' in the annals immediately after it was rectified.

AND to shew the probability of this Point, the Earls of *Oxford*, *Devonshire*, and *Arundel*, (whose degrees were sufficiently known) at a Scrutiny taken *Anno* 24 *Hen.* VI. are ranked in the second Division among the Barons, and *Anno* 1 *Hen.* VIII. the Earl of *Darby* is three Times so placed, and again 13 *Hen.* VI. the Earl of *Devonshire* twice; but this happened not thro oversight or neglect of the Statutes, but because at these Nominations wherein they are so Ranked, the first Division to which they appertained, happened to be fill'd up with those other higher Dignities belonging to the same Class, *viz.* Kings or Dukes, as when the beforementioned Earls of *Oxford*, *Devonshire*, and *Arundel*, were set down in the Place of Barons; the King of *Portugal*, the Dukes of *Warwick* and *Norfolk*, were put in the Class of Princes, and so

it happened in many other instances.

ON the contrary, *Anno* 15 and 16 *Edw.* IV. the Lord *Rich. Grey* one of the Queen's Sons, by her former Husband, Sir *John Grey* of *Groby* Knight; in respect of his Alliance to the Royal Family, is Ranked in the first Division among the Princes, under the Title *Dominus Richardus filius Reginæ*, and afterwards *Anno* 19 *Edw.* IV. set only among the Barons, as well with the former Title as this *Richardus Dominus Grey*, but *Anno* 22 *Edw.* IV. he is thrice register'd among the Princes, and as often with the Barons, whence it is observable that to be Enrolled in the Rank of Princes, may be afforded of courtesie to Persons of high Eminency and Blood; but then as they can lay no claim to it by their Merit, so such of the Knights-Companions as Rank them lower, suffer no diminution in their Honour.

WHEREIN the second Division are Ranked the Barons and Viscounts, for Viscounts in all Scrutinies, after the first Erection of that Dignity, were on the same level with the Barons, until the 3 of *Jac.* I. (excepting only *John Dudley* Viscount *Lisle*, *Anno* 35 *Hen.* VIII. who by every Knight, the Duke of *Norfolk* excepted, is Ranked in the first Division of Princes) and in a Scrutiny then taken, *Robt. Cecil* Viscount *Craneborne* is the second Viscount in the List that has been Ranked with Princes, whence it became the frequent Practice in succeeding Scrutinies, until *Anno* 14 *Car.* I. And then (upon a Question put in Chapter convened at *Westminster* 23 *May* 14. *Car.* I.) whether Earls Sons and Viscounts were eligible with Barons, it passed in the affirmative, and that by general usage except in the two cases just mentioned; and about the same time we find it reiterated near that Time, for in two Scrutinies taken the 19th and 21st of that Instant *May*, the Viscounts are therein

reduced to the second Division, and Ranked with the Barons.

THE Knights-Batchelors and Bannerets held the same Rank in King *Hen.* VIII's Statutes, in all Scrutinies with Barons.

BUT tho' the word in King *Hen.* VIIIth's late Statutes is *Baronettus* instead of *Banerettus*, yet is this frequently obvious in some ancient Books and Records, as well as in those ancient Writers, long before the Title of Baronet was conceived or brought into use.

IN the last place he who demands those Suffrages (the Knights-Companions present) is by the Statutes of Institution to receive them in writing; for in a Scrutiny taken *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. at the Election of *John* Lord *Talbote* and *Turnival*, the Dean of *Windsor*, and the Register of the Order, *wrote down the Votes and Nominations of every singular Knight present at the Day of Election*.

AND at another Scrutiny *Anno* 4 *Hen.* VI. to fill up that which by an Error in the Black Book is set down Sir *Henry Fitzhugh*, 'tis inserted, *That the Dean and Register wrote down in Order*, (according to their Seniority) *the Votes of the Knights-Companions*. And after the Scrutinies began to be entred in the Annals, it is evident the general Practice kept pace with the Injunction of the Statutes; only there are two instances of an Election confirmed without taking a Scrutiny in writing, one in the case of the Princes *Henry* and *Christiern* IV. King of *Denmark*, where the Knights-Companions in a Chapter convened at *Whitehall*, 14 of *July* 1 *Jac.* I. gave in their Votes *viva voce*, and immediately the Sovereign admitted them both into the Illustrious Society; the other was the Case of *James* Marquis *Hamilton*, Elected the 2d of *Feb.* 20 *Jac.* I. with the vocal consent of all the

Knights-Companions.

IT is worthy observation, that this Method, and the omission of taking the Scrutiny in writing, is not only contrary to the Law of the Order expressly set down for a more stable consignation of the Action, and more faithful transmission of it to Posterity, but exceeding prejudicial to Persons of Honour, and Distinction, whose Names would otherwise survive with great veneration among the candidates of this Illustrious Order, and of which Honour many deserving Persons will be hereafter deprived, if the Injunctions of the Statutes be not observed in this particular respect.

SECT. XI.

The Presentation of it to the Sovereign.

THE Knights-Companions, having delivered their Suffrages, the Officer by whom they are Collected, humbly presents to the Sovereign the Nominations, for so it is recorded the Prelate of the Order acted in the 9th of *Hen.* the Vth. If these Votes were taken in Chapter, the Paper usually was immediately presented to the Sovereign who made his Election, before the Chapter broke up; but if gathered in the Chapel, tho' it was given to the Sovereign, yet the choice was not made then, but the Morning after, and this was the manner in the 2d and 5th Years of Queen *Eliz.* Another time it hath not been presented till the Vespers were finished, but in the Practice of latter Days the Scrutiny hath not been given up to the Sovereign till the next Day at the opening of the Chapel before Morning-Prayer, as in the 13, 15, 20,

30 Years of Queen *Eliz.* demonstrates, and was the accustomed Practice of the 17th Year of King *Charles* the first of ever-sacred Memory; the last presentation was transcribed in a little Book, and with all due Reverence offered upon the Knee, before any other Affair was transacted in the Chapter.

THIS has been the general Use as we are ascertain'd, *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. the Dean of *Windsor*, and the Register of the Order, having Collected the Vote of every Knight, they were immediately given into the Hands of the Sovereign's Deputy; and in the same nature were they presented on the 4th *Hen.* VI. when *John* Duke of *Bedford* was Lieutenant, in the 20th of Queen *Eliz.*; when the Suffrages were Collected by Sir *Francis Walsingham* the Chancellor, he gave them up to the Earl of *Sussex*, then Lieutenant to the Sovereign.

BUT it's evident from several Passages in the Blue Book of the Order, that the Lieutenant afterward delivered them to the Sovereign, as is apparent from the Records of the 30th, 34th, 38th, and the 40th Year of Queen *Eliz.*

In the 12th Year of K. *James* I. some Exceptions arose upon the Chancellor's not presenting the Scrutiny to the Prince, (who at that time was the Sovereign's Lieutenant) but to the Sovereign himself, which was an Error he fell into, as well as some of his Predecessor's; as the 2d, 3d, and 25th of *Eliz.* demonstrate.

The Sovereign's Considerations upon the Qualifications of those to be elected.

§ 12. As the Knights-Companions are under an Obligation, by the Statutes, to nominate no Person, but who can bear the Test of the afore-mention'd Qualifications, there's a Standard of Honour provided for the Sovereign, to measure the Extraction, Quality, and Merit of the Person proposed to be elected, least it might chance, thro' the Indulgence of the Sovereign, this Fountain of Honour might be mudded by the Choice of inferior and undeserving Persons, for the Statutes run—because this *Order consists of Goodness, and honourable Virtue, doth not admit Unworthiness and Villany*, and so by Consequence secludes all Persons of mean Extraction and Merit.

The Qualifications for *Election* are exhibited in the 2d Article, as in the 18th are included those of *Nomination*: The Words of the *Institution* are, *That none shall be elected into the Order*; and refer only to the Act of Election: For if we consult the rest of the Statutes, and compare them with this Passage, they run according to this Tenor, *That none shall be elected and chosen a Companion of this Order*. These refer more principally to the Time of the Election, and not to the *Investiture* with *Garter*, and *George*, and *Installation*, from the Expressions of *admitting* and *receiving* Knights into this *Order*, as the *Examplars* of the *Statutes* of *Institution* set forth. And this is farther illustrated, from another Passage in the 2d Article of *Henry* the VIII's Statutes, where the Word *Reproach* is mentioned, saith, *The Guilt thereof so incapacitates a Man's Election, that for the future it's a Bar, and utterly disqualifies him for that Honour*.

There are Two Points requisite for *Qualifications and Endowments*; first, to be a *Gentleman of Blood*; and, 2dly, a *Knight* without *Reproach*. By the Statutes of *Henry* the Vth's *Institutions*, no Man ought to be

elected, *unless he be a Gentleman born*. The *Examplar* in the *Black Book* saith, *Unless he be worthy upon the Account of Birth and Arms*: And in another Passage, *That he be one eminent for his Demeanour and good Report*; which intimates the Conjunction of Blood and Virtue, which make up the noblest Composition. The Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. are more extensive than those, and say, *He must be a Gentleman by Name, Arms, and Blood*; and least this Character might seem intricate and perplex'd, *A Gentleman of Blood* is defin'd to be, *One descended of three Descents of Nobles*, viz. *of Name and Arms, both by his Father and Mother's side*.

It's certain *Gentility* does not receive its Perfection in the Person it was first devolv'd on, but is rather compleated by Succession: For, among the *Romans*, tho' the Father was Free-born, and of the *Equestrian Cense*; yet it was farther requisite, that the Grand-father should be the same, or else they could not obtain the Ring, one of the *Symbols* of the *Equestrian Order*, as *Pliny* informs us. *Gentility* hath its beginning in the Grand-father, its increase in the Father, and full ripeness in the Son; and consequently in the Constitution of *Gentility*, the Father and Grand-father conveying a Lustre to the Son, make it entire and compleat; for its incongruous to suppose a ripeness in the Son, unless there had been a former encrease in the Father, and a longer Series from the Grand-father.

The memorable Instance of the Lord *William Paget*, who was divested of the *Garter* five Years after his Election, upon Pretence of his not being a Gentleman of Blood by either Father or Mother, proceeded not wholly from the defect in Point of Extraction, as *Haward* relates, but rather from the Prevalence and Practice of *John Dudley*, Duke of *Northumberland*, by

whose means he was most unjustly deprived of the *Garter*; repenting, perhaps, at the great Honours he had done this Lord, by his fair Character of him to King *Edward* VI. when he procured him a new Grant of those Arms, under the Great Seal of *England*, when he was *Earl Marshal*, which he had some time before received from the Garter Principal King of Arms.

But, admit the defect of *Blood* and *Arms*, for three Descents, were the true Cause of the recalling his *Garter*, that it might be conferred upon the Earl of *Warwick*, eldest Son of the said Duke, who, out of courtesie, is called so, in which Relation both *Haward* and *Stow* have mistaken, for they were bestowed upon Sir *Andrew Dudley*, Brother to the Duke; for tho' he was put in the Scrutiny enter'd among the *Annals* of *Edward* VI. in the Sixth Year of his Reign, upon St. *George*'s Day, yet was the Earl neither then, nor at any other time, elected.

The Ensigns of this most Noble Order, as soon as Queen *Mary* ascended the Throne, were with as much Honour restored to the Lord *Paget*, and with as great and absolute an Authority, as they were disgracefully taken from him. And in Confirmation of this Lord's Restauration, he had the *Garter* buckled on his Leg, and the *Collar* and the *Order* put about his Shoulders, with the *George* depending, by two of the Knights-Companions present; and the Garter King at Arms was order'd, That he should take Care his *Atchievements* should be replaced over his *Stall* at *Windsor*, which is the 9th on the Sovereign's side. It is observable, that the very Records of the Order brand his Degradation as Injustice; as if it were inferable, That when Honour is conferred, upon the Account of Virtue and exquisite Endowments, the Consideration of these supplies the defect and obscurity of Extraction. The Sovereign, whose

Prerogative it was to declare and interpret the Statutes, being present in Chapter, thought fit to qualifie the Law, and gave him this honourable Commendation, *That he had highly deserved of the Nation, by his Prudence and Counsel*.

And though there's only inserted in the *Examplar* of the *Black Book*, *Virtue* and *good Report* for a Qualification, yet the same was observed by the Sovereigns and Lieutenants in foregoing Times, with great Circumspection; and that the *Magnanimity*, *Fortitude*, *Prudence*, *Generosity*, *Fame*, *Reputation*, and other Virtues and Excellencies, whether innate or acquired, of the Person proposed to Election, have by prudent Inquisition been inspected, and brought to the Touchstone, before they have been admitted into so noble and illustrious a Body.

Those Qualities were chiefly consider'd and esteemed by *Henry* V. for which Reason, at an Election in the 9th Year of his Reign, he gave the Preference, before others that were nominated and presented unto him, to *John*, Earl Marshal, *William*, Earl of *Suffolk*, *John*, Lord *Clifford*, Sir *Lewis Robertsack*, and Sir *Heer Tank Clux*.

Humphry, Duke of *Gloucester*, Deputy to K. *Hen.* VI. trod in the same Steps, and did weigh, by the strict Rules of Fortitude and Prudence, the gallant and noble Actions and Deserts of *John*, Lord *Talbot*, before the Election, and gave in an Approbation worthy of his own Judgment, and that Candidate's Merit. And for this Reason it's expressed in the *Annals* of the Order, that such noble and heroick Qualifications should have the favour of Election preferrable to others, as is evident in the Matter of Choice of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, in the 28th of *Hen.* VIII. *That he was a very fit Person, upon the Eminency of his Extraction and Fame, and the many noble and worthy*

Actions he had performed; so as that all present did, without any delay, unanimously approve of his Election. And after this Tenure run the Commendation of *Henry*, Earl of *Cumberland*, at his Election, *viz. The many famous and loyal Atchievements performed by him, both at several other times, and then more especially, when the Tumult of Rebellion began to break forth in those Borders where he had his Habitation.*

The 2d Point to treat on is, That no one is qualified for Election, unless he be a *Knight*; or as it is expressed in one of the *Examplars* in the *Hatton Library*, *Unless girded with the unstained Girdle of Knighthood*; so singular a regard the Law of the Order hath to this particular Qualification above the rest: And least Chance or Inadvertency might let slip a Person not Knighted into the Scrutiny, were the Words inserted *ut minimum*, that he be at least a *Knight* before he be elected, when the Sovereign comes to make his Choice. It is evident from the 2d Article in the Statutes, that it hath long since received this Construction, as appears by an eminent Instance. In the 17th of *Hen.* VIII. The Feast of St. *George* being celebrated at *Greenwich*, and the Sovereign being present, having elected the Lord *Roos*, afterwards Earl of *Rutland*, into the Society of this most noble Order; and being advertised on the Morrow after St. *George*'s Day, while the Mass of *Requiem* was celebrating, *That he had not before received the Dignity of Knighthood, according to the Statutes*, which positively enjoin, *That whosoever is elected into this Society, should be in Degree at least a Knight*; that is, actually *Knighted* before-hand. And tho' the Lord *Roos* was, at the Time of his Election a Baron of this Realm, which is a higher degree of Honour than a *Knight*; The Sovereign after Mass re-assembled the *Knights-Companions*, and annulled the

Election, and commanded the *Garter* and *George*, so lately conferred, to be taken off, and in the same Place dubbed him a Knight; and then he was Elected again, with an unanimous Consent, and so declared by the Sovereign's own Mouth; and was restored to his *Ensigns* and *Ornaments*, by the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*. Agreeable to this, it's recorded in the *Red Book* of the Order; that none of the *English*, *Scotch*, or *Welsh Nation, how considerable soever otherwise, in the Prerogative of Blood or Virtue, can be Elected into this most honourable Society; but that he ought to be first ennobled and rendered capable, by this first degree of Knightly Honour*.

But this Law does not bind Foreign Princes; for by a Decree at *White-Hall*, in 13 *Charles* I. these Words, *ut minimum*, are explained to relate to all Subjects, of what Degree soever, within the Sovereign's Dominions; but Foreign Princes ought not to be *Knighted*, as the Basis and first Degree of *Chivalry*. The *Statutes of Institution*, as to those before-mentioned, not only enjoyn them to be *Knights*, but to be free of all *Infamy and Reproach*. In *Henry* V's. Statutes, it stands, *Chivalier sans reproche*, which Answers in the Latin, *Eques irreprehensus*; and the Argument used by the Duke of *Bedford*, for promoting the Election of Sir *John Radcliff*, was, that he had continued and exercised the Armies, the space of twenty eight Years, without *Reproach*. King *Henry* VIII. determined this Word *Reproach* into three Species; first, *when a Knight hath been convicted of Heresy, against the Catholick Faith*; or *suffered any publick Punishment for such Offence*: Here Heresy is reckoned among those defects, that deprive Men of Honour; because it bends its Force against the Catholick Church, which not only renders a Man, in the ballance of *Honour*, of no *Weight* and *Esteem*, but

more than all other Sins, makes him *Infamous*. And therefore when by *Tongue*, *Pen*, or *Actions*, a Man endeavours to trample under Foot the *sacred Law*, he scandalizeth Government, and seduceth others.

The second Point is, when any Knight hath been *arraigned, convicted, and attainted of Treason*; however Q. *Elizabeth* qualified this Point by a Decree, made in the first Year of her Reign; *that in case any Persons so convicted, were pardoned by the Sovereign, and restored in Blood; every such Gentleman in Name, Arms, and Blood, and descended as aforesaid, being otherwise qualified, according to the ancient Statutes of the Order, should be thenceforth accounted Eligible, and might be Chosen a Companion*. This Decree, it's presumed, owes its Original, upon the occasion of restoring in *Blood William* Marquiss of *Northampton*, and the Lord *Robert Dudley*, after Earl of *Leicester*, who had been attainted of High Treason in the first of Q. *Mary*: And we find that in the next Feast of St. *George*, they recovered their Privileges of Honour, and were preferred in *Nomination*, and on the last Day of the Feast, were Elected into this most illustrious Society.

Though the Marquess of *Northampton* had been formerly Elected in the 35 *H.* 8. and was restored in Blood, as I said before; it's very remarkable, that it was thought fit to descend to a new Nomination and Election, as appears from the Decree it self, as it was performed upon the third of *June Anno primo Eliz.*

The last Point of Reproach, is, *where a Knight Companion hath fled from Battle*; in which the *Sovereign*, or his *Lieutenant*, or other *Captain*, (having the King's Authority) were present; when Banners were displayed, and both Sides proceed to Fight. Now for a Person to behave himself cowardly in the Fight, abandon his Colours, leave his Prince, Friends, and Companions, in hazard of Life, are undoubtedly

Concerns of a very high and reproachful Nature, and draw down Dishonour upon the Order, the Sovereign, and Knights Companions, and a sufficient indication of a pusilanimous Mind; that prefers to drag an infamous Life, and makes his Honour a Sacrifice to a reproachful Safety; for the Resolution of a right *Martial Spirit*, ought either to return decked with Victory, or die upon the Bed of Honour.

By the Laws of King *Edward* the Confessor, the *Soldier* that runs from his *Colours*, either in Land or Sea Service, his *Life* and *Estate* were made liable to answer the Offence; and our Acts of Parliaments have made it *Felony*, without *Benefit of Clergy*; for as much as such desertion endangers the Estate of the *King, Nobility*, and *Commonwealth*.

But the danger is of a far more dismal hue, when Officers, or he that Commands in Chief, or who has any Post of Trust assigned him, either quit it, or is found defective in his Duty, as was *Thomas Earl of Lancaster*, who quitted the Army at the Siege of *Berwick*, the consequence of which proved an abortion to the whole Design; and for which he was proclaimed *Traytor*, *Anno* 12 *E.* 2. And therefore whoever is culpable of any of these three Points of *Reproach*, is disqualified from being Elected into this most *noble Order*. Before we proceed any farther, it may not be improper to take notice of an Error which *Polydore Virgil* hath interwove with one, and which *Erhardus Celius*, in his History of *England*, hath copyed from that Author, but refuted by the learned Pen of Dr. *Heylein*, *viz.* that the *Knights-Companions* have certain *Laws* belonging to their Order, whereby they are *obliged to help one another, and in Time of Battle never to betake themselves to shameful Flight*: The *Statute Law* of the *Order* is silent upon the first Clause, nor is the latter otherwise to be taken, than

one of those Points of Reproach spoke of in the second *Statute of K. Henry* VIII. which nulls the *Election* of the Person nominated, if he be peccant in that Point: Now that which gives some Umbrage to the *Knights* mutual Assistance and Defence, is founded upon an Article in their *Statutes*, which prohibits the arming themselves one against another, to create a mutual Affection, and to extinguish Feuds, which is the Life and Soul of Society, and which the Founder, to prevent Inconveniencies, had a great Regard to; and therefore he Ordained, which has been confirmed since by other Statutes; That none of the Knights-Companions should Arm themselves against any of their *Fellows*, unless either in the Cause of his Sovereign, or his own just Quarrel: And this Clause it was, that gave the Handle to both Parties, that sided with the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*; some firmly adhering to *Henry* VI. whom they accounted *Sovereign* of the Order; and others taking Part with *Edward* IV. as esteeming him Sovereign *de Jure*, though not *de Facto*.

But more firmly to tye this Knot of Amity among this noble *Fraternity*, least they should unhappily engage in Factions one against another, and proceed so violently as might commence into Actions of Blood and Slaughter; it was ordained, That if a Knight-Companion should happen to be retained in the Service of a Foreign Prince, to take up Arms in his Quarrel; and after his Adversary desired to entertain another *Knight-Companion* on his Side also; he that was last invited, was bound to wave this Offer, and in no wise to give his Consent. And upon this, the *Knights-Companions* were obliged to make special Precautions in that their Engagements; that if any of his Fellows were retained on the other Side, and that if he knew not that another of his *Fellows*

had been engaged with the Adversary, so soon as it came to his Knowlege, he was obliged to relinquish the Service he before had undertaken.

To these three Points of *Reproach* we have set down, we find in a Manuscript, that belonged to *Heny Grey*, third Marquiss of *Suffolk*, a fourth added to these other three *Points* of *Reproach*; in these Words:

That if any Knight of the Order, from henceforth, by Prodigality or Ryot, wilfully or negligently, Dispend, Sell, Aliens, or do away his Patrimony or Livelihood, by reason whereof, he shall not be able honourably to maintain himself, and his Estate, in such honourable manner, as may Conserve the honour of the said Order, and of himself; in this Case he shall be Summoned by the Usher of Arms of the Order, called the black Rod, by Commandment of the Soveraign, **his** Lieutenant, **or** Deputy; **to appear before his Majesty, or his Commissioners, and the Knights of the Order, at the next** Chapter **ensuing; there to be examined before the Soveraign, or his said Commissioners, and the Knights and Companions of the said Order; and if he be found in such great default of** Prodigality, insolent Riot, or wilful Negligence; **that then the Soveraign, with the advice of the Company of the said Order may deprive and degrade him of the said Order, at the said Chapter, if it be their Pleasure.**

Though this fourth Point is not inserted into King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, yet the Substance thereof seems to be approved of before; for we find among some *Orders*, prepared by the Marquiss of *Exeter*, and other

Knights-Companions, at a Chapter at *Windsor*, the twenty fifth and twenty sixth Days of *May*, *Anno* 8 *Henry* VIII. one of them was something to this Purpose.

§. 13. Amongst the Number of these Candidates, the Sovereign is chiefly to regard those who have *most Voices*, or whom he conceives most requisite to contribute to the *Honour of the Garter*, and most Beneficial to himself, and of most Advantage to his Crown and Kingdom. We find the Law hath not always reserved the greatest Number of Voices, as will appear from the Annals; yet it has sometimes confirmed the Election, as in the Case of the Duke of *Queenberry An.* 5 *Henry* VI. where, after a due and sufficient Examination taken of the *Scrutiny*, the Duke, by the consent of most Voices, was Elected into the Stall of *Thomas* Duke of *Exeter*; and so was the Election of Sir *Nicholas Carew*, the twenty fourth of *April*, in the 28 *Henry* VIII.

It is remarkable in a singular Instance, that when two Knights had on either Side equal *Voices*; which was the Case of Sir *John Fastolf*, and Sir *John Radcliff*; the first being esteemed more Worthy, by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, obtained the Election.

The second Inducement relates to such as, in all Appearance, may bring most Renown to the *Order*, and advance it to a higher pitch of Greatness; and these have in a great Measure been effected, by enrolling Foreign Princes into this *illustrious Society*, whose Valour and great Merit have proclaimed them deserving both of *Nomination and Election*. And upon this Consideration, K. *Charles* I. of blessed Memory, *upon Consideration had of the glorious Atchievements, and high Renown, of* Gustavus Adolphus *King of*

Sweden; judged it a Part of his Respect, not only to render him all Offices of Kindness and Friendship, as to a Prince nearly allied, and his most special Friend; but also to impart to him, as far as in him lay, the greatest and highest Honour that might be, and especially such, wherewith the military Virtue of so great a Captain was wont to be adorned.

But the principal Motive thought requisite to Elect Foreign Princes into this Society of Honour, hath been expressed in the *Commissions* of *Legations*, *to be in Respect of their glorious Merits, ennobled by the lustre and grace of their Heroick Virtues, their eminent Nobleness, Grandeur, Prowess, and Magnificence; the renown of which, Fame had divulged and spread Abroad throughout the World.*

Where the Advantage of the Sovereign's Service was thrown into the Ballance, no Consideration could outvie its Pretensions, as in 2 *H.* 6. justifies; whose eminent Service for his King and Country, was the sole Motive that crowned his Election: And the great Zeal and Affection, which *John Jaspar Ferdinand de Marchin* shewed for the Cause and Service, and the recovery of the just Rights of King *Charles* II. was the strongest Inducement that swayed that Sovereign to chuse him, in the tenth Year of his Reign, a Knight-Companion of this most noble Order. But the last inducement is of the greatest Latitude, for the *Sovereign* has a Power to reject whosoever he pleases, though they do exceed in multiplicity of *Voices*, and in other *Qualifications*; and even to Elect a Person that's but once mentioned, as was shewn in the Person of *Casimire*, the fourth King of *Poland*, *An.* 28 *Henry* VI. who having only the single Vote of the Lord *Scales*; yet upon respect to the *Sovereign*, how advantageous he might be for his, and his Kingdom's Interest, obtained the Election.

And of later Date, (as the Preambles for the carrying the Ensigns to Foreign Princes set forth) the Advantages the Sovereign has conceived to possess himself of, in the improving, confirming, and establishing, of a most strict and *inviolable Bond* of Friendship, and fair Correspondence, between him and Foreign Princes, their Realms and Subjects, hath been a grand Inducement to Elect such Princes into this most noble Order.

§ 14. Upon the vacancy of any of the *Knights-Companions* Stalls, the *Election* of others to supply those, is a Prerogative of the *Sovereign*, and in some Cases to his Lieutenant; for it's recorded in the *Black Book of the Order*, in *Henry* VIII's Statutes: That *if any Stalls fall Vacant, it should belong to the Sovereign, to Elect new Knights, wheresoever he was Resident*; upon Condition, the Chapter consisted of six compleat *Knights-Companions*; but if he chanced to be out of his Realms, and the Number was deficient, and that his Lieutenant held the *Feast of St. George* at *Windsor*; in such a Case the *Election* belongs to the *Lieutenant*, who is first to be certified of his *Sovereign*'s Pleasure, and what Esteem *he* has for the Candidates, to the intent such Information may guide, or direct his Election.

This Power of *Election* is fully acknowledged, by the *Knights-Companions* themselves, to be in the Sovereign; as the fragment of a Letter demonstrates, sent from *the Chapter*, convened at *Windsor*, upon the *Feast of St. George*, to *Henry* V. then in *France*; viz. *That the Sovereign, in what Place soever residing, may, as is most fitting, Elect into a vacant Stall, (there being a sufficient Number of Knights called to this Election) such as he shall judge serviceable to his Crown, or do exceed*

others in deserts, and nobleness of descent: And at publishing the *Election* of *Duke Emanuel* of *Savoy*, in the Reign of *Philip* and *Mary*, who were *joint Sovereigns* of the *Order*; it's styled, The Election of the *King and the Queen*.

This grand Prerogative of the *Sovereign* being not duly weighed by *Polydore Virgil*, occasioned his tripping in this Affair, and drew in *Claudius Coterœus* into the same palpable mistake; for writing of this *Order*, and the Succession of new Knights, reports in his History of *England*, That *one Knight is received in the room of another deceased, by the Choice and Election of all the rest*; and *Erhard Celly* in his *Anglo-Wirtemb.* does as falsely affirm, *That no Person may be received into this Order, not so much as by the Sovereign, unless with the common Consent and Suffrage of all the Knights-Companions*.

But these Passages are altogether erroneous, the *Knights-Companions* only *nominate* the *Persons*, but the right of *Election* remains solely in the *Sovereign* of the Order; for whosoever is honoured with his Choice, is immediately admitted; and pronouncing barely the Name of the Person in Chapter, constitutes the Election. After the Scrutiny hath been taken, and presented to the Sovereign, he peruseth it himself, or the *Chancellor*, or some other Officer of the *Order* that gathered it, reads it over to him; afterwards the Sovereign resolves forthwith, upon some one or more of the Knights, contained in the Scrutiny; and then publickly declareth the *Name* of him, or them, he does *Elect*; and by the bare Act of his *Pronunciation*, they Commence Elected Knights; except now and then the Sovereign is pleased to give his Reasons, why the Knight is Elected by him.

But though this Act of *Election* be solely in the *Sovereign*, yet the Consent of the *Knights-Companions*

is frequently recorded in the *Annals*, and sometimes mentioned in the *Commissions* of *Legations* to *Foreign Princes*; not that the single Act of *Election* is, in truth, the Act of the whole Chapter, or is made invalid, without the joynt Consent of the *Knights-Companions*, present at the Election; but their Consent so expressed, is to be taken as an honorary Respect given them by the Register, intimating rather an Applause, or Commendation of their *Sovereign's Choice*, as being in their Opinions Just and Right, according to the Merit of the Elected, than a material Circumstance, tending to the Ratification of the Election made by the Sovereign, as if defective without it.

§. 15. Among other Duties incumbent on the *Register*, and expressed in the Statutes of the *Order*, this is one: That the Register's *Office is to set down, and record for a Memorial, the Elections (or Scrutinies,) and Names of the Knights Elected*: But in succeeding Times a Scruple arose, if this was not needless, when the *Scrutiny* should be taken, yet no *Election* made; to clear up which doubt, in a Chapter held in 5 *Elizabeth*, on St. *George*'s-*Day*, it's recorded as the Sovereign's Will and Pleasure, that thenceforward it should be Enacted, and received as the Sanction of a *Law*, within this Order; *That if any Nominations were taken from the Knights-Companions, the same should be entered into the Annals, though there were no Election made of any Person into the Order at that Time*: Which we presume was so Decreed, out of great deference to those Princes and noble Personages, who, in descending Times, should, by the glory of their Exploits, appear but worthy of a *bare Nomination* into so resplendent and illustrious an Order. And in pursuance of this *Decree*, there is frequent mention

made of the delivery of the *Scrutiny* into the Hands of the Register, in order to be Recorded.

The Blue Book says, *Anno* 22 *Elizabeth*; *That the Chancellor himself* delivered the *Knights-Companions Votes to the Register, to be committed to Writing, for a perpetual Memorial; and accordingly the Register, as his Duty obliged him, transcribed them, and put them in their proper Place, with all Care and Fidelity*. *Anno* 34 of the same Queen, 'tis said, *the Votes were delivered to the Register, who took care to Record them, according to usual Order*. Yet maugre this Law, the Entry of Scrutinies hath been sometimes omitted, either by the *Register*'s forgetfulness of the Decree, or some accidental Miscarriages. In some Places of the Annals, in the room of *Scrutinies*, we find Excuses entered, as it's said, *Anno* 28 *Elizabeth*; that the *Prelate*, immediately after *Vespers*, presented the Scrutiny to the Sovereign; but because there was no Election made of any new *Knights*, in regard of hurry, or weighty and pressing Affairs, it was laid aside, and *through Neglect lost*, or at least came not into the *Register*'s Hands, to be inserted in its proper Place. And when the Dean of *Windsor* collected the Scrutiny at *Vespers*, *Anno* 18 *Elizabeth*, it's said, *No Election was made, nor any thing else done*: The like Excuse is made, *Anno* 5 *Charles* I. but the Fault is thrown upon the Chancellor; for though the Scrutiny had been taken by him, during the *Vespers of the Feast-Day, yet would he not suffer it to be entered*. In some Places we find, *Anno* 31 *Elizabeth*, the *Votes* being presented, *they were left with her*. And *Anno* 11 *Charles* I. the Scrutiny of *Algernoon* Earl of *Northumberland* never came to the Register's Hands.

But the Law yet remains in force, that all *Nominations* and *Votes* of the *Knights-Companions* ought to be enter'd among the *Annals*, whether

Election be made or not, unless it shall please the *Sovereign*, upon some Emergency, to forbid it: As appears but by one Example of such a Prohibition, *viz. Anno* 40 *Eliz.* where, by the Queen's special Command, the *Scrutiny then taken was not recorded among the Acts of this most Noble Order*. But then it is declared, That *the Register took care to set down all the Passages as they happened, the Names only excepted*. And why the *Scrutiny* is not inserted in the *Registry*, *An.* 44 of *Eliz.* gives this Account: That upon assembling the *Knights-Companions*, it seemed good to the Sovereign, for several urgent Reasons, best known to her self, to give Commandment, That for that time, *they would wholly forbear all Scrutiny of Votes, and Nominations of Persons*; except which, there was nothing wanting to heighten the Solemnity of that Assembly: But this in the *Annals* is said to be *præter morem*, contrary to the usual Custom.

§ 16. *Anno* 27 of *Eliz.* there is a remarkable Occurrence, not to be passed over; for the Earls of *Rutland* and *Derby*, the morrow after St. *George*'s Day, were desirous to have seen the *Scrutiny*, which was committed into the Custody of the Dean of *Windsor*, to be registred, in pursuance of the before-mentioned Decree, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* but he returned a modest denial, and said, *It ought not to be seen before it was register'd*. The Earls, not satisfied with this Answer, requested the Opinions of the *Knights-Companions*, present at the Feast, on this Affair; who, upon mature Deliberation, adjudged the Point against them; and since it has been a standing Rule, that no Knight-Companion ought to see whom the other hath named.

§ 17. It hath chanced, that tho' the *Nominations* for *Election* have been received, presented and perused, yet the Sovereign hath thought expedient to defer it, upon several Considerations, and principally where an intent was to keep an open Stall; but we must understand this of such *Scrutinies* as are taken of Course, at the *Vespers* on the Feast-day.

And the most memorable Example of this Kind, is that of the Emperor *Sigismond*, who expired in the 16th Year of K. *Henry* VI. whose Stall was reserved Twenty One Years, and then determined, that Prince *Edward*, the Sovereign's only Son, should fill it up, being at that time about Six Years of Age. This is the first Emperor, whose Election we find register'd in the *Annals*, being about the 7th of *May*, in the 4th Year of *Henry* V. styled *Sigismundus Imperator Almanicus*.

And keeping a vacant Stall was sometimes given as a Reason by the Sovereign for his deferring an Election, as is plain from *An.* 13. *Car.* I. when the Scrutiny taken the Day before was read over in the Chapter-House, the Sovereign declared, *That he would receive no Man into the Order before his Son* Charles. Whereupon all the Knights-Companions gave their Opinions, *That this Resolution was rather the effect of Justice, than Fatherly Indulgence; since they all acknowledged him, to be more a Prince by Merit, and towardliness of his Youth, than by the Fortune of his Birth*. At which the Sovereign expressed his Satisfaction no otherwise than by Silence.

And in like manner, *Anno* 15 *Charles* I. when the Chancellor of the Order gave up the Scrutiny to the Sovereign, he declared——*That he had a purpose to have Chosen Prince* Rupert, *his Nephew, a Knight of the Order; but being then a Prisoner with the Emperor, he would not Elect any at that Time*; whereupon, a

vacancy of a *Stall* was reserved. It has sometimes been the Sovereign's Pleasure to defer Elections, without expressing the Cause, as in the 13 of *Elizabeth*; though she perused the Scrutiny in Chapter, yet the *Blue Book* informs us; That the *said Sovereign made no Election, though two Stalls were vacant*. Thus was it in the 2, 3, 11, and 12, of K. *James* I. where no other mention is made than this; *none were admitted into the Order this Year*.

Sometimes we find these *Prorogations of Elections* recorded, as solely done by the Will of the *Sovereign*; and at other Times by the *Sovereign*, and the approbation of the *Knights-Companions*; to the first of these we find a Memorial, in the 22 of *Elizabeth*, on the 24 of *April*; that the *Knights-Companions* had a Message sent to their Chapter, held before Morning-Prayer; *That it was the Pleasure of the Sovereign to prorogue the Election to the following Year*. And so it was, in the 10th of *Charles* I. though the Nomination was taken by the Chancellor, and presented to the Sovereign in Chapter, *the Sovereign did not think fit to make any Election at all*. And for a Testimony of the second, we meet with this Instance, in the 27th of *Elizabeth*; *that with the concurrent Approbation and Assent of all the Knights-Companions then assisting, the Sovereign thought fit to put off the Election to another Time*. As to the seeming difference of the *Sovereign's absolute Authority*, and yet the *Knights-Companions Approbation*, we have cleared up that Point in the *Act of Election*; for though it is *his* unquestionable Authority and Prerogative, to Prorogue *Elections ad libitum*, yet out of Respect, and Honour to the *Knights-Companions*, their Approbation hath been sometimes exprest.

§ 18. When any Knight-Companion hath received a Summons, to appear at a Chapter of Election, and doth wilfully refuse, or withdraw himself, he was to be mulct a Mark for his Disobedience, which King *Henry* VIII's Statutes inlarged to twenty Shillings, payable to the Dean and College of *Windsor*, to pray for defunct Souls. And at his next appearance in Chapter, he was to remain kneeling in the midst of them, before the Sovereign, or Deputy, till he was restor'd to their Favour: Yet upon a just Cause signified to the *Sovereign* some time before, under the Seal of his Arms, he was excused, if it was found just and feasible; if not, it was rejected, and he remained Punishable.

And for greater Caution, this Clause was formerly inserted, in the *Letters of Summons*; where, after the Time and Place for Election was certified, and command given to observe both, the Letter concludes thus, *et se estre ny poues nous Signifies soubz, &c.* and if it cannot be accomplished, that is, if the Knight-Companion could not meet at the time assigned, to perform what the Statutes oblige, he should then *signify to the Sovereign, under his Seal, the cause of his Impediment; so that he might perceive by his Excuse*, whether it was worthy of Acceptance, or he in Fault or not.

CAP. X.

The Investiture of a Knight-Subject *with the* Garter and George.

IF the Knight chance to be at *Windsor*, that is newly Elected, or wheresoever the Chapter is held, after the Sovereign hath signified his Pleasure in the Election of the Person, the *Garter* is immediately dispatched out of the Chapter, to give him the Intelligence; as is apparent upon the Choice of the Lord *Howard*, and Sir *Henry Marney*, *Anno* 2 *Henry* VIII. who was dispatched from the Chapter, to conduct them to the *Sovereign's* Presence, to be invested with the principal Ensigns of the Order, the *Garter* and *George*.

And as *Garter* hath been accustomed to signify in Person the *Election* of a *Knight*, in like manner an Election is *signified*, by the Letters of the *Sovereign*, when he is pleased (for the greater Honour of the Person) to weave by verbal Notice: In such Cases, it's the *Chancellor's* Office to draw up the *Letters*, and they are to pass, both under the *Sovereign's Sign Manual*, and Signet of the Order. Such a particular mark of Distinction and Honour was conferr'd on our Sovereign of *Blessed Memory*, *King Charles* II. Sir *John Burrough Garter*, carrying the Letter.

Charles Rex,

"Our most dear and entirely beloved Son, having, to our great Comfort, seen and considered the ripeness of your Youth, and conceived joyful and pregnant Hopes of your manly Virtue, in which we are assured you will increase, to your own Honour, both in Prowess, Wisdom, Justice, and all Princely Endowments; and that the Emulation of Chevalry will, in your tender Years, provoke and encourage you, to pursue the Glory of Heroick Actions, befitting your Royal Birth, and our Care and Education. We with the Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter, assembled in Chapter, holden this present Day, at our Castle of *Windsor*; have Elected and Chosen you one of the Companions of our Order. In Signification whereof, we have sent unto you, by our Trusty and Well-Beloved Servant, Sir *John Burrough* Knight-Garter, and our principal King of Arms, these our *Royal Letters*, requiring you to make your speedy repair unto us, to receive the Ensigns of our most Noble Order, and to be ready for your Installation, upon the 21st Day of this present Month. Given under the Signet of our Order, at our Castle of *Windsor*, the 20th of *May*, in the 14th Year of our Reign, 1638."

To our dearly beloved Son Prince Charles.

This is the only Instance we have met with, where a Letter was sent to an Elect Knight, and he at the same time present at Court; but when an Election is confirmed, and the Person remote from the Court, then the general Tenure of the Letter is, both to signify his Election, and Summon him to his Investure, with the Garter and George, as was performed by the Earl of *Derby,* and Sir *Edward*

Strafford, to King *Henry* of *France*.

But where the Sovereign is pleased to mention particular Services, to recommend the Election of a Knight, the Preamble of the Letter is worded accordingly; and as this is a Case not very frequent, it will not be amiss to exemplify it in the Choice of Sir *John Falstoff*, where the Letter runs thus—*We considering the virtuous Fidelity you have shown, and the honourable Exploits you have done, in the Service of our thrice renowned Father, and that in our Service also, you (as many others) have given Proof of that Honour, and these Deserts, wherewith God hath endowed you, always suffering, as is the part of a good Subject, the Pains and Toils of War, for the vindicating and maintaining of our just Right, Claim, and Title, have Chosen you one of our Companions of our Order.*

When the Letter barely signifies Election, that is, when the Sovereign does not design a present investure with the Garter and George, but defers it till he takes Possession of his Stall, the Day of his Installation is inferred towards the end of the Letter; and upon his appearance at *Windsor*, so soon as he appears in the Chapter-House, the Garter is first buckled about his left Leg, then follows his Investure with the rest of the Ornaments of the Order, and lastly his Installation. And this was the Case of *Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*, *Anno* 29 *Henry* VIII. whose Investure of the Garter was deferr'd till his appearance at *Windsor*, and then the whole Ceremony was performed at once.

§ 2. If the elect Knight be at hand, where the Chapter is convened, and the Garter hath been sent to make known to him the Honour, and Conduct him into the *Chapter-House*, to receive the Garter and

George, before they break up, Intimation being given of his approach, the Sovereign sends out two of the Knights-Companions to meet him, who, after a mutual Salute, Conduct him between them, to the Presence of the Sovereign, Garter going before them. Thus was *Ubrick* Duke of *Holstein*, *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. introduced into the Chapter, between Prince *Henry*, and the Earl of *Dorset*, and *Christian* Duke of *Brunswick Anno* 22 *Jac.* I. between *William* Earl of *Pembrook* and *Philip* Earl of *Montgomery*, to receive the Garter and George. The 6th of *November*, *Anno* 14 *Charles* II. *Christian* Prince of *Denmark* being elected at a Chapter held at *White-Hall*, and then absent, the Garter King was dispatched next Day by the Sovereign, to inform him, and to desire his Presence the next Day, that he might receive his Investure; which accordingly was done, being conducted between the Earls of *Lindsey* and *Manchester* into the Chapter, Garter preceding them, and after three Obeysances, they brought him up to the Sovereign. Among Knights-Subjects, we find the Lord *Burley*, and the Lord *Grey*, were conducted to the Sovereign by the Lord *Clynton*, and the Earl of *Bedford*, *Anno* 14 *Elizabeth*, *cum multis aliis*. *Anno* 4 *Jac.* I. *Robert* Earl of *Salisbury* proceeded up to the Sovereign's Throne, between the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Dorset*. In the Reign of King *Charles* I. the Earl of *Northampton* was conducted to receive the Garter in the *Chapter-House* at *Windsor*, between the Earls of *Pembrook* and *Montgomery*. And when King *Charles* II. appeared, upon his Letter of Summons, at the Chapter held in the withdrawing Chamber in *Windsor Castle*, to receive his Investure, two of the Senior Knights, *viz.* *Philip* Earl of *Pembrook* and *Montgomery*, and *Thomas* Earl of *Arundel* and *Surry*, were sent out to Conduct him in, who brought him between them unto the

Sovereign, the Gentleman Usher of the Black Rod going before.

The Duke of *Monmouth* being elected at a Chapter held in the withdrawing Room at *White-Hall*, the 28th of *March*, *Anno* 15 *Charles* II. Garter was immediately sent to him in the Sovereign's Bed-Chamber, who being met at the Door by the Earls of *Lindsey* and *Manchester*, both the Garter and the Black Rod passed to the lower End of the Room before the Duke and the two Knights-Companions, whence they proceeded up to the Sovereign with three Reverences. At the Election of *James* Duke of *Cambridge*, in the same Room at *White-Hall*, (*December* 3. *Anno* 18 *Charles* II.) Garter was also sent forth into the Bed-Chamber, to acquaint him that the Earl of *Manchester*, and the Duke of *Monmouth*, were appointed by the Sovereign and Chapter to bring him in thither; that done, the aforesaid Knights-Companions arose and went to the Duke, whom meeting at the Bed-Chamber Door, they took their compass about the rest of the Knights-Companions, (then standing) and brought him between them, from the lower End of the Room, close before the Sovereign, the Garter and Black Rod proceeding.

§ 3. The Knight elect being thus introduced to the Sovereign, bows with all Reverence, and formerly a short gratulatory Speech was the vogue, that set forth his acknowledgment of his Sovereign's Royal Favour, and the grateful Respect he bore to the Knights-Companions for his Election.

Anno 28. *Hen.* VIII. we find Sir *Nicholas Crew*, after he had been conducted into the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, to receive his Investiture, thus to address himself: giving *infinite Thanks both to the Sovereign*

and whole Society, for that they had vouchsafed to receive him into the Honour of this most illustrious Order, being a Person in his own Esteem most unworthy thereof: In the next Place professed, *That whereas he was preferred in this Choice before many others, much more deserving than himself, it was not to be attributed to his Merits, or any Thing by him performed, but meerly to the Sovereign's Bounty, and the Favour of the Knights-Companions towards him.*

The conferring of so singular an Honour, being thus thankfully own'd, the Ceremony of Investiture begins; the *Garter* first takes place, as the most ancient and chiefest *Ensign*, and then the *George*; but the compleat Investiture is not performed until the Elect Knights are installed at *Windsor*. Formerly the manner of robing of them was performed on this wise: First, the Elect Knight set his Foot upon a Stool, and then one of the Knights-Companions, by the Sovereign's appointment, as his Substitute, buckled the enobled Garter about his left Leg, as may be seen in the *Antiquities of* Warwickshire, in an old Draught of the Combats of Sir *John Astley*, who was inrolled in this illustrious Body, and is so represented. But of later Date, the Elect Knight kneeled on his right Knee, whilst this Ceremony was performed, in which space the Words of *Admonition* and *Signification*, at this part of the Investiture, were read. The *Admonition*, upon the buckling of the Garter, in the *English* Statutes of K. *Hen.* VIII. is set down on this manner:

SIR,

The loving Brethren of the Order of the Garter, have received you their Brother and Fellow; and in Token of this, they give and present you this present Garter, which

God grant that you receive and wear from henceforth to his Praise and Glory, and to the Exaltation and Honour of the said Noble Order, and your self.

Afterwards it was decreed, at a Chapter held at *Windsor*, the 5th of *August*, *Anno* 1 & 2 *Phil.* and *Mary*, to this effect: 'That not only the same Advertisements, which were wont to be given to Strangers at their Investitures, should be likewise given to Knights-Subjects, that for the future should be elected and install'd; and with a farther Proviso, 'That among the Knights-Companions there should not be any difference either in Ceremony or Habit.'

Hereupon the aforesaid Tenure ceased to be used upon the fixing of the Garter, and one Form remained at the Investiture of Strangers and Knights-Subjects, which is pronounced by the Chancellor, if the Sovereign or his Lieutenant be present, otherwise by the Register.

"To the Laud and Honour of Almighty God, his immaculate Mother, and St. *George* the holy Martyr, tye or gird your Leg with this noble Garter, wearing it to the increase of your Honour, and in Token and Remembrance of this most noble Order; remembring that thereby you being admonished and encouraged, in all just Battels and Wars, which only you shall take in Hand, both strongly to fight, valiantly to stand, and honourably to have Victory."

But against the Investiture of K. *Charles* II. the Words of the Signification being better weighed and considered, were thus methodized:

"To the Honour of God Omnipotent, and in Memorial of the blessed Martyr St. *George*, tye about thy Leg, for thy Renown, this noble Garter; wear it as the Symbol of the most illustrious Order, never to be forgotten or laid aside; that thereby thou may'st be admonished to be couragious; and having undertaken a just War, into which only thou shalt be engaged, thou may'st stand Firm, valiantly Fight, and successfully Conquer."

The Princely Garter being thus buckled on, and the Words of the Signification pronounced, the Elect Knight is brought before the Sovereign, who puts about his Neck the *George*, pendant at a Sky-colour'd Ribband, at which part of the Ceremony, the Admonition used at the adorning of an installed Knight with the Collar of the Order, (only changing the Word Collar for Ribband) is pronounced; but were alter'd upon the Occasion assign'd before.

"Wear this Ribband about thy Neck, adorn'd with the Image of the blessed Martyr, and Soldier of Christ, St. *George*; by whose Imitation provok'd, thou may'st so overpass both prosperous and adverse Adventures, that having stoutly vanquished thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou may'st not only receive the Praise of this transient Combat, but be crown'd with the Palm of eternal Victory."

Greater Respect is conferr'd upon foreign Princes, who receive their Election here, than abroad; because the Sovereign most usually performs the Investiture himself; as was solemniz'd upon *Philip*, King of *Castile*, when the Sovereign took the Garter

from the King at Arms, and fixed it on his Leg, and Prince *Henry* fasten'd the Buckle.

Queen *Elizabeth* her self buckled the Garter about the Leg of *John Casimier*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and hung about his Neck a Gold Chain with the *George* at it. And the like Honour did King *James* I. confer upon the Duke of *Holstein*, in the 3d Year of his Reign.

Sometimes it happens, tho' very rarely, for the Sovereign, out of his special Grace and Favour, to condescend to Honour a Knight-Subject this way; tho', when Queen *Elizabeth* was pleased to adorn the Lord *Burleigh* with the Garter, the *Annals* record it to be done as it were *by the by*. The same Favours she bestow'd, tho' at different times, upon *Henry*, Earl of *Sussex*, and the Earl of *Shrewsbury*. King *James* I. invested *Henry*, Earl of *Northampton*, with the principal Ensigns of the Order, as a Person worthy of so great an Honour: And the *Blessed Martyr* placed both the *Garter* and the *George*, with his own Hands, upon King *Charles* II.

Sometimes the Sovereign hath but performed part of the Investiture, and laid his Commands on the senior Knight to do the rest. Thus, *Anno* 13 *Henry* VIII. the Sovereign reached out the Garter to the Marquis of *Dorset*, and commanded him to buckle it about the Leg of the Earl of *Devonshire*; which, whilst he was about, the Duke of *Norfolk* gave him his Assistance, and the Sovereign put on the Gold Chain. At the Investiture of *Christian*, Duke of *Brunswick*, *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I. the Sovereign put about his Neck the Blue Ribband, whereat hung the Effigies of St. *George*; and the Earls, who introduc'd him to the Sovereign's Presence, buckled on the Garter. Thus did the Sovereign to *William*, Earl of *Northampton*, *Anno* 4 *Car.* I. and the Earl of *Pembroke* fasten'd the

Garter about his left Leg.

This Order of Investiture began to be inverted *Anno* 22 *Jac.* I. the *George* and the Ribband being first put on, and the Garter last. And so was it performed when the Prince of *Denmark*, Dukes of *Monmouth*, *Cambridge*, and *Albemarle*, received their Investiture in the Reign of King *Charles* II. The Garter, as it was the first, so is the principal and most worthy Ensign of the Order; and, in the Practice of all former Times, had always the Preference given to it. The Investiture with these two Ensigns, hath generally been performed by the two senior Knights, at the Command of the Sovereign; but always in his Presence, the Chapter sitting; but if absent, then by his Lieutenant. For, in 31 *Eliz.* the Lord *Buckhurst* being elected at *Whitehall*, and coming to Court wholly ignorant of the Affair, and after the Sovereign was risen, (yet leaving the Chapter sitting) her Lieutenant invested him both with the *Garter* and *George*. After the Solemnity is compleated, the elect Knight renders most humble Thanks to the Sovereign, and with due Respects salutes the Knights-Companions, who re-salute the elect Knight, and joyfully receive him into their Society. If two or more elect Knights receive this Investiture at one time, as soon as the Senior is invested, and his humble Thanks presented, he moves downwards towards the Chapter-House Door, and there stands till the next Junior Knight is invested; and if there be more, so on until the Chapter break up.

§ 4. Where a Knight-Subject, at the time of his Election, is far distant from Court, or beyond Sea, and the Sovereign determines to send him the Two principal Ensigns of the Order, the Charge of this

Employ does of right belong to the *Garter*. For the Proof of which there are divers Precedents.

The Letters heretofore sent from the Sovereign, along with the Ensigns of the Order, to the elect Knights, have, for the most part, been drawn after the Form of those that certify the Election, and differs only in the last Clause, which requires the elect Knight to repair to the Sovereign: The difference lay not in the Body, but in the Direction of the Letter, which was always worded according to the Quality of the Person to whom it was sent. As to a Knight-Batchelor, the Direction was, *To our trusty and well-beloved*; and to an Earl, *Right trusty, and right well-beloved Cousin*; to a Duke, *Right trusty, and right entirely beloved Cousin*, &c.

The Forms of those Letters, sent upon like Occasions to Knights-Subjects, when King *Charles* II. was beyond Sea, were penn'd after another Model, and contained other additional particular Clauses; as, 1. Power to wear the *Star* of Silver about St. *George*'s Cross; 2. The Great Collar of the Order; and, 3. To style themselves *Knights, and Companions of the Order of the Garter*, in as ample a Manner, as if they had been installed at *Windsor*; with an Assurance of receiving the whole Habit there, when the Sovereign was restored to the Possession thereof.

And it appears from some of these Letters, that by reason Sir *Edward Walker*, Garter, was otherwise employ'd in the Service of the Sovereign, when they were transmitted, the Sovereign pitch'd upon other Persons, to carry both the Letters and Ensigns of the Order, and yet continued the Garter in the Rights of his Office. However, Sir *Edward* esteeming this devolving his Employment on others, as an Invasion on the Rights of his Office; and having a just regard for the Interest of his Successors, no less than his

own, humbly petitioned King *Charles* II. for Redress, and obtained his gracious Reference thereupon, to several *Knights* of the Order, to examine the Matter, and to give in their Report, what they found, and what they thought proper to be effected therein; and upon whose Report the Sovereign did him full Right by his gracious *Declaration*. For the Dukes of *Buckingham* and *Hamilton*, and the Marquis of *Newcastle*, to whom this Affair was referr'd, gave in their Report to the *King* at *Breda*, *May* 27. 1650.

We, George, *Duke of* Buckingham, William, *Duke of* Hamilton, *and* William, *Marquis of* Newcastle, *Knights of the most noble Order of the Garter, having read and consider'd the within written Petition, do find the Allegations therein mentioned to agree with the Statutes and ancient Practices of the said Order; and that Garter King of Arms, and his Deputies, ought to bear all Letters-Patents appertaining to the Brethren of the said Order, and all Elections to the Knights elect. And we do therefore make this Report to your Majesty, to the end you may be pleased to mantain the Petitioner in his just Rights; and that no Example lately made may be brought in Precedent against him, or his Successors in the said Office.*

G. Buckingham.
Hamilton.
W. Newcastle.

It was formerly the Practice, to send the Book of Statutes, under the common Seal of the Order, together with the Letters signifying an Election, and the Ensigns of the Order, no less to a Knight Subject than to a Stranger, that he might peruse and advise

thereupon, whether he would accept of the Election, or not; for so it appears, *Anno* 4 *Hen.* VI. by the Letters sent to Sir *John Falstoff*.

Within a few Days after Prince *Rupert* was elected into this Order, (being then in *Holland*) a Commission of Legation was prepared to be sent thither, with the *Garter* and *George*, by Sir *John Burrough*, Kt. to perform the Investiture with them; but Sir *John* dying, prevented the Ceremony. Some time after the Prince had been in *England*, the then Sovereign thought fit to lay his Commands on Sir *James Palmer*, Chancellor of the Order, to attend his Highness, to declare the Reason why the said Commission was not sent and executed, as was designed, as well as to deliver him the Commission it self; to the intent (being prevented of receiving his Installation at *Windsor*, because that Castle continued in the Possession of the Rebels) it might remain with him as a Memorial of his Sovereign's Princely Favour, and Respect to his Quality and Merits, and for a farther Evidence of his being admitted into this most Noble Order, since there was no other Memorial thereof, but the Minutes of his Election, and this Commission. And accordingly on *Monday*, the 14th of *January*, 1644. the Chancellor, accompanied with Dr. *Christopher Wren*, Register, and Sir *Edward Walker*, newly made Garter, attended the Prince at his Lodgings in *Oxford*; who, having notice of their Design, receiv'd them with all obliging Civility; and the Chancellor, in an eloquent Speech, made known to his Highness his Sovereign's Commands, and the Intent of his coming; which was no sooner finished, but Sir *James Palmer* presented his Petition to the Prince, who gave his Majesty many humble Thanks for this gracious Message; and acknowledged his Majesty's Favours beyond his

Desert; but promised he would study to be more worthy by his Actions, than in return of Words; with many Thanks to the Chancellor, and other Officers of the Order, for their Trouble: Whereupon they took their Leave, and the Chancellor went immediately to his Majesty, and gave him a Narrative of what they had done.

§ V. It was an ancient Custom, and part of the Ceremony belonging to the Investiture with the Garter, to give him an Oath, whether he was a Stranger or a Subject-Knight, which we find styled, *The Oath in such Cases accustomed to be taken*; and which was to this effect; *That the Knight should well and faithfully keep and observe, so far as God should enable him, all that was contained in the Statutes of the Order*: But this of late hath been disused, and not imposed, unless upon foreign Princes.

It is observable, that *Anno* 4 *Hen.* VI. a particular Commission was issued, to the Earls of *Warwick*, *Salisbury*, and *Suffolk*, with Power, to any Two, or One of them, to receive this Oath from Sir *John Falstoff*, upon his Investiture; which was besides the Oath his Proctor was afterwards to take at the Installation, which Sir *John* empowered him to do on his behalf; which was, *Such Oath as should be required at the time of Installation*.

Altho' we have fully treated of the Ceremony and Manner of investing a Knight elect, with the *Garter* and *George*, we shall subjoin Two or Three considerable Instances, as most proper to this Place.

When *Philip*, Prince of *Spain*, *Anno* 1 *Mariæ*, had these Ensigns of the Order sent him, the Sovereign joyn'd Garter King of Arms, with the Earl of *Arundel*, to perform the Investiture; who, upon notice of his

arrival on the Coast of *England*, set forward on their Journey to *Southampton*; where, on *Friday* the 20th of *July*, they took Water, and meeting the Prince before he landed, entered his Barge, and gave him notice of his Election in a short Speech; which being ended, *Garter* having the Garter in his Hand, kissed it, and so presented it to the Earl, who forthwith fasten'd it about the Prince's Leg; and after *Garter* had presented the Earl with the *George*, hanging at a Chain of Gold, he put it likewise about the Prince's Neck. The Ceremony of Investiture being thus performed, the Prince came on shore at *Southampton*; and on the uppermost Stair were ready attending his landing, the Marquis of *Winchester*, Lord High Treasurer of *England*, with divers other Lords: The Prince gave the Lord *Williams* his White Staff, and made him Lord Chamberlain of his Houshould; and Sir *Anthony Brown*, Master of his Horse, presented him, from the Queen, a Horse with a Foot-cloth of Crimson Velvet, richly embroider'd with Gold and Pearls, having the Bridle and all other Furniture suitable, whereon he rode to the Cathedral, and after Prayers to the Lodging prepared for him.

Concerning the *Garter*'s Investiture of the Earl of *Warwick*, at *Newhaven* in *France*, the first of *May*, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* is as follows: The *Garter* repairing first to the Earl's Lodgings, put on his Mantle in the next Chamber to the Earl's, and proceeded into the Earl's Chamber; where, having made Three Reverences, he buckled the Garter about his left Leg, and after put on the *George* and the Ribband about his Neck; reading to the Earl the Words of the Signification, appointed to be pronounced at the Investiture; which being concluded, *Garter* retir'd into the Room where he had put on his Mantle, and there disrobed himself, and so the Ceremony ended.

It was the Custom about these Times, for the Nobility, Allies, or Friends, to the elect Knight, to send him by the *Garter*, several *Garters* and *Georges*, as Marks of Congratulation for the Honour he was to receive, which the *Garter* delivered to him when the Investiture was finished, and he had put off his Robe, with the particular Services and Respects of those Friends who had bestow'd them. For thus was it with the Earl of *Warwick*, at *Newhaven*, and the Lord *Scroop* at *Carlisle*, *Anno* 26 *Eliz.* At the *Garter*'s return to Court, he is obliged to deliver an Account to the Sovereign, how he hath discharged his Employment; and by special Directions from the elect Knight, who presents the highest Respects he can express, as well to the Sovereign as to the rest of the Knights-Companions, for honouring him with a Reception into so illustrious a Body.

We shall close this Section with a brief Account of the Investiture of the Duke of *Gloucester*, on *Easter-day* in the Morning, being the 14th of *April*, 1653. In reference to which Ceremony there was provided:

1. A *Garter* with the Motto, to be tyed about his left Leg.
2. A *George* in a Ribband, to be put about his Neck.
3. An embroider'd *Cross* of St. *George*, with a *Garter* and *Star*, to be sew'd on the left Shoulder of the Duke's Cloak.
4. A Velvet Cushion, whereon the *Ensigns* and *Ornaments* of the Order were to be laid.

For the Honour of the Order, and his said Highness, Sir *Edward Walker*, Garter, humbly proposed, That he might be assisted by Two or Four

Knights in performing his Duty.

That his Highness the Duke might receive the Ensigns of the Order, in the Presence-Chamber of the Princess Royal, or in his own, accompanied with the Queen of *Bohemia*, her Royal Highness, and some other Persons of Honour and Quality.

That his Highness having placed himself under the State, *Garter* should take the Cushion upon his Arms, on which were to be laid all the particular Ornaments just now mentioned; being assisted with the Knights, and a Passage left for him to make his Three Obeysances, he should proceed up towards the Duke, and lay the Cushion with the Ornaments upon a Stool set near his Highness for that purpose.

That he should signifie to his Higness, in few Words, the Cause of his coming, and then deliver into his Hands the Sovereign's Letter.

That his Highness having receiv'd it, should break it open, and deliver it back to the *Garter* to be read; which he having done, should return it to his Highness.

That, after this, he should proceed to the Investiture of his Highness with the Ensigns of the Order.

Which being done, he briefly represented unto his Highness, in a Speech, somewhat of the Quality and Splendor of the Order.

And, lastly, to kiss his Highness Hand, and so depart. And according to those Proposals, and in the same Order, were all Things performed.

§ 6. The Sovereign of this most Noble Order defrays the Charges of the *Garter*, whensoever, and as often as he is dispatch'd to any elect Knight-

Subject, either with Letters to signifie his Election, or to invest him with the *Garter* and *George*; and this is commonly proportioned according to the length or the shortness of the Journey. The Allowance for the Journey which Sir *Gilbert Dithick*, Garter, made into the Counties of *Lincoln* and *Cumberland*, first to the Earl of *Rutland*, and then to the Lord *Scroop*, when Queen *Elizabeth* was Sovereign, appears to have been 20 *l.*

Besides the Sovereign's Allowance to the *Garter*, he receives honourable Gratuities and Rewards from the elect Knight himself, after he has performed the Investiture; and these have usually been proportioned, according to the estimate of the Honour he receives, and the particular affection he has for the Garter, and the service done by him. Among whom, *Anno* 17 *Henry* VIII. we find the Earl of *Arundel* bestow'd on *Thomas Wriothesley*, Garter, ten Pounds in Angelots, being then at his Mannor of *Dawnley*; and *Ralph* Earl of *Westmoreland*, elected at the same Time with the aforesaid Earl, being at *Mile-end*, gave to him six Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence. The Earl of *Northumberland*, in the 23 of *Henry* VIII. bestow'd on the Garter, for the verbal certifying him of his Election, four Pounds, though he went no farther than the Chapter-House Door.

Lastly, *Anno* 26 *Elizabeth*, the Earl of *Rutland* honourably received the Garter at *Newark*, and the Lord *Scroop* gave him thirty Pounds in Gold, a Velvet Cloak, and a *Gallaway Nag*, and to *William Dethick*, *York Herald*, who accompanied Garter to *Carlisle*, ten Pounds.

But since these Times, the Knights elect have enlarged their gratuities to Garter, for his Service upon this Occasion.

CAP. XI.

Of Preparations for the Personal Installation of a Knight.

§ 1.

THE Inauguration of a Knight of this most Noble Order, consists in a Conjunction of many Ceremonies, and contains the most solemn part of those, which compleateth all the rest; and till this great Solemnity be regularly and duly performed, the Person elected hath not the Honour to be enrolled among the Number of Founders, but barely passes for an elect Knight, and no other: For the Statute expresly says, That in Case a Knight elect die before his Installation, He shall not be named one of the Founders; and the reason assigned for it is, because he hath not had the full Possession of his Estate, and in this Point do the other Bodies of the Statutes agree. But when the Ceremonies of Installation are compleatly finished, without all doubt the Knight is amply vested, in Possession of all Honours and Privileges appertaining to the Founder of this most Noble Order. But to spur up each elect Knight, who is either a Subject to his Sovereign, or resides within the Realm, (and consequently is better able to provide for Installment, than one remaining in Foreign Parts,) for the completion of his Honour, or

else to wave the Act of Election, he has the space of one Year allowed him by the Statutes for Installation, otherwise his Election is ordained to be absolutely null and void: Nor can there be any Motive sufficient to retard the Sovereign from proceeding to a new Election, unless the elect Knight send or produce an Extenuation or Excuse for such his delay, fit to be excepted by the Sovereign or his Deputy, and the whole of that resplendent Body, or that the Sovereign himself think fit to defer the Ceremony of Installation for some time longer. For which reason, when certain Articles, tending to the Honour of the Order, had been prepared by the Sovereign's Lieutenant and ten Knights-Companions, in a Chapter held the 24th of *April*, *Anno* 21 *Jacobus* I. ratified by the Sovereign, and ordered to be observed; one of them was for accelerating the Installation, after the Knight had been elected, yet qualified with this Exception: *Unless for some special Cause the Sovereign shou'd think fit to defer the same until the Eve or Day of St.* George *next following, the Time of Election*.

§ 2. The Feast of Installation hath not been hitherto assigned to any certain Period of Time, but has always depended upon the Will and Pleasure of the Sovereign, to affix a convenient Day, which hath been granted upon the request of the Knights elect, or some other of the Knights-Companions, whose Favour and Esteem with the Sovereign was best able to prevail; such a one do we find *Anno* 35 *Elizabeth*; who, on the behalf of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, obtained the 19th of *June* the said Year, to be appointed for the Installation. It sometimes happens, that though the Day of Installation be prefixed, yet something extraordinary intervening, it hath been prorogued to a farther and more

convenient Season for the Sovereign's Affairs. And the most remarkable Instance is set down, *Anno* 3 and 4 *Philip* and *Mary*, when the Earl of *Sussex*, the Lord *Grey*, and Sir *Robert Rochester*, Knights elect, had their Installation, together with the Feast of St. *George*, prorogued to the 10th of *May* in the Year aforesaid. But many urgent Affairs, relating both to the King and the Queen, fell out about that time; not only the Grand Feast, but the Solemnity of their Installation were prorogued to the 5th of *December*, and stood so by several Prorogations, to the 20th of *February* next ensuing; yet it was ordered that the Earl of *Sussex* shou'd be immediately installed, which was performed on the 8th of *January*, and the Lord *Grey* the 20th of *April* following; but Sir *Robert Rochester* never obtained that Honour.

Though the time of Installation be arbitrary and uncertain, yet hath the Place, from the first Institution of the Order, been appointed only to the Sovereign's Free Chapel of St. *George*, within whose Choice are erected the Sovereigns and Knights-Companions Stalls, and under its sacred Roof their Banners and Atchievements are affixed, as Monuments of their high Merit, and so great Honour. For though the Celebration of the Grand Feast of St. *George*, happened to be removed from *Windsor*, by a Decree of the 1 *Elizabeth*; yet the Feast of the Installation was excepted, and ordered to be Solemniz'd in that Place: For *Anno* 21 *Jac.* I. it was provided among the Orders, *That after an Election made of a Knight of the Order, his Installation shou'd be performed at* Windsor, *according to the ancient Customs and Statutes of the Order*. When the Sovereign hath been pleased to prefix a certain Day for this Solemnity of Installation, there are several things to be obtained, previous to it. (1.) A Commission to

admit and instal the elect Knight. (2.) Letters to each of the Commissioners, and the elect Knight, to repair to *Windsor*. (3.) Warrants for the Sovereign's Livery. (4.) A Bill or Warrant for the removal of Stalls and Atchievements, all signed by the Chancellor of the Order, with the Sign Manual of the Sovereign: And lastly, the Knights own Preparations; among which his Atchievements are to be ready to be hung up, as soon as he is installed.

§ 3. No elect Knight can be installed, unless by the Sovereign of the Order himself, or by his Commission drawn up in Writing, and passed under the Great-Seal of the Order, directed either to his Lieutenant or Knights-Commissioners. There is but one Instance to be found, where the Sovereign hath been pleased to Honour a Knight by installing of him himself; and that was *Philip* of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. yet it is feasible enough that *Sigismond* the Emperor, and some other Foreign Princes of Rank and Eminence, might be installed by other Sovereigns, though there's no Memorial left upon Record. *In reference to Installation by Commission, it was ordained by the Statutes of Institution; That in Case the Sovereign shou'd be absent out of the Kingdom, at the Time of Installation of any of the Knights, so as he could not personally perform those things his Office obliged him to, it shou'd be Lawful for him to Constitute, as his Deputy in this Affair, whomsoever of the Society he shou'd think fit; and he to have Power and Authority, in the Sovereign's Name, to Perform and Execute these Things, which it wou'd have been in his own part to have done, had he been Present.* By Virtue of this Article, the Sovereign's Deputy, or Lieutenant, performed the Ceremony before the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. which was usually done at the Feast of St. *George*; but in the

Commission given out for Installation, formerly the Lieutenant was first mentioned, and the Knights-Companions appointed for his Assistance at the said Feast, were joined with him in the Commission for Installation; but of late, the Commission hath passed to the Lieutenant alone. King *Henry* VIII. by his Statutes, enlarged the Power of his Deputy, and they run to two or more of the Knights-Companions, that shou'd Exercise the same by the Sovereign's Letters of Commission. And by the Privilege of this Article, whensoever after, the Sovereign's did Constitute an Installation, otherwise than at the Feast of St. *George*, they then delegated their Authority to such of the Knights-Companions as were judged most proper to perform this Ceremony. The Year after the enacting this Statute, there's a Commission recorded to be issued out to the Marquiss of *Dorset*, and the Earls of *Devonshire* and *Kent*, to Instal the Lords *Ferrers* of *Chartley*, the substance of which is in our Annals. The particular Powers these Commissions have granted to them, are to accept and admit the Knight into the Order, to receive the Oath, and to Instal him; And their general Power is, to effect and accomplish every Point which belongs to his due Admittance, and plenary Instalment.

§ 4. Besides, the Commission impowering the Sovereign's Lieutenant, or Knights-Commissioners, therein nominated to the Installation of an elect Knight, it hath been a matter frequent with the Sovereign, to Issue out Letters of Summons under his privy Signet, both to the Commissioners for Installation, and elect Knights, under the signet of the Order; those to the Commissioners are directed severally to each, nominated in the Commission; who are to give them notice of the Instalment, and to

require their repair to *Windsor*, against the Day assigned, that they may proceed to their Installation. Those directed to the elect Knights, pass likewise under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, and Signet of the Order; and if there be two or more Knights appointed to be Installed on the same Day, the like Letter is sent to each of them, the difference being only in the Direction.

Besides these Letters sent from the Sovereign, the Chancellor (if the Sovereign be absent,) in his circular Letter to the Knights-Companions, gives them an intimation of the designed Installation, upon the Feast of St. *George*. And if the Feast be held either by the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, he dispatcheth a Letter to the Prelate of the Order, intimating the Sovereign's Commands for his attendance at the Day appointed; and if it be performed by Commissioners, he issues his Letters to the three inferior Officers of the Order, purporting the same Command; the conveyance of which appertains to the Garter, and are left to his Care, and Trust, by the Constitutions relating to the Order, whose allowances and rewards upon these and such like Services, in their due Place, shall be considered.

§ 5. The third matter to be obtained by the Chancellor of the Order, is the Sovereign's Warrant, directed for the Master of the Great Wardrobe, for the Time being, to deliver so much Velvet for the Livery of the Order, as will make the Knight elect a Surcoat and Hood, and as much Sarcenet or Taffety as will serve to line them: Of such a Warrant there is an ancient Precedent in Latin, entered in the Black Book of the Order; where it runs, *Nos ideo volumus & præcipimus, ut hinc Tabellioni virgas Octodecem*

subrubri ostri de more tradas, cum tanto albo serico, quanto vestimentum inde conficiendum infulciri poterit, pro liverata (quam vocant) sua, &c. There is likewise inserted another Precedent in English of the like Nature, for the delivery of these Materials to Sir *John Wallop* Kt. elected *Anno* 38 *Henry* VIII. and in the same Form run all the Warrants of Queen *Mary* and Queen *Elizabeth*.

Over and above these, there is a Warrant and Scheme prepared for the Sovereign to Sign, wherein is described the Order of the Stalls of *Windsor*, as he wou'd have them stand at the ensuing Election; by the Virtue of which, the Garter is impowered to shift or remove the Plates and Atchievements of the present Knights-Companions, so that room may be made for the elect Knight, or Knights, and to fix the new Plates and Atchievements within, and over the Stalls, in such order as they are rank'd in the Scheme. As soon as the Sovereign's Pleasure is known concerning an Installation, Garter brings to the Chancellor of the Order, the Names of the present Knights-Companions, placed in the order they then fit in their Stalls, to the intent he may present them to the Sovereign; who, upon observing the series wherein they stand already, he may easier determine how to alter and place both them, and the new elect Knights. *Anno* 27 *Elizabeth*, the Office of the Garter being Vacant, this employ was put upon the Clarenceux, and the Sovereign's Warrant for removal and placing of Plates and Atchievements, was delivered to him, five Days before the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, the Lords *Cobham* and *Scroop*, who thereupon fixed them according to the direction given; upon what Ground this alteration and removal came to be made, and continues still in Vogue, though it was otherwise at

the Institution of the Order, wherein we must have recourse to the Statutes, and the antique Practice grounded upon them: Among the Statutes, those of the Institution did ordain, That if any Earl, Baron, or Knight-Batchellor, shou'd depart this Life, he that succeeded in his Place, of what Condition or State soever, shou'd possess the same Stall which his Predecessor held before, without changing: So that it might happen for an Earl, or a Duke, to succeed a Knight, and, *vice versa*, it was thus at first constituted by *Edward* III. *that it might be known who were the first Founders of this most Noble Order*.

Now how punctually this Article of the Statutes hath been observed, that none Chosen along time after the Institution of the Order, shou'd interrupt or change this course, we shall demonstrate, conceiving it very material to eye those Tables, yet preserved in the Chapter-House in *Windsor*, wherein are collected the Names of all those Knights-Companions who succeeded one another in each Stall, until the beginning of *Henry* VII's Reign.

From which Series of Succession, we shall remark how exactly the Law in this Point hath been observed, even to King *Henry* VIII's Reign, when it received some alteration in this Point. For we find in the Annals several Knights designed for the Stall of their immediate Predecessors, by the Honour only of Election, although prevented of Installation by Death, or other accidents; and the Statutes do not only bind him who shall chance to attain the Honour of Installation, *but him who shall succeed or come after the Defunct Knight*. First therefore we shall Instance in Foreign Kings, among whom we find *Ericus* King of *Denmark*, to have received *Installation* in *Henry* V's Reign, not according to the State and Dignity of a King, but into the Stall of that Knight-Companion

whom he succeeded, *viz.* the Duke of *Bavaria*. *John* the first King of *Portugal*, a Knight and Companion, likewise in *Henry* V's Time, was installed in the second Stall on the Sovereign's Side, which belong'd to *Henry* Duke of *Lancaster*, his first Predecessor: And to this King did succeed, in the same Stall, his Son *Edward* King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Henry* VI. to whose Successor *Humphry*, *Anno* 34, and *Casimir* King of *Poland* were elected, *Anno* 28 *Henry* VI. into the sixth Stall on the Prince's side, at that Time vacant by the Death of the Duke *Conimbero*, whose first Founder was Sir *John Mohun*. *Alphonsus* King of *Arragon* and *Naples*, *Anno* 38 *Henry* VI. was elected into the Stall of *Don Altro Vasques Dalmedea Count d'Averence*, being the seventh on the Sovereign's side, Sir *Hugh Courtney* first possessing it. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, elected *Anno* 3 *Edward* IV. was installed on the third on the Prince's side, *Ralph* Earl of *Stafford* having been first installed therein. And lastly, we find *Alphonsus* King of *Sicily* and *Jerusalem*, being elected by *Henry* VII. received his Installation on the Prince's side, whose Predecessor was *Thomas Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*.

In the second Place, if we descend to Foreign Princes, it is remarkable, that *William* Duke of *Gueldres*, elected by *Richard* II. was installed in that which Sir *John Beauchamp* possessed, and *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Haynalt*, and *Zealand*, in that which appertained to Sir *John Chandos*. *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, in the Time of *Henry* V. into the Stall of Sir *John Clifford*. And *Anno* 28 *Henry* VI. *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick* was elected into the Duke of *Suffolk*'s Stall.

And as the Statute was carefully observed, with reference to the Election and Installation of Foreign Princes, so no less in relation to the Princes of the Blood at Home; among whom let us observe, in the

third Place, the ranking the Sons of the Founder of this most Noble Order; where we see *Lyonel* Duke of *Clarence* his third Son, to have been installed in the sixth Stall on the Sovereign's side, whose immediate Predecessor was Sir *John Beauchamp*: In like manner *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, his fourth Son was installed in the seventh Stall on the Prince's side, having Sir *Thomas Holland* for his Predecessor and a Founder: His fifth Son *Edmund Langley*, Duke of *York*, possess'd the Stall Sir *Hugh Courtney* did before: And the sixth Son, *Thomas Woodstock*, Duke of *Gloucester*, enjoy'd the Stall Sir *John Grey* did before: This Rule was likewise observed strictly in relation to the Sons of King *Henry* VII.

If we review the aforesaid Tables, we shall find, that as the Knights-Companions of higher Dignity assumed the Stalls, (when they became vacant) though often of the lower sort, so some of the inferior rank among them have had the Honour to be installed in Seats of a superior Class, and this by the virtue and due of the Law.

Amongst these Knights-Companions we shall enumerate Sir *Philip la Vache*, a *Gascon*, who, in the Reign of King *Richard* II. was first installed in the Prince's Stall, (being vacant by the Death of *John* of *Gaunt*,) though afterwards removed to the third Stall on the Sovereign's side. Sir *Nicholas Sarnesfield*, Standard-bearer to the Founder, who succeeded *Hugh* Earl of *Stafford*, and after him Sir *William Arundel*, immediate Successor to Sir *Nicholas*, were both installed in the second Stall on the Sovereign's side: As likewise Sir *John Robsart*, Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and Sir *John Grey*, *&c.* were installed in the second or third Stalls on the Sovereign's side.

These Instances already asserted, are sufficient to manifest the Usage and Practice, how the Knights-

Companions have succeeded in the Stalls of their immediate Predecessors, down to the Reign of *Henry* VIII. and was consonant and agreeable to the ancient Law of the Order.

But we are to observe, that tho' each Knight was, by the before-mentioned Article, constituted to succeed his immediate Predecessor, in the Stall void by his Death, yet there's an exception as to that of the Prince of *Wales*. This Stall is the first on the left Hand, at the entrance into the Choir of St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windsor*, and wherein *Edward* the Black Prince was installed; from this Stall does the whole range of Stalls on the same side take their Denomination, and to which the Prince of *Wales*, as soon as he is elected into the Order, hath a due Title. Though this Stall *de Jure* appertains to that Prince, yet heretofore, when the Sovereign had no Heir, then was it for the present disposed to some other Knight, otherwise a defect in the full Number of Knights-Companions would have ensued.

The first that obtained that Honour, (besides the Prince of *Wales*,) was *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, decreed him by K. *Richard* II. who never had Issue, and removed from the seventh Stall thither. But the first Companion that happened to be installed in it, was Sir *Philip la Vache* just mentioned, which was a great Honour done to one of his Rank: But it fell to him by the then Law of the Order, being elected into the Room of the said Duke, who died possessed of it. But King *Henry* IV. coming to the Crown, and his eldest Son being created Prince of *Wales*, laid claim to the Stall by Virtue of that Statute, and had it assigned to him. Nevertheless, that the former Possessor might suffer as little diminution as might be in the Honour of his Session, he was removed no lower than to the Stall which

King *Henry* IV. lately held, when he was Earl of *Derby*.

Upon the Death of *Henry* IV. *Henry* V. being Sovereign, Sir *John Dabrichcourt* supplyed the vacancy, and was installed therein; and he dying in the fifth Year of that King possess'd thereof, his Plate continues in that Stall to this Day, and the Emperor *Sigismond* succeeds Sir *John Dabrichcourt* in the Prince's Stall.

Some few Years before King *Henry* VI. died, he had a Son Born; and though the Emperor *Frederick* was elected into the Order, *Anno* 35 *Henry* VI. yet was that Stall reserved for the Prince, (though he never possess'd it) and the Emperor 37 *Henry* VI. was installed by Proxy in the Duke of *Somerset*'s Stall, then lately deceased.

In *Edward* IV's Reign, the right of this Stall returned again to *Edward* his Son, the Prince of *Wales*, and in *Henry* VII's, to Prince *Arthur*, but upon his Death, to *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick* King of the *Romans*, and after Emperor, enjoyed it. So did the Emperor *Charles* V. (his Grandchild,) in regard there was no Son as yet Born to the Sovereign.

But Prince *Edward* being Born, while the Stall was possessed by *Charles* V. it chanc'd likewise that the King of the *Scots* died, which caus'd King *Henry* VIII. to reserve his Stall for that Prince, although he never had Possession of it, or was elected into the Order, though we find him once registred in a Scrutiny. King *Henry* VIII. dying, Prince *Edward* became, both by Inheritance and Succession, Sovereign of this most Noble Order.

From this Time, to the eighth Year of King *James* I. there was no Prince of *Wales*, who finding the Prince's Stall vacant, at his entrance upon the English

Throne, did in a Chapter in the first Year of his Reign, advance the French King *Henry* IV. from the second Stall on the Sovereign's side, into it; and appointed Prince *Henry* to be installed in that King's void Seat, where he continued till *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. that *Christierne* IV. King of *Denmark*, came to be installed by Proxy, and the Prince was moved lower to make way for him, though he was Senior both by Election and Installation. *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I. upon the Death of the French King, not the Prince, whose Right it was, since he was created Prince of *Wales*, but the said King of *Denmark*, was translated to the vacant Stall; and hereupon Prince *Henry* was returned again to the second Stall on the Sovereign's side, which he enjoyed as long as he survived, and upon his Death, Prince *Charles* was removed into it, and there remained all King *James*'s Reign.

When King *Charles* II. came to be installed, the Sovereign finding him prevented from assuming the Prince's Stall, the King of *Denmark* being yet alive, assigned to him the second Stall on the Sovereign's side, (wherein himself sat whilst Prince of *Wales*,) and where hitherto his Plate remains as a fixed Memorial of his Installation therein.

Although it has been made apparent, that the *Knights-Companions*, at their Election or Installation, succeeded the immediate *defunct Knight* in his Stall, yet we may observe, that sometimes after Installation, as an especial signal of Favour and Indulgence, the Sovereign hath been pleased, though very rarely, to advance a *Knight-Companion* to a higher Stall than that wherein he was first placed; and though there be no such Permission granted by the Law of the Order, yet we find *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*, removed from the seventh Stall on the Prince's side, to the Prince's Stall it self, and it's

said to be done by the Decree of the Sovereign and the *Knights-Companions*. And no doubt but as this was done by so good Authority, and so upon no less enducements to the Sovereign, and the whole Society. We shall here mention a few of these extraordinary Cases. *William Henalt*, Earl of *Ostervant*, was advanced by King *Richard* II. from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's side, to the Duke of *Britain*'s, being the second on the Prince's side. *Humphry* Duke of *Gloucester*, in the Reign of King *Henry* VI. was removed from the eleventh Stall on the Sovereign's side, to the second on the same side; and *Richard Nevil*, Earl of *Warwick*, by the Consent of the *Knights-Companions* in Chapter, *Anno* 39 *Henry* VI. was translated to the Duke of *Buckingham*'s Stall; the Lord *Bonvil*, to the Lord *Scales*'s Seat; Sir *Thomas Kyriell*, to the Place of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*; and the Lord *Wenlock*, to the Stall of Viscount *Beaumont*. But King *Henry* VIII. thinking it requisite for the Sovereign of this most Noble Order, to be impowered by a General, how to Act that at Pleasure, which the former Sovereigns did not, but by the Power of particular Acts, or Orders, in the Chapter; after he had confirmed the ancient Law of succeeding in the Stall of the immediate Predecessor, and not to suffer an alteration without the Sovereign's Licence, in the next Article he established this Privilege upon Himself and Successors: *That if there were any Place or Stall void, the Sovereign, at his own Pleasure, might Advance and Translate any Knight of the Society into the void Stall, so that it were higher than that, wherein he sate before*.

This in Effect did vacat the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls, though at the same Time he seem'd to Confirm it to the *Knights-Subjects*, for afterwards Translations preceeding to Installations,

became so frequent, that the Right an *elect Knight* had to his Predecessor's Stall, was seldom enjoyed. However, hereby he confirmed a Power to gratify such of the *Knights-Companions*, as he shou'd think fit to advance, without having recourse to a Chapter; and from hence began the Custom to Issue out Warrants, under the Sovereign's *Sign Manual*, for the Translation of Stalls, and consequently the alteration and removal of such of the *Knights-Companions Helms*, *Crests*, *Banners*, and *Plates*, who shou'd receive a higher Exaltation.

Besides the Power established upon the Sovereigns of this most Noble Order, of translating Stalls, when a vacancy happened, they farther added this larger Prerogative: That the Sovereign, once in his Life, might, if it pleased him, make a general Translation of all the Stalls at his Pleasure, except of Emperors, Kings, Princes, and Dukes, who shou'd keep their Stalls and Places, unless advanced to a higher Room and Stall. In which Translation, the long continuance in the Order, and the Praises, Worthiness, and Merits of the *Knights-Companions*, were to be considered and remembred.

But this Branch of the Sovereign's Prerogative, as far as we can find, was never put in Execution, though the Translation, *Anno* 27 *Henry* VIII. border'd something upon it, perhaps lest it might raise too great Feuds among the *Knights-Subjects*; forasmuch as that of translating only, (when there happened a vacancy,) begot great Emulations, which at length introduced a Change, to which we shall pass, after we have taken notice of a Clause added in the twenty second Article of King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, relating to Princes.

It is observable the ancient Law of succeeding in Stalls, in relation to them, was wholly altered. For

King *Henry* VIII. upon the Establishment of his Body of Statutes, not only appointed those Strangers, then present of the Order, to be seated next himself; but that all Emperors, Kings, and Princes, should hold their Stalls after their Estates, and the very next unto the Sovereign, tho' *Knights-Subjects*, upon vacancy, become removable at Pleasure.

For this reason, the Emperor *Maximilian* II. and after him *Rudolph* II. his Son, had the Prince's Stalls assigned them after their Election into the Order; and several of the Kings of *France* were placed in the next below, being the second on the Sovereign's side. And when there chanced to be more than one King at a time in the Order, the second Stall on the Prince's side was assigned him; for Precedency was measured now by Dignity and State, and not by the Antiquity of the Order; As appears from the King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 19 *Henry* VIII. and the King of *Spain*, *Anno* 8 *Elizabeth*, Princes Strangers, according to their regality, and illustrious extraction, had their Scituation next to Kings, as is manifest from the Dukes of *Savoy*, *Montmorency*, and *Holstein*, *Anno* 3 *Elizabeth*, and *Frederick* Prince *Palatine*, and *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, *Anno* 11 *Jac.* I.

But notwithstanding these Assignments of Stalls to Strangers, they were nevertheless subject to removal, sometimes to Stalls higher than their own, upon the Death of a Stranger, who died possessed of a superior one; and sometimes again to others lower, for the advancing a Knight of greater Degree and Distinction, where the upper Stalls were already supplied; else they could not be so ranked, according to their respective Quality, as the Statutes enjoyn; nor indeed wou'd any Stranger King have accepted of an Election, unless he was placed in a distinguishable Stall, suitable to his Dignity. *Ferdinand*, Emperor of

Germany, is an instance of Advancement in translation of Stalls; for after the Death of the Emperor *Charles* V. his Brother, he was advanced from the second Stall on the Prince's side, into the Prince's Stall. And *Henry* IV. of *France*, from the second on the Sovereign's side, to the Prince's Stall, and *Christierne* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I.

Among Princes Strangers, we find *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, advanced from the third on the Prince's side, to the second on the same side, *Anno* 2 *Elizabeth*; and *Frederick* Prince Palatine, *Anno* 1 *Charles* I. was advanced from the second of the Prince's, to the second on the side of the Sovereign; likewise *Henry Frederick*, Prince of *Orange*; was advanced from the third of the Sovereign's, to the second of the Prince's, upon the Death of the King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 10 *Charles* I.

When the *French* King *Charles* IX. was elected, *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, the superior Stalls were already filled with Strangers, and there was no Expedient left to give him the Stall the Sovereign design'd him, but by the removal of some of those *Knights-Strangers* lower; and upon this, *Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* was displaced to the third on the Sovereign's side.

But the *French* King was not installed, until the 16th of *January*, *Anno* 8 *Elizabeth*, and before that it was concluded to remove the King of *Spain* to the Duke of *Savoy*'s Stall, as void before, and to instal the *French* King in the King of *Spain*'s, which was accordingly done; so that upon this occasion, there were four Strangers, and five *Knights-Subjects*, removed lower, to make way for the *French* King.

The 20th of *April*, *Anno* 2 *Jac.* I. The Duke of *Wirtemberg* was installed in the third Stall on the Prince's side, and the Year following advanced to a higher.

The 26th of *May* ensuing, *Ulerick* Duke *Holst*, had assigned unto him that Stall from which the Duke of *Wirtemberg* was advanced: But against the Installation of *Christierne*, the fourth King of *Denmark*, the Duke was removed back to his Seat, wherein he was installed, and the Duke advanced into the vacant one. All which will appear more conspicuous, from the appointment of Stalls on these Occasions, which follow.

A remove of *Banners* and *Plates*, at the Installation of *Frederick* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, *Anno Jac.* I. *Reg.* 2.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The Prince*	2. *Void*
3. *Earl of* Nottingham	3. *Duke of* Wirtemberg
4. *Earl of* Ormond	4. *Earl of* Dorset
5. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	5. *Earl of* Cumberland
6. *Earl of* Northumber.	6. *Earl of* Worcester
7. *Lord* Sheffeild	7. *Earl of* Suffolk
8. *Earl of* Devonshire	8. *Sir* Henry Lea
9. *Earl of* Sussex	9. *Lord* Scroop
10. *Earl of* Derby	10. *Lord* Burleigh

11. *Duke of* Lenox	11. *Earl of* Southampton
12. *Earl of* Marr	12. *Earl of* Pembrook
13. *Void*	13. *Void*

The Order of Stalls at the Feast of St. *George, Anno Jac.* I. *Reg.* 3.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The Prince*	2. *Void*
3. *Duke of* Wirtemberg	3. *Earl of* Nottingham
4. *Earl of* Ormond	4. *Earl of* Dorset
5. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	5. *Earl of* Cumberland
6. *Earl of* Northumber.	6. *Earl of* Worcester
7. *Lord* Sheffeild	7. *Earl of* Suffolk
8. *Earl of* Devonshire	8. *Sir* Henry Lea
9. *Earl of* Sussex	9. *Lord* Scroop
10. *Earl of* Derby	10. *Lord* Burleigh
11. *Duke of* Lenox	11. *Earl of* Southampton

12. *Earl of* Marr	12. *Earl of* Pembrook
13. *Void*	13. *Void*

A remove of *Banners* and *Plates*, at the Installation of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, the 8th of *September*, *Anno Jac.* I. *Reg.* 3.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The King of* Denmark	2. *The Prince*
3. *Duke of* Holst	3. *Duke of* Wirtemberg
4. *Earl of* Nottingham	4. *Earl of* Ormond
5. *Earl of* Dorset	5. *Earl of* Shrewsbury
6. *Earl of* Cumberland	6. *Earl of* Northumber.
7. *Earl of* Worcester	7. *Lord* Sheffeild
8. *Earl of* Suffolk	8. *Earl of* Devonshire
9. *Sir* Henry Lea	9. *Earl of* Sussex
10. *Lord* Scroop	10. *Earl of* Derby
11. *Earl of* Exeter	11. *Duke of* Lenox

12. *Earl of* Southampton	12. *Earl of* Marr
13. *Earl of* Pembrook	13. *Earl of* Northampton

In this last Scheme, we find Prince *Henry* removed from the second on the Sovereign's, to the second on the Prince's side, to make room for the King of *Denmark*. And tho' the Duke *Chevereux*, *Anno* 3 *Charles* I. was advanced from the third Stall on the Sovereign's side, to the second on the Prince's side, that became vacant by the Death of the Duke of *Brunswick*; yet the Year after, upon the admission of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, he was removed two Stalls lower, and the Prince Elector Palatine one.

We pass on now from the removal and translation of a *Knight-Subject*, after he had been installed, to the assignment of his Stall, at the Time of the Installation it self; where it is worthy of Remark, That on the 24th of *April*, *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, in lieu of the ancient Law, which appointed each elect Knight to succeed in the Stall of his Predecessor, a new one was introduced, being composed, as was conceived, upon a more just level than the former, and as far as was possible, to extinguish all danger that might arise from Emulation. The Words are: *That all Knights, who for the future were admitted into the Society of the Order, should take and be installed in the lowest Stall, according to the Course and Seniority of their Election, except only Stranger Kings and Princes*.

Upon which it chanced, that when a *Knight-Subject* elect was to be installed, all the *Knights-Companions*, between him and the vacant Stall, were removed higher, that the space might be supplied: And if two or more were to be installed together, they possessed

the lowest Stalls, according to the Seniority of their Election. And though the manner and order in removals, is become a thing of course, and rendered familiar and easy; yet it cannot be effected, or the Atchievements, Banners, or Plates, displaced, unless by a Warrant issued from the Sovereign, to justify the Garter for such his removals; which will plainly appear by the insertion of these Schemes.

The Order of Stalls, as they stood at the Feast of St. *George*, *Anno* 29 *Eliz.*

ELIZABETH Regina.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *The* French *King*	2. *The King of* Spain
3. *The King of* Denmark	3. *Void*
4. *Duke* John Casimire	4. *Void*
5. *Viscount* Mountague	5. *Earl of* Leicester
6. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	6. *Earl of* Warwick
7. *Lord* Hunsdon	7. *Void*
8. *Void*	8. *Earl of* Worcester
9. *Earl of* Huntington	9. *Lord* Burleigh
10. *Lord Grey*	10. *Earl of* Derby

11. *Earl of* Pembrook	11. *Ld.* How. *of* Effingh.
12. *Void*	12. *Lord* Cobham
13. *Lord* Scroop	13. *Void*

A Translation of Stalls made against the Feast of Installation, *Anno* 30 *Eliz.*

ELIZABETH Regina.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *The* French *King*	2. *The King of* Spain
3. *The King of* Denmark	3. *Void*
4. *Duke* John Casimire	4. *Void*
5. *Viscount* Mountague	5. *Earl of* Leicester
6. *Earl of* Shrewsbury	6. *Earl of* Warwick
7. *Lord* Hunsdon	7. *Earl of* Worcester
8. *Earl of* Huntington	8. *Lord* Burleigh
9. *Lord* Grey	9. *Earl of* Derby
10. *Earl of* Pembrook	10. *Ld.* How. *of* Effingh.

11. *Lord* Cobham	11. *Lord* Scroop
12. *Earl of* Essex	12. *Earl of* Ormond
13. *Sir* Christop. Hatton	13. *Void*

The first of these Schemes plainly evince, how the Stalls were ranked on St. *George*'s-*Eve*, *Anno* 29 *Elizabeth*, and the other how modelled against the Installation of the Earls of *Essex* and *Ormond*, and that of Sir *Christopher Hatton*, the 23d of *May*, *Anno* 30 *Elizabeth*, which demonstrates those three elect Knights appear to be installed in the lowermost Stalls, (as the last mentioned Decree enjoyns,) and by reason the Earl of *Essex*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, were settled on the Sovereign's side, the vacancy in the eighth and twelfth Stalls of the same side became filled up; the Earl of *Huntington* being advanced into the eighth, the Lord *Grey* in the ninth, and the Earl of *Pembrook* in the tenth Stall, by the advance of the Earl of *Worcester* into the seventh on the Prince's side, the vacancy is there supplyed, and the other Knights seated below him, by a like removal, left the twelfth Stall for the Earl of *Ormond*, and the thirteenth void.

The same Order was observ'd by King *James*, as appears by another Scheme of the Stalls settled on the 3d of *July*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. at the Election of the Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Northampton*, *Marr*, and *Pembrook*.

Stalls altered at a Chapter held at *Windsor*, the

3 *July*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I.

JAMES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The* French *King*
2. *The Prince*	2. *Void*
3. *Earl of* Nottingham	3. *Void*
4. *Earl of* Ormond	4. *Lord* Buckhurst
5. *Earl of* Salop	5. *Earl of* Cumberland
6. *Earl of* Northumberl.	6. *Earl of* Worcester
7. *Lord* Sheffeild	7. *Ld.* How. *of* Walden
8. *Lord* Hunsdon	8. *Lord* Montjoy
9. *Sir* Henry Lea	9. *Earl of* Sussex
10. *Lord* Cobham	10. *Lord* Scroop
11. *Earl of* Derby	11. *Lord* Burleigh
12. *Duke of* Lenox	12. *Earl of* Southampton
13. *Earl of* Marr	13. *Earl of* Pembrook

From hence it is evident, that these elect Knights were installed in the lowest Stalls, and so continued throughout the series of his Reign, and since, except

the Prince of *Wales*, and *Charles* Duke of *York*, Sons to the said Sovereign: For the Prince was installed on the second on the Sovereign's side, and upon that Election of the Duke of *York*, *Anno Jac.* I. the second Stall on the Prince's side was assigned him, and the Morrow after St. *George*'s *Day*, upon which he was elected, he made a solemn Progression to the Chapel, in order to take Possession of it. Upon *Whitsunday* following, at a serious Debate, it was determined in Chapter, that notwithstanding he was the Sovereign's Son, yet he shou'd have no more Preheminence than other *Knights-Companions*, and that his Atchievements, which had been set up over the second Stall on the Prince's side, shou'd be removed to that Stall next above the Viscount *Rochester*'s, and to be conserted with the Earl of *Montgomery*, before whom he had the Preference, on *Whitsun-Munday*, as they proceeded to the Chapter-House, in order to their Installation. And where it was farther Decreed, *That all Princes not Absolute, shou'd be installed thenceforth in the Prince's Place*. But after this had passed, Endeavours were used to advance the Duke into the Stall he was first appointed to, and the Kings of Arms were consulted upon this Point; who certified, that *Richard* Duke of *York*, second Son to King *Edward* IV. was installed in the fourth Stall on the Prince's side, and had Precedence of the Duke of *Suffolk*, and the Earls of *Dowglass* and *Essex*, who were elected long before him: That *Henry* Duke of *York*, second Son to King *Henry* VII. was installed in the third Stall on the Sovereign's side, and had the Preference of the Duke of *Buckingham*, and the Earls of *Oxford* and *Derby*, his Seniors; and in the last Place, that *Henry Fitz Roy*, Duke of *Richmond*, base Son of King *Henry* VIII. had Place and Precedence before the Dukes of *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, and other

Knights-Companions. Upon which Grounds it was thought requisite that the Issue of the Sovereign should enjoy the same Privileges in this Affair, as those Princes that were Strangers; and therefore at another Chapter assembled at *White-Hall*, on *Easter-Monday*, being the 13th of *April*, *Anno* 10 *Jac.* I. the Order which passed the Year before, for making the Duke a Puisne, was abrogated, and he was translated to the second Stall on the Prince's side, and paired with Prince *Henry*, as may be seen by the Stalls then settled, and entered into the Blue Book of the Order.

We need not bring any more corroborating Circumstances of the Observation of the Chapter Act, made *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, as it relates to *Knights-Subjects*, which has been punctually performed; but since Strangers are therein excepted, it will not be amiss to note, that the Rule and Practice continued as was established by King *Henry* VIII. *viz.* that they were installed in Seats next to the Sovereign, according to the illustriousness of their Dignity and Birth.

We shall mention one Instance, of the manner of placing both Strangers and Knights-Subjects at one and the same Time. At the first coming of King *Charles* I. to the Crown, there were of both Conditions to be installed in one Day, to wit, the Duke of *Brunswick* a Stranger Prince, the Earls of *Salisbury* and *Carlisle*, *Knights-Subjects*, elected by King *James* I. in the 22d Year of his Reign, and on the 15th of *May* following, the Earls of *Dorset* and *Holland* were elected with the Viscount *Andover*, and the Duke of *Chevereux* the 4th of *July* after. And when the removal of Stalls was propounded for the Admission of these seven elect Knights, it was agreed too, that the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Chevereux* shou'd be installed in the uppermost Stall among

Strangers, as King *Henry* VIII. had before ordained, but the *Knights-Subjects* in the lowermost Stalls, according to the pristine Practice, as appears from the Decree, *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth*, and from the settlement of Stalls then made, and thus intituled. ·

A remove of *Banners* and *Stalls*, at the Feast of St. *George*, and Installation holden at *Windsor*, the 13, 14, 15 Days of *December*, *Anno* 1625. At which time were installed the Dukes of *Brunswick*, and *Chevereux*, the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, *Holland*, *Dorset*, and the Viscount *Andover*, as follows.

CHARLES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The King of* Denmark
2. *The Prince Palatine*	2. *The Duke of* Brunswick
3. *Duke* Chevereux	3. *Earl of* Northumberl.
4. *Earl of* Worcester	4. *Lord* Sheffeild
5. *Earl of* Suffolk	5. *Earl of* Sussex
6. *Earl of* Darby	6. *Earl of* Marr
7. *Earl of* Pembrook	7. *Earl of* Montgomery
8. *Earl of* Arundel	8. *Earl of* Somerset
9. *Earl of* Kelly	9. *Viscount* Wallingford

10. *Earl of* Rutland	10. *Duke of* Buckingham
11. *Earl of* Leicester	11. *Earl of* Salisbury
12. *Earl of* Carlisle	12. *Earl of* Dorset
13. *Earl of* Holland	13. *Viscount* Andover

After the Restauration of King *Charles* II. to his Crown and Kingdoms, when several *Knights-Companions*, both Strangers and Subjects, were to be installed, a Debate arose in the Chapter held at *White-Hall*, the 10th of *April*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. about placing their Atchievements over their Stalls; upon which the following Order was issued out.

CHARLES Rex.

Whereas divers elect Knights and Companions of our most Noble Order of the Garter are, by our special Appointment, to be installed in the Chapel of our Castle of Windsor, *upon the 15th Day of this Instant; and that some of them who are Strangers, do not as yet, nor are likely to appear, either in their own Persons, or by their sufficient Proxies at the said Instalment, and so might run the hazard to lose the Benefit and Advantage of their Pre-election, in Point of Rank and Precedency, in respect of some of our Subject-Knights, who, though since elected, will be first installed, without some Expedient taken therein to prevent it. There being no reason, (nor is it our intention) that those noble Persons shou'd suffer that prejudice, for want of that usual formality, and for which they are not in the fault, but others, who, according to the Statutes and ancient Custom, were to*

give timely Advertisement to the said Foreign elected Knights, and to Summon them by themselves or Proxies, to assist at the said Instalment: Our Will and Pleasure is, you proceed forthwith to the placing of the Hatchments of all the respective Knights and Companions of our said Order, whether installed or elect, Subject or Stranger, over the Stalls, which we do in manner as followeth assign, and appoint them in our aforesaid Chappel.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *The Duke of* York	2. *The Elector Palatine*
3. *Prince Elector of* Brand.	3. *Prince of* Orange
4. *Prince* Rupert	4. *Prince* Edward
5. *Earl of* Salisbury	5. *Earl of* Barkshire
6. *Earl of* Northumberl.	6. *Duke of* Espernon
7. *Duke of* Ormond	7. *Duke of* Buckingham
8. *Earl of* Southampton	8. *Marquiss of* Newcastle
9. *Earl of* Bristol	9. *Prince* Tarente
10. *Count* Marshin	10. *Duke of* Albermarle
11. *Earl of* Sandwich	11. *Earl of* Oxford
12. *Duke of* Richmond	12. *Earl of* Lindsey
13. *Earl of* Manchester	13. *Earl of* Strafford

And for so doing, this shall be your sufficient Warrant, any Statute, or Custom, to the contrary notwithstanding: Given under the Signet of our said Order, at our Court at White-Hall, *the* 10th *of* April, 1666.

To our Trusty
and Well-
beloved
Servant, Sir
Edward
Walker, Kt.
Garter, and
Principal
King of
Arms, of
our most
Noble Order
of the
Garter.

By the Sovereign's

Command

Hen. de Vic.

By which we find the Stranger Princes are placed in the upper Stall, nearest the Sovereign, according to their Dignities and Degrees, and all the *Knights-Subjects* as to the Time of their Elections. It is to be observed upon this Settlement, that though the Earl of *Southampton* did not receive his Garter and George, till the Sovereign, upon his happy arrival in *England*, conferred it upon him with his own Hand; yet, according to the Time of the Election, Place and

Precedency were allowed him; which was in *January*, *An. Dom.* 1649. in the Isle of *Jersey*, some few Days before Duke *Hamilton* and the Marquiss of *Newcastle* were elected.

It was ordered by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, convened in Chapter on the 10th of *January*, *Anno* 14 *Car.* II. *That thenceforward all Princes Strangers, of what Condition soever, shou'd have Precedence among themselves, according to the Seniority of their Elections and Installations*. Upon which the Sovereign, under the Signet of the Order, authorized the Garter, upon the 30th of *March*, to set up their Atchievements in St. *George*'s *Chapel*, in the Order here exhibited.

CHARLES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *Void*
2. *Duke of* York	2. *Prince Elector Palatine*
3. *Prince* Rupert	3. *Prince of* Orange
4. *Elector of* Brandenbur.	4. *Prince of* Denmark
5. *Earl of* Salisbury	5. *Earl of* Barkshire
6. *Earl of* Northumberl.	6. *Duke of* Ormond
7. *Duke of* Buckingham	7. *Earl of* Southampton
8. *Marquiss of* Newcastle	8. *Earl of* Bristol
9. *Prince* Tarente	9. *Count* Marshin

10. *Duke of* Albermarle	10. *Earl of* Sandwich
11. *Earl of* Oxford	11. *Duke of* Richmond
12. *Earl of* Lindsey	12. *Earl of* Manchester
13. *Earl of* Strafford	13. *Duke of* Monmouth

But upon mature Consideration of a Law made by *Henry* VIII. for placing of Strangers, and for another founded by Queen *Elizabeth* for *Knights-Subjects*; the Sovereign, by the consent of the most Noble Companions present, at a Chapter held the 19th of *November*, 1699. was pleased to Ordain, first, *That the Prince of* Wales, *and such Emperors and Kings that shou'd be of the Order, shou'd be placed in the nearest Stalls to that of the Sovereign, according to their Elections and Installations*.

Then, *That all other Sovereign Princes, and Princes of the Blood, shou'd be placed in their Stalls next* unto the King's, *according to the Seniority, in the Order*. And thirdly, That all other his Majesty's Subjects and Strangers, not of the Dignity above-mention'd, shou'd be installed in the lowest Stalls, according to their Antiquity in the Order, and the ancient Practice.

And whereas the Stall termed the Prince's had been long vacant, the Sovereign King *Charles* II. by the advice of the most Noble Companions, at the same Chapter, was pleased to order, *That the present King of* Sweden *shou'd, by his Proxy, be placed in that Stall, and his Atchievements hung up thereon accordingly, in convenient Time*. Which order was strictly put in Execution, and the Stalls at the Feast

of St. *George*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. were thus ranged.

CHARLES Rex.

1. *The Sovereign*	1. *The King of* Sweden
2. *King of* Denmark	2. *The Duke of* York
3. *Prince Elector Palatine*	3. *Prince* Rupert
4. *Prince of* Orange	4. *Elector of* Brandenbur.
5. *Pr. Elector of* Saxony	5. *Duke of* Ormond
6. *Duke of* Buckingham	6. *Duke of* Newcastle
7. *Earl of* Bristol	7. *Prince* Tarante
8. *Count* Marshin	8. *Earl of* Sandwich
9. *Earl of* Oxford	9. *Duke of* Richmond
10. *Earl of* Strafford	10. *Duke of* Monmouth
11. *Duke of* Albermarle	11. *Void*
12. *Void*	12. *Void*
13. *Void*	13. *Void*

§ 7. Having dispatch'd the ancient Law of Succession into void Stalls, and of Translation from one to another; we come now to consider what is farther to be prepared for the Knight elect, against

the Day of the great Solemnity, at his own Expence; the chief of which are;

1. A Mantle or upper Robe, with its Appurtenance.
2. A Collar of the Garter and Great George.
3. A Cap of black Velvet, adorned with Plumes.
4. A Helmet, Crest, Mantlings, and Sword.
5. A Banner of his Arms.
6. A Plate of his Arms and Stile.
7. A Cushion, to carry his Robes and Collar upon.
8. Lodging Escutcheons.

Though the Kirtle on the Surcoat was anciently given by the King to the *Knights-Subjects*, yet we do not find the Mantle of the Order was, nor indeed of a later Date, unless now and then, as a distinguishing mark of Favour. But the Sovereign always bestows the Mantle upon Strangers, as well as the whole Habit, when he has elected them into the Society of the Order. And upon sending of the whole Habit over by Garter to the King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 13 *Hen.* VI. the Mantle, Surcoat, and Hood, were accompted for in the Great Wardrobe, and is to this Day practised.

However of late the Sovereign hath been pleased, now and then, to confer the Mantle upon a *Knight-Subject*. Witness King *James* I. *Anno* 21. did to *James* Marquiss of *Hamilton*; and King *Charles* I. *Anno* 4. to *Theophilus*, Earl of *Suffolk*, and the Year ensuing to *William*, Earl of *Northampton*: And *Anno* 14. Sir *James Palmer*, by his Sovereign's Direction, paid for the Velvet and Taffety of the Earl of *Kelly*'s Mantle and Surcoat, to Sir *Peter Richaut*, and put it upon the Account of the extraordinary Expence of the Order.

King *Charles* II. as a signal Mark of his Favour, caused seventeen Mantles (with the usual Liveries of

Surcoat and Hood,) to be made ready against the grand Feast of St. *George*, *Anno* 13. which he confered not only among the new elect Knights, but upon the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Barkshire*, and *Northumberland*, that were three Senior *Knights-Companions*.

The Collar of the Order, and the great George, the elect Knight is to provide himself, unless where the Sovereign is pleased to bestow the Mantle, which is always accompanied with the Collar, and then a like Warrant issues to the Master of the *Jewel-House*, as was used for providing the seventeen Collars, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II.

The black Velvet Cap before-mentioned and described, with the Helm, Crest, and Mantlings, together with a Sword and Girdle, are to be got in readiness by the care and direction of the Garter, but at the Expence of the Knights elect; all which are to be set over his Stall, as soon as his Installation Fees are paid.

This Honour, that every *Knight-Companion* shall have his Helm, Crest, and Sword, affixed over his Stall at the Chappel of St. *George*, is particularly provided for in all the several Bodies of Statutes; and are ordained to remain there during the Lives of the Possessors, *In Memory of him that bears them, and a Testimony of the Defence of the Church, as the Oaths of Military Orders require*.

The Helms upon this Occasion are composed of Steel, and of a more than ordinary proportion; those for Sovereign Princes are framed open, with large Barrs; but those for the *Knights-Subjects* are made close. About King *Henry* VIII's Reign, the *Knights-Subjects* Helms were parcel gilt with fine Gold in Oil, wrought with curious Works, and burnished with fine Gold. But in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, and

since that Time, it hath been the Custom to gild their Helms all over, and place the Arms of St. *George* in the Middle before the Vizors.

The Mantlings that hang down on either side of the Helm, together with the Wreath, are in some places called Appendixes, and are all of Tissue, or Cloth of Gold, and formerly lined with Sarcenet; but in the Reign of Queen *Mary* they were exchanged for white Satin, for so were the Mantlings of *Anthony Brown*, Viscount *Montague*, and *William Howard*, Lord Admiral, lined.

At the bottom of these Mantlings hang a pair of gilt Knobs burnished with Gold, from which spring out Tossels either of Gold or Silver, (consentaneous to the Metal in the Knights Court of Armour) mixed with Silk of the chief Colour in his Arms.

Upon the Helm and Mantlings, is placed a Wreath of corded Silk, of the Knight's Colours, which was formerly of Sarcenet, but now of Taffety.

The Crest of the Knight is placed either upon these Wreaths, or Issuant out of a Crown, or Ducal Cap, turned with Ermin; and of what kind soever the Crest is, the same is neatly carved in Wood, and either gilt, or wrought in; Directly before the Helm, an armed Sword hangs down, the Pomel, Cross, and Chape are gilt; the Scabbard is made of the same Tissue or Cloth of Gold as the Mantlings are, as is the Girdle that belongs to it; but the Buckles and Pendants are of Copper Gilt.

The Custom of setting up the Helm, Crest, and Sword, over the Stall of the Knights, is as ancient as the Institution of the Order; but when the Banners were first hung up, we have not so clear a Conviction; for neither the Statutes of Institution, nor those of *Henry* V. make mention of them.

The first time they occur to us, we find to be in *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. in the black Book of the Order, where the Banners of the King of *Portugal* is particularly spoke of, among the Atchievements then set over the Stall. But they are more particularly mentioned in the Body of King *Henry* VIII's Statutes.

The Fashion of the Sovereign's and all the *Knights-Companions* Banners are square; yet it does no where appear what the exact Standard was; yet we find them in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth* to be two Yards and a Quarter Long, and a Yard and three Quarters Broad, besides the Fringe, which is composed of Gold, or Silver and Silk, of the Colours in the Wreath; and on them are wrought, upon Taffety-Sarcenet, double Sarcenet, or rich Taffety, with fine Gold Colours on both sides, the Paternal Coat of the *Knights-Companion*, together with his Quartering, or so many of them as he pleases to use, and the Garter is to take care they be warrantably Marshalled.

And because a single Coat was not conceived to stand fair enough in a Banner of this proportion, the Sovereign hath been pleased to grant a new Coat, to bear in Quarters his Paternal one, if he wanted it; as King *James* I. did to *Robert Carr*, Viscount *Rochester*; to whose Paternal Coat he first added a Lion Passant, Gardant Or, in the dexter Part, as an especial Gift of his Favour, and then invented a new Coat, to be born in Quarter therewith, *viz.* Quarterly Or and Gules, a Lyon Rampant Sable over all, *June* 8. *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I.

These Banners of Arms are fixed to the End of long Staves, painted in Oil, formerly of the Colour of the Wreaths, but now Red; their Ends are put into Sockets of Iron, well fixed in the Wall, directly over the *Knights-Companions* Helms and Crests, and frequently lined with Fustian to preserve them.

There is moreover to be provided a Copper Plate

Gilt, whereupon are engraved, the Escutcheon of the Knights elect Arms in Colours Enamilled, with his Quartering, Helm, Crest, and Supporters, and underneath, his Style and Titles of Honour, encircled with a Garter. Which Plate the Garter usually takes Care to provide, and is to be fixed on the back of the Knights Stall, assigned for his Installation.

A Velvet Cushion is likewise to be provided, to carry the Knight's elect Mantle, Collar, Hood, and Book of Statutes, before him, in the Progress into the Choire, in order to his Installation. At the Installation of the Lord Treasurer *Weston*, and the Earls of *Exeter* and *Lindsey*, who were installed, *Anno* 6 *Car.* I. the materials and garnishing of these Cushions are recited severally, to contain one Yard and a Half of Crimson Velvet, one Ell of rich Taffety for their Lining, four Yards of Fringe, and four great Tossels.

Lastly, There have frequently been made ready a convenient Number of Lodging Escutcheons of the elect Knights Arms, invironed with a Garter, and his Stile and Titles placed underneath; it having been an ancient Custom, for the Knights to distribute these Escutcheons at the Inns, in their Passage to, and at *Windsor*, as a Memorial of their Installation.

What falls under the Care of the Garter to prepare and make ready, the Expence sometimes has been cast up, and the Account stated and defraid before-hand; by which means, he was in a better capacity to furnish out the Ceremony, for so did the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.*

Besides these mentioned to be prepared and provided either by the Chancellor of the Order, or the Garter, the Knight elect must take care of other Affairs more particularly relating to himself and his retinue; such as are Apparel, the Number of his Attendants and Servants, with their Cloaths and

Liveries, his Coach and Saddle Horses, both for himself and them, with other material Circumstances, to set off his Cavalcade and Proceeding with greater Pomp and Gallantry. The Provisions for Dyet at *Windsor* (if the Feast be kept at the elect Knight's Charge and Expence,) are to be considered of, and very often some Clark of the Sovereign's Kitchin is to be consulted, in the management of that Affair.

The Hall or Room where the grand Dinner is to be kept, as well as the Chapter-House and Chappel, ought chiefly to be decked and adorned with rich and sumptuous Furniture, against this Solemnity, over and above what is commonly used. The Hall or Dining-Room is to be set off with rich Hangings; and if the Sovereign or his Lieutenant hold the Feast, there must be placed a Cloth of State at the upper End of it. The Chapter-House is also to be hung, and a rich Carpet spread upon the Table, set about with Velvet Chairs and Cushions; and because in the late Times of Rebellion and Plunder, this Place was not exempt, and nothing was found there upon the Restauration; King *Charles* II. in a Chapter convened the 1st of *January*, *Anno* 14th of his Reign, caused Directions to be given to the Master of the Wardrobe, to provide Velvet for Chairs, to furnish the Chapter-House, and Cushions to be used in the Choir of St. *George*'s *Chappel*, which accordingly were prepared against the following Feast.

Against the Installation of *Philip*, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. The Table in the Chapter-House was covered with Cloth of Gold, and the Forms with Baudkin; before the Sovereign was laid a Cushion of Cloth of Gold, whereupon a Crucifix lay, and the Evangelist turned open to a place of the Cannon, with several Tapers burning on

either Side. At the upper End of the Table, towards the Right Hand, was set a Chair for the Sovereign, under a golden Canopy, with Cushions of Cloth of Gold, and on the Left Hand a Stool with like Embellishments, for the King of *Castile*.

In St. *George*'s *Chappel*, the High Altar is to be richly adorned with Plate, the Sovereign's Stall with a Canopy, and other usual Ornaments, and the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions* present at the Ceremony, with Velvet Cushions. As to the Furnishing of other Places in the Castle of *Windsor*, on so solemn an Occasion, we shall relate the Account of the Ceremony of the Installation of the King of *Leon* and *Castile*, just now mentioned. The Words are these:

To wit of the gret rich Cobbord, which continually stode in the gret Hall, which was all guilt Plate, or of the gret and rich Beds of Estate, Hangings of rich Cloth of Gold, or of the rich and sumptuous Clothes of Arras, with divers Clothes of Estate, both in the King's Loggings, and in the King of Castile's **Loggings, so many Chambers, Haulls, Chappels, Closettes, Galleries, with odir Loggings, so richly and very well appointed, with divers odir things, that I suffice or cannot discern, and as I suppose few or none that there were, that ever saw** Castell **or odir Loggings, in all things so well and richly appointed, and the great continual fare, open Houshold, so many Noble Men**

soo well appareilled and with soo short Warnying, heretofore, as I think hath not been seen.

CAP. XII.

The Personal Installation of a Knight-Subject.

§ 1.

Formerly the Knights elect proceeded from *London* to their Installation at *Windsor*, in the nature of a Solemn and stately Cavalcade, which was performed on Horse-back, with the greatest Grandeur, and exceeding Pomp, whether we refer to the great Number of their Honourable Friends, who, on gallant Coursers, rode along with them; or the multitude of their own Attendants well mounted, the magnificence of whose Apparel, Jewels, Gold Chains, rich Embroideries, and Plumes of Feathers, of their Lord's Colours, struck Amazement, and even dazled the Eyes of the Spectators.

Equivalent to this Pompous Show was the Feast, which contained in it all manner of Stateliness and Plenty, as well of Provision, as other Incidents that might increase its Glory, in which the elect Knights, who kept it at their own Expence, strove not only to out-vie their Predecessor, but to Excel one another; That all Embassadors and Strangers esteemed it one of the goodliest and noblest Sights, that was to be exhibited in Christendom.

But to make the splendor of the Cavalcade no less conspicuous to the City of *London*, than to the Town

and Castle of *Windsor*, the Knights elect have taken up their Lodgings, sometimes in the *Strand*, sometimes in *Salisbury-Court*, in *Holborn*, or within the City; and for intent they chose to pass through some Eminent Streets, that the People might the better Survey them, and receive the greater Satisfaction. To illustrate which Matter, we shall descend to some Particulars.

Anno 34 *Eliz. Gilbert*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, in order to his Cavalcade, was lodged in Mr. *Gresham*'s House, (now known by the Name of *Gresham-College*,) whence he Rode through the City, accompanied with many of his Honourable Friends, and a numerous and gallant Train of Attendants and Servants, to *Charing-Cross*, where he met *George*, Earl of *Cumberland*, (his Companion elect) and thence both Rode together towards *Windsor*; within a Mile or two of which Place, Garter King of Arms met them, and Marshalled their Attendants in Order; and then the elect Knights proceeded with their gallant Train through the Town into the Castle in this Order.

1. Trumpets, two and two.
2. Gentlemen in Blue Coats and Gold Chains.
3. Gentlemen of Note.
4. Garter.
5. Gentlemen Ushers.
6. The two elect Knights, Earl of *Ormond*, and Baron of *Effingham*; with their Footmen about them.
7. Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen of Quality.
8. All their Servants in the Rear.

Custom and Peace contributed to make the Cavalcades more glorious, during the Reigns of Queen *Elizabeth*, and King *James* I. and especially

that of *Robert*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and *Thomas*, Viscount *Bindon*, *May* 21st, *Anno* 4 *Jac.* I. who arrived at *Windsor* honourably accompanied, with a great appearance of Nobility, Knights, and Gentlemen of Figure.

But the Fate of this Solemnity, much like that glorious Body of the Sun, (whose Lustre at such times it strove to outshine) had now and then its interpositions, and intermitting Clouds, at other times long Nights, and the Splendor and Glory thereof but struck the Sight now and then; when the Pleasure of the Sovereign grew auspicious, or the Honour of the Order became fixed upon more generous Spirits. But to speak impartially, there may grow an Excess in such Solemnities, even to Shame and Surfeit; and the best Cure to prescribe for it, is a long Abstinence. Nor was this Festival at all Times free from this Distemper, but then a quick Application of the Sovereign's soon rectified it by taking away the Cause, and prohibiting Excess in their Attendants.

For this reason it was that King *James* I. observing those Excesses the elect Knights run into upon this Occasion, and willing to cheque the growing Inconveniencies, at the Installation, of *Francis*, Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, Kt. (afterwards Duke of *Buckingham*) and the Viscount *Lisle*, *Anno* 14 of his Reign, *forbid Livery Coats, for saving Charge, and avoiding Emulation*; and shortly after, in a Chapter at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 16. with the Consent of the *Knights-Companions* then assembled, to put some restraint upon the Number of Attendants, decreed, *That every of the Knights-Companions should have fifty Persons to attend him unto the Annual Solemnities of the Order, and no more.*

In the Installation of *William*, Earl of *Northampton*,

Anno 5 *Car.* I. we find this stinted Number encreased to fourscore, who began his Cavalcade to *Windsor*, from *Salisbury* House in the *Strand*, and certainly wou'd have exhibited a more glorious Show, had not a continual Rain for three Days space impeded him. Nevertheless, that what he designed with so much Splendor and Gallantry might out-live the accident of foul Weather, the Order of it shall be inserted here.

The Order of riding to the Installation of William, *Earl of* Northampton, *20th of* April, 1629.

1. Trumpets, whose Banners were of Damask, and had the Earls Arms, with his Crest and Supporters environed with a Garter.
2. The meanest of his Servants; as Grooms and Yeomen, in Blue Coats, two and two.
3. His Lordship's other Servants, in Blue Coats; as Gentlemen, Esquires, and Knights, two and two.
4. Two Secretaries; Mr. *Ralph Goodwin*, and Mr. *Francis Merosse*.
5. Steward, Mr. *Cuthbert Ogle*.
6. Comptroller, Mr. *William Goodwyn*.
7. Two Pages.
8. His spare Horse, led by the Gentleman of his Horse.
9. His Chaplain to distribute his Alms.
10. Pursiuvants at Arms, two and two.
11. Gentleman Usher, Mr. *Walter Thomas*, Bareheaded.
12. The Senior Herald covered.
13. The Earls of *Berkshire*, *Northampton*, and *Salisbury*.
14. Noblemen in their Places, two and two.

15. Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemen, which accompanied him.
16. The Commissioners Servants.
17. Other Noblemens, Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemens Servants.

Henry Earl of *Danby*, and *William* Earl of *Morton*, being to receive the Honour of Installation, *Anno* 10 *Car.* I. disposed themselves for their more commodious Passage, and the Peoples View; one was at *Warwick House* in *Holbourn*, and the other at *Dorset House* in *Salisbury-court*, and made their Progression severally through the Streets to *Hyde-Park*, each having two Noblemen to support him, with their Footmen in rich Coats on either side them.

Their Gentlemen Ushers rode Bareheaded, and before them the Officers of Arms wearing their Coats, and their Servants in blue Coats and Cognizances, (as was the ancient Mode,) were all led on by Trumpets. The rest of the Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen followed after each Knight's elect Troop, according to their Rank and Quality foremost. The Proceeding of the Earl of *Morton*, was Marshalled in this manner.

1. Trumpets, two and two.
2. Grooms in Coats, two and two.
3. Yeomen, two and two.
4. Gentlemen, two and two.
5. Secretaries.
6. Stewards.
7. Gentleman of the Horse.
8. Pages.
9. Four Officers of Arms.
10. Gentleman Usher bare.

11. *Lancaster* Herald covered.
12. Earl *Morton*, supported between two chief Lords.
13. Foot-men on each side, in rich Coats.
14. Noblemen and Gentlemen, according to their Degrees.

At *Slough*, (two Miles on this side *Windsor*,) they all made a stand, and being again placed in Order, they proceeded to *Windsor Castle*, where, alighting in the lower Court, the Knights elect were conducted to their several Apartments.

The last Cavalcade this Age has beheld, was exhibited by *Algernoon*, Earl of *Northumberland*, *May* 13. *Anno* 11 *Car.* I. from *Dorset House* in *Salisbury-court*, toward *Windsor*; nor was it the least in Pomp and Glory: Eight and forty Gentlemen preceeded, then came the Pages, being Earls Sons, *viz.*

1. Mr. *William Herbert*, Mr. *John Herbert*, Mr. *Philip Cecil*, Mr. *Algernoon Sidney*.
2. Heralds at Arms, two and two.
3. Mr. *Blundeville*, Gentleman Usher, Bareheaded.
4. *Norroy* King of Arms.
5. Marquiss of *Winchester*.
6. The Earls of *Northumberland* and *Kent*.

And somewhat behind him, the rest of the Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen in order; they had Priority according to their Quality, Riding two and two, and the Coaches closing up the Troop.

There was a publick Cavalcade designed from *Somerset House* in the *Strand*, to *Windsor Castle*, when King *Charles* II. was to have been installed, which though it proved Abortive, yet ought not to be

omitted, by reason of the Chancellor's Letter to each *Knight-Companion*, to make Preparation to attend him thither.

May it please your Lordship,

"The King's Majesty, Sovereign of this most Noble Order of the Garter, having determined to Create the Prince his Eldest Son Knight, and to propose him in Election, to be a Companion of his Order; for the better Conveniency of his Installation, hath prorogued, by a Commission under the Seal of his Order, given the 25th of *February*, now remaining in my Custody, the Celebration of the Feast of St. *George*, from the 22, 23, and 24 of *April* next, whereon it shou'd have been Solemnized, unto the 21, 22, and 23 of *May*, immediately ensuing; and thereby given Command to all the *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of this Order, that they should attend his Royal Person, at his Palace of *White-Hall*, upon those Days appointed. In discharge of the Duty of my Place, and by special Order, I do signify unto your Lordship his Majesty's Will, and that it is his Pleasure, for the more Honour of the Prince, and the Noble Feast of his Election and Installation, that your Lordship shou'd be attended with your Servants and Retinue, according to solemn Custom, and be prepared to Accompany his Higness, from *Somerset House* in the *Strand*, unto the Castle of *Windsor*, upon the 18th of that Month, and assist at the Ceremony and Feast of his Installation, upon the Day following: Praying your Lordship that you would be pleased to take knowlege hereby, both of the Time and Place designed, and of the Sovereign's Order, I humbly rest,"

In all due Obedience,

and Observance,

Thomas Rowe.

St. *Martin's-lane*,
Feb. 27. 1637.

When this Letter was issued out, the Sovereign intended to create the Prince Knight of the *Bath*, which Ceremonies were intended to begin at the old *Palace-yard* in *Westminster*, upon the 21st Day of *May*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* I. and to Solemnize the Feast of St. *George*, upon the 23d of the same Month at *White-Hall*, and to take the Scrutiny that Evening for his Election into this Order: The next Day was designed to invest him with the Garter and George, and the Day after to set forward the Cavalcade towards *Windsor*, wherein also the Knights of the *Bath*, (intended to be created with the Prince,) were to Ride with their Robes. But this Resolution being altered, stop'd the Progression of the Cavalcade, and in the room of a Knight of the *Bath*, he was created a *Knight-Batchellor* at *Windsor*.

Formerly it was the manner for the Sovereign's Lieutenant to Ride to *Windsor*, attended with a gallant and glittering Train, and no small Number of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen richly attired, and in every Punctilio fifty set out, as was seen in the Cavalcade of the Duke of *Norfolk*, Earl Marshal of *England*, and Lieutenant for the Sovereign, for St. *George*'s Feast, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* who had attending him twenty of his own Gentlemen and Yeomen, at the Time the Earls of *Northumberland* and *Warwick* were to be installed; but this was never put in Practice, but

when the Sovereign appointed the Installation and the Feast of St. *George* to be celebrated together.

The Lieutenant, and his Assistants, or sometimes the *Knights-Commissioners*, (if the Feast of St. *George* be not then Solemnized,) being arrived in the Castle, immediately retire to their Lodgings, which for the most part have been prepared at the *Dean's House*, whose Rooms are the fairest in the Castle, and the best fitted for Accommodation, next to those of the Sovereign's in the upper Ward; and for the Knights elect, they were at all Times furnished with Lodgings in some of the Prebends Houses.

The Offering in the Chappel, on the Eve of the Feast.

§ 2. If it so chanced that the Installation was performed by Commissioners, and the Cavalcade proceeded from *London*, in the Morning of the Day preceeding the Installation, and arrived at the Castle of *Windsor* early that Afternoon; then the *Knights-Commissioners* have been accustomed only to put on their Mantles, and enter St. *George*'s Chappel to offer; but without the Attendance of Heralds, or any solemn Procession into the Choir, save one of the Prebends; where having placed themselves in their Stalls with usual Reverences, and heard an Anthem, they passed up to the Altar with the Verger and Garter before them, and there made their Offering, both of Gold and Silver, according to the usual Custom. As soon as *Vespers* were finished, after the same manner they descended from their Stalls, and departed to their Lodgings; and in this case the *Knights-Commissioners* did not lay by their Mantles till Supper was ended.

In this nature was the Ceremony of Offering (on the Eve of the Installation) performed by the Lord Admiral and Earl of *Ormond*, Commissioners for the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* But at the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland*, and others, *Anno* 26 *Eliz.* the Lord *Hunsdon* (one of the Commissioners for that Solemnity,) refused to make his Offering alone, though he arrived timely enough, on the Eve of the Feast at *Windsor* Castle, because he wanted the Company of Viscount *Mountague*, who was a joynt Commissioner with him, that arrived not till the Morning after.

This Offering of the *Knights-Commissioners*, coming to the Castle on the Eve of the Installation, is founded upon an Article of *Edward* III. which runs to this Effect: *That if any of the* Knights-Companions, *being upon a Journey, shou'd accidentally pass by* Windsor-Castle, *he is to turn in thither, in Honour of the Place, and prepare himself to enter into the Chappel to Offer; first putting on his Mantle, without which he must never presume to enter into it*; but upon Emergencies, and allowable Causes, he is to be excused.

After the *Knight-Companion* had entered the Castle, the Canons Resident were, by the aforesaid Article, appointed to meet and recieve him, and with due Reverence conduct him into the Choir. If it was at the Celebration of High Mass, the Knight was obliged to stay and hear it, in Honour of God and St. *George*; but if he arrived in the Afternoon, he was to stay till the Canons, and the rest of the Choir, had sung the Anthem *de Profundis*, which no sooner was ended, but he proceeded to the High Altar and Offered, and returned to his Stall with usual Reverences, and then departed.

But if the *Knight-Companion* passed through the Town of *Windsor*, and neglected to Offer at the Chappel, as often as he omitted it, he was bound, upon his Obedience, to walk a Mile on Foot to the Chappel, in Honour of St. *George*, and upon defailure, to offer a Peny, which by King *Henry* VIII's Statutes is inlarged to a Groat. Upon the Explication of this Article, there arose a Dispute about the just Distance intended from the Castle; and that the Knights-Companions might be sensible of the breach of the Injunction, it was thought requisite by King *Henry* VIII. to set down a certain Bound, which in his Statutes is declared to be two Miles; within which, if any of the *Knights-Companions* come, and do not repair to the Chappel and Offer, he is liable to the Mulct before specified.

Upon Hunting, or other Pastimes the Forest afforded, they used to send their Offering in Money to the Canons, which being received, the Knights took it for a Dispensation of the Ceremony enjoined by the Statutes.

Endeavours were used to have this Article interpreted with greater Latitude, which so far took Effect, that at a Chapter called at *Windsor* the 10th of *October*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. it was ordered, that some Expedient might be found out, to save the Knights from the Breach of their Oath, if they came within the limited Distance of the Place, and passed thence without Offering. But no farther Progress being made in that Affair, the Law stands as it did.

The Supper of the Eve.

§ 3. The Supper, after their arrival at *Windsor*, is but in the Nature of a private Meal, and prepared for

the Lieutenant (or Commissioners) or Knights elect, most commonly at the Dean's House. *Anno* 26 *Eliz.* on the Eve of the Installation of the Earl of *Rutland* and Lord *Cobham*, the Commissioners supped together with such Lords and Gentlemen of Figure as came along with them; and no Nobleman had above one Servant to attend him at the Table, and the rest provided for themselves at their proper Inns. Sometimes they have been permitted to Sup in some Appartments of the Sovereign's Lodgings; for so it was at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, and other elect Knights, *Anno* 31 *Henry* VIII. and likewise of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and Lord *Hunsdon*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the Lieutenant and Knights supped in the great Chamber there, in the same Regularity that was used at other Times. And in the 34th of Queen *Elizabeth*, when the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* were installed, all the Lords and Gentlemen supped together at one long Table set in the Council Chamber.

The Order in proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 4. Before we come to the particular Ceremonies of the Installation, transacted either by the Sovereign, (or in his absence by his Lieutenant or Commissioners,) we shall premise this general Remark: That since neither the Statutes of *Institution*, nor those of King *Henry* V. afford us a Formulary for the Personal Installation of a Knight elect; yet those enacted by King *Henry* VIII. do briefly exhibit the Order and Method of it. And we must farther observe, that if the Installation be appointed together with the Feast of St. *George*, then either the Sovereign, or else his Lieutenant and Assistants are

present; but if at any other Season, then it passeth by Commissioners only.

After such time therefore as the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commissioners, have prefixed the Hour wherein to proceed to the Chapter House, in Order to the Installation, (which has generally been dispatched in the Evening,) all the *Knights-Companions*, and elect Knights, the Officers of the Order, and of Arms, the Prebends of the College, and Alms-Knights, are to give their Attendance, *viz.* the Knights-Companions, and elect Knights, and Officers, of the Order, on the Sovereign, in his inward Lodging; the elect Knights, and Officers of Arms, in the Presence Chamber, the Prebends and Alms-Knights, in the Great Chamber, where they waited the Sovereign's coming forth.

The Attendance to be given upon the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and such of the Knights-Companions as are appointed for his Assistants, is by the Officers of the Order and of Arms, the Prebends and Alms-Knights, either at his Lodgings, or elsewhere he shall deem meet to appoint; from which the Knights-Companions are exempt. For though the Knights-Companions have sometimes proceeded to the Chappel before the Sovereign's Lieutenant, at an Installation, yet hath it been at such time only, as they accompanied their Sovereign to *Windsor*, to hold the Feast of St. *George*; and if the Sovereign, through any Indisposition, or weighty Affair, cou'd not pass down to the Chappel on the Eve of the Feast, yet they being obliged by the Statutes to celebrate *Vespers*, did upon this Occasion proceed thither, though not upon the Account of Installation; as it fell out at the Installation of Prince *Henry*, and four other Knights, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. when the Progression began from the Presence Chamber, and

thence passed to the Chappel in the following Order.

1. Alms-Knights.
2. Prebends.
3. Pursuivants.
4. Heralds.
5. *Ulster* King of Arms.
6. *Lyon* King of Arms.
7. *Clarenceux* King of Arms.
8. The four elect Knights.
9. Knights-Companions.
10. Garter.
11. Register.
12. Black Rod.
13. Chancellor.
14. The Sovereign's Lieutenant leading the Prince in his Hand.

At the Installation of the Duke of *Brunswick*, and five other elect Knights, the 23d of *November*, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. the Knights-Companions likewise proceeded before the Sovereign's Lieutenants, tho' the Sovereign was at *Windsor*, but not in the Cavalcade.

Upon the Sovereign's Commissioners, neither the Knights-Companions, nor the Prelate, nor Chancellor, do give their Attendance; only at the Grand Feast of St. *George*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. the Chancellor then waiting on the Sovereign at *Windsor*, in the Duties of his Place, out of a singular Regard to his Royal Highness the Duke of *York*, attending the Commissioners in the proceeding to his Installation, for at that time he was Comptroller of his Houshould.

The Proceedings on this solemn Occasion have been generally order'd on Foot; yet upon

extraordinary Incidents have been marshalled and disposed on Horse-back, in manner of a Cavalcade, as was used at the Installation of *Philip* King of *Castile*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. and that when the Lord *Russel* and other elect Knights were installed, *Anno* 31 *Hen.* VIII. King *Philip* (when the Earl of *Sussex* was installed, *Anno* 1 and 2. *Ph.* and *Mar.*) honoured him with his Presence, and riding on Horse-back, with several of the Knights-Companions, from his Lodgings in the Castle, down to the Cloister Door, at the East-End of the Chappel, and there alighting, proceeded directly to the Chapter-House. The Proceeding was on Horse-back, at the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and the Lord *Hunsdon*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* and at the Earl of *Northumberland*'s and Earl of *Warwick*'s, *Anno* 5. At the Installation of *Francis*, Duke *Montmorency*, the Viscount *Hereford*, and the Lords *Burleigh*, *Grey*, and *Shandos*, *Anno* 14 *Eliz.* The Sovereign's Lieutenant and Knights Assistants did Robe themselves in the Sovereign's Lodging in the Castle; and meeting in the Presence Chamber, proceeded downwards towards the outer Hall-door, in the upper Ward of the Castle, when taking their Horses, adorned with Foot Clothes, they proceeded on Horse-back to the West Door of the Chappel.

If the Progression was begun on Horse-back at the beginning of the Feast, so it continued, as often as the Sovereign (his Lieutenant or Commissioner) went to the Chapter-House, or Chappel, and their returns were marshalled in the like Order at their setting out.

The Servants and Attendants belonging to the Knights elect, (if they be taken into the Procession,) pass on first two and two in a Rank, according to their Quality; and those who are the most inferior, the foremost: Next the Alms-Knights in their Habits and usual Order.

Then follows the Virger of the College.

After him the Prebends or Canons: But what attendance they have given heretofore at the Installations, the Memoirs of this illustrious Society is wholly silent in; for in those Schemes left us of proceeding to Installations, in the Reigns of King *Henry* VIII. King *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary*, and part of Queen *Elizabeth*, we find them not inserted, though since they are next to the Prebends of the College, the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, proceed in a Body.

After them the Knights-Subjects elect, unless the Proctor of an absent Knight-Subject, pass at the same time in this Proceeding, who take Place after the Provincial Kings: And if it so chance, that the Proctor to a Stranger-Prince be present at the same time, he is to proceed between the Knight-Subject's Proctor, and the Knights-Subject elect. But Prince *Henry* at his Installation, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. moved in a Place Superior to all the Knights-Companions, and was paired with the Earl of *Nottingham*, the Sovereign's Lieutenant for that Occasion. Where two or more elect Knights prepare for their Installation at the same time, they take Place according to the Seniority of their Election, going two and two together; and if the Number be odd, the Junior elect Knight passeth alone. Formerly the elect Knight passed in his ordinary Apparel, wearing over it in Days of Yore a short Gown, afterwards a Cloak, and of latter Times a Coat, as did the Earl of *Northumberland*, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* and the Earls of *Pembrook* and *Derby*, *Anno* 16 *Eliz.* and the Annals of the Order make this remark upon the Earl of *Sussex*, and the Lord *Buckhurst*, *Anno* 31 of *Eliz.* of *Charles* Duke of *York*, *An.* 9 *Jac.* I. But this was before any peculiar under Habit, was appointed to the Knights-Companions, for now there being a

Cloth of Silver Doublet, and Trunk Hose, established to be worn at the Feast of Installation, and of St. *George*, the elect Knight proceeds in this Dress, as did the Duke of *Albermarle*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II.

In this proceeding to the Chapter-House, he wears only the Garter about his Leg, and the George and the Ribbond wherewith he was invested, either about his Neck, or as of late drawn under his right Arm, which being omitted by Sir *George Villars*, and Viscount *Lisle*, is noted to be contrary to order.

The Earl of *Rutland* with his Fellow elect Knights, *Anno* 14 *Jac.* I. proceeded Bare-headed, as did the Duke of *Lenox*, *Anno* 9 *Car.* I. as well as the Duke of *Albermarle*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II.

The elect Knight does not always make one in this Proceeding, but sometimes stays at his Lodgings in the Castle, as did the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* or else at some other convenient Station adjoining to the Chapter-House, till he be sent for in thither, to receive Investiture with the Surcoat, as the Duke of *Montmorency* did, and other elect Knights, *Anno* 14 *Eliz.* who went privately from the Sovereign's Lodgings, down to the House of Mr. *French*, (then one of the Prebends,) and rested in the Parlour, until they were sent for: Sometimes the Knight elect goes privately into the East-Isle of the Chappel behind the High Altar, and there remains till called in, as did the Duke of *Monmouth*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II.

If the Sovereign be present at the Installation, the Knights-Companions proceed next after the Knights elect, according to the order of their Stalls; but if the Sovereign's Lieutenant, then his Assistants go in their Places; as at the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury* and Lord *Hunsdon*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* makes plain, the proceeding being ordered after this manner.

1. Vergers.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Officers of Arms.
4. Elect-Knights.
5. Assistants to the Lieutenants.
6· Officers of the Order.
7. Earl of *Arundel*, Lieutenant.

If the Installation be dispatched by Commissioners, then the three inferior Officers of the Order immediately follow the Knight elect, and proceed next before the Commissioners, and they were thus marshalled at the Installation of the Earl of *Northampton*, *Anno* 5 *Car.* I.

1. The Earls Servants.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Prebends.
4. Heralds.
5. Elect-Knights.
6. Officers of the Order.
7. The Sovereign's Commissioners.

Yet *Anno* 16 *Eliz.* at the Installation of the Earls of *Pembrook* and *Derby*, we find the Officers did precede the elect Knights, but it was through inadvertency; at the Installation of the Earl of *Northampton*, some Question and Debate arose, concerning the precedency of these three Officers, in this proceeding, where it was at length concluded, that from the Castle to the Chappel, they shou'd proceed before the Commissioners; but in returning from the Chappel to the Castle, they shou'd follow.

We presume the Question, (whatsoever it was)

chanced not to be propounded, till the proceeding was ready to pass on, and then started on a sudden, because the Heralds (as the Annals note,) did not quickly discypher the matter, that it proceeded more from surprize, than want of Ability to resolve.

This determination which took Place, was barely grounded upon Conjecture, and if seriously considered, will appear disconsonant to Precedents and Practice, both before and since; where all returns are marshalled answerable to their setting forth, unless the Condition of any Person in the mean time suffer a Mutation.

It's observable, that when Installation pass by Commissioners only, these three inferior Officers wear their Robes, but bear not the Ensigns of their Office in the Proceeding. And this seems to be deduced from particular Injunctions, laid down in the Constitutions belonging to the Officers of the Order, which appoint Garter and Black-Rod to bear the Ensigns of their Offices at the Feast of St. *George*, when the Sovereign or his Deputy shall be present; whence it may be inferred, that if either chance to be absent, they are under no obligation to bear them: For at the Installations of *Frederick*, King of *Denmark*, and *John Casimire*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Anno* 25 *Eliz.* no Ensigns were born by the Officers; and so was it practised the Year after, at the Installations of the Earl of *Rutland* and Lord *Cobham*, as the Red-Book of Order plainly sets forth. But if the Sovereign himself be present, or that he constitute a Lieutenant in his stead, the Register then carries the Red-Book, and the Garter and the Black-Rod bear each of them their Rods. It is remarkable, that in every proceeding to Installation, by Lieutenant, or Commissioners, the Garter carries the Sovereign's Commission in his Hand before them to the Chapter-House. At the

Installation of the Earls of *Derby* and *Moreton*, the Officers of the Order proceeded before the Knights to the Chapter-House, not only without the Ensigns of their Office, but their Heads covered; and the reporter of this Installation gives this for a reason; because there was then neither the Sovereign, nor his Lieutenant, representing the King's Person, present.

The Sovereign sometimes being willing to confer additional Honours to some elect Knights, hath appointed their Installation at such time as he personally solemnized the Feast of St. *George*, as he did at the Installation and Election of *Philip* King of *Castile*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. which for its memorableness, and mixt proceeding on Horse-back, we shall insert in this Place: He passed from the Sovereign's Lodging in the Castle, to the South-Door of St. *George*'s-*Chappel*, and was thus ordered.

1. Knights according to their Degrees.
2. Lords after their Degrees.
3. Knights-Companions in their whole Habit, bearing Company with some of the Knights of the Order of *Joyson d'Or*.
4. Prelate of the Order.
5. Archbishop of *Canterbury*.
6. The *Spanish* Ambassador.
7. *Joyson d'Or*, King of Arms, in Coat of Arms.
8. Garter King of Arms, in his Coat of Arms.
9. The Sword.
10. *Philip* King of *Castile*.
11. The Prince.
12. King *Henry* VII. Sovereign of the Order.

Anno 19 *Jac.* I. was another instance at the Feast of St. *George*, when the Sovereign, with several Knights-

Companions, proceeded also to the Chapel, at the personal Installation of *Frederick*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*; we might add several other Examples, but shall only mention that of the personal appearance of King *Charles* II. at the grand Feast of St. *George*, held next after his happy Restoration, whereat twelve elect Knights were installed. At this Solemnity of Installation, the Sovereign proceeds in full Robes, having the Sword of State born before him by a Nobleman not of the Order, his Train-bearers, *&c.* following the Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Assistants, as also the Commissioners proceed in full Robes, which is mention'd, *Anno* 31 *Henry* VIII. when the Earl of *Arundel* and his Assistants installed the Lord *Russel* and two other elect Knights, but the Sovereign's Lieutenant only hath his Train carried up, which is usually perform'd by some of his own Gentlemen.

The Processional way (if beginning in the Presence-Chamber,) is from thence in the upper Ward of the Castle, and through the other Wards in at the Cloyster Door, and so to the Chapter-House; but if from the Dean's House, they go only through the Cloysters, into which there is an immediate Passage from the Deanry: The proceeding having entred the East Door of St. *George*'s Chapel, and past by the Chapter-House Door, makes a stand in the North Isle; while first the Officers of the Order, next the Knights-Commissioners, or else the Knights-Assistants, and the Sovereign's Lieutenant; or lastly the Knights-Companions, and the Sovereign with the Sword born before him, pass into the Chapter-House, but the Knight or Knights elect do not enter, but as they come in at the Chapel-Door, they fall off on the left Hand into the East Isle behind the high Altar, and there repose themselves, (on Chairs or Stools,

with Cushions purposely prepared,) until they are called into the Chapter-House. This hath generally been the Custom, of which many Examples might be produced, but in respect to great Personages they have been sometimes (though rarely) admitted into the Chapter-House, with the Sovereign or his Lieutenant, among whom *Philip* of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. and Prince *Henry*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. the latter was led in by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, when four other elect Knights installed with him sat till they receiv'd their Summons to enter.

Sometime the Sovereign and Knights-Companions wav'd going to the Chapter-House, and pass'd immediately into the Choir, as did King *James Anno* 9. when *Charles* Duke of *York* and others were installed; the like did King *Charles* I. but then a Chapter was held in the Privy-Chamber, before the proceeding set forward; and in the former instance, when the proceeding came as far as the East End of the Chapel, the Duke of *York*, *&c.* with *Norroy* before them, went out of the proceeding into the Chapter-House, and there reposed, while the Sovereign proceeded on to the South Door of the Chapel, and thence into the Choir.

The Ceremonies perform'd in the Chapter-House.

§ 5. After the Lieutenant's entrance into the Chapter-House, and opening the Chapter; Garter, with three Reverences, presents first the Commissioners of Lieutenancy to hold the Feast, next that of Installation, to the Lieutenant, (or if the Installation pass'd by Commissioners, then only the

Commission of Installation to the Senior Commissioner,) which being receiv'd, he delivers it to the Register of the Order, who forthwith Reads it; for to him this Duty belongs, as is recorded in the Black-Book of the Order, on occasion of Garter's reading the Commission for Installation of Sir *Thomas Brandon*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. the Register being then absent.

When the Register hath read the Commissions, he returns them to the Lieutenant, (or Commissioners,) and he again to the Garter, as at the Installation of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* If the Sovereign be present, the Chancellor acquaints him the Knights elect are without, otherwise the Lieutenant, and Assistants, (or Commissioners) consult touching the calling in, and receiving them, and Garter is usually employed in this Service; who, with all due respect, compliments and conducts him to the Chapter-House Door: But in the instance of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland* aforesaid, Garter went to their Lodgings, and having delivered his Message, they forthwith repaired to the Chapter-House, their Train attending them to the Door: At the Installation of *Francis* Duke of *Montmorency*, the Earl of *Leicester*, then the Sovereign's Lieutenant, as an evidence of singular respect, sent from the Chapter two of the four Assistants assigned him, who taking Garter, and the Officers of Arms before them, led him thence between them to the Chapter-House.

When there are two or more elect Knights, that wait in the East Isle, expecting to be called in, Garter first conducts the Senior by Election to the Chapter-House Door, and so the rest in their several Orders, as in 14 *Jac.* I. by the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and the Viscount *Lisle*; and so again 13 *Car.*

II. As soon as Garter hath conducted the elect Knight to the Chapter-House Door, two of the Commissioners, (when the Installation is performed by Commissioners,) or two of the Knights-Assistants, (when by the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) or two of the Senior Knights, (if the Sovereign himself be present,) receive him without, who is immediately conducted from the Chapter-House Door, up to the Sovereign, (his Lieutenant, or Commissioners,) to whom he makes humble Reverence; when the Lieutenant, (or Senior Commissioners,) in a short Speech, publishes the effect of his Commission, and declares to him the Sovereign's bounty and ready kindness, in a full admittance into this Honourable Society, which the elect Knight very humbly acknowledges and accepts. When *Philip* King of *Castile* and *Leon* was installed in Person, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. the Sovereign being present rose from his Throne, and gave him Information of the Statutes and Ceremonies of the Order, and how he was bound by them; to all which he freely and readily assented.

These Ceremonies of receiving an elect Knight being over, he disrobes himself of his upper Garment, then the Surcoat and Kirtle is taken from the Table, with which he is invested; and during this Ceremony, the following Words of Admonition, entred at the end of King *Hen.* VIII's Book of English Statutes, are read or spoken.

Take this Robe of Purple, to the encrease of your Honour, and in Token, or Sign, of the most Honourable Order you have receiv'd; wherewith you being defended, may be bold not only strong to Fight, but also to offer your self to shed your Blood for Christ's Faith, the Liberties of the Church, and the just and necessary

defence of them that are oppressed and needy.

After this, his Sword is close girt about him over his Surcoat, by the Commissioners, (or the Assistants to the Lieutenant, or some of the Knights-Companions,) and sometimes in the way of assistance, Garter hath done this Service; and as soon as the Ceremony is over, the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, proceeds into the Choir, leaving the elect Knights behind them: The Hood was heretofore put on in the Chapter-House, (for so the Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. do appoint,) after the elect Knight hath been invested with his Surcoat, and before he proceeded to his Installation; but of late, because it must be taken off again in the Choir, and laid aside, that the Mantle may be put on, it hath been esteemed a sort of diminution in the Investiture to take off any part of the Habit before the whole Investiture be compleated; so that in the beginning of the Reign of King *James* I. it was judged more convenient that the Hood should be carried on the Cushion by Garter into the Choir, together with the Mantle and Collar, and not be put on till after Investiture with the Mantle; and thus it was observed at the Feasts of St. *George*, 13, 15, and 23 *Car.* II. And though antiently it was laid over the left Shoulder, and so worn upon all Occasions, yet *Anno* 2 and 3 *Phil.* and *Mar.* the wearing it so being taken notice of to obscure the Escutcheon of St. *George*, embroidered on the same Shoulder of the Mantle, it was decreed in a Chapter held the same Year, 22 of *April*, that for the future the Knights-Companions should wear their Hoods on their right Shoulders, to the end that the Escutcheon might be the better seen and appear.

Nevertheless, there was a Question moved 12 *Jac.*

I. whether the usage of wearing the Hood should not be restored to the left Shoulder, but it seems it was over-ruled; and 23 *Car.* II. some of the Knights-Companions imagining it most proper to wear their Hoods on their left Shoulders, ran into that error, but upon better information the next Morning, altered them to the right. To Foreign Princes, there is liberty given by King *Hen.* VIII's Statutes to receive, if they please, their Habit wholly within the Chapter-House, before they enter their Stalls; by which it appears that this was the Custom in times past; an instance whereof we have in *Philip* King of *Castile*, *Anno* 22 *Henry* VII. who was entirely invested in the Chapter-House with the Garter, Surcoat, Mantle, Hood, and Collar; the Sovereign himself putting his Hand to his Investiture with the Mantle. Hence King *Philip*, Grandson to the aforesaid King of *Castile*, was invested with the whole Habit of the Order before he assumed the Stall; in *Philip* and *Mary*'s proceeding to the Chapel, he receiv'd his Investiture within the West Door, and there the Register delivered the Mantle to the Earls of *Derby* and *Pembrook*, who kissing it, presented it to the Queen, who, assisted by the said Earls, personally invested the King therewith: Next Garter gave the Collar to the Earls of *Arundel* and *Pembrook*, who likewise presented it to the Queen, and she thereon put it about King *Philip*'s Neck; and immediately the Knights-Companions, having robed themselves within the Chapel Door, proceeded before the King and Queen, who with joined Hands passed into the Choir, where the Queen led him to the Sovereign's Stall, which ascending, they both sat therein. But as the aforesaid Statute leaves this to the pleasure of the Stranger Prince, and was permitted only for gaining Time, so none, who have receiv'd personal Installation at *Windsor* since,

have been fully invested before they entered the Choir. For instance, *Francis*, Duke *de Montmorency*, 14 *Eliz.* and *Frederick*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, 10 *Jac.* I. were both invested with their Surcoats only in the Chapter-House, but they receiv'd their Mantles, Hoods, and Collars, in their Stalls, after they had taken their Oaths.

The proceeding into the Choir.

§ 6. The Knight elect, habited as before, proceeds from the Chapter-House along the North Isle, and enters the West Door of the Choir in solemn Order; but his Place in this proceeding is changed, for here he is led between two Knights-Companions. This is noted in the Black-Book to be the Order wherein *Albra Vasques d'Almadea*, Earl of *Averence*, and two others, proceeded to their Installations, 24 *Henry* VI. And notwithstanding the Statutes of Institution, and those made by King *Henry* V. are silent in the Order of this Proceeding; yet for an elect Knight to be led to his Stall between two fellow Knights, is no modern Ceremony; since we likewise find, that the Viscount *Bourchier*, 30 *Henry* VI. past to his Instalment between the Lord *Hastings* and Lord *Beauchamp*. But the Order of proceeding is precisely set down in *Henry* VIII's Statutes, *viz. That the elect Knight, attended by his Gentlemen and Servants, shall be led between two other Knights-Companions, the Officers of the Order going before them.* And this has been the constant Practice at all Installations since; the Knight elect proceeding, either between two of the Knights-Commissioners, when there hath been no Lieutenant, or between two of the Knights Assistants, where a Lieutenant was constituted; or lastly between the two

Senior Knights-Companions, the Sovereign being present: But when there hath been three Commissioners named, then the two Senior Commissioners take the Knight elect between them, and the Junior Knight-Commissioner proceeds before them; which was observed at the Instalment of the Earls of *Essex* and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, 30 *Eliz.*

In all cases where the Sovereign is present at an Installation, after the custom of investing with the Collar in the Chapter-House was left off, it is generally to be observed, that as soon as the Investiture with the Surcoat is finished, the Sovereign passes from the Chapter-House into the Choir, with the whole proceeding before him, leaving the elect Knight behind; and when he and the Knights-Companions have taken their Stalls, the two Senior Knights-Companions, by the Sovereign's verbal Directions, descend from their Stalls, and stand under their Banners, whilst the Alms-Knights, but not the Prebends, Officers of Arms, and the three inferior Officers of the Order, pass out of the Choir, and proceed before them to the Chapter-House, from whence they introduce the elect Knight into the Choir to his Installation; but if there be more than one Knight installed, then the two next Senior Knights descend, and so the next, till all the elect Knights are Conducted in: And this course is likewise observed when a Lieutenant is constituted, and hath been generally so practised since the Investiture with the Collar was performed in the Choir; and particularly at the Installations of the Duke of *Lenox*, the Earls of *Pembrook*, *Marr*, and *Southampton*, 1 *Jac.* I. and of the Duke of *Holstein*, and the Earl of *Northampton*, 3 *Jac.* I. In this proceeding to Installation, the Register usually carries a Book of the

New Testament, for the elect Knight to take his Oath on, as likewise the Oath it self, fairly written on Parchment: Garter bears his Mantle till he arrives at his Stall; and King *Henry* VIII's Statutes place this Service upon some of the Knights-Companions likewise; but it never appears that it was ever performed by any of them. 'Tis probable, that about the time when this Injunction passed, it was the Custom for Garter to bear the Mantle on his Arm; for so it was at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, and others, 31 *Henry* VIII. but it was not long after, that the laying it on a Velvet Cushion began. The great Collar of the Order was likewise laid upon the Cushion, at the Installation of Sir *Henry Sidney*, 6 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, 34 *Eliz.* and in this manner born before the Knights elect, 13 *Car.* II. before the Duke of *Monmouth*, 15 *Car.* II. and before the Duke of *Albermarle*, 23 *Car.* II. with these the Hood, heretofore put on in the Chapter-House, hath of late been laid on the Cushion, and also the Book of Statutes, and so born by Garter before Prince *Henry*, 1 *Jac.* I. and *Frederick*, Elector Palatine, 10 *Jac.* I. and before the Knights Installation, 13 *Car.* II. and since.

And here it is to be observed, that when Garter bears the Ornaments and Ensigns on the Cushion before an elect Knight, or a Proctor, he is always placed between the Register and Black-Rod in the proceeding: Lastly, in this proceeding the Knight elect goeth Bare-headed, holding his Cap in his Hand; and so did the Duke of *Albermarle*, 23 *Car.* II. for it hath been thought incongruous to the Order of Investiture, as is before observed of the Hood, to put on any part of the Habit, or other Ornaments, that must be taken off again, before the Investiture is compleated; and the proper Place for putting on the Cap is not till all the other is finished.

The Ceremonies of Installation.

§ 7. When the proceeding hath entered the Choir, the Alms-Knights, and Officers of Arms, make their Obeysances toward the High Altar, and the Sovereign's Royal Stall, in the manner hereafter described; then they proceed to the Steps before the Altar, and divide themselves; next the Officers of the Order make the same Reverence; and lastly, the two Commissioners, or Knights Assistants, or Knights-Companions, and Knights-elect, all three together. After this the Officers of the Order turn aside toward the Stall designed for the elect Knight, and approaching near it, stand below in the Choir, whilst the Commissioners, or Assistants, or Knights-Companions, pass into the lower Row of Stalls, sometimes called the middle Row, directly under the designed Stall, leading the elect Knight with them, who in this Place takes his Oath, called in the Annals, the sacred Oath of the Order of the Garter; during which time he ought to stand between the two Knights-Companions who brought him thither, as at the Installation of Prince *Henry*, 1 *Jac.* I. and when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was installed, 34 *Eliz.* 'tis observed, that the Senior Commissioner first entered the lower row of Stalls; but 31 *Henry* VIII. at the Installation of the Lord *Russel*, and others, the Junior Assistant went up first. The Knight elect being thus placed, the Register of the Order standing before them, but below in the Choir, reads the Oath; for it is part of his Duty to administer the same: And in this solemn Ceremony, the New Testament, whereon the Oath is taken, generally opened in some Place of the Gospels, is indifferently held by one of the three inferior Officers of the Order, or sometimes the Register hath held it, as at the Installation of the

Earl of *Derby*, 16 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Rutland*, and Lord *Cobham*, 26 *Eliz.* At other times the Garter hath held it, as 5 *Eliz.* when the Earl of *Northumberland* took his Oath; and 10 *Car.* I. at the Installation of the Earl of *Moreton*: But when the Earl of *Shrewsbury* was Sworn, 34 *Eliz.* the Usher of the Black Rod performed this Office.

Whilst the Oath is administring, the elect Knight holds his right Hand on the Holy Evangelists; and when the Register hath pronounced the Words, he immediately Responses, *I will, so help me God*, and then takes off his Hand reverently, kissing the Book; and by this Ceremony seals his Obligation to the Statutes of this most Noble Order. The Ceremony used when *Philip*, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, took the Oath, which was done in the Chapter-House at *Windsor*, 22 *Henry* VII. he laid his Hand on the Canon, under which was placed the Book of Statutes of the Order by the Prelate, to whom it was delivered by the Register, and having repeated the Words of the Oath, and reverently kissed all those things by which he Swore, he took a Pen from the Prelate's Hand, and Signed the Oath he had taken, and deliver'd it to the Sovereign then present.

The Form of the ancient Oath appointed by the Statutes of Institution, to be taken by a Knight-Subject, was very short, but comprehensive: *That he should well and faithfully observe, to the utmost of his Power, all the Statutes of the Order*; and this was all the Oath taken by the first Founders, and to which they also affixed their Seals; and so it continued without alteration or addition, till towards the End of King *Edward* IV's Reign; and then, at a Chapter held at the King's Wardrobe in *London*, it was decreed, That all the Knights-Companions then alive, and all such as should afterwards be admitted into the

Order, should be obliged to subjoin the Words following: *That they wou'd aid, support, and defend, with all their Power*, the Royal College of St. *George*, within the Castle of *Windsor*, *as well in its Possessions, as all other things whatsoever*; which being drawn in form, was enter'd in the Black Book; but has since receiv'd many alterations: And there is an instance, 1 *Eliz.* when the Oath has been dispensed with; as by the Duke of *Norfolk*, and others, in regard the Rites and Ceremonies of Religion were then altered, and no new form of an Oath settled, so that they only obliged themselves by Promise to observe such Statutes and Orders as should be decreed in the next Council of the Order, which was soon after settled, and recorded in the Red Book of the Order, and is the Oath taken by a Knight-Subject at this Day.

You being Chosen to be one of the Honourable Company of this most Noble Order of the Garter, shall Promise and Swear, by the Holy Evangelists, by you here touched, that, wittingly or willingly, you shall not break any Statute of the said Order, or any Articles in them contained; the same being agreeable, and not repugnant to the Laws of Almighty God, and the Laws of this Realm, as far forth as to you belongeth and appertaineth: So help you God, and this Holy Word.

As soon as the Knight elect hath taken the Oath, he is led to his appointed Stall, through the Entrance next beneath it, and there placed before it. In the Interim, Garter advancing into the lower row of Stalls, to the Place where the elect Knight stood when he took the Oath, presents from thence the Mantle, Collar, and Book of Statutes, to those who led him, who invest the Knight elect first with the

Mantle, by putting it on his Shoulders. There are some Examples where the elect Knight hath been invested before he went up to his Stall, as in the case of the Earl of *Northumberland*, 5 *Eliz. Francis*, Duke *de Montmorency*, and others, 14 *Eliz.* the Earls of *Dunbar* and *Montgomery*, 6 *Jac.* I. and the Prince of *Wales*, 14 *Car.* I. among which may be numbered those installed at the Grand Feast of St. *George*, 13 *Car.* II. but this happen'd through a vast Concourse of People in the Chapel, that prevented the due Order.

In the Red Book it is observed, that the Investiture with the Mantle and Collar, hath been sometimes performed by the Black Rod; as at the Installation of the Earl of *Northampton*, 5 *Car.* I. the Lord Treasurer *Weston*, the Earls of *Exeter* and *Lindsey*, and the Marquiss of *Hamilton*, 6 *Car.* I. Nevertheless, this is to be understood as this Officers Assistance to the Knights-Companions, whose Office it only is, and no otherwise. Whilst the Ceremony of Investiture with the Mantle is performing, the Words of Admonition proper thereto, are pronounced as follows.

Take this Mantle of Heavenly Colours, in Sign and Token of the most Honourable Order you have receiv'd, and to the increase of your Honour, signed and marked as you see, with a red Escutcheon of our Lord's Cross, to the intent that you, being always defended by the Virtue and Strength thereof, may pass through your Enemies, and them also overcome and vanquish, so that at the last, for your worthy and approved Acts, you may, after this Temporal Chivalry, come to Eternal Triumphant Joys in Heaven.

But at the Installation of King *Charles* II. they receiv'd some alteration, and were put in the

following Form.

Receive this Robe of Heavenly Colour, the Livery of this most excellent Order, in augmentation of thy Honour, enobled with the Shield and Red Cross of our Lord, by whose Power thou may'st safely pierce Troops of thy Enemies, and be over them ever Victorious; and being in this temporal Warfare Glorious in egregious and heroick Actions, thou may'st obtain Eternal and Triumphant Joy.

Next, the Commissioners, Assistants, or Knights-Companions, lay the Hood on the Knight's right Shoulder over the Mantle, and bringing the Tippet athwart his Breast, tuck it under the Girdle, at which his Sword hangs: And lastly tye the Collar about his Shoulder, over his Mantle and Hood; and at this part of the Investiture, the following Words of Admonition are likewise pronounced.

To the encrease of your Honour, and in Token of the Honourable Order you have receiv'd; take this Collar about your Neck, with the Image of the Holy Martyr, and Christ's Knight, St. George, *by whose aid you being defended, may pass through the Prosperities and Adversities of this World, that having here the Victory, as well of your Ghostly as Bodily Enemies, you may not only receive the Glory and Renown of Temporal Chivalry, but also at the last, the endless and everlasting reward of Victory.*

This Form of Words receiv'd likewise alteration when King *Charles* II. was to be installed, to the Tenor following.

Wear this Collar about thy Neck, adorn'd with the Image of the Blessed Martyr and Soldier of Christ, St. George, *by whose Imitation provoked, thou may'st so overpass both prosperous and adverse Encounters, that having stoutly vanquished thy Enemies, both of Body and Soul, thou may'st not only receive the Praise of this transient Combat, but be Crowned with the Palm of eternal Victory.*

Antiently at the Solemnity of Installation, when the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant was present, the elect Knight, after he had been invested with the Mantle in his Stall, was immediately conducted out of the Choir, back to the Chapter-House, where the Sovereign, or Lieutenant, used to remain till his return, there to receive the Collar of the Order from one of them, which done, he is said to have receiv'd the entire Possession of his Habit. This is contained in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes, and appears to have been the Practice about that Time, as in the case of the Lord *Mountjoy*, and others, 18 *Hen.* VIII. and several others after, in the 1 and 3 *Edw.* VI. and the 3, 5, and 14 *Eliz.* The Proceeding back to the Chapter-House on this occasion, was much after the manner of what is before mention'd, except, that here the new installed Knight took his Place according to the Dignity of his Stall. But 'tis observable, that when the Sovereign's Lieutenant remained in the Chapter-House, while the elect Knight proceeded to his Installation, the Usher of the Black-Rod stayed behind to attend the Lieutenant; and as soon as the Investiture with the Collar was over, the Lieutenant proceeded to the Choir in the Rear, and the new installed Knight in Place according to his Stall, as in the case of the Lord *Russel*, and others, 31 *Hen.* VIII. and the Marquiss of

Dorset, and others, 1 *Edw.* VI. The Proceeding having entered the Choir, and the Lieutenant and Knights-Companions taken their Seats, then the usual Ceremonies, the Service of the Church began.

But when the Installation was performed by Commissioners, the Collar of the Order was laid on the Cushion with the Mantle, and born before the elect Knight to his Stall, where, after his Investiture with the Mantle and Hood, he receiv'd Investiture with the Collar also, of which there are several Examples in the time of *Phil.* and *Mar.* and Queen *Eliz.* In like manner, at all Installations since, where the Sovereign has been present, the ancient custom of returning to the Chapter-House being laid aside, the Knights-Companions, who led the elect Knights to their Stalls, did there invest them with their Collars also; as the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and the Viscount *Lisle*, 14 *Jac.* I. and the Earl of *Suffolk*, 4 *Car.* I. and hath been thus observed at all Installations since, the Sovereign present.

So soon as the Investiture with the Mantle, Hood, and Collar is over, those appointed deliver the Book of Statutes to the new invested Knight, which was observed to the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, 34 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Rutland*, Sir *George Villars*, and the Viscount *Lisle*, 14 *Jac.* I. and so generally to all elect Knights since. This Book the Knight is to keep safe in his own Custody, for his Instruction in the Laws and Ceremonies of this most Noble Order. They likewise give him the Black Velvet Cap adorned with Plumes of white Feathers, and this in particular was observed to be the last Ceremony performed at the Installation of King *Charles* II.

All things relating to the full Investiture being ended, there remains only to compleat this great Ceremony, the Installation it self, which is performed

in the manner following. The new invested Knight standing before his Stall, and turning toward the High Altar, makes humble Obeysance that way, and then toward the Sovereign, or if absent, toward his Stall; which done, the Commissioners, Knights-Assistants, or Knights-Companions, receive and embrace him with great Civility, as their Fellow and Companion, and set him down in his assigned Stall with Professions of Esteem, and Wishes for his Honour and Happiness. Of this Ceremony, there is a notable Instance at the Installation of *Philip*, King of *Castile*, 22 *Henry* VII. where the Sovereign personally introduced him to his Stall, and there placed him, at which time there was a certain Form of Words pronounced relating to the elect Knight's Session, and Act of Installation, no less than at his Investiture, but the same are not repeated.

The Order to be observed when two or more Knights are installed in one Day.

§ 8. In this case it seems to have been the ancient Practice, when the Ceremony has been perform'd by two Commissioners, or two Knights-Assistants, that as soon as they had finished all the Ceremonies due to the Senior of them, they left him possest of his Stall, and forthwith returned to the Chapter-House in the usual manner, and thence conducted the next Senior elect Knight, and so of the rest; So it was at the Installation of *Albro Vasques d'Almadea*, Earl of *Averenches*, the Lord *Beauchamp*, and Sir *Thomas Hoo*, in the time of *Henry* VI. and so of the Earl of *Huntington*, 1 *Edw.* VI. when the two Assistants, after they had invested and installed the said Earl,

returned to the Chapter-House for the Lord *la War*, and so for the Lord *Cobham*, and Sir *William Herbert*. In like manner, when the Commissioners had given the Proctor to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, Possession of his Principal's Stall, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* they proceeded back for *William* Lord *Howard*; so by the Earl of *Pembrook*, 16 *Eliz.* when they had first installed the Earl of *Derby*, and by the Earl of *Cumberland*, after the Earl of *Shrewsbury* had been installed.

When the Sovereign hath nominated three Commissioners, they have returned altogether to fetch in the other Knights singly, that were to be installed, and alternately changed their Places in the proceeding to the several Installations, one of them always going single before; as at the Installation of the Earls of *Essex* and *Ormond*, and Sir *Christopher Hatton*, 30 *Eliz.* when the Earl of *Worcester*, the Lords *Hunsdon* and *Grey*, were Commissioners: And if the Lieutenant had four Assistants assigned him, which was necessary when many Knights were to be installed, the order of their Installation hath been as follows.

First, Two of the Senior Knights-Assistants conducted the Senior elect Knight to his Installation, and the other two Assistants proceeded with the second elect Knight; the former then took the third elect Knight, and so alternately changed till all were installed: As at the Installation of *Francis*, Duke *de Montmorency*, and others, 14 *Eliz.* And the like manner of alternate change is observed if four Commissioners be constituted, as at the Installation of *Frederick*, King of *Denmark*, and *John*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, 25 *Eliz.* where the King's Proxy was conducted into the Choir between the Earl of *Leicester* and the Lord *Hunsdon*, the two Senior

Commissioners; and the Prince, between the Earl of *Huntington* and the Lord *Charles Howard*, the two Junior Commissioners.

But some have been of Opinion, that the Commissioners named to this Employment, ought not to divide the Duty, and part of them to Instal one, and part the other, and by such an alternative to dispatch the Ceremony, as in former Cases; but all jointly assist at each Installation: Of which Opinion there is an Instance at the Installation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Viscount *Bindon*, 4 *Jac.* I. where the Earl having been brought into the Choir, invested and installed by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Suffolk*, the two Senior Commissioners, the other two Commissioners who were left behind in the Chapter-House, to conduct the Viscount to his Stall, remembring that all four were joint Commissioners, apprehended that the Earl was not legally installed, because they, as Co-partners in the Commission, had not assisted; and this Opinion being debated, prevailed so far, that it was agreed to be imparted to the Earl of *Salisbury*, who submitted to descend into the lower Seats before his Stall, and there all four Commissioners gave him his Oath again, then led him to his Stall, and a second Time invested and installed him; and so of the Viscount *Bindon*.

But this Method was not only new, but different from former Practice, as in all the cases before recited; and besides, where the Sovereign hath authorized his Lieutenant to perform this Ceremony, and appointed some of the Knights-Companions to assist, they, and not the Lieutenant, have done the Duty belonging to Installation, that part of it of investing with the Collar in the Chapter-House, the whole Duty at the Installation of Prince *Henry* excepted. And ’tis to be farther observed, that the

foregoing case of the joint Assistance in the Installation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, was thought so little Essential, or worthy of becoming a Precedent, that at the very next Feast, when the Earls of *Dunbar* and *Montgomery* were installed, 6 *Jac.* I. and four Commissioners appointed, the two Senior installed the Earl of *Dunbar*, and the two Junior the Earl of *Montgomery*; and so again, 10 *Car.* I. by the Earls of *Danby* and *Moreton*. But lastly, if the Sovereign be present, and consequently the Knights-Companions perform this Ceremony, then there is generally so many of them as can go through the whole, without changing, after the manner used when done by Commissioners or Assistants; in which case the two Senior Knights-Companions descend from their Stalls, and passing thro' the Choir to the Chapter-House with the Proceeding before them, conduct to his Installation the eldest elect Knight; and having performed that whole Ceremony, return and take their Stalls, and so the rest in due Order; as was practised at the Installation of Prince *Henry*, and others, 1 *Jac.* I. and of the Earl of *Rutland*, 14 *Jac.* I. and at the grand Feast of St. *George*, 13 *Car.* II. but here the separate proceeding with each single Knight to and from the Chapter House, taking too much time, and the Day being far spent in the Ceremonies of the Dukes of *Ormond* and *Buckingham*; the Sovereign ordered, that with the next Proceeding, the rest of the elect Knights, being eight, besides two Proxies, should all be introduced at once; so that each of them being placed before his Stall, took the Oath, receiv'd his Investiture, and was led up to his Stall, and took Possession of it by solemn Installation.

And in regard so many Knights elect were introduced together, it was judged necessary, that

their Mantles and Collars should be likewise brought in the proceeding, and each elect Knight appointed one of the Gentlemen that attended him, to bear the Cushion whereon they were laid, before him to the Choir Door, where they held them in their Arms, till Garter in due order fetch'd them into the Choir: And here we may insert this general Rule, that at all Installations, where some of the elect Knights are not sent for unto the Chapter-House, to receive Investiture with the Surcoat, before the Senior elect Knight hath been conducted to his Stall, but left to repose themselves in the East Isle of the Chappel, as hath often happened, the Knights Commissioners, or Assistants, on their return to the Chapter-House, send Garter for the next Senior elect Knight, whom they receive at the Door thereof, and having invested him with his Surcoat, and girt his Sword about him, proceed with him to his Installation in the usual manner. And the same method is observed if there were more elect Knights to follow; and we find it 30 *Henry* VIII. 16, and 34, and 10 *Car.* I.

The Knight, or Knights, having now receiv'd a compleat Installation, the Knights-Commissioners, Assistants, or Knights-Companions, with marks of Respect, take their leave of the last installed Knight, and descending into the Choir, take their own Stalls; but the Senior Knight-Companion ascends first: But observe, that if the Stalls of the Knights-Commissioners, Assistants, or Knights-Companions, be on the same side with the last installed Knight, then they descend not into the Choir, but pass directly to them along the Stalls, as in the 34 *Eliz.* The Ceremonies of Installation being finished, the Officers of Arms first, next the Alms-Knights, descend from the Steps of the Altar, and take their several Stations in the Choir; then one of the Prebends of the

College, or, if the Sovereign be present, the Prelate, with the Serjeant of the Vestry before him, is conducted to the Altar by the Verger of the Chappel, and there begins the Service appointed by the Church, which being ended, the Proceeding passes out of the Choir in usual Order, either to the Presence-Chamber, or the Lieutenants, or Commissioners Lodgings, as the Occasion is.

The Offering of Gold and Silver.

§ 9. But if the Installation be solemnized in the Morning, the Service of the Church having proceeded as far as the Offertory, two of the Prebends, appointed to recieve the Offering, are conducted to the Altar by their Verger, and first the Alms-Knights, then the Officers of Arms, ascend the Steps of the Altar again, and stand in order as before. After which, Garter Summons down the Knights-Companions to the Offering, who descend into the Choir under their proper Stalls, as does the Sovereign's Lieutenant, who offers first for the Sovereign, he receiving the Bezant from the Senior Knight, and then returns to his Stall: And at this instant, was the usual time heretofore for offering the Defunct Knights Atchievements, which was altered by King *James* I. as will be seen hereafter.

The Lieutenant, after a short stay in his Stall, descends again, and proceeds up to the Altar, to make his own Offering of Gold and Silver, and then returns, as do the rest of the Knights-Companions, including those newly installed, in their due order. But when the Installation passes by Commissioners, there is then no Offering made for the Sovereign, but the Commissioners offer first, and after them the

other Knights in due order.

The Ceremony of Offering at the Installation of *Philip*, King of *Castile*, 22 *Henry* VII. is remarkable. He descended from his Stall into the Choir, and standing before it, as the other Knights-Companions did, the Sovereign left his Royal Stall to proceed to the Offering, to which the King would have followed, but the Sovereign would not permit, obliging the King to proceed along with him, on his left Hand, though he desired to perform his Duty as a Brother of the Order, so that they made their Offerings so near together, where, though the Sovereign had the Precedence, yet 'twas hardly observable.

Of the grand Dinner at the Installation.

§ 10. On the Day of Installation, there hath, from ancient Time, been appointed a Noble and Sumptuous Feast, and though it was agreed on in a Chapter, 3 *Edward* VI. *That the Knights elect might, from thenceforth, be installed by Commission without a Feast*; yet after his Reign, we find the old custom of a Feast at this Solemnity restored.

If the Sovereign appoint the Installation to be when the Feast of St. *George* is also celebrated, and is himself personally present, the Feast is then kept at the Sovereign's Charge; and if in such case he constitute a Lieutenant, then the Installation Dinner is kept at the Charge of the Lieutenant; and is usually prepared in some of the Sovereign's Lodgings in the Castle, but seldom in St. *George*'s Hall; as was done by the Earl of *Arundel*, at the Installation of the Earl of *Shrewsbury*, and the Lord *Hunsdon*, 3 *Eliz.* But when the Installation is kept at any other time of the Year, than that of St. *George*'s Feast, then the new

installed Knights are at all the Expence; who generally have had the Dinner prepared in the Dean's Lodgings; however, be it where it will, the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, Commissioners, or Assistants, together with the new installed Knights, proceed thither in full Robes; which is observed in the Installation of 3 *Eliz.* above, to be according to the ancient Custom. At the Installation, 31 *Henry* VIII. the Sovereign's Lieutenant walked alone, after him his two Assistants, and lastly the new installed Knights.

The Lieutenant's Place at the Table is somewhat on the left Hand the Cloath of State, there sat the Earl of *Arundel*, 3 *Eliz.* but the other four Knights-Companions, his two Assistants, and the two new installed Knights, sat toward the Table's End on both Sides, for that they could not well sit all on a side. But of late Years, as at the Installation, 5 *Car.* I. a Question arose, whether the Lieutenant or Commissioners should sit at Dinner in their Habits, since the Power given them seemed to expire when the Knights were elected; (though unanimously allowed the new installed Knights ought to do so,) and likewise Precedents quoted, as 29 *Henry* VIII. at the Installation of the Lord *Cromwell*, where the Knights put off their Habits, and dined in their ordinary Apparel; and so of the Earl of *Rutland*, and the Lord *Cobham*, 26 *Eliz.* where the Commissioners did the same, and the new installed Knights kept on only their Surcoats: But what followed on this Debate is not mention'd; but the general Practice at other Times hath been of keeping on the Habit till the Dinner is ended.

At the second Course, called also second Mess, or second Service, Garter, accompanied with the Officers of Arms, Proclaims the Stiles and Titles of

Honour of the Sovereign (if he be personally, or by his Lieutenant, present,) in *Latin*, *French*, and *English*, and cries Largess thrice; next the Stiles of the new installed Knights in *French*, or *English* only, with two Largesses, and in that Order they were installed. And thus it was at the Installation of *Charles*, Duke of *York*, 9 *Jac.* I. of *Frederick*, Prince Palatine, 10 *Jac.* I. and the Earl of *Rutland*, and others, 14 *Jac.* I.

Philip, King of *Castile*, Dined with the Sovereign in his Privy-Chamber, 22 *Henry* VII. whose Stile was Proclaimed by Garter, not in the same Room, but at the Sovereign's great Chamber-Door, and in St. *George*'s *Hall*, after Largess had been thrice cryed. When the Sovereign constitutes a Lieutenant, then is the Lieutenant's Stile also Proclaimed, and to his other Honours is added this of his Lieutenancy, and afterwards the Stiles of the new installed Knights, as 3 *Eliz.* But the Order of this Ceremony is more particularly observed at the Installation of the Duke *de Montmorency*, and others, 14 *Eliz.* where first Garter cried Largess, and next Proclaimed the Sovereign's Stile, *&c.* in three Languages, then stepping two Foot back, Proclaims the Lieutenant's Stile in *French* only, with two Largesses; and after that, he cried one Largess for the Duke; and lastly, for all the other new installed Knights, only two Largesses, and the Officers of Arms did the like; and still as Garter had finished his Proclamation, the Heralds joined with him in crying Largess, and so with Reverence departed the Hall.

But lastly, it is proper to observe, that when neither the Sovereign, nor his Lieutenant, are present, then the Sovereign's Stile is not Proclaimed, nor those of the Commissioners, but only of the new installed Knights.

As soon as Dinner is ended, the Knights-

Companions rise from Table, and withdraw to disrobe themselves, and therewith the Solemnity of Installation ends: And if at any time the Solemnity continues that Evening, and the following Day, it is only because the Sovereign (or his Lieutenant,) is present, on account of celebrating St. *George*'s Feast, and not with reference to the Installation.

Of setting up the Knight's Atchievements.

§ 11. The last thing to be done at this great Solemnity, is setting up the *Helm*, *Crest*, *Sword*, *Banner*, and *Plate*, of the new installed Knight, over his Stall in the Chappel of St. *George*; to which purpose they are to be provided, according to the Directions before given.

By the Statutes of Institution it is ordained, that the time for setting up the Atchievements shall be when the elect Knight comes to *Windsor-Castle*, that is, to his Installation, and not before; and the reason is there likewise given, lest it should happen, he not coming for his Installation within the time limitted, and consequently the vacating his Election ensuing, that a new Election being made, those military Ensigns might not seem to be disgracefully withdrawn, and an occasion of Dishonour given, which otherwise could not be avoided, if they should be suddenly taken down from a Place so high; which demonstrates, that the intention of this Article extends to the finishing the Ceremonies of Installation, before the Atchievements ought to be set up, by so carefully providing against the Dishonour of taking them down, in case the Election should become void; which must infallibly happen, if the Knight elect died but an Hour before he were

compleatly installed. Accordingly, in the ancient Deputations both to Sir *William Philip*, and Sir *John Falstaff*, Power is given their Proctors first to demand, receive, and obtain their principal Stalls, and next to tender their Helms, and Swords, to be hung up in the Choir of *Windsor*, according to Custom: And for clearer Information of the course of this Ceremony, that the Sovereign impowered his Commissioners, first to give the Deputy Possession of his Principal's Stall, and after to receive the Atchievements, and place them over it: This is to be considered as a Memorial of the Knights being installed a Companion of the Order, and 'tis incongruous in the Rules of Honour to have the Sign or a Memorial of an Action precede the Action it self.

Again, the Statutes expresly provide, that the Knights Atchievements shall not be hung up, till the Duties and Fees enjoined are first discharged; and 'tis certain, there are no Fees due, nor can be claimed, till the Ceremonies on which they become due are entirely finished. But to clear all Doubts which may arise upon this Point, it was at a Chapter held at *White-Hall*, the fourth of *February*, 22 *Car.* II. ordained, *That not any of the Atchievements of an elect Knight's Stall be set up in the Chappel at* Windsor, *before he be installed, and the Fees of Installation paid.*

And though this was the Practice anciently, yet were the Atchievements always prepared and brought to *Windsor*, and set before the elect Knight's Stall; and in case of his not coming to receive Installation, then, being no otherwise placed, they might be the easier removed without the Choir, in as decent manner as could be, so that the Honour of Knighthood might be preserved entire; nevertheless, to be retained for publick Use, and the Benefit of the College.

Where mention is made in the Annals of any Person employed to set up the Atchievements of a Knight, it is to be understood that he was his Proctor, and installed on his behalf: And there appears but one single Instance where one Person hath hung up a Knight's Atchievements, when another was installed for him; and this happen'd 14th of *August*, *Anno* 29 *Hen.* VI. where the Lord *Rivers* having been elected to the Stall of the Lord *Hungerford*, his Sword and Helm were soon after (sent) hung up by *William Bobden*, his Esq; and *Guyen Herald*, and he installed the 30 *October* following, by Sir *William Crafford* his Proctor; but this was contrary to the Law of the Order.

Where the setting up of a Knight's Atchievements is barely mentioned, without taking notice of the Installation, it is to be understood, that such Knight's Installation was also solemniz'd at that Time: As in the case of the King of *Portugal*, of whom the Annals only note, that he had taken care to set over his Stall, Helm, Sword, and Banner, and all things belonging thereto, at the Feast at *Windsor*, 2 *Henry* VI. In what manner these Atchievements are fixed, appears by the Statutes; the Helm and Crest to be set over each Knight-Companion's Stall, and the Sword to hang directly under them; but the Plate to be nailed to the back of the Knight's Stall.

CAP. XIII.

The Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy.

The Original Cause of making Proxies.

§ 1.

There was no liberty given at the Institution of the Order, for a Knight-Subject to be installed by his Proctor or Deputy; but on the contrary, in the Founder's Statutes was inserted this express Prohibition. *That none of the Knights elect should be permitted to be installed by* Proxy, *unless he were a Stranger*. And this Law continued unaltered till the Reign of *Henry* V. when *John* Duke of *Bedford*, the Sovereign's Deputy for holding the Feast of St. *George* at *Windsor*, 7 *Henry* V. and other the Knights-Companions then present, took it into Consideration; that where a Knight-Subject, elected into the Order, was at that Time employed beyond Sea, in the Service of his Prince, and likely to continue in that Service some time, it was agreed, that the said Duke should make an Address to the Sovereign, by Letters under the Seal of the Order, (he being then employed in the War against *France*,) that in the like cases his Majesty would Ordain, *That* Knights-Subjects *might, as well as* Strangers, *be admitted into the* Order, *notwithstanding the Clause in the Statutes*.

It likewise appears from that *Letter*, as well as from the Blue-Book, that Sir *John Grey*, and the Lord *Bourchier*, had been installed at the aforesaid Feast, by their several Proxies; which the Sovereign's Deputy concurr'd with, out of great Respect to their Persons; lest by a too rigid Observance of the Statutes, by their absence in the Wars, where they were then loyally employed, and might meet their Deaths, they should want the desired Suffrages of those Masses, ordained to be Sung for a defunct Knight; as had happen'd to several by unsuspected delays. But to clear this matter, for the future it was Decreed, 9 *Hen.* V. That where any elect Knight was actually in the Sovereign's Wars, or otherwise employed Abroad on his Sovereign's Affairs, he should possess the Privilege of a Stranger in this particular; which Decree was added to King *Henry* Vth's Statutes. And it was soon after enjoined the elect Knight, on notice of his Election, to take care timely to appoint his Proctor, that he might enjoy the Rights and Privileges of a Founder: Such an Obligation was laid on Sir *John Falstaff*, who, at the reception of the Garter, was in *France*, employed in the Sovereign's Service.

But King *Henry* VIII. besides his Confirmation of this Decree, for allowance of a Proxy in the aforesaid two Cases, farther enlarged it, to such as the Sovereign should either Command, or permit Licence to be installed by Proxy, which is to be understood of Knights elect within the Kingdom, as well as those beyond Sea: By Virtue of which Clause, the elect Knight, the Earl of *Dorset* being Sick, 1 *Car.* I. obtained the Sovereign's Licence to be installed by his Deputy Sir *Richard Young*.

Letters of Procuration.

§ 2. It is observed before, out of the *Registrum Chartaceum*, that Sir *John Robesart*, elected into the Order by King *Henry* V. was installed by Virtue of his Letter Missive, sent to Sir *Thomas Barr* his Proxy; but the same Register calls it, in another Place, a sufficient Procuration under his Seal of Arms, enabling him to perform the Ceremony of his Installation.

The Copy of this Instrument is not extant; but that Letter Missive Sir *John Grey* directed to Sir *John Lisle*, to take Possession of his Stall, and by Virtue of which he was installed, *tells him he had Chosen him for his Proxy, and to take his Stall for him in his Name*, &c. And omitting other Precedents, doubtless, in the case of a Knight-Subject, the Sovereign may, if he pleases, nominate and appoint a Proxy for Installation, where the elect Knight hath not done it himself; for here, all those Considerations of grand Respect, Forms of the Oath, *&c.* constantly afforded to Strangers, have no Place; which is evident from the Sovereign's Letters of Summons to the Commissioners named for Installation of the Lord *Grey*, 4 and 5 *Phil.* and *Mar.* who at that time was Prisoner in *France*, and his Deputy Sir *Humphry Radcliffe*, is therein mentioned to be appointed by the Sovereign herself.

The first Precedent of Letters of Procuration, or Deputation, drawn into a solemn Form, is that made by Sir *William Phelip*, 5 *Hen.* V. by which, having obtained the Sovereign's Licence, he impowers two Knights, Sir *Andrew Butrely*, and Sir *John Henington*, or either of them, as their Business would permit, to supply his Place, and take Possession of his Stall, in the Choir at *Windsor*.

Qualifications of a Proxy.

§ 3. The Qualifications of a Proctor, nominated by a Knight-Subject, are the same with those requisite in the Proctor of a Stranger, of which something will fall in our Way hereafter; I shall therefore only in general observe here, that to neither Knight-Subject, nor Stranger, the Proctor is to be under the Degree of a Knight, enobled with Arms, and of an honest and untainted Reputation; it being judg'd proper chiefly in this Point, that a Knight-Subject should exactly observe the same Rule enjoined to Strangers; in respect of which, it is very remarkable, that Sir *William Lisle*, though one of the Alms-Knights, yet in Degree a Knight, was not refused to be Proctor to Sir *John Grey*, 7 *Hen.* V.

Preparations for Installation.

§ 4. The Day for Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy, being appointed by the Sovereign, there are to be provided for him, first, a Commission for Installation, which by the Chancellor of the Order is presented to the Sovereign for his Sign Manual; to which is after affixed, the Seal of the Order: And appoints, 1. To conduct the Proctor to *Windsor-Castle*. 2. To put him in Possession, as from the Sovereign, of the Stall assigned his Principal. 3. To invest him with all the Benefits, Honours, Prerogatives, Franchises, and Liberties thereto belonging. 4. To receive his Mantle, Helm, and Sword, and set them up in their appointed Places. 5. To add thereto all usual Ceremonies. 6. Lastly, an Injunction to all the Knights to permit all the Solemnity punctually to be performed: An ancient Precedent of this is found 5

Hen. V. in the case of Sir *John Falstaff*: Also 2 *Edw.* IV. at the Installation of the Earl of *Worcester*, and other elect Knights, by their Proxies.

Of later Times, the Commissions granted on such Occasions differ from those made for the Personal Installation of the Knights themselves, only by premising the Cause of their Principal's Absence, and Service he is then employed on; authorizing the Commissioners to admit the Proxy into his Stall: Likewise where the Installation is performed by two or more Commissioners, the Sovereign directs Letters to each of them, giving notice of the intended Solemnity, and requiring them to attend at a Day prefixt, to the end the Proxy may be put into Possession of his Principal's Stall.

And as there is, upon admission of an elect Knight, installed by Proxy, the same ground for removal of Stalls, as in personal Installations; so the Sovereign issues out Warrants to *Garter*, some time before the Solemnity, to remove the Atchievements and Plates, as usual, and place them in the Order such Warrants direct. Anciently the Stall for an elect Knight, was assigned in the Commission issued for Installation, as in the case of Sir *Henry Inghouse*, Proctor to Sir *John Falstaff*, 5 *Henry* V.

The rest of the Particulars to be provided against the Day of Installation, are at the Knight's own Charge, and are agreeable with those in Personal Installations.

Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 5. The next thing to be consider'd, is the Proxies Place in proceeding to the Chapter-House, and this is immediately after the Provincial *King of Arms*,

because as yet he hath not taken Possession of his Principal's Stall; which done, it gives him a Place in his return according to its Dignity. In this Order the Proctors of the Marquiss of *Newcastle*, and the Earl of *Bristol*, proceeded (Bare-headed,) 13 *Car.* II.

And though this be the Proctor's usual Place in this Proceeding, yet Sir *Henry Sidney*, Proctor to the Earl of *Warwick*, 5 *Eliz.* proceeded immediately before the elect Knights; which is the only instance of that kind.

Lastly, the Proctor, as in the case of an elect Knight, passes into the East-Isle, behind the High-Altar, as soon as he comes within St. *George*'s *Chappel*, while the Sovereign, Lieutenant, or Commissioners, proceed into the Chapter-House, and there reposeth himself till he is sent for in; as in the case of the Marquiss of *Newcastle* and Earl of *Bristol* above: But if the Proxy pass not in the Proceeding, he then goes privately to his Place, before the Proceeding sets forward.

Transactions in the Chapter-House.

§ 6. After the Chapter is opened, the first thing done, is for *Garter* to present the Commission or Commissions, which he carried in the Proceeding thither, as well that for the Lieutenancy, (if a Lieutenant held the Feast,) as of Installation, for admitting a Proxy, the Order of which is observed before.

The Letters of Procuration, or Deputation, are next read, after which the Proxy is sent for into the Chapter-House by *Garter*, who conducts him to the Door, and there the Commissioners, or Assistants, or Knights-Companions, receive him. But 5 *Eliz.* Sir *Henry Sidney* exhibited his Deputation, after he was

called in: Or sometimes the Proxy produces his Deputation before the Proceeding to the Chapter-House, as Sir *George Howard*, Deputy to the Earl of *Bedford*, did, 6 *Eliz.* And in such case there is no need of admitting the Proxy into the Chapter-House, but that he may stay without, till the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commissioners, are past into the Choir, and he sent for thither; at which time the *Mantle* was wont to be laid on his right Arm at the Chapter-House Door, by the Knights-Companions appointed to introduce him.

Anciently, as soon as the Proxy was admitted into the Chapter-House, and the Letters of Procuration were read, the *Mantle* of his Principal was usually laid on his right Arm by the Sovereign's Lieutenant, or Commissioners, and part of it spread on the Proxies Shoulders, the Escutcheon of St. *George* lying uppermost, and the Cordons laid fair to be seen; and in this manner he bore it in the Proceeding to the Stall, where he held it till Service was ended; but 'tis now ordered otherwise, as by the direction of King *Charles* II. that the *Mantle* should be born on the left Arm.

But 5 *Eliz.* the Earl of *Warwick*'s Proctor had the Mantle born before him into the Choir by *Garter*, in the same manner as is usual to Knights Personally installed; and not delivered him, till he had taken the Oath; and at the delivery thereof, the Words of Admonition were pronounced by the *Register*; as it was observed to the Proxies of the Marquiss of *Newcastle,* and the Earl of *Bristol*, 13 *Car.* II.

Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 7. The Proxy proceeds from the Chapter-House

Door, between the Sovereign's Commissioners, *&c.* But touching the Order of this Proceeding, so much has already been said, that we shall give but one Instance, *Anno* 6 *Elizabeth.*

1. Verger.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Officers of Arms.
4. Officers of the Order.
5. Lord *Hunsdon*, Proctor to the Lord *Cobham.*
6. Earl of *Bedford.*

Ceremonies performed in the Choir.

§ 8. The Proceeding having entered the Choir, the Commissioners, *&c.* conduct the Proxy into the lower Stall, directly under that designed for his Principal, where the *Register* reads the Words of the Oath, while the Proxy, laying his Hand on the Book, repeats them after him, and Kisses the Book: And this Oath his Deputation impowers him to take, in the Name of his Principal; the Form of the Oath having no difference from the Oath taken Personally by an elect Knight.

The Oath being taken in this solemn manner, the Proctor is led up to the Stall of his Principal, where both the Knights, who conducted him into the Choir, first take the *Mantle*, and lay it on his Arm, next laying their Hands on him, in the Name of his Lord and Master, from whom he received his Deputation, set him down therein: And so the Ceremony of Installation being fully ended, the Service of the Church begins.

If the Installation be performed in the Morning, there is an Offering of Gold and Silver; at which time

the Proxy in his turn comes from his Principal's Stall, and stands before it, and when the Sovereign, or the Lieutenant for him, and for himself, or else the Commissioners, and the rest of the Knights-Companions present, have offered, then the Proxy (being joined to the Knight, sitting in the opposite Stall, if present at the Solemnity, and having two Officers of Arms before them,) proceeds to the High Altar, and there offers both Gold and Silver; and then returns, and takes his Stall as the rest do. In this manner the Earl of *Warwick*'s Proxy, joining with the Earl of *Northumberland*, installed at the same time, proceeded to the Offering, 5 *Eliz.* As likewise the Proctor to the Earl of *Bedford*, with the Lord *Hunsdon*, 6 *Eliz.*

The Ceremony of the Offering being finished, the Service of the Church goes on, which being over, the Proceeding returns in the same Order it came to the *Chapter-House*, except, that now the Proxy takes his Place according to the Dignity of his Stall. But in regard the *Statutes* expresly declare; That after the Proxy hath been admitted to his Principal's Stall, he shall neither wear the *Mantle*, nor have any Voice in Chapter, nor enter there in the absence of him that sent him; so that it was the ancient Practice to take off the *Mantle* from his Arm at the *Chapter-House* Door, in his return from the Choir, and delivered to the *Verger* of the Chappel, though sometimes to the *Sexton*, at other times to *Garter*, also to the *Black-Rod*, who hath taken it from off the Proxies Arm, and carried it into the Chapter-House; this done, the Proxy retires privately out of the Proceeding to his Lodging.

It appears however, but by what indulgence is not mentioned, that though *Garter* took the *Mantle* from Sir *Henry Sidney*, 5 *Eliz.* at the Chapter-House Door,

on the Evening he returned from Installation; yet the next Morning he rode in the Procession to the Chapel, the Celebration of the Feast of St. *George* continuing, with the *Mantle* on his right Arm; and having entered the Choir, took his Principal's Stall, bearing likewise the Mantle in the grand Procession, at the Offering of Money, and during Divine Service, and from the Chappel to the Castle to Dinner: And the like in the Afternoon of the said Day, he rode on Horse-back in the Proceeding to the Chapter-House Door, but there the *Mantle* was taken from him, and laid within upon the Table, whilst he retired into the East-Isle of the Chappel, and at the rising of the *Chapter*, it was again delivered to him, whence he proceeded in his Principal's Place to the second Vespers.

Next Morning, the *Lieutenant*, and *Assistants*, having ended the Chapter, the *Mantle* was again laid on his Arm, and in that manner he passed to his Principal's Stall, and afterwards offered, as on the Feast Day. The Morning Service ended, the *Lieutenant* and *Assistants* returned to the Chapter-House Door, where they put off their *Mantles*, and at the same time the *Sexton* of the College receiv'd the Mantle from him.

The Grand Dinner.

§ 9. At Dinner the Proxy sits with the Lieutenant or Commissioners, and takes Place where his Principal should sit if he were present; and this was so observed at the Installation of the Earl of *Warwick*, 5 *Eliz.*

The Stile of the Knight installed by Proxy, is proclaimed in *French*, or *English*, in the usual Form

and Place, as 25 *Hen.* VIII. at the Installations of the Earls of *Beaumont* and *Newblanke*, by their Proxies; for they were Knight-Subjects, though not to the Sovereign, and therefore not improper to be made use of as an Instance. To conclude, the Proctor is to take care that the Atchievements and Plate of his Principal are set up in their proper Places, which appears not only from the ancient Letters of Procuration, but also by Commissions of Installation, which appoint that the Sovereign's Deputy should receive from the Proctor his Principal's Helm and Sword, (for there is no mention of the Banner till afterwards,) and place it over his Stall.

CAP. XIV.

The Signification of Election to Strangers.

Within what time, and in what manner, Certificate is made of their Election.

§ 1.

In regard that Strangers elect, are for the most part Sovereign Princes, whole Affairs obliged them to abide in their own Dominions, and very rarely permitted them to receive Personal Installation, it was thought fit to allow them several Privileges, by the Founder of this most *Noble Order*, and principally, that of giving previous and timely Notice of their Elections, and convenient time of consideration for Acceptance; affording Investiture in their own Countries, and permitting their Installations to be performed at *Windsor* by their Proxies or Deputies.

It was therefore by the *Statutes* ordained: That when any such should be chosen into the *Order*, they should be certified of their Elections by the Sovereign; and besides, that, at his Charge, the *Garter* should be sent over to them, with the *Mantle* and *Statutes* of the *Order*, Sealed with the common Seal;

so that they might have notice, at least within four Months from the time of Election, to the end they might advise and determine with themselves, from the Tenor of the *Statutes*, whether they would receive the Honour of this most *Noble Order*.

In Pursuance of these Directions, it became customary for the Sovereign, when he sent his Letters, to send also, and that by way of solemn Embassy, the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order*, with a Book of the *Statutes*; and in case the Election were accepted, Investiture might be received before the return of the Persons, by whom the Habit was sent. As upon the Elections of *Edward*, King of *Portugal*, at the Feast of St. *George*, 13 *Hen.* VI. the Duke of *Urbin*, 14 *Edw.* IV. and several others.

The right of bearing these Letters signifying Election, and returning the Strangers Answer, belongs to *Garter*, by the Constitutions of his Office. And though Certificate of Election was to be made within four Months from the time of Election, yet King *Henry* VIII. added this necessary Clause: *That when the Sovereign had any great or high Impediment, he might defer certifying the Election till a more convenient Time*. As may be seen in the case of *Frederick* III. Emperor of *Germany*, in the time of *Henry* VI. who having been elected 35 of that King, had not Letters sent him to signify it till the next Year. It likewise appears, that Letters to the same Effect were then likewise dispatched to the King of *Arragon*, the Duke of *Brunswick*, and King of *Poland*, who had been elected eight Years before.

And yet we find it recorded, that the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* were sent by special Ambassadors to all three, 34 *Hen.* VI. two Years before: But perhaps this ought to be understood of their being but then design'd, and ordered to be sent,

and on second Thoughts might be stopped, or if sent, by some accident might have miscarried; otherwise it seems needless to have sent other Letters to give notice of their Election two Years after: But to clear this matter, we after find a second mention of sending the *Habit* and *Ensigns* to the King of *Poland*, 37 *Hen.* VI. by which it is demonstrable, that the first Embassy took no Effect.

It does not appear that King *Hen.* VIII. or any of his Successors, ever made use of that Liberty granted by the aforesaid Article of his *Statutes*, for deferring the significatory Letters of Election beyond the time appointed by the *Statutes* of Institution, as we find by the many Instances of that kind. *Francis* the first King of *France* was elected *October* 21. 19 *Hen.* VIII. and was installed the 25 *January* following; so that 'tis plain, the Letters of Notice must needs have been dispatched within the limited Time. *James* V. of *Scotland*, who was elected 20 *Jan.* 26 *Hen.* VIII. had notice of Election immediately sent him; and *Hen.* II. of *France*, having been elected 24 *April*, 5 *Edw.* VI. had Letters of Signification sent him in *May* following; and so in all Examples since. And when King *Charles* II. elected any Stranger whilst he was Abroad, Letters of Signification were sent them immediately after.

Of notice given of an Election, before sending the Habit.

§ 2. Here it is to be observed, with how much caution, more than the former, the Statutes of King *Henry* VIII. Ordain, *to send Letters that signify Election, and the Book of Statutes only at first*; but not the *Garter* and *Mantle*, till the *elect Stranger*, having had

time to consult the Statutes, certifies his acceptance of the *Order*; and then, and not before, it is Decreed to send a solemn Embassy with the whole Habit, *George*, and *Collar*: And consonant to this, the Practice hath sometimes been. As in the case of *Henry* II. King of *France*, 5 *Edw.* VI. *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* and in that of *Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtembergh*, to whom Queen *Elizabeth* sent Letters soon after his Election, and he returned Thanks, and Acceptation, by his two Ambassadors, who received Promise of sending the whole Habit soon after; however, the same were not sent during her Life.

Notice of Election sent with the Habit.

§ 3. When the Sovereign hath been well assured of the *elect Stranger's* acceptance, the same Embassy (as anciently before adding this Clause,) dispatched both Ceremonies. The Sovereign's Letter signifying Election, being first presented, together with the Book of Statutes, and an acceptance declared, then within few Days, the whole Habit of the *Order* was solemnly delivered.

And thus it was directed soon after the Election of *James* V. King of *Scots*, to the Lord *William Howard*, sent on that Embassy; and in like manner, at the Election of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, 1 *Jac.* I. to the Earl of *Rutland* sent on that Embassy. As also to *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, within two Months, their Elections following on *April* 24. 3 *Car.* I. and the date of the Commission for delivering the Order being on *June* 24. following.

The manner and order of the delivery of these Letters, signifying Election, when the Habit is sent, is thus.

"First, The Ambassador and *Officer of Arms* having notice given them of the first Audience, present themselves to the *Stranger Prince*, in the accustomed manner of Ambassadors; and delivering the Sovereign's *Letters Missive*, with all due Reverence, the Ambassador, after some short general Compliment from the Sovereign, signifying that his Master, and the Honourable *Society* of the *Garter*, in respect of his renowned Prowess, Valour, Virtues, *&c.* and to establish and encrease the Amity that is between them, hath elected him into the most Noble *Order* of St. *George*; and that Sovereigns do never elect any Stranger, but such as they highly Honour; and therefore earnestly desires it may be accepted as a true Testimony thereof: To which end the Sovereign hath sent him over, and his Herald there present, to perform the due Ceremonies."

But this Commission of Legation hath sometimes been obstructed by the multitude of Affairs lying on the Sovereign's Hands, particularly in the Time of *Car.* I. when engaged in that unnatural Civil War; so that when they sent their Letters of Signification, it was thought fit to Commissionate their Agent, or Resident at the Prince's Court, and *Garter* Principal *King of Arms*, to deliver part; but the two chief and most peculiar *Ensigns* of the *Order*, *viz.* the *Garter* and *George*, deferring the solemn Embassy till a more convenient Season. The first Precedent of which kind, was 10 *Jac.* I. when Sir *Ralph Winwood*, and *William Seagar*, Esq; *Garter*, were Commissioned to deliver only, for the present, the Garter and George, to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, five Days after his Election; and so to *Charles*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, 9 *Car.* I. and to *William*, Prince of *Orange*, and

the Duke *de Espernon*, the same Reign. And so likewise during the unhappy Exile of King *Charles* II. it was usual, for want of more conveniency, to present the elect Knight, in confirmation of his Election, whether he were *Stranger*, or *Subject*, with the *Garter*, *George*, *Ribband*; and sometimes a St. *George*'s *Cross*, radicated within a *Garter*, to be fixed on the left Shoulder of their Cloaks, or upper Garments. But these things after returned into their proper Channel, as we may see in several cases since, of which we need not instance more, than that of the present Sovereign, and his Royal Highness the Prince: The former at a Chapter of the most Noble *Order*, held at *Kensington*, 18 *June*, 1701. 13 *Will.* III. was elected, and on the 21 *June*, the Sovereign, by Commission under the Great Seal of the *Order*, constituted the Earl of *Macclesfield*, and *Gregory King*, Esq; *Lancaster Herald*, (then Deputy Garter King of Arms,) to carry the *Habit* and *Ensigns*, and to invest his then Electoral Highness therewith. The next Day after their arrival, at a private Audience, his Electoral Highness received the *Garter* and *George*, with the usual Formalities; and two Days after, *viz.* 24 *August*, was solemnly invested with the whole Habit of the *Order*. On 13 *March* following, 1702-3. he was installed at *Windsor* by his Proxy *Charles*, Lord *Mohun*, with the accustomed Ceremonies. The same *Order* was observed at the Election of his Royal Highness the Prince, 4 *April*, 5 Queen *Anne*; when the Lord *Halifax*, and *John Vanbruge*, Esq; *Clarenceux* King of *Arms*, (in the room of Sir *Henry St. John*, Knight Garter,) were Commission'd to carry the *Habit* and *Ensigns*. They had their first Audience, on this occasion, of the Prince, the 31 *May*, who afterwards received the Garter and lesser George, and on 2 *June* following, was invested with the whole *Habit* and

Ensigns of the *Order*.

Certificates of Acceptation.

§ 4. After delivering the Sovereign's Letter, signifying Election by the Ambassador, and the *elect Stranger* doth readily accept the *Order*, he is obliged, by the Statutes, to return the Sovereign a Certificate of such his Acceptance, and desire of Ratification. And 'tis observable, before the additional Clause made by King *Henry* VIII. this ceremonious Course had been the Practice of ancient Times; and both expected from, and observed by the King of *Denmark*, who having been elected, 6 *Hen.* V. was the eighth of the same King taken notice of for not returning, before that Time, an Answer, whether he accepted the Honour or no: And it appears, before the next Feast of St. *George*, he sent over his ready Acceptance, both of the Honour of Election, and of the Ensigns of the *Order*; and thereupon Directions were given for his Installation by the Lord *Fitz Hugh*, his Proxy.

But for an instance, after the said additional Clause, there is one remarkable enough, in the Preamble of the Sovereign's *Credential Letters* to the Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* sent with the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order*; in which it appears: *That the Sovereign having given notice of his Election into this most Noble* Order, *he had returned back his cheerful and ready Acceptance of, and singular Satisfaction in the said Choice; and therefore cordially wished it might attain its due Effect.*

In succeeding Times it was thought necessary, where the whole *Habit* was sent to a *Stranger*, together with the Sovereign's Letters of notice, to

make a provisional Decree, (which passed, 13 *Car.* I) *That Garter, and all others, whom he pleased to join in Commission with him, should be most punctually careful, that they delivered not the* Ensigns *of the* Order *to any* elect Stranger, *till they were satisfied, by his* Letters Patent, *of his kind and grateful Acceptance thereof*; or in case of refusal, to forbear their Presentation.

And the same care was also taken, where only the *Garter* and *George* were sent; as appears by the Instructions sent, 19 *Car.* I. to Sir *William Boswel*, then appointed by the Sovereign to present those two principal Ensigns to *William*, Prince of *Orange*; where, among other things, he is expressly commanded, *To take a Testimonial from the said Prince, of his kind Acceptation thereof, before he should deliver those Ensigns of Honour to him*: So likewise in the Institutions of the same Date, for delivery of the *Garter* and *George* to the Duke *de Espernon*.

Of an Election not accepted.

§ 5. That sometimes this Honour hath not been accepted, appears in the single case of *Philip* II. Duke of *Burgundy*, who having been elected by King *Henry* V. then in *France*, had not, *Anno* 1 *Henry* VI. sent his Answer. It was therefore concluded on at the Feast of St. *George*, held at *Windsor* the said Year, by *Humphry*, Duke of *Gloucester*, then Deputy to the Sovereign, and by, and with the unanimous consent of the *Knights-Companions* present, to send Letters to the said elect Duke, by which he was desired to know, whether he gave his Acceptance or no? The Duke of *Burgundy*, it seems, made no Answer to this Letter: It was therefore again debated at the next

Year's Feast, and then thought fit, to send Persons over to him with the Nomination, who should press him for his final Answer. And then it appears, that the said Duke weighing the Statutes, and reflecting on the Quarrels between the Duke of *Gloucester*, and the Duke of *Brabant* his Unckle, made a plausible Excuse, refusing the Election, lest he should be forced either dishonourably to violate the pious Constitutions of the *Order*, or the obligations of Alliance; and upon this they proceeded to a new Election.

But this is the only instance of this kind; and it hath been the constant way of all elect Strangers, not only to accept, but to receive with the highest Marks of Satisfaction, the notice of their Election, and the Investiture of the *Order*.

CAP. XV.

The Investiture of Strangers, with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order.

The Time for sending the Habit and Ensigns unlimitted.

§ 1.

Though the Statutes of the *Order* appoint and prefix a time, wherein the Sovereign's Letters of notice to an elect Knight ought to be sent, yet as to the sending a solemn Embassy with the Habit and Ensigns, they do not limit any certain time, but leave it wholly to the Sovereign's Pleasure, wherein his own Interest and Conveniency, as well as that of the *elect Stranger*, is to be considered.

Nevertheless, the Statutes of Institution direct, that this Legation shall be dispatched with convenient speed; which must be interpreted to refer both to the Sovereign's conveniency of sending, and the *Stranger's* capacity of receiving.

And therefore we find it six Years after the Election of the Kings of *Arragon* and *Poland*, and the Duke of *Brunswick*, e'er we meet with the first notice of the Sovereign's determination of sending over the Habit: For they having been elected 4 *August*, 28

Hen. VI. the preparations for the *Legation* were not made till the thirty fourth Year of the same King; and doubtless some cause, within the limits of that conveniency allowed to the Sovereign by the aforesaid Article of the *Statutes*, or the accident of Miscarriage might fall out; particularly in respect to the King of *Poland*, because three Years after the former Order of *Legation*, we find new Directions issued for sending the Ensigns of the *Order* to him.

But in King *Henry* VIIIth's Body of *Statutes*, this Clause of sending the Legation with convenient speed, is wholly omitted, and the Sovereign is not limitted as to the Time; so that the Habit and Ensigns have happen'd to be sent sometimes sooner, sometimes later; as the Sovereign has thought convenient; of which sufficient hath been said already; and we find in two Elections of *Strangers* in the two late Reigns, *viz.* that of the present Sovereign and Prince; that the Legation was sent only a very few Days after their Election.

Preparations made for the Legation.

§ 2. In reference to this solemn Embassy, there are several things to be provided, before the Ambassadors, or Commissioners, take their Journey. As, (1.) Credential Letters. (2.) Commission of Legation. (3.) Warrants for the *Habit* and *Ensigns*. And (4.) other Necessaries.

The Credential Letters are, as to particulars, drawn suitable to the present Occasion, by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, and directed to the *Stranger elect*; but the Substance, in general, is, *That the Sovereign having elected him into the Society of the* Order, *hath sent his Ambassadors with full Power to present the* Habit, *and*

perform the Ceremonies due and accustomed, as if himself were present. And farther, to desire him, *To give Credit to all that his Ambassadors shall say, or perform, on his behalf, in reference to their Commission, as he would do to himself*.

These Letters pass under the Sign Manual of the Sovereign, and Signet of the *Order*; but it is observable, that these to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, were sign'd both by King *Philip* and Queen *Mary*.

The *Commission* of *Legation* is likewise to be prepared by the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, fairly engrossed on Velom, and Sealed with the *Great Seal* of the *Order*, the Substance of which, for the most part, hath been as follows.

First, The Merits and Worthiness of the *elect Stranger*, to deserve the Honour of *Election*, and the reasons of inducing the Sovereign to confer the same upon him, are elegantly set forth.

Secondly, The Persons nominated for this Honourable Employment, are ordained, authorized, and deputed, and therein Stiled, Ambassadors, Procurators, and special Messengers, and so are acknowledged to be by the *Stranger elect*, in their Certificates of the Receipt of the Habit.

Thirdly, Their Power, Authority, and special Command, is to address themselves to the *Stranger elect*, and present, and deliver him from the Sovereign, the *Garter*, *Mantle*, and other Ensigns of the Order: Where observe, that there were four or five joined in a Commission, as it has sometimes happened, then any five, four, three, or two, were of the Quorum; whereof the Principal of the Embassy was always one.

Fourthly, They were impowered to require from the *Stranger elect*, his Oath, according to the Form

prescribed in the *Statutes*; but this was a special case, and only inferred in the Commissions of Legation to *Charles*, Duke of *Burgundy*, 9 *Edw.* IV. and *Ferdinand*, Archdeacon of *Austria*, 15 *Hen.* VIII. and omitted in all Commissions since that time.

And lastly, To perform, and dispatch those things, which they should judge necessary, in the same manner as if the Sovereign were present in Person; and this Power it was thought fit to allow the Ambassadors, in case any thing should want to be performed which their Instructions had not sufficiently provided for.

The first Embassy on this occasion, recorded in the *Blue-Book*, is that to *Edward*, King of *Portugal*, 13 *Hen.* VI. to whom, for the greater Dignity of the *Order*, Garter was thought fit, by the *Chapter*, to be sent alone with the *Habit* of the *Order*: And hence is the original of *Garter's* Claim to this Employment.

Nevertheless, in succeeding times, as the Order grew into Esteem, some one of the Knights-Companions was made choice of by the Sovereign to be Principal in these Legations; as were *Galliard Sieur de Duras*, sent to *Charles*, Duke of *Burgundy*, 9 *Edw.* IV., *Arthur Plantagenet*, Viscount *Lisle*, to *Francis* the first King of *France*, 19 *Hen.* VIII. and others.

Sometimes other Noblemen, or Persons of Quality, though not Knights-Companions, (yet correspondent to the Degree of the *Stranger elect*, or to the Esteem the present Interest begat in the Sovereign,) were employed chief in these Embassies; among whom Sir *Charles Somerset*, after Earl of *Worcester*, was sent to the Emperor *Maximilian*, 6 *Hen.* VII. *Henry*, Lord *Morley*, to *Don Ferdinand*, Prince of *Spain*, 15 *Hen.* VIII. and others.

In Embassies of this nature, it was heretofore

usual, to join some Persons of Rank and Quality, or Office near the Sovereign, in the Commission; as Sir *John Scot*, Comptroller of the Houshold, and Sir *Thomas Vaughan*, Treasurer of the Houshold, both joined with the *Sieur de Duras* aforesaid: And Sir *Nicholas Carew*, and Sir *Anthony Brown*, with the Viscount *Lisle*.

To these Person, the Sovereign thought fit sometimes to add a Doctor of the Law, or a dignified Clergyman, and such as had the Language of the Country, not only the better to make such Answers to Questions as the *Stranger elect* might start, on perusal of the *Statutes*, but likewise to inform him touching the Institution of the *Order*, or other Passages relating to the Founder, or matters touching the Honour of the Garter. Besides, a dignified Clergyman was in those Times thought proper to Administer the Oath, and pronounce the Words of Signification, at the Investiture with the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order*.

And for these reasons, was *John Russel*, Doctor of the Civil Law, and Archdeacon of *Berkshire*, joined in Commission with the aforesaid *Sieur de Duras*, and *Edward Lee*, Doctor in Divinity, Archdeacon of *Colchester*, and the Sovereign's Almoner, sent over with the Lord *Morley*; and others.

But of later Years the Sovereign's Ambassador, Resident with the *Stranger elect*, hath supplied this Place; as did Sir *Thomas Smith*, in the Legation sent over to *Charles* IX. and Sir *Edward Stafford*, in that of the *French* King *Henry* III. and Sir *Anthony Mildmay*, to that of *Henry* IV.

Besides the aforementioned Persons, *Garter* was always joined in these Commissions of Legation, not only to keep on Foot his Right, but to manage the Ceremonious Part; and of this there are so many

numerous Instances as are sufficient to justify the Privilege of his Office, and maintain the interest of an ancient Right. Besides which, if it were any way disputed, we find it decreed in a *Chapter* 13 *Car.* I. *That the carrying the Ensigns of the Order to* Stranger Princes, *doth properly belong to* Garter.

Besides those Persons joined in the Commission of Legation, there has frequently been appointed, either *Norroy*, King of Arms, or some one of the *Heralds*, to go in Quality of an Attendant in this Service, not only for the Honour of the Sovereign, but of the Stranger who is to receive the *Habit*, in regard the Ceremonies of Investiture with the whole *Habit*, require the Assistance of two Officers of Arms, of which there are some Precedents.

Lancaster Herald attended the Embassy to *Charles* IX. King of *France*: *Chester Herald*, and *Rouge Dragon*, Pursuivant at Arms, on that of *Henry* III. of *France*. A Herald likewise attended the Embassy to *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*: *York Herald*, that of *Maximilian*, the Emperor: And *Somerset Herald*, to *Henry* IV. of *France*.

And whereas there went only *Norroy* to *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, it was because no more of the Officers of Arms could then be spared from their necessary Attendance on the Sovereign's Coronation; so in the Embassy to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, one Herald sufficed, because the *Garter* and *George* only were sent him, and consequently there was but little Service then to be performed.

Concerning other Companions, and Attendants, in these Legations, they are both for Quality and Number such, and so many, as the chief in the Legation judges sufficient for the Honour of the Sovereign, and the Dignity of the Embassy; and with these have usually gone several Noblemen, Knights, and Gentlemen.

In the third Place, there is to be prepared for these Legations, Warrants for the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order*; and these are also to be drawn up by the Chancellor of the *Order*, who is to attend the Sovereign for his Sign Manual thereto.

One Warrant is to be directed to the Master of the *Great Wardrobe*, to deliver to Garter the Mantle, with the Escutcheon of St. *George* within a Garter, embroidered on the left Shoulder, and Tossels belonging; and also the *Surcoat* and *Hood*.

There is also another Warrant drawn up, for the delivery of the Ensigns of the *Order* to *Garter*, *viz.* the rich *Garter*, and great *Collar* of the *Order*, with a George Pendant, and another George hanging in a blue Ribbond; together with Cases for them, lined with purple Velvet, and gilt on the outside.

And sometimes these Ensigns have been delivered out of the *Jewel-House*, to the Herald of Arms, joined in the Legation in *Garter's* stead, as were those sent to *Charles*, King of *Sweden*, 20 *Car.* II. but those provided for *John George*, Duke of *Saxony*, to Sir *Thomas Higgons*, the Principal in the Legation; for which they gave their several Receipts.

The Sovereign's Warrant for the delivery of the Ensigns sent to *Maximilian* the Emperor, was directed to the Lord Treasurer, for which *Garter* gave his Receipt. But for those sent to the *French* King, *Henry* IV. the Warrant was directed to the Master of the *Jewel-House*; and out of this Office have all the *Ensigns* of the *Order* been since delivered.

There are several other necessaries to be provided, which may pass as Appurtenances to the former, and are sometimes incerted in the Sovereign's Warrants for the Habit of the *Order*, and at other times issued by particular Warrants: As a black Velvet Cap with

white Feathers and a Heron Sprig, a Girdle and Hangers with the same coloured Velvet, with the Surcoat. A Yard of purple Velvet hath usually been allowed out of the *Great Wardrobe*, for covering the Book of *Statutes*, sent to the *elect Stranger*: And for the Velom, Writing and Binding the said Book, there is a Fee paid by the Sovereign to the *Register* of the *Order*, which hath generally been proportioned to the Dignity of the Receiver; for this Officer had allowed him for the Book sent,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
To the *French* King, *Henry* IV.	5	0	0
To *John Casimir*, Count Palatine	4	0	0
To the Duke of *Holstein*, 3 *Jac.* I.	3	6	8

To the King of *Sweden*, 3 *Car.* I.	3	0	0

But to be more particular, we will insert the Bill of Charges for the Book of *Statutes*, sent to *James* VI. of *Scotland*, 26 *Hen.* VIII.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
For Velom	0	5	0
For illumining the Arms and Letters	0	10	0
For Writing	1	0	0
For Binding and Gilding	0	2	8
For half a Yard of purple Velvet	0	7	0
For half a Yard of crimson Sattin	0	7	0
For the purple Silk for the Laces	0	0	4
For the white and green Silk for the Seal	0	1	0
For red Silk for the Strings, and garnishing the Book	0	1	0
For an Ounce and half of Venice Gold	0	5	0
For shaping, making the Bag, and garnishing	0	3	4
For red Sarcenet for lining the Bag	0	1	4
For a Box	0	0	8
Total	3	4	6

This Book of *Statutes* ought to be Sealed with the common Seal of the *Order*, which not only the Institution, but all the other succeeding Bodies of *Statutes* appoint. Besides, at a Chapter held at *White-Hall*, 13 *Car.* I. the Law was confirmed; and thereupon it was again decreed, That the Book of *Statutes* sent to any *Stranger Prince*, should be Sealed with the Great Seal of the *Order*, affixed to a Label of blue Silk and Gold.

There is also to be provided a large purple Velvet Cushion, to carry the Robes on, when they are to be presented; this is likewise put into the Sovereign's Warrant, and provided by the Master of the *Great Wardrobe*; usually containing one Yard and quarter in length, adorned with Fringe, Cauls, and Tossels of Gold and purple Silk, and within it a Pillow of Fustian filled with Down.

There were two Velvet Cushions prepared for the Service of the Duke of *Wirtembergh*'s Investiture, 1 *Jac.* I. one of Purple, for the Sovereign's State; and another of Crimson, for the Duke; so the same Year to *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*.

Two *Majesty Escutcheons* are likewise to be provided, painted in *Oil*, and gilt with Gold; one to have the Arms of the Sovereign surrounded with a Garter, under an Imperial Crown; the other of the *Stranger's* Arms, within a Garter also, and such a Crown as is proper to his Dignity. Both these are to be put in Frames, painted and gilt, with their several Stiles fairly Written under the Arms, and set on the back of the Sovereign's Stall, under the State, as also on the back of the Stall of the *Stranger elect*: But there were three *Majesty Escutcheons* sent over in the Legation to *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, in regard that at his Investiture, *Frederick*, Elector Palatine, was present. In case the chief Person in the Legation be a

Knight of the *Order*, then he is to have a like Escutcheon of his own Arms, set over his own Stall; for so had the Earl of *Derby* provided for him at the Sovereign's Charge, when he was sent with the Habit to the *French* King, *Henry* III.

The remaining Necessaries, are such as relate to the Transportation of the Habit of the *Order*, *viz.*

One Pair of fine Holland Sheets to fold the Habit in.
Two sweet Bags of Taffaty to lay amongst them.
Two Trunks to put the said Parcels in.
One Sumpter Saddle.

All which are to be provided at the Sovereign's Charge, and is also his Gift to the elect *Prince*.

What farther Warrants are to be obtained from the Sovereign, relate to *Garter*, and such other Officers of Arms, as are appointed to attend the Legation; as first a Warrant, whereby the Sovereign ascertains a Warrant for their Diet, and Reward, during their Journey, and till their return; and on which, most commonly, for greater certainty of its Payment, the Sovereign's Privy Seal is obtained.

The Allowance to *Garter* in the Reign of *Edw.* VI. was ten Shillings a Day for his Diet, and Ten Shillings a Day more as a Reward: And this we find allowed to Sir *Gilbert Dethick*, in the Embassy to *Henry* II. King of *France*, 5 *Edw.* VI. and the like in his Legation to *Maximilian* the Emperor; and to *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, 24 *Eliz.*

And when *Clarenceux* was sent in the Place of *Garter* (the Office being void by the Death of the said Sir *Gilbert*) to the *French* King, *Henry* III. the same was also allowed him, and commenced nine Days before his setting out; and of which there are other Precedents.

Of this daily Allowance, *Garter* hath usually obtained an advance before-hand, for his better support by the way.

When any of the Heralds were sent in *Garter's* Place, the same Allowances were made them, as if *Garter* had gone in Person; as had *Henry St. George*, Esq; *Richmond Herald*, sent with the Earl of *Carlisle*, to *Charles*, King of *Sweden*, 21 *Car.* I. As also to *Thomas St. George*, Esq; *Somerset Herald*, sent with Sir *Thomas Higgins*, to the Duke of *Saxony*, soon after.

As to the Allowance to such Officers of Arms, as are not joined in, but appointed to attend any of these Legations; it was usually, if a Herald, the Moiety of what was given to *Garter*: And if a Pursuivant at Arms, half as much as a Herald.

Agreeable to which, was the Allowance given to *Chester Herald*, and *Rouge Dragon* Pursuivant, in the Embassy to *Henry* II. King of *France*, 5 *Edw.* VI. and there called the *old Rate*; so also to *Somerset Herald*, to *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, and the *French* Kings, *Henry* III. and IV. And both the Herald and Pursuivant had also a proportionable part of their daily Allowances before-hand.

Besides which Allowances mentioned, *Garter* hath also Allowance for Postage, both Outward and Homeward, for Himself and Servants; and for Transportation of the Habit, and other Things necessary for the Voyage. And this by a Clause added in the Sovereign's Warrant, is left to *Garter* at his return, when he gives in a Bill of particulars, subscribed with his Hand, to the Treasurer or Chamberlains of the Exchequer, to have been disbursed by him.

The Warrant to furnish *Garter*, or the *Herald*, with Post Horses, and convenient Shipping to carry them

over, is usually had of the Privy Council, or Secretary of State; either before, or after the Lord Ambassador; and is not provided for in the same Ship.

The Ceremonies of Investiture.

§ 3. The Ceremonies performed at a Stranger Prince's Receipt of the whole Habit and Ensigns of the Order, are highly Solemn, whether we consider the manner of Investiture performed by the Sovereign's Ambassadors, on the *Festivity* and *Triumphs*, added by the new invested Prince.

First, the Commissions joined in the Legation, receiving notice of their first Audience, are to present themselves in the accustomed manner of Ambassadors, Garter, or his Deputy, going in breast with the chief of the Legation, if there be only himself joined in Commission with the Lord Ambassador, and in this Place *William Segar*, Esq; *Norroy* King of Arms, (sent in the room of *Garter*) proceeded with the Earl of *Rutland* at their first Audience before *Christian*, IV. King of *Denmark*.

Being arrived near the *elect Stranger*, they present the Letters, certifying Election, or their Credential Letters from the Sovereign; and after some short general Compliment by the Ambassador, he makes known to him, his Election in the usual Form, which is before sufficiently spoke of.

After the Formality of this Address is over, and that the Stranger hath by his Answer accepted of his Election, and consented to the Reception of the *Order*; the Ambassador immediately delivers him the Book of *Statutes*, that he may, if he pleases, peruse them before he assume the Habit, and desires his Consideration thereon. Next, both the Commissioners

in the Legation present him with the *George* and *Ribbond*. and put it about his Neck, as in several Instances hath been shown.

In the interim, before the Day of Investiture, Time is usually set apart for Conference between the Sovereign's Ambassador, and some of the elect Prince's Council, touching the ordering of the Ceremonies, and wording the Oath to be by him taken. *Garter* is likewise to consider what Places in the elect Prince's Court are fit to perform the Ceremony, and to see them made ready, and to instruct his Officers, what Duties and Services they are to undertake.

If the great Hall, or other large Room, be appointed, there ought to be prepared a Table, with a rich Carpet, whereon the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order* are to be laid, while the Sovereign's Commission of Legation is read; another Table should be prepared for the Stranger who receives the *Order*; and a third for the Sovereign's Ambassador.

In the Church or Chappel where they are to proceed to hear Divine Service, a Stall is to be erected under a Cloth of State, on the Right Hand Entrance of the Choir, for the Sovereign of the *Order*, wherein is to be fixed the *Majesty Escutcheon* of the Sovereign's Arms; another Stall is also to be placed on the same side of the Choir for the invested Stranger, at the same distance from the Sovereign's Stall, as is that for the elect Stranger in the Choir at *Windsor*; in which is to be fixt the *Majesty Escutcheon* of his own Arms, brought likewise over by *Garter* or his Deputy; a third Stall is to be erected for the Lord Ambassador, who (if a *Knight-Companion*) hath an *Escutcheon* of his own Arms within a *Garter* set over it; for so had the Marquiss of *Northampton*, at the Investiture of the *French* King, *Henry* II. *Anno* 5 *Edw.*

VI. and the Earl of *Derby*, at that of *Henry* III. under all these *Escutcheons of Arms*, the Stiles and Titles (fairly Written) of the *Sovereign*, and each *Knight-Companion*, are to be affix'd.

Where there is no solemn Proceeding to Church, the Sovereign's *Escutcheon of Arms*, with his Titles, have been set up at the upper end of the Room, where the Investiture is performed; so also the Stranger Knight's at due distance, as at the Investiture of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his Tent at the *Leaguer*, near *Darshaw*, in *Prussia*, 23 *September*, *Anno* 3 *Car.* I.

Besides the before-mentioned Preparations; the *Church* or *Chappel*, into which the new invested Stranger proceeds, is to be richly adorned, as we find by several Instances; as at the Investiture of King *Henry* III. when the Church of *Augustine Fryars* in *Paris*, was hung with rich *Arras*, and all the *Choir* and *Stalls* with *Cloth of Gold*. On the Day the Solemnity of Investiture is celebrated, the elect Stranger sends his Coach, and some Persons of Quality, to Accompany the Sovereign's Ambassadors to his Court. At the Investiture of *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, *Frederick*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, sat with the Viscount *Charleton*, in one Boot of the Prince's Coach, and Sir *William Segar* in the other; and were met by the said Prince at the Foot of the Stairs of his Court, and conducted thence into his great Chamber.

After such time as the elect Stranger, and the Sovereign's Ambassadors, have a while retired; the Stranger usually first enters the Room appointed for the Ceremony, and stands under his own State, expecting the coming in of the Ambassadors, and notice thereof being given them, they (reposing in a Room near) proceed in manner following.

Servants to the Lord Ambassador, two and two.

The Herald in his Coat of Arms, bearing the Mantle, Surcoat, Hood, and Cap, in his Arms; and if a *Pursuivant* attend the Embassy, he (wearing his Coat) proceeds before him, bearing part of the said Habit.

Garter vested in his rich Coat of his Sovereign's Arms, also (but at the Investiture of the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, he wore his Robe of Crimson Satten, as did *Clarenceux*, at the Investiture of the *French* King, *Henry* III.) bearing on a Cushion the *Garter*, and *Collar* of the *Order*, with the great *George*, the Book of *Statutes*, and the Commission of *Legation*.

Lastly, The Lord Ambassador, or chief in the Embassy, who, if a *Knight-Companion*, proceedeth in his compleat Habit.

If any other *Knight-Companion* is present, he also wears his whole Habit of the *Order*, as did the Constable of *France*, at the Investiture of the *French* King, *Henry* II. The said Constable also pair'd in the Proceeding with the Sovereign's Ambassador.

In going up to the Sovereign's State, they all make three Reverences, and drawing near, the Ambassadors Servants fall off on either side for the *Herald* to pass up to the Table, set before the Sovereign's State; whereon (with a single Reverence) he lays the Robes.

Then *Garter* draws near the Table also, and with a like Reverence towards the Sovereign's State deposites the *Ensigns* of the *Order*.

The Lord Ambassador follows, and makes his Reverence towards the Sovereign's State, and after turning to the Stranger elect, and doing him Reverence, he (or some other fit Person) delivers himself in a short, but grave, and learned Oration; "in which he not only sets forth the Praises of the illustrious *Order*, and of the King the Sovereign, but

also the Virtues, the memorable and praise-worthy Actions of the elect Stranger, to whom the Habit and Ensigns of the *Order* are sent: Neither are his Ancestors (if any of them have attain'd the Honour of this *Order*,) past over in Silence, that thereby his Heart (already breathing impatience and desire,) may be so much the more inflamed with an Earnestness to obtain the Honour and Favour of this so great a Dignity.

"He adds besides, that the Sovereign having well weigh'd these and the like things in his Mind, and maturely advis'd thereof with his *Knights-Companions*, they were perswaded and well satisfied in themselves, to nominate and chuse him before others; to the end that he might both himself be honoured by the Choice of such a Person, and also thereby give an increase and addition of Lustre to those renowned Actions and Virtues, which already were a chief Ornament to him.

"Lastly, He points towards the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, which he declares to have been sent by the Sovereign, out of great Love, and singular Affection, to dignify him therewith, as to a Person to whom he wish'd as well and honourably as to any other Prince whatsoever, and withall intreats him kindly to accept thereof, and wear them in remembrance of the Sovereign and his *Order*."

This or the like Oration being ended, the Ambassadors present their Commission of *Legation* to the elect Stranger, who delivers it to his Secretary, and he publickly Reads it.

At the before-mentioned Investiture of the *French* King, *Henry* II. the Bishop of *Ely*, one of the Commissioners of the *Legation*, made the Speech, to which the Cardinal of *Lorrain* returned Answer in the said King's behalf, with all thankful

Acknowledgments of the Honour of the *Order*.

After the Commission is read, *Garter* presents the Oath fairly Written, which is administred to the elect Stranger, where, if any Exceptions were before made and admitted, they must be rehears'd, as we find it directed in the instructions given for the Investiture of *James* V. King of *Scotland*. The Ceremony of the Oath being finish'd, *Garter* takes from off the Cushion the Garter, and having kiss'd it, presents it to the Lord Ambassador, who kneeling down, puts it with all Reverence on the Stranger's left Leg, being assisted by *Garter*, who pronounces these Words of *Signification*.

Ad laudem atque honorem Omnipotentis Dei, intemeratæ Matris ejus, & Sancti Georgii Martyris; cinge tibiam tuam hoc insigni Subligaculo, circumferens in augmentum honoris tui, & in signum ac memoriam illustrissimi Ordinis, nusquam oblivioni daturus, aut omissurus, quod eo moneris; ut valeas, inquam & velis in justo bello, quod solum inibis, stare firmiter, agere fortiter, & feliciter omnino vincere.

This being said, *Garter* takes the *Surcoat*, and with the Ceremony of a Kiss, delivers it to the Lord Ambassador, who (after the Stranger elect hath put off his Cloak or upper Garment, and Sword,) puts it upon him in this manner: First, The Lord Ambassador begins at the Stranger's Right Arm, and *Garter* (or the *Leiger Ambassador* if present,) assists at the left Shoulder. The Stranger being thus vested with the *Surcoat*, both the Lord *Ambassador* and *Garter* gird his Sword about him, with a Velvet Girdle of the same Colour, at the doing whereof *Garter* saith these Words.

Capito vestem hanc purpuream, ad incrementum honoris, & in signaculum Ordinis accepti: qua munitus non veteberis pro fide Christi, libertate Ecclesiæ, pro

jure, & oppressorum atque indigentium necessaria tuitione, sanguinem etiam fundere, nedum fortiter ac strenue dimicare.

After this, *Garter* takes up the *Mantle* and *Hood*, which, in like manner kissing, he delivers to the Lord Ambassador, who invests the Stranger therewith, and lays the Hood upon his right Shoulder; (the Train being given into the Hands of some Noble Personage to be born up,) *Garter* also pronouncing these Words.

Accipe Clamidem hanc Cœlici coloris, in signum Clarissimi hujus Ordinis, & in Augmentum etiam honoris tui, rubeo Clypeo Dominicæ crucis, uti cernis, insignitam: ut cujus virtute semper ac vigore protectus per Hostes tutus abeas, eos ubique superare valeas, & pro clarissimis denique Meritis, post egregiam hanc hujus temporis Militiam, ad æterna vereque Triumphalia gaudia pertingas.

Garter, in the last Place, takes up the *Collar*, and with a Kiss also presents it to the *Lord Ambassador*, who placeth it about the Stranger's Shoulders, and *Garter* uttereth these Words.

Torquem hunc in Collo deferes, ad augmentum honoris, & in signum quoque clarissimi ordinis a te suscepti, cum imagine Sanctissimi Martyris, & Christi Militis Georgii: cujus præsidio suffultus, Mundi hujus tam prospera quam adversa sic pertranseas, ut animæ pariter ac corporis hostibus hic strenue devictis, non Temporariæ modo Militiæ gloriam, sed & perenis victoriæ palmam denique recipere valeas. Amen.

When the Ceremony of Investiture is finished, the *Lord Ambassador* congratulateth the new invested Stranger in the Sovereign's Name, and in the Name of all the *Knights-Companions*, and then delivers him his Velvet Cap, adorned with white Plumes, and the Book of *Statutes*.

The Stranger being thus invested, stayeth a while in the Room, where he received this Honour, with the Ambassador, and after Complements of Congratulation between them, he goeth to the Church in a solemn manner, having the Train of his *Mantle* born up; at the Entrance into the Church, all in the Procession make three Reverences, the first towards the *High Altar*, the next towards the Sovereign's Stall, and the third towards the new invested Stranger's Stall.

The *Lord Ambassador* proceedeth towards the Seat assign'd for him, and stands before it till the Stranger hath ascended his Stall, and after making his Reverences, (as before) takes his; then *Garter* making the like Reverences, sits down on a Chair, plac'd for him before the Sovereign's Stall.

But the *Herald at Arms* ought to be often near the Stranger, or else the *Lord Ambassador*, to inform them of the *Order* of *Ceremony*, because *Garter* is obliged to attend the Sovereign's Royal Stall.

After a solemn Anthem, *Garter* passeth in the middle of the *Choir*, and by a Reverence, first to the invested Stranger, and next to the *Lord Ambassador*, gives them the Signal for descending, and being both come down, *Garter* passeth up before the Stranger to the *High Altar*, where he makes his Offering of Gold and Silver, being accompanied with the *Lord Ambassador*, the *Herald* laying the Cushion whereon he kneels when he Offers.

But if a *Knight-Companion* be sent on this *Legation*, then he proceeds first up to the *Altar*, preceeded by *Garter*, and Offers for the Sovereign, which done, he returns to his own Stall: Next, the invested Stranger proceeds up, (preceeded as before,) Offers, and returns back to his own Stall; afterwards the aforesaid *Knight-Companion* proceeds up again, and

Offers for himself: And in this *Order* was the Offering made when the Emperor *Maximilian* was invested at *Vienna*, *January* 4. *Anno* 10. *Eliz.*

The new invested Stranger having offered, returns to his Stall, and the *Lord Ambassador*, with three Reverences, takes his Seat, the *Organs, &c.* playing all the while: When the solemn Service is finish'd, the Stranger descends again from his Stall, and with the Proceeding before him, returns in the same Order he came to the Room, where he received his Investiture.

It's observable, that the Emperor *Maximilian*, out of a compliance with the Protestant Religion, caused, on the Day of his Investiture, all Prayers to Saints incensing, and other Matters and Ceremonies not used by the Church of *England*, to be wholly omitted at the Service in his Chappel.

At these great Solemnities, the invested Strangers have heretofore held most magnificent Feasts, but of late they are not so much in Use: And when Dinner was ready, they proceeded thither in their whole Habit, which they wore all Dinner time.

At the Investiture of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. the Sovereign's Stiles and Titles of Honour were proclaimed thrice, (before they sat down to Dinner,) and the said King's twice; but when *Maurice* and *Henry*, Princes of *Orange*, received Investiture, the Stiles were proclaimed immediately after they were invested, and in the same Room, the Ceremony being perform'd to both in the Afternoon.

At the Feast made by *Maximilian* I. (King of the *Romans*,) Sir *Charles Somerset*, and Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, sent on the Embassy, was admitted to his Table, and sat on his left Hand: On the Day of Investiture of *Don Ferdinand*, Prince of *Spain*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, the Lord *Morley*, and Sir *William*

Hussey, sat on his right Hand at Dinner, and Dr. *Lee*, and the said Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, on his left; these four being join'd in the Commission of *Legation*.

At a Feast on the like Occasion by the *French* King, *Henry* II. he admitted to his Table (beside the Marquiss of *Northampton*, the principal Person in the *Legation*,) the before-mentioned Constable of *France*; and all three sat in their full Robes of the *Garter*, which they put not off till after Dinner. The Cardinal of *Lorrain* sat also at the King's Table, but it was on the other side.

When the Investiture was performed in the Afternoon, then was the Grand Dinner turn'd into a Supper; as it was at the Investiture of *Maximilian* the Emperor, and two of the *French* Kings; but when *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, receiv'd the *Ensigns* of the *Order*, there was no Feast at all, but purposely omitted, to prevent the difference which might have been occasioned by the Precedency and Place, between Ambassadors drinking of Healths, and other Complements.

On this Solemnity, and the Honour they deriv'd from it, some have thought fit to transmit the Memory to Posterity, by Medals, with Inscriptions relating thereto; such were those of Gold and Silver, which *Frederick*, Duke of *Wirtemberg*, caused to be made; as also those made by *Charles*, King of *Sweden*.

Certificates of having receiv'd the Habits, *and* Ensigns *of the* Order.

§ 4. The magnificent Solemnity of Investiture, *&c.* being compleatly finish'd, and the Ambassadors having fully performed their Duties therein; they are

yet further to obtain from the new invested Stranger, before their departure, a publick Instrument, testifying the reception of the said Habit and Ensigns, Sign'd with his Hand, and Sealed with his Great Seal; this we find anciently done in several Instances, and is generally demanded and obtain'd.

Hereupon a Clause to this Effect is usually added, in Instructions given to Ambassadors; as appears from those to the Lord *Howard* and *Garter*, in the Embassy to *James* V. King of *Scotland*; namely, that *Garter should remember* (after the Investiture was performed,) *to Purchase, and Sollicit a Certificate from the said King, of his reception of the Order, and taking the Oath, both under his Seal.*

The Form and Substance of these Certificates are much alike; for after a recital of all the Powers given to the Ambassadors nam'd in the Commission of *Legation*, the Stranger Prince first makes Certificate of his receiving, and Investiture with the *Mantle*, *Surcoat*, *Collar*, and other Ornaments of the *Order*; and that they receiv'd them from the Sovereign's Ambassador, with the accustom'd Solemnities.

In some of these Certificates, namely from *Ferdinand*, Prince of *Spain*, *Anno* 15 *Hen.* VIII. from *Francis* I. the *French* King, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. and from *Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 3 *Car.* I. we find the taking the Oath appointed by the Statutes to be also certified. Of the return of these Certificates, the Annals of the *Order* sometimes take notice, and by a Decree, 13 *Car.* I. care was taken to oblige the Ambassadors to produce these Certificates to the Sovereign at their return.

The Stranger Prince hath been pleas'd sometimes, to give with the Certificate, a particular Testimonial of *Garter*'s punctual discharge of his Duty in the *Legation*, or of the Officer of Arms employed in his

stead; as did *Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, in the preamble of his *Diploma*, whereby he testifies the bestowing upon *Henry St. George*, *Richmond Herald*, the Honour of Knighthood; they have also usually given *Garter* Gratuities, either in Money, Diamonds, or some other Present of great value, of which several Instances might be produced.

CAP. XVI.

The Installation of a Stranger by Proxy.

Touching the Choice and Nomination of a Proxy.

§ 1.

After the Stranger is invested, he is enjoin'd by the Statutes (be he of what State or Condition soever,) to send in eight Months after his Investiture, either a *Proctor* or *Deputy* to be installed in his behalf, in the Seat assign'd him within the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windsor*.

The Time limited for sending in *Henry* Vth's Statutes, is but seven Months; and those of *Henry* VIII. allow no more; and that not only after Investiture, but after the Stranger hath certified the Sovereign of his reception of the *Order*.

By King *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes, it's also provided; *That in case a Stranger do not send his* Deputy *or* Proctor *within seven Months, without having a reasonable Excuse, and such as should be allowed by the Sovereign or his Deputy, the Election* (notwithstanding his former Acceptation,) *should be also void, except so it be, that the Stranger be hindred or disturbed by great Affairs, and then might he send his Excuse to the*

Sovereign, or his Deputy, within one Month after; and according as the Sovereign or his Deputy should allow or disallow of his Excuse, that then the Sovereign or his Deputy might give unto him four Months of respite more; within which time, if he neither come, nor send his Deputy to be installed for him, then the said Election should be void for that time.

The *French* King, *Francis* I. was so earnest for compleating this Honour, that he dispatch'd his Proctor hither with all the speed he could, and most of the Stranger Princes have sent their *Deputies* within the limited time, there being very few Instances to the contrary, and those were occasioned through the multiplicity of Affairs.

When the *Garter* and *George* only have been sent to a Stranger, the Ceremony of Installation hath been dispenc'd with, till a more convenient time, as appears from the Instructions of *March* 4. *Anno* 19 *Car.* I. given at the sending these two principal *Ensigns* of the *Order*, to *William*, Prince of *Orange*, and *Bernard de Foix*, Duke *d'Espernon*, (in regard of the Interruptions then given by the Rebellion here,) such dispensations, and for the same reason, was King *Charles* II. necessitated to give those Strangers whom he honoured with Election, while he remain'd in Foreign Parts.

Upon the said King's happy Restauration, among many other things relating to the *Order*, this particular was taken into consideration, in reference not only to the Duke *de Espernon* and Prince *Maurice*, who were dead, but those Strangers also then living; and at two *Chapters* held at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. directions were given to *Garter* to place the *Banners* and *Atchievements* of the surviving Strangers over their respective Stalls; and the Sovereign, by his supream Power, (induc'd by the impossibilities of the

late Troubles to perform the Installation, and by reason of the time elaps'd since their Elections,) dispenc'd wholly and absolutely with their Installations, but at the same time declar'd, that as the like necessity and conjuncture could never happen again, so he would not, on any motion or pretence whatsoever, give the like dispensation.

It seems to rest in the pleasure of the Stranger, whether he will chuse to send over any Person of his own Court, or give his Procuration to some one of the Sovereign's Subjects, to receive his Stall, and in his Name to take Possession of it; the latter of which hath been done several times, out of desire to favour some of our Nobility with this Honour, of which many instances might be given.

It hath sometimes happned, that a *Proctor* for the Installation of a Stranger, hath been appointed and nominated by the Sovereign of the *Order*, though the Principal had nam'd another before: Thus it fell out in the case of *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, *Anno* 10 *Jac.* I. who having deputed Count *Henry* his Brother, to be installed for him, and he having put to Sea in Order thereto, but by reason of contrary Winds not arriving in *England* before the Day appointed for his Installation, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* ordered that *Lodowick* of *Nassau*, Kinsman to the elect Prince, should take Possession of his Stall on his behalf: A case somewhat like, was that of *John George*, Duke of *Saxony*, who sent over his Procuration to *John*, Earl of *Bath*; and he being detained in the West on extraordinary Occasions, when St. *George*'s Feast was held at *Windsor*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. wrote to the *Chancellor* of the *Order*, to obtain the Sovereign's Dispensation, for not appearing in the Name of his Principal; who representing his humble request to the Sovereign, in a *Chapter* held

on the Eve of the said Feast, he was pleas'd to grant it, and appointed *Heneage*, Earl of *Winchelsea*, who perform'd the Service. There is also an ancient Example of this kind, *Anno* 9 *Hen.* V. where the Sovereign nominated the Lord *Fitz Hugh*, *Proctor* for the King of *Denmark*; which yet was not done, till after the Sovereign had been certified that the said King had been invested, and obliged himself by Oath to the observation of the *Statutes*.

In like manner it is recorded, that the Earl of *Cleveland* was by the Sovereign appointed Deputy for the Installation of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and yet not unlike, but this might be with consent of the said King, though the Annals herein are silent.

The Proctor's Qualifications.

§ 2. By the Statutes of the *Order*, the *Proctor*, whether he be nominated by his Principal, or by the Sovereign, must be *Procurator sufficiens & Idoneas*; that is, such a Person who hath always been accounted of unblameable Conversation, not branded with any note of Infamy, but altogether irreprovable. And such was *Dominicus Franciscus*, *Deputy* to *Charles*, Duke of *Ferrara*, who in the *Black-Book* of the *Order* is characterized to be a Knight of incorrupt Fame; nor are we to doubt but that other *Proctors* to Strangers were such, though the Testimonials of their Virtues do not appear in the Annals of the *Order*.

Secondly, The *Proctor* ought to be a Person correspondent to the State and Dignity of the Stranger that is invested, which may sufficiently appear by several Instances; the Emperor *Maximilian* I. appointed for his Proxy, the Marquiss of *Brandenburgh*, *Anno* 6 *Hen.* VII. *Francis* I. King of

France, *Adrian de Fercelin*, Lord of *Bross*, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. and *Henry* IV. of *France*, *Sieur de Chastes*, Vice Admiral of *France*, *Anno* 42 *Eliz.*

Thirdly, It is provided that he be a Knight, and without any manner of Reproach; and if it so happen that he have not receiv'd the degree of Knighthood, the Sovereign is to bestow that Honour before he be allow'd to take upon him the Execution of his deputative Power; for none but Knights are capable of this Honour, or permitted to bear the *Ensigns* of so great an *Order*. Hereupon the Lord *Willoughby* of *Eresby*, *Proctor* for *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, was Knighted by the Sovereign, the Morning before he proceeded to take Possession of the Stall.

There was one reason notwithstanding, why this particular was not strictly stood upon, (though moved) in the case (and it's the single case) of *Henry Ramell*, Hereditary Lord of *Wosterwitz* and *Beckeskaw*, *Deputy* for *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. for it being taken notice of that he was not a Knight, certain Persons were sent from the Sovereign to signify his Pleasure, that he should be advanc'd to the Honour of Knighthood before he took upon him the *Ensigns* of the *Order* in his King's behalf; to which he made Answer, that he appeared here, not in his own, but in the Name of the King of *Denmark*; and that such a degree of Honour was unusual in his own Country, (being Born in *Pomerania*,) and therefore humbly desired that he might be excus'd from the Honour; upon which the Sovereign was pleas'd to dispence with him, and forthwith the said *Deputy* (but no Knight,) was admitted to take the Stall assign'd to the said King his Principal.

His Letters of Procuration.

§ 3. The Authority wherewith an elect Stranger invests his Proxy, which ought to pass under his Hand and Seal, do generally contain these Particulars.

First, He premiseth the Sovereign's Election of him into the Order of the *Garter*, and his receipt of the Habit and Ensigns thereof, then takes notice or the Obligation the *Statutes* of the Order put upon him, for sending a Proxy to take Possession of his Stall, in regard the Dignity whereunto he is advanc'd in his own Country, will not permit him to repair Personally to *Windsor*; and being not only desirous that the Election and Investiture should obtain its due effect, but to fulfil, as far as in him lies, the Injunctions of the *Statutes*, in what concerns the assuming of his Stall, and taking the Oath appointed; he therefore Ordains, Authorises, and Deputes, a Person fitly qualified, (named in the Deputation,) his sufficient *Proctor*, and special *Deputy*, to appear at the Castle of *Windsor* in his behalf and in his Name, at the next Solemnity that should be held there, to supply his room, and receive Possession of the Stall assign'd him, according to the usual Form; and in all respects to perform those Ceremonies and Things in his behalf due and accustom'd, or should appear to belong any way to the Splendor or Ornament of the Order: As also to take the accustomed Oath with those Qualifications, and in that Form as had been (or should be) agreed on; and further, to fulfil all other things which he should think necessary to be perform'd on this Occasion, or whatsoever thing might require a more special Command, than was contain'd in the Letters of Procuration; and as fully as the Stranger should be obliged to, and would do, if he were there present in his own Person. Lastly, there is usually added a Clause of Ratification and

Confirmation, of all such things as the *Proctor* should say or do, in reference to the Solemnity of installation.

Of the Proctor's Reception.

§ 4. When the Sovereign is acquainted with the arrival of the Proxy, and the occasion of his coming, he soon after gives him Audience; after which, a Day for Installation is assign'd, and the Sovereign nominates some of the *Knights-Companions* his Commissioners, to perform the Ceremonies.

The *Proctor* heretofore has been receiv'd with very great State; Sir *Balthasar Castilian*, sent hither from the Duke of *Urbin*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. was met at the Sea-side by Sir *Thomas Brandon*, with a goodly Company of his own Servants well Hors'd, who kept Company with him, till they came near *Deptford* in *Kent*; where, by the Sovereign's Command, he was met by Sir *Thomas Dokara*, and Sir *Thomas Wriothesley*, *Garter*: The said Sir *Thomas Dokara* had attending him thirty of his Servants, all in new Liveries, well Hors'd, every Gentleman bearing a Javelin in his Hand, and every Yeoman a Bow and a Sheaf of Arrows, and so they convey'd him to his Lodging. The next Day they conducted him to *London*, and by the way there met him divers *Italians*, and *Paulus de Gygeles*, the Pope's Vice Collector, to whose House he was convey'd and lodg'd. The reception also of *James* Lord *Rambovillet*, Proctor for the *French* King, *Charles* IX. was very noble.

The Preparations for Installation.

§ 5. The Preparations of the Installation of a Stranger by Proxy, are the same as for the Proxy of a *Knight-Subject*, mention'd as before, and the Form of the Commission for Installation is much the same; the Preamble contains the Authority wherewith the Proxy is impower'd and is penn'd with like Words.

The Letters of notice to the Commissioners.

The Warrants for removing of Stalls, and for the Strangers Atchievements, are all to be obtain'd by the Chancellor of the Order, under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, to which the Signet of the Order is to be affixt.

The Strangers Atchievements (as mention'd in the Warrant,) are to be provided at the Sovereign's Charge; namely, his *Helm*, *Crest*, *Mantlings*, and *Sword*, together with a *Banner* of his *Arms* and *Quarterings*; and these the Proctor is enjoin'd to bring along with him to *Windsor*.

Sometimes a Warrant hath been directed to the Master of the *Wardrobe*, to provide but some part of these Atchievements; and another Warrant to the Lord Treasurer of *England*, to deliver *Garter* Money to provide the other part; in each of which, the particulars relating to either are enumerated; for so were the Warrants drawn up for the Atchievements of the *French* King, *Henry* II. At other times direction hath been to the Master of the *Wardrobe*, to deliver to *Garter* the whole, who thereupon puts the Charge upon Account.

Sometimes particular Warrants have been directed to the Master of the *Wardrobe*, to deliver several Parcels of the Materials, for the making up these Atchievements; as were those Warrants, to deliver the Sovereign's Embroiderer, and to *Garter*, so much Velvet, Cloth of Gold, *&c.* for making the great

Banner, and other the Atchievements of *Charles* IX. and *Henry* III. *French* Kings.

It also appears that *Garter* hath sometimes laid out the Money for all, or part of the Atchievements, and then delivered his Bill of disbursements into the *Wardrobe*; as is manifest from those Bills for the Atchievements of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, in Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and the Duke of *Holstein*.

Besides the Atchievements, some other things used at the Solemnity are commonly included in the foresaid Warrants; the *Mantle* of the *Order* is not prepared at the Sovereign's Charge, for the Statutes of Institution appoint the Proxy to bring one with him, not that the Sovereign should provide it, having done that before, at the Legation with the whole *Habit*; nor is it found in the Rolls or Books of the Sovereign's great *Wardrobe*, that any Account is made for providing a second *Mantle*, when the Proxy of a Stranger came hither; which, had the Sovereign been at such Charge, would not have been omitted.

The Proctor's *Cavalcade to* Windsor.

§ 6. The Day appointed for the Installation drawing on, the Proxy was heretofore accompanied from *London* to *Windsor*, with the Sovereign's Lieutenant and his Assistants, (if the Feast of St. *George* was then also celebrated,) or otherwise the Sovereign's Commissioners with a great Retinue.

Among the rest, when the Deputy of the *French* King, *Francis* I. rode to *Windsor*, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. all the *Knights-Companions* that were in Commission for that Solemnity, assembled at the Lord *Sandy*'s Place near St. *Paul*'s Church in *London*, whence they rode to the *Deputy's* Lodging, and thence

accompanied him with a gallant Equipage to the Castle of *Windsor*, where Lodgings were prepared for him at the *Dean's* House.

In like manner, *Anno* 8 *Eliz.* the Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester*, and Lord *Clinton*, (three of the four Commissioners appointed for the Installation of the *French* King, *Charles* IX.) with other Lords and Gentlemen, took their Horses at the Court Gate at *Westminster*, and with a great Train rode to the Lodgings of the said King's Proxy, (being then at St. *Mary*'s *Spittle* in *London*,) whence they went through *Holbourn* towards *Windsor*; the Earl of *Southampton*, Viscount *Mountague*, Sir *Henry Lea*, and Sir *Edward Umpton*, met them at *Langford* near *Colbrook*, with their Hawks, and shew'd the Proxy variety of sport, with which he being well pleased, they rode to his Lodgings at the *Dean's* House at *Windsor*, the usual Place of entertaining the Strangers Proxies.

Supper after his Arrival there.

§ 7. The Evening of their arrival passeth with a sumptuous Supper, but the principal Entertainment is reserv'd for the following Day's Dinner. At the Installation of the *French* King, *Francis* I. all the Commissioners met together at the Marquiss of *Exeter*'s Lodgings, and went to the *Dean's* House, where they were entertain'd by him at Supper all at one Table; at another Table sat *Garter*, with certain of the *Deputy's* chief Gentlemen, and some of the *Heralds*; and at a third sat the rest of the *Heralds*, and other of the *Proxies* Servants.

The Commissioners and other Noblemen, who accompanied the *Proctor* of *Charles* IX. to *Windsor*, supped also with him at the *Dean's*; He himself

sitting at the upper-end of the Table; then the Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester* by him, one against the other, next the Earl of *Southampton*, and Viscount *Mountague*, then the Lord *Clinton*, and Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*, after them two Strangers of distinction, then lower sat the Lord *Grey*, and other Strangers, and last of all, at the lower end, opposite to the *Proctor*, sat *Monsieur Dose*, *alias* St. *Michael*, the *French Herald. Garter*, *Black-Rod*, and divers Strangers, supped with the *Dean*, and in the Parlour and Hall sat divers Pensioners, Gentlemen, and Strangers.

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 8. What hath been before set down of the Proceeding to the *Chapter-House*, at the personal Installation of a *Knight-Subject*, will extend hither, both as to Order and Circumstances; yet this general Rule is to be born in mind, that the Place of a Stranger Prince's Proctor here, is next after the Provincial King's, (unless the Proctor of a *Knight-Subject* happen to intervene,) and before the Junior *Knight-Companion*, (unless a *Knight-Subject* pass then in the Proceeding,) of which we have an Instance at the Installation of the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Chevereux*, and the Earl of *Dorset*, by their Proctors, but the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Carlisle*, and *Holland*, with Viscount *Andover* in Person, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. when the Proceeding was ordered as followeth.

1. Two Waiters of the Sovereign's Hall, in their Livery Coats, bearing White Rods.
2. Alms-Knights.
3. Prebends of the College.

4. Officers of Arms.
5. Proctors to the absent elect Knights.
6. Elect Knights in Person.
7. Knights-Companions.
8. Black-Rod.
9. Register.
10. Garter.
11. Chancellor.
12. Prelate.
13. Sovereign's Lieutenant.
14. Courtiers and Gentlemen in the Rear.

Only in the single case of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 3 *Jac.* I. (as an extraordinary Respect and Honour,) his Proxy went in the Proceeding to the *Chapter-House* next before the Sovereign's Lieutenant.

As we had a former Example, of a Proctor to a *Knight-Subject*, who in this Proceeding past before the *Alms-Knights*, and Officers of Arms, namely, Sir *Henry Sidney*, *Deputy* to the Earl of *Warwick*, 5 *Eliz.* so here in the case of a *Stranger*, the Viscount *Hereford*, Proxy to the Duke of *Holstein*, installed 3 *Eliz.* went in this Proceeding to the *Chapter-House*, before the Officers of Arms: Which Proceeding was ordered as follows.

1. Gentlemen and Knights.
2. The Proctor and Ambassador of *Holstein* together.
3. Officers of Arms.
4. Register and Garter.
5. Lord *Hastings*, and Lord *Paget*, Commissioners.

If the Proxy of a Stranger pass in the Proceeding, which the Sovereign, his Lieutenant, or Commissioners, make to the *Chapter-House*, then for

the most part he gives his Attendance in the *Presence-Chamber*, or in the Room whence the Lieutenant or Commissioners proceed, and there joins himself thereto.

But sometimes the Commissioners, as an instance of singular Respect, after their setting out, have taken the Proxies Lodging in their way, and there receiv'd him into the Proceeding; so did Prince *Henry*, by the Proctor of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*; and the Commissioners by the Proctor of the Duke of *Wirtembergh*, 2 *Jac.* I.

'Tis observed, that the Proxies of Strangers have not always gone in the Proceeding, but sometimes staid at their Lodging, till the Commissioners were ready to send for them to the *Chapter-House*. As at the Installation of *Charles* IX. King of *France*, 8 *Eliz.* the Commissioners meeting, they, and the three inferior Officers of the Order, robed themselves, and then went to the Proxies Lodging, and having just conferr'd with him, took leave, and proceeded to the *Chapter-House*, whence they sent out *Garter* to the Proxy, with invitation to come to them, who was presently conducted by *Garter* to the *Chapter-House* Door, where the two Senior Commissioners receiv'd him between them.

Sometimes the Proxies have past privately to the East-Isle of St. *George*'s Chappel, and there rested, before the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* went into the *Chapter-House*, or proceeded into the Choir, without entering thereinto; for so did the Earl of *Cleveland*, and the Marquiss of *Dorset*, Proxies to *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, and *Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, 4 *Car.* I. The like Method was observed by the Earl of *Dover*, Proxy to *Charles*, Prince Palatine, 9 *Car.* I. and by Sir *George Cartaret*, Proxy to *Christian*, Prince of *Denmark*, 15 *Car.* II. so also of the Earls of

Carlisle and *Winchelsea*, Proxies to *Charles*, King of *Sweden*, and *John George*, Prince Elector of *Saxony*, 23 *Car.* II.

The Ceremonies perform'd therein.

§ 9. When the Proceeding hath arrived at the *Chapter-House* Door, the Sovereign, and *Knights-Companions*, or the Lieutenant, &c. with the Officers of the *Order* before them, enter to hold their Consultation; the Stranger's *Proxy* being first requested to stay without, till his Deputation, or Letters of Procuration are read, to the end they may understand the effect thereof.

To this purpose we find it directed, by an ancient Hand, that where any Knight is installed by his Deputy, he ought to stay without the Vestry, or *Chapter-House* Door, till he be introduced by two *Knights-Companions*: So the Lord *Paget*, one of the Commissioners for Installation of the Duke of *Savoy*, when the Proceeding was come to the *Chapter-House* Door, acquainted his *Proxy* with this Custom and Injunction, which he complied with.

The East-Isle, behind the High Altar, is the usual Place for *Proxies* to stay, till they are called into the *Chapter*, as it is also for the *Deputies* of *Knights-Subjects*, where Chairs and Cushions are prepared for this occasion.

The first thing done after the *Chapter* is opened, is reading the Commission for *Installation*, by the *Register* of the *Order*, (but if the Sovereign be present, no Commission issues,) and next, the Letters of Procuration; this being the most usual and proper Place for this Ceremony.

However, at the *Installation* of the *French* King, *Francis* I. by a very unusual compliance, the Commissioners went from the *Chapter-House*, after they had called in and invested the Earl of *Oxford*, with his *Surcoat* and *Hood*, to the *Dean's* House, where the *Proctor* was lodg'd, and in a great Chamber there, shewed him the Sovereign's Commission, and in it the Authority for admitting him into the Stall of his Lord and Master: Upon which the *Proctor* presented them with his Procuration, which impowered him to take Possession of it, and to perform what Ceremonies related to it; which Instrument the *Register* read before them. This being done, they all proceeded to the Chappel; where entering, they waved their return to the *Chapter-House*, and passed directly into the *Choir*.

After some time of Consultation in the *Chapter-House*, the *Proxy* is sent for in thither by *Garter*, who conducts him to the *Chapter-House* Door, and his Reception there by the Commissioners is after the same manner as is used to the *Knight elect*, or to his *Proxy*: But whether he ought to enter the *Chapter-House*, or be admitted any farther than the Door, or Porch thereof, and to pass thence immediately into the *Choir*, hath been some Question; because the Practice seems to have been sometimes one way, sometimes another.

All that we find to prohibit his Entrance therein, is an Expression in the short Ceremonial of *Installation* of Strangers by *Proxy*, entered in the *Black-Book*; where it says—That the *Mantle* is to be laid on the *Proctor's* right Shoulder, in the Porch of the *Chapter-House*, *because he is not to enter into it.*

And there are two Instances where the *Mantle* was delivered to the *Proctor* at the *Chapter-House* Door;

from whence some may infer, that the Practice of those Times was also agreeable to the aforesaid direction; namely, that of the *Proctor* of the *French* King, *Francis* I. 19 *Hen.* VIII. where *Garter* stood at the *Chapter-House* Door, with the *Mantle*, and as the Proceeding passed by, presented it to the two Senior *Knights-Companions*, who placed it upon the *Proctor's* right Arm; and so of the *Proctor* of *Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* who entered not into the *Chapter-House*, but had the *Mantle* discussed at the Door.

But these Instances, if duly weighed, cannot properly, or with any Advantage, be alledged to prove the Assertion; because the Affairs relating to both, receiv'd dispatch in the *Proctors* Lodging a little before, and where the *Proctor* himself was present, where the meeting of the Commissioners and Proctor cannot be deemed less than a *Chapter*, tho' not held in the *Chapter-House*, from the Transactions that passed there, *viz.* producing the Sovereign's Warrant, and the *Proctor's* Instrument of Deputation, which were both read before them by the *Register*, and the *Proctor* accordingly admitted, which being finished, nothing relating to the present purpose required their passing into the *Chapter-House*, or remained to be done till they came into the *Choir*.

But the general Practice runs strong on the contrary side; for we find that the *Proctor* for *Charles* IX. King of *France*, 8 *Eliz.* was met at the *Chapter-House* Door, by the Earls of *Sussex* and *Leicester*, who took him in thither between them, where, after the *Register* had read, as well the Sovereign's Commission for Installation, as his Letters of Procuration, and the Commissioners had admitted him *Deputy* for the said King, they all came forth, and laid his Principal's *Mantle* on his right Arm and Shoulder, the Train

whereof was born by the Earl of *Southampton*, assisted by the Lord *Herbert* of *Cardiff*.

Again it is remarkable, 25 *Eliz.* that *Garter* conducted the *Proxy* of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, to the *Chapter-House*, and at that Place the Earl of *Leicester*, and the Lord *Hunsdon*, received and led him in: So also was *Christian* IVth's *Proxy* led thither, by the Earls of *Nottingham* and *Dorset*. And in *Jac.* I. *Lodowick*, Count *Nassau*, *Proctor* to *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, was called into the *Chapter-House*, and there left, while the Sovereign, and *Knights-Companions*, proceeded into the *Choir*: Also in like manner was Sir *George Cartaret*, *Proctor* to *Christian*, Prince of *Denmark*, 15 *Car.* II. and the *Proctors* to the King of *Sweden*, and Duke of *Saxony*, 23 *Car.* II.

Nor are these Instances, and the Practice in this latter case, really derogatory to the Statutes, which, though they prohibit the *Proxies* Entrance into the *Chapter-House*, yet do not extend to any thing previous to the Installation, but what may happen after; for the Article of the *Statutes* having first directed the delivery of the *Mantle* to the *Proxy*, and next the assumption of his *Principal's Stall*, in these Words, *Dictus Procurator Installatus*, it immediately subjoins, *that from thenceforth*, that is, from the time of Installation, *he shall neither wear the* Mantle, *nor enter into the* Chapter, *nor have Voice there, by virtue of any Power granted him.* All which are Prohibitions, plainly relating to future Examples, and arising after the Ceremonies of Installation are past, and not at all refering to what preceeds it.

And it seems the Law hath been thus understood, in regard the greater prevalence of Practice hath generally attended it; for not only the *Proxies* of Strangers, as is observed, but generally *Knights-Subjects*, have been called into the *Chapter-House*, and

there received the *Mantle*, before they proceeded into the *Choir*.

The Ceremony of delivering the *Mantle* to the *Proctor*, is performed by the Sovereign, his Deputy, or the Commissioners, *Garter* presenting it to them; and the manner of it was anciently, by putting it on the *Proxies* right Arm or Shoulder, in the Name of his Lord and Master, there to hold it till the End of Divine Service.

But as there hath arisen some dispute, touching the *Proctor's* entry into the *Chapter-House* before Installation, so it hath happened in this Point of receiving the *Mantle*, *viz.* whether in the *Chapter*, or *Stall* allotted their *Principal*, of which there are Examples.

That part of the Article in the *Statutes* of *Institution*, relating to this Point, runs thus:——*That the* Mantle, *tempore Installationis Procuratoris*, shall be laid on his Arm, *&c.* but whether this shall be construed to that instant of time, when the *Proctor* is brought to the *Stall* of his *Principal*, or to some greater Latitude, as during the time of Installation, including the very first Action, or beginning of the Ceremony, namely, the being called to the *Chapter-House* Door, and entrance into it, is the Question; because there are Instances in both, but the latter is most warrantable by the *Statutes* and general Practice.

The Article in *Henry* VIIIth's *Statutes* being much more clear in describing and explaining the Ceremonies of *Installation*, than any of the former; (the particulars of which in every Point seems to be excellently regulated,) having mentioned the Sovereign, or his *Deputies*, laying the *Mantle* on the *Proxies* Arm, it immediately follows, as the very next thing to be performed in course of time; *That afterwards he shall be led by two Knights, from the*

Chapter-House *Door to the* Stall, *and there being, shall make his Oath, and be installed*; it gives no Account of laying the *Mantle* on the Arm of the *Proctor* at the instant of *Installation* in the *Choir*, that being directed to be done before. It is also recorded in the *Black-Book*, where this Ceremony is more fully treated; *That* Garter *shall take the* Mantle *upon his Arms, and deliver it to both the* Knights-Commissioners, *and that they* (according to the Tenour of the Statutes,) *shall lay it on the* Proctor's *right Shoulder, in the Porch of the* Chapter-House.

Besides, the ancient usage of receiving the *Mantle* in the *Chapter-House*, or at the *Chapter-House* Door, either before, or in the Proceeding to the *Choir*, of which many instances may be given, there are several modern instances where the *Mantle* was born to the *Choir*, (and sometimes the *Collar* of the *Order* with it,) not by the *Proctor*, but by *Garter*, before him, and delivered in his *Principal's Stall*; as in the Proceeding of the *Proxy* for the Duke of *Wirtembergh*, *Anno* 2 *Jac.* I. when, after he had taken the Oath, and was led into the Duke's *Stall*, (not before) was the Robe laid on his Arm; and so was it done in many more *Installations*; which manner hath so far prevail'd as to be the continu'd Practice, *Garter* carrying the *Mantle* on a Cushion before the *Proctors* into the *Choir*, and laying it (after they have taken their Oaths,) on their Arms in such manner, that the *Cross* of St. *George* may be conspicuous.

Of the Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 10. Concerning the *Proxies* Proceeding into the *Choir*, King *Henry* VIIIth's *Statutes* direct: *That he shall be accompanied and led by* two Knights-Companions

of the Order, *from the Door of the* Chapter-House, *to the* Stall *assigned to his Principal*; agreeable to which, is that Passage in the *Black-Book*; *That as soon as the two Knights have placed the Mantle on his Arm, they shall take him between them, and conduct him to the* Stall *of his Lord*; and thus assisted have all *Proxies* proceeded to the *Choir*.

Since the Custom of receiving the *Collar* in the *Chapter-House* was laid aside, the Sovereign, (or his Lieutenant,) with the *Knights-Companions*, (so soon as the *Mantle* is delivered the *Proctor*, or (as of late) that he hath been admitted according to the purport of his Deputation,) proceed to the *Choir*, leaving the *Proxy* behind them in the *Chapter-House*, and after they have taken their *Stalls*, the Sovereign directs two of the *Knights-Companions* to descend; who taking the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms*, and the three inferior Officers of the *Order* before them, pass to the *Chapter-House*, and bring thence the *Proxy* to his *Installation*. In this Proceeding the *Proxy* goes Bare-headed, as did the Earl of *Dover*, *Proctor* to *Charles*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, and Sir *George Cartaret*, *Proctor* to the Prince of *Denmark*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II.

The Ceremonies of Installation.

§ 11. When the Proceeding hath entred the *Choir*, and paid the accustomed Reverences, both towards the *Altar* and the Sovereign's *Stall*, and the *Alms-Knights*, *Officers of Arms* and of the *Order*, taken their usual Stations; the two Commissioners (*Knights-Assistants* or *Knights-Companions*,) and *Proctor* make their Reverences together, and then they conduct him into the lower *Stalls* directly before the *Stall*

appointed for his *Principal*, the foresaid *Officers* of the *Order* standing below in the *Choir*: If there be more than two Commissioners, then the two Senior conduct him as before, while the rest of the Commissioners take their Station below in the *Choir*, before their proper *Stalls*, and there stay till the *Installation* be finish'd, and the like do the *Lieutenants-Assistants*, except the two Senior that are imployed in the Ceremony.

The *Proxy* thus introduced into the lower *Stalls*, stands there while the *Register* pronounceth the Oath of the *Order* to him, which he repeats distinctly, laying his Hand on the *New Testament*, and afterwards kisseth the Book.

The ancient Oath appointed by the *Statutes* of Institution is short, and without limitation in all Points, the same with that a *Knight-Companion* takes at his Personal *Installation*, *viz. Faithfully to observe, to the utmost of his Power, the* Statutes *of the* Order; but afterwards the Sovereign's and Fellows of those other *Orders* of *Knighthood*, (as the *Golden Fleece*, *Monsieur St. Michael*, *&c.*) before their admission into the *Order* of the *Garter*, sued for, and obtained the allowance of some relative exceptions or proviso's to be added to the aforesaid Oath; which usually were such as stood with the interest of their Religion, their great State or Dignity, or precedent obligation to the *Order* they had before accepted.

In the *Black-Book* is a Precedent of the Oath to be taken by an Emperor; whereby he is obliged to promise on his Royal Word, and give his Faith on his Honour and the Holy Evangelists, *That he will faithfully and truly, to the utmost of his Power, observe the Statutes in every Branch and Article thereof, at least so far as they can or ought to be observed by him, and so far as they shall not be contrary or derogatory to*

those whereunto he hath before given his Name and Sworn, and saving all other conditions agreed on. There are besides this, other Precedents in the Annals of the Form of the Oath from the *Proctor* of an Emperor or King, and of every other inferior Degree, wherein are several exceptions before agreed on; and when *Philip*, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, (Sovereign of the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*,) was Personally installed at *Windsor*, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VII. and took the Oath without Limitation, yet he soon after obtain'd the Sovereign's Dispensation, that the use of the *Collar* and other *Ensigns* of the *Order* might be left to his pleasure, and that he might not be obliged to be present at future *Chapters*.

Other Exceptions have been admitted, but were obtained with great difficulty and much debate, lest the Dignity and Reputation of the *Order* should (instead of being kept up) be lessen'd, the forbearance of some Circumstances that hath been yeilded to, having sometimes been brought into Precedent, to the prejudice of the *Order*.

The exceptions that were allow'd the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, when he took the Oath at his Investiture at *Noremberg*, *Anno* 15 *Hen.* VIII. were as follow.

Not to wear the Garter *and* Collar *but at some certain times in the Year, at his own pleasure.*

That if he were not in Place convenient to go to hear Mass on St. George*'s Day, he should cause a Priest to say it in his presence.*

Not to be obliged, if busied in weighty Affairs, to wear the Garter, Collar, *or whole* Habit *of the* Order, *on St.* George*'s Day, longer than during divine Service; nevertheless he promised, if he could not than wear it for a whole Day together, he would willingly wear it on some other solemn Day within the compass of the Year.*

Of another nature were the exceptions which *Francis* I. King of *France*, procured to be admitted into the Oath taken by his *Proctor*, *Anno* 19 *Hen.* VIII. *viz. To observe the Statutes of the* Order *of the* Garter *so far as they were consistent with, and not contrary or prejudicial to the Statutes of the* Order *of St.* Michael, *and other* Orders *which his Principal had before taken of other Princes.*

Such like exceptions have been generally allowed to Kings and Sovereign Princes; but as to the *Proxies* of such Strangers, not Sovereign Princes, but Subjects, the Form of their Oath is usually framed (by the indulgence of the Sovereign,) with just limitations, not only to their obligation of the Statutes of any other *Order* they had accepted, or any Oath formerly taken, but sometimes to the Fidelity and Allegiance which they owe their Sovereign Lord and Prince.

After the Oath hath been administred to a Stranger's *Proxy*, (with such or the like exceptions before set down,) the two *Knights-Commissioners* pass up with him into the higher Row of *Stalls*, and so to that assign'd to his Principal, where being arrived, they take the *Mantle* from *Garter*, and lay it upon the *Proctor's* left Arm, with the Escutcheon of St. *George* uppermost, according to an *Order* in a *Chapter* held, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. which was to be a standing Rule for the future, and is now observ'd.

In the Act and Ceremony of *Installation*, the *Commissioners* who first conducted the *Proxy* into the *Choir*, jointly embrace him; then the *Proxy* makes his double Reverence, and lastly the *Commissioners*, according to the Custom of *Installations*, set him down in his Principal's *Stall*, where he hath used to remain during Divine Service; but by the aforesaid *Order* in *Chapter*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. the *Proxies* are

prohibited sitting in their *Stalls*, but directed to stand before them uncovered, with their *Mantles* on their right Arms, until Divine Service be ended.

The two *Knights* (between whom the *Proxy* proceeded to *Installation*,) descend into the *Choir*, and stand before their own *Stalls*, and after a while, first the Senior *Commissioners*, and then the other, ascend into them with usual Reverences, and then Divine Service begins.

The Proctor's Offering.

§ 12. The *Proctor* having receiv'd Possession of his Principal's *Stall*, stays in the *Choir*, and performs the following Ceremonies, the chief of which is the *Offering* of *Gold* and *Silver*, according to the Degree and Seniority of his Principal's *Stall*, in case the *Installation* be in the Morning; but if it be celebrated when St. *George*'s Feast is held by the Sovereign's *Lieutenant*, the *Proxy* ought not to Offer till the *Lieutenant* hath first Offered for the Sovereign; and the *Lieutenant* also Offereth for himself before the *Proctor*, if his Stall be higher than the Stranger's, for whom the *Proctor* is installed.

The *Proctor* in Offering doth it with all the Ceremony as if his Lord were present; when the *Knights-Companions* descend from their Stalls, (which Ceremony begins with the Junior *Knight*,) he also descends in his turn, and placeth himself below in the *Choir* before the Stall of his *Principal*, and if he have an opposite *Knight-Companion*, he joins himself to him, and proceeds towards the *Altar* to the Offering, with the Officers of Arms before him; but if no *Knight-Companion* be opposite, he then proceeds alone, having his Train born, and a *Knight-*

Companion, or some other great Personage, suitable to his Degree, attending on his left Hand, to give him the Offering, which he Offers kneeling on a Cushion, and after him the rest of the *Knights-Companions* present Offer, every one according to the Seniority of their Stalls.

After the Offering, the *Proctor* taking his way by the East-end of the Stalls, returns back to the Stall of his *Principal*, and Divine Service being finish'd, and like Honour in all respects shewed to his *Proxy* as if his Principal had been present, he ought to remain in his Master's Stall till his next Junior *Knight* hath left his Stall, and then descend after him, and stand below before his Stall, till his turn come to join himself again to the Proceeding, and so to pass out of the *Choir*.

Sometimes the *Proctor* hath been receiv'd at his coming down from his Lord's Stall by the two *Knights-Commissioners* who installed him, as were the *Proctors* of *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, and *John*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, between whom they also proceeded to the *Chapter-House* Door, in the same manner they were conducted into the *Choir*; but notwithstanding this, the *Proctor* ought rather to take in his return the Place of his Principal, (as he did at the Offering, and which is indeed his right,) and so the *Proctor* of *Francis* I. went behind alone in his Principal's place, and followed the *Knights-Commissioners* from the *Choir* to the place where he lodged; and this Method is since followed.

The Dinner.

§ 13. When the *Installation* hath past in the Morning, there hath usually been prepared a great

Dinner at the Sovereign's Charge; we need here only mention what is different in this particular from the Personal *Installation* of a *Knight-Companion*.

The *Proxy* washes alone, sits at the chief Place of the Table alone, and is serv'd alone, but the other *Knights-Companions* sit at the end of the Table; but if the Sovereign's Lieutenant be present, the *Proctor* dines at the same Table with him, and then a little before the second Course is brought in, the Sovereign's Stile is proclaimed with the usual Ceremony, in *Latin*, *French*, and *English*; but otherwise only the Stile of the new installed Prince, and but once. The Stile and Titles of *Christian* IV. King of *Denmark*, were proclaimed in *Latin*; and of *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, in *French*.

Dinner being ended, all rise in Order and Wash; first, the *Proxy* alone, and after him the *Knights-Commissioners*; and accompanying the *Proctor* to his Chamber, where leaving him, they retire to their own Lodgings, and there put off their Habits.

When the Solemnity of *Installation* is over, the *Proctor* is to take care, that *Garter* forthwith set up the Atchievements of his *Principal* over his *Stall*, and fix the Plate of his Arms on the back thereof; in Memorial of the Ceremony of Inauguration; to which end also Medals have frequently been struck, to perpetuate the Honour so received.

CAP. XVII.

The Duties and Fees payable by the Knights-Companions *at their Installations.*

Touching the Fees due to the College of Windsor.

§ 1.

Such was the Piety and Bounty of our Ancestors, that they thought no Work well perform'd, without being attended with some charitable Donation, especially if it had relation to the Church, whereto they generally bore a venerable Esteem. Hence was it at the *Installation* of the *Order* ordain'd: *That every* Knight-Companion *should, at his entrance, bestow a certain Sum of Money, according to his Quality and Degree.* That is to say,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
The Sovereign of the *Order*	26	13	04

A Stranger King	20	00	00
The Prince of *Wales*	13	06	08
Every Duke	10	00	00
Every Earl	06	13	04
Every Baron	05	00	00
Every Knight-Batchelor	03	06	08

These Summs were appointed *towards the Relief of the Cannons of* Windsor, *the Alms-Knights, and augmentation of the Alms-Deeds, there appointed perpetually to be done*. To the end, *That every one entring into this Military* Order, *might thereby more worthily obtain the Name, Title, and Privilege, of one of the Founders of the* Order; *it being supposed a worthy and just thing, that whosoever obtained this Privilege, should add some small increment to this Foundation*.

Not long after establishing the Statutes, the Titles of *Marquiss* and *Viscount* becoming special Dignities, it was Decreed, *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VI. that a *Marquiss* should contribute 8 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* and a *Viscount* 5 *l.* 16 *s.* 8 *d.* which was confirmed by King *Henry* VIIIth's Statutes.

And though in all the Bodies of the Statutes, the

Sovereign of the *Order* is charg'd with Payment of Fees to the College, yet is it to be understood only of those Sovereigns, who were not (before the assumption of their Stall,) elected into this *Order*.

Upon a Decree, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. the *Installation* Fee to all the Officers of the *Order* were settled: Those made payable to the *Dean* and *Canons* are,

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Stranger King	20	00	00
A Stranger Prince	10	00	00
The Prince of *Wales*	20	00	00
A Duke	10	00	00
A Marquiss	08	06	08
An Earl	06	13	04
A Viscount	05	16	08
A Baron	05	00	00
A Knight-Batchelor	03	06	08

These Fees ought to be paid at the time of the Knight's *Installation*, by the Hands of some one of their Servants, so soon as the Ceremonies are ended; the Statutes expressly prohibiting the setting up of their Atchievements till Payment be made.

The *Alms-Knights*, by Queen *Elizabeth*'s Establishment, receiv'd *Installation* Fees apart from those paid to the College, which by the aforesaid Establishment of Fees, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. are made equal to those payable to the *Dean* and *Canons*; and by the said Decree, the *Choir* of *Windsor*, under which not only the *Vicars*, but the *Vergers*, *Choristers*, and *Bell-Ringers*, are comprehended, receive the following Fees.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Stranger King	16	00	00
A Stranger Prince	08	10	00
A Prince of *Wales*	16	00	00
A Duke	08	10	00
A Marquiss	06	15	00
An Earl	05	10	00

A 04 00 00
Viscount

A 04 00 00
Baron

A 03 00 00
Knight-
Batchelor

Fees due to the Register, Garter, Black-Rod, *and* Officers *of* Arms.

§ 11. In the Rank of those Officers to whom *Installation* fees are due, stands first the *Register*, who, as appears by the *Black-Book*, is to have of every *Knight-Companion* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* and a Robe.

But there being a concealment of this Fee, it was represented to King *Charles* I. who ordered the *Register* to be paid in Lieu of the Robe, as follows;

		s.	*d.*		*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
Imprim. *For a*	Knight-Batchelor	13	04		28	00	00
	Baron	13	04		30	00	00
	Viscount	13	04		32	00	00
Item. *For a*	Earl	13	04	and	34	00	00
	Marquiss	13	04		36	00	00
	Duke	13	04		40	00	00
	Prince	13	04		38	00	00

The same were since settled by the Establishment

of *Installation* Fees, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. when it was added, that the Prince of *Wales*, and a Stranger King, should pay 40 *l.* and a Stranger Prince 38 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.*

Next, the *Register* and *Garter* claim both Droits and Fees, for their Service and Attendance, having a greater share of Business than any other Officer of the *Order*. As to the first of these, it was ordained by the Constitutions of his Office; *That as often as any Knight should happen to be installed, he might challenge for himself the Garments wore by him, immediately before his Investiture with the Surcoat of the* Order. And the constant Practice hath interpreted this to be the Knight's upper Garment, anciently a short Gown, of later times a Cloak, but now a Coat; which he puts off in the *Chapter-House* when the *Investiture* begins.

By the Establishment of *Installation* Fees, *Anno* 22 *Car.* II. the composition set upon each *Knight-Companion* for his upper Garment, was thus rated.

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
A Prince of *Wales*	60	00	00
A Duke	55	00	00
A Marquiss	50	00	00
An Earl	45	00	00
A Viscount	40	00	00

A 35 00 00
Baron

A 30 00 00
Knight-
Batchelor

Besides this Droit or Composition, there hath in all times been paid to *Garter* by every *Knight-Companion*, a Fee for his *Installation*, which was likewise brought to the following certainty by the said Establishment.

l. s. d.

A 30 00 00
Stranger
King

A 20 00 00
Stranger
Prince

A 40 00 00
Prince
of
Wales

A 35 00 00
Duke

A 30 00 00
Marquiss

An25 00 00
Earl

A 20 00 00
Viscount

A 25 00 00
Baron

A 10 00 00
Knight-
Batchelor

The Fee due to the *Black-Rod* by the said Establishment, is, from

l. s. d.

A 20 00 00
Stranger
King

A 20 00 00
Stranger
Prince

A 40 00 00
Prince
of
Wales

A 20 00 00
Duke

A 18 00 00
Marquiss

An16 00 00
Earl

A 14 00 00
Viscount

A 12 00 00
Baron

A 10 00 00
Knight-
Batchelor

The *Officers* of *Arms*, by the said Establishment, have the same Fees as are allowed the *Black-Rod*; only in the Fee of a Stranger King, they have an addition of ten Pounds more.

Fees belonging to other of the Sovereign's Servants.

§ 3. In the Lists of *Installation* Fees of former times, some Officers were set down, who gave their attendance, with the several Sums they receiv'd, some that were then accounted Fees, and others Benevolences; all which nevertheless were admitted into the List of *Installation* Fees, 22 *Car.* II. and though not entered into the *Register* of the *Order*, yet are to be given in under the Hand of *Garter*, with the other Fees payable at *Installations*, and to be paid by every Knight to all Persons concern'd respectively, according to ancient Custom, *viz.*

	Prince.	Duke.	Marquiss.	Earl.
To the	06	03	02 10	02
Wardrobe	00	00	00	00
	00	00		0
The	12	06	05 00	04
Trumpets	00	00	00	00
	00	00		0
The Serj.	02	01	01 00	01
Trumpet	00	00	00	00
	00	00		0
The	16	08	01 00	06
Musicians	00	00	00	00
	00	00		0

Drums and Fifes	04 00 00	02 00 00	01 15 00	01 10 0
Knight-Harbinger	03 06 08	03 06 08	03 06	03 06 8
The Porters	06 00 00	03 00 00	02 10 00	02 00 0
Master Cook	03 00 00	01 10 00	01 05 00	01 00 0
Serjeant Porter	06 00 00	03 00 00	02 00 00	01 00 0
To the Vestry	02 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 0
Yeomen Harbingers	06 00 00	03 00 00	02 10 00	02 00 0
Ushers of the Hall	02 00 00	01 10 00	01 05 00	01 00 0
Grooms of Chamb.	03 00 00	01 10 00	01 05 00	01 00 0
Yeomen Ushers	06 13 04	03 06 08	03 00 00	02 10 0
Quarter Waiters	08 16 00	04 08 04	03 16 08	03 06 8

Sewers	08	04	03 16	03
	00	08	08	06
	00	04		8
Buttery	03	01	01 05	01
	00	10	00	00
	00	00		0
Pantry	03	01	01 05	01
	00	10	00	00
	00	00		0
Cellar	03	01	01 05	01
	00	10	00	00
	00	00		0

	Viscount.	Baron.	Kt-Batch.
To the Wardrobe	01 15 00	01 10 00	01 05 00
The Trumpets	03 00 00	02 10 00	02 00 00
The Serj. Trumpeter	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
The Musicians	05 00 00	04 00 00	03 00 00
Drums and Fifes	01 05 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Knight-Harbinger	03 06 08	03 06 08	03 06 08
The Porters	02 00 00	01 10 00	01 00 00
Master Cook	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Serjeant Porter	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00

The Vestry	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Yeomen Harbingers	02 00 00	01 10 00	01 00 00
Ushers of the Hall	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Grooms of Chamber	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Yeomen Ushers	02 00 00	01 10 00	01 00 00
Quarter Waiters	03 00 00	02 10 00	02 00 00
Sewers	03 00 00	02 10 00	02 00 00
Buttery	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Pantry	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00
Cellar	01 00 00	01 00 00	01 00 00

Fees payable for Strangers.

§ 4. That Strangers should be liable to the demand of Fees, was thought unreasonable; therefore by the *Statutes* of *Institution*, the Sovereign is obliged to pay them; the first Example whereof that we meet with, is an Order, 1 *Hen.* VI. which appointed: *That the usual Fees, due for the* Installation *of the King of* Denmark, *should be discharg'd by the Sovereign, as the* Statute *enjoin'd*.

To this purpose Privy-Seals were issued to the Lord Treasurer for the time being, to pay the Fees to the

Register of the *Order* out of the *Exchequer*, which was the constant Custom, till King *Charles* I. in the 13th Year of his Reign, settled an Annual Pension of 1200 *l.* upon the *Order*; and by a Commission in the said Year, impower'd the Chancellor of the *Order*, and his Successors, to pay out of the same, not only the ordinary, but also extraordinary Charges of the *Order*; wherein the Fees for *Installation* of Strangers are included.

Notwithstanding the Sovereign (as we have shown) discharg'd the *Installation* Fees due from Strangers, yet they or their *Proctors* for them, did always bestow particular Rewards on the *College*, the Officers of the *Order* and of *Arms*, the *Alms-Knights*, and some others who attended the Solemnity, and in particular *Garter* had anciently bestowed on him a rich Gown, to wear at the time of *Installation*, but of late he has been presented with some other thing of considerable Value. They also were liberal to the Officers of *Arms*, as appears by several *Largesses* given to them by their *Proctors*, and in general to the greatest part of those that gave their Attendance.

CAP. XVIII.

Of the Grand Feast of the Order.

The Grand Feast appointed to be celebrated Annually on St. George's Day.

§ 1.

By the *Statutes* of *Institution*, it's ordain'd, That a solemn Festival should be Annually celebrated on the 23d Day of *April*, or St. *George*'s *Day*, in Honour of the Patron of the *Order*, as is observed in other military Orders, erected since this of the *Garter*, to which this seems to give Rules of holding their Festivals on the Anniversary of their Patrons. Thus *Philip*, Duke of *Burgundy*, on his erecting the *Order* of the *Golden Fleece*, taking St. *Andrew* for its Patron, appointed the Festival on St. *Andrew*'s *Day*. *Lewis* XI. King of *France*, appointed *Michaelmas Day* for holding the Feast of the *Order* of St. *Michael*. And so the Festival of the Duke of *Savoy*'s *Order* of the *Annunciade*, on *Lady Day*. The Duke of *Bourbon*'s *Order* of the Knights of our *Lady*, on the Conception of our *Lady* (8th *December*;) and other instances might likewise be given if it were necessary.

The Anniversary of St. George *fixed by the Church, to the twenty third of* April.

§ 2. That the 23d of *April* was the Day whereon St. *George* suffered Martyrdom by Beheading, appears from the *Greek Hexamiter* before his Commemoration; which was the Day observed both by the *Greek* and *Latin Church*; as also by our Predecessors, the *Saxons*.

St. George's Day *made* Festum duplex.

§ 3. After the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* had encreased the Honour of their Patron's Festival, our Church began to take greater notice of it, being now also esteemed among us as the Patron of the Nation; and therefore they bestowed an addition of Honour upon it, by making it *Festum duplex, ad Modum Majorum Duplicis*. 3 *Hen.* V.

The Place for celebrating the Grand Feast, assigned to Windsor-Castle.

§ 4. The Founder of this most Noble *Order* having fixed on this Day, for performing its Solemnities, he made Choice of that of his Nativity, the *Castle* of *Windsor*, which for a long time after was inviolably observed there, either upon the very Day, or some other appointed by Prorogation, not long after: For which way of Prorogation, allowance was given by the *Statutes* of the *Order*, and of which the *Registers* are full of instances.

St. George*'s* Day *kept apart from the Grand Feast, and how then observed.*

§ 5. How this Noble *Order* flourished from its Foundation to the time of *Henry* V. no Account can be given, since the Annals thereof are wanting to his Reign; but then it appears to have been in considerable Splendor; but the Civil Wars toward the end of *Henry* VIth's Reign, eclipsed it for a while. Under King *Edward* IV. when things were a little settled, it seem'd to recover; and in King *Henry* VIIIth's time, was at a greater heighth than ever. However, though the several Branches of the *Order* receiv'd some Augmentation from the influence of this Monarch, yet the Grand Feast began to decline, by a removal of the observation of St. *George*'s *Day* from *Windsor*, and a prorogatory Celebration of the Grand Feast to other times.

The Article of the *Statutes*, causing this great alteration from the original design of the first Institution, gives the Sovereign Power to prorogue the Grand Feast at his Pleasure; but then 'tis evident from the same Statute, that St. *George*'s *Day* was nevertheless ordained to be duly observed by it self, in what Place soever the Sovereign (if within the Realm) should then reside; *Windsor* hereby being not excluded.

It farther implies, the sacred *Rites* and *Offices* to be performed, with other Matters concerning the *Order*; for besides the particulars therein enumerated, this general Clause is observable: That what other urgent Affair soever, relating to the *Order*, should offer it self to be performed, the same might be treated of, and receive dispatches, in the *Chapter* held where the

Sovereign then should be, as fully as if he were at *Windsor Castle*.

So that henceforward, all things began to be ordered, both on the Eve the Day of St. *George*, and the Morrow after, with as great State; all Affairs as legally dispatched, and all Ceremonies as magnificently performed, except that of offering up of Atchievements, which is peculiar to the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windsor* only, as could be observed at the *Grand Festival* it self.

And how, by Virtue of this Article, and with what Ceremonies St. *George*'s *Day* was held, when the Grand Feast was prorogued, is evident from a full and ample Precedent, 22 *Hen.* VIII. now remaining in the *Office* of *Arms*.

For though the Sovereign with 13 *Knights-Companions* were at *Windsor* that Year, upon the 22, 23 and 24 of *April*, yet at that time they observed only the Feast Day of St. *George*, with the Eve and Morrow after, but deferred, by Order in *Chapter*, the Celebration of the Grand Feast, to the 8th of *May* ensuing.

The Grand Feast neglected by King Edward *VI.*

§ 6. From the Accession of this Prince, the Sovereignty of this *Order* became more neglected, so that during his Reign, no Anniversary of St. *George* was kept at *Windsor*, by a *Grand Festival*.

This is supposed to be owing to the common Calamity of that Age, wherein most Ceremonies, solemn or splendid, especially such as related to Divine Services, came under the denomination of being either Superstitious or Idolatrous. Insomuch,

that at a *Chapter* held at *Greenwich*, 2 *Edw.* VI. an Abolition being intended for such Ceremonies as were not consonant to the King's Injunctions, lately prescribed, it was then decreed, that then, and for ever from thenceforth, at the Feast of this most Noble *Order*, no other Ceremonies should be observed than such as were appointed by his Majesties Letter.

That no Procession should be made with going about the Church, or Church-yard, but the King's Majesty's Procession, lately set forth in English *to be used. His Majesty and other* Knights-Companions *sitting in their Stalls, at the Entry, such Reverences to be made to the King's Majesty only as was heretofore. The Offering to be in the Box for the Poor, without any other Reverence, or kissing any Paten, or other thing; but only at the return, due Reverence to the King, as was used before. The Mass of* Requiem *to be left undone, but yet, both on St.* George's Day, *and for next Day, a Mass to be Sung with great Reverence; in which, immediately after the Words of Consecration is said, the Priest shall say the* Pater Noster, *and so turn and Communicate to all, or so many of the* Order, *or other, after they have done, as shall be disposed to receive the Communion, according to the* Order *prescribed by his Majesty's Book of Communion, and without any other Rite or Ceremony after the said Communion to be used; except some godly Psalm or Hymn to be Sung in* English, *and so to end the said Service. All* Chapters, *and other Rites concerning the* Order, *not being contrary to these, to remain as they have been used.*

This Decree seemed to mean nothing less than a Prohibition to the holding the Grand Feast at *Windsor*, at least the neglect of its Celebration there, whilst King *Edw.* VI. lived: And though toward the End of his Reign, some care was taken for a

Permission to hold the said Feast, either on St. *George*'s *Day*, or some other appointed by Prorogation; yet it was without any regard to the ancient and usual Place; for when the Act passed, commanding the Days therein mentioned to be kept Holy, and no other, whereby this was involved among many other Saints Days then prohibited to be kept, as not being found among the Feasts then Establish'd; it was considered, that a Proviso and Allowance should be entered in the aforesaid Act, for the Celebration of this Feast, particularly by the *Knights-Companions*; which Act, though it suffered a Repeal by Queen *Mary*, yet stands in force at this Day, being revived by King *James* I. his repealing that *Statute* of 1 *Mar. Cap.* 2.

Removed from Windsor *by Queen* Elizabeth.

§ 7. But the most fatal Blow given to the growing Honour of the Castle of *Windsor*, was a Decree in *Chapter* held 9 *Eliz.* with the consent of the *Knights-Companions* then present, *viz.*

That if on the Vigil and Day of St. George, *the Feast was not held at* Windsor, *according to the usual Custom, it should nevertheless be sufficient, if the Observation thereof were kept at the same Place where the Sovereign should then happen to be, where also the rest of the* Knights-Companions *were obliged to be present, no less than if the Feast had been held at* Windsor.

And so severe was the latter part of this Decree against the flourishing condition of that Place, that it commanded also,

That no other Solemnity, under the notion of St. George's *Feast, should thenceforth be celebrated at*

Windsor, *except upon occasion of the* Installation *of some illustrious Person, and then also, not without express leave of the Sovereign.*

And to say truth, this *Statute* was but too strictly observed during her Reign; for we meet but with one Feast of St. *George* held there, till 1 *Jac.* I. (unless we mistake the Feasts of *Installation* for those of St. *George*,) but then the Sovereign, who was yet in *Scotland*, lent his Commission, dated 5 *April*, to the Earl of *Nottingham*, his *Lieutenant*, to prorogue the Festival to the 3d *July* following, and after constituted him to hold the Feast, which was performed the 2, 3 and 4 Days of the said Month, with all Pomp and Ceremony. The King himself, being then at *Windsor*, was prevented from being present by some occasion not mentioned.

Thus, after a long Interval, the Honour of the Feast was restored, which had this effect, toward the End of King *James* I. Reign, and that of his Son and Successor, King *Charles* I. that it begat a Re-union of the Feast and Place, whereby the Castle of *Windsor*, famous for the *Institution* of this most Noble *Order*, retrieved its ancient Honour, of having its Solemnities celebrated there.

Of Prorogation of the Grand Feast.

§ 8. Having thus noted, that from the beginning of King *Henry* VIIIth's Reign, till of late Years, the Grand Feast was seldom observed upon the precise Day of St. *George*; and that the occasion how both Day and Feast came to be celebrated apart, took its rise from the indulgence of the *Statutes* in point of Prorogation: 'Tis necessary farther to observe, that this Prorogation is of two sorts, either Absolute, as

being enjoined by the *Statutes*; or else Arbitrary, at the Sovereign's Pleasure, upon intervening Reasons.

In the first of these the Founder's *Statutes* enjoin, *That if the Feast of St.* George *shall happen within fifteen Days next after* Easter Day, *it shall be prorogued to the Sunday Fortnight, or fifteen Days after* Easter Day. And the reason is there given, *That every of the* Knights-Companions *might have opportunity of coming thereto, without being constrained to ride upon any of those three Holy Days preceeding* Easter Day. The same Rule for Prorogation, where there is a concurrence of these two Feasts, is likewise enjoin'd by the *Statutes* of King *Henry* V. and King *Henry* VIII.

And when the Grand Feast, in this case of *Easter*, has been kept before the expiration of the said fifteen Days, the *Knights-Companions* then absent, to avoid the Penalty for their not appearing, have made Excuse; that the ancient *Statutes* of the *Order* were violated in keeping the Feast within fifteen Days after *Easter*, as was alledged when Sir *John Denham*, Lord Treasurer, as President, held the Feast of St. *George* at *Windsor*, 24 *April*, 8 *Henry* VII.

Anciently, where the *Register* mentions the Grand Feast to be held at *Windsor*, beyond the Day of St. *George*, 'tis observable upon Calculation, that *Easter Day*, in those times, fell too near the 23d of *April*, to celebrate the Feast on, without breaking the Law, which was the real cause of those Prorogations, of which there are many Instances.

And as the *Knights-Companions* had Prohibitions put upon the Solemnization of their Feast, in case of its interfering with *Easter*, so had the Church of *England*, in their Observation of St. *George*'s *Day*, in reference to several other Festivals; and this continued till the time of the Reformation begun by King *Edward* VI. but since the Grand Feast has been

celebrated upon any of them indifferently the Feast of *Easter* only excepted.

The second sort of Prorogations, which are meerly Arbitrary, and wholly dependent on the Sovereign's Pleasure, yet warranted sufficiently from the Words, *Causa postulante*, mentioned in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes; as likewise the great Latitude given the Sovereigns of this most Noble *Order*, in reference to their Affairs, in the same Statutes: The first Precedent of which was, *Anno* 5 *Hen.* V. when about *August*, four Months after St. *George*'s *Day*, that King being engaged in the Wars of *France*, ordered the Feast to be celebrated at *Caen* in *Normandy*, and with great Solemnity created fifteen Knights into the *Order*.

There are several other Examples, particularly one 8 *Hen.* VIII. when the King being at *Eltham* on St. *George*'s *Day*, it was in a *Chapter* there held, Decreed, That the accustomed Feast of St. *George* should be observed at *Windsor* 25th of *May* ensuing. And from this time it became Annually customary, to keep the Day of St. *George* where the Sovereign at that time made his Abode: On which Day, and the Day after, the usual Solemnities were observed. But as to the Solemnization of the Grand Feast itself, that was in one of the *Chapters* then held, adjourned to some farther time, and then solemnized at *Windsor* by Prorogation, not by the Sovereigns themselves, but by their *Lieutenants* and their *Assistants* appointed for that purpose.

But to proceed with the Causes of Prorogation, which were either for some weighty reasons, or upon emergent Occasions; *Anno* 1 *Mariæ*, the Sovereign celebrating the Feast of St. *George* at St. *James*'s, *Philip*, Prince of *Spain*, and the Earl of *Sussex*, were on the Morrow after elected into the *Order*; whereupon it was likewise Decreed, that the

Inauguration of these two *elect Knights*, till the Prince came to *England*, which happening *21st July* following, the Grand Feast, together with that of the *elect Knights* Installations, were appointed to be celebrated at the same time.

Again 3 and 4 *Phil.* and *Mar.* at a *Chapter* held *22d April*, the Feast of St. *George*, together with the Installation of three *elect Knights*, was appointed to be held at *Windsor* the *9th* of *May* ensuing; and by a *Chapter* summon'd the *3d* of *May*, before the appointed Day for holding the Feast, the same was prorogued to the *15th* of *December* following, upon the pressing Affairs of the King and Queen. But before that design'd time came, another *Chapter* was held on the *31st* of *October*, wherein it was again prorogu'd to the first Sunday after *Twelfth-day*, viz. *9 January*, if by that time the King, who was then in *Flanders*, should return to *England*: But that not happening, it was farther prorogu'd to the *20th* of *February*; and thence, by another Decree, to St. *George*'s *Day*. Of which there are many other Examples, and sometimes upon other Occasions; but still at the Sovereign's Pleasure.

Of Commissions of Prorogation.

§ 9. There is no Precedent of Commissions for Prorogation, ancienter than 12 *Car.* I. left by Sir *Thomas Rowe*, wherein Notice is taken of all the Adjournments of the Grand Feasts, from St. *George*'s *Day* preceeding, till that Time, with the Reasons thereof, and chiefly upon Consideration of the spreading Sickness, together with a Command to the *Knights-Companions*, and the Officers of the *Order*, to attend the Sovereign on the new assign'd Days for

celebrating the Feast.

As to the Substance hereof, the succeeding Commissions very near agree, yet with some little Difference; as first, the Preambles are general, and run thus: *Whereas, upon special Reasons, and other important Affairs*, &c. except the Commission issu'd *25th February*, 1637. where the Preamble was fitted to a special Occasion, and runs thus,——*Whereas we have determined to create the Prince, our eldest Son, a Knight, and to propose him in Election as a Companion of our most Noble* Order, *for the more Conveniency of his* Installation, *We have thought fit to defer the Feast of St.* George, *&c.*

But in the Commissions of Prorogation of the Grand Feast, *25th February*, 19 *Car.* I. the Place appointed for Celebration is omitted, which Defect we find in the above-mentioned Precedent also; yet afterwards that material Part came to be inserted, and first of all in that Commission of the *26th February*, 14 *Car.* I. where the Place, being the City of *York*, is put into the Body of the Commission. And when the Civil War drew on, and the Sovereign could not well ascertain any Place, then the Grand Feast was appointed to be kept at any such Place as, on a nearer View, should seem convenient; afterwards it vary'd something, and came to be inserted thus,—*Wheresoever We shall then be*; or thus, *at such Places as We shall timely appoint.*

The most ordinary course, preparatory to the issuing such Commissions of Prorogation, has been by the Sovereign's Declaration in *Chapter*, or otherwise the Signification of his Pleasure to the Chancellor of the *Order* at any other Time, who thereupon drew up the Commission, and presented it to the Sovereign for his Sign Manual, and then affixed thereto the great Seal of the *Order*. But where

the Chancellor was not at Hand to receive the Sovereign's Commands, in this Case it was convey'd to him by some other Hand, with command to summon the *Knights-Companions* and Officers accordingly. For so it was done to Sir *Francis Windebank*, Knt. Secretary of State, by his Letter to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, 13 *Car.* I. for Prorogation of the Grand Feast.

And as all the preceeding Adjournments of the Grand Feast have been either decreed in *Chapter*, or directed immediately from the Sovereign; so there is a Precedent where the *Lieutenant* has been impowered to prorogue the same; yet to the Time and Place appointed by the Sovereign, and inserted in the Commission of *Lieutenancy*: And this was in a Commission, 1 *Jac.* I. directed to *Charles*, Earl of *Nottingham*.

That the Grand Feast ought to be celebrated once a Year.

§ 10. Though the Prorogations of the Grand Feast have been occasionally made use of on the aforesaid important Reasons, yet no such Adjournment or Prorogation is legally to be inlarged beyond St. *George*'s *Day* ensuing; because once within the compass of every Year, the Grand Feast ought to be solemniz'd; for so it was ordained by the *Statutes* at the Institution of the *Order*, and confirmed likewise by the succeeding *Statutes*. And when our Historians take notice of the Grand Feast, they speak of the same thing, that it ought Annually to be performed; whence it is frequently called in the Registers, *Annua Festivitatis*, *solemnitas annua*, *celebritas annua*, and the

like.

Of late Times, an Occasion happen'd that brought this of the *Statutes*, into a solemn Debate in *Chapter*, which, for the Result thereof, became very remarkable.

At a Chapter *held at* White-Hall, *2d* February, 1640.

The Sovereign propos'd to the Knights-Companions, *that having prorogued the Celebration of St.* George's Feast *from time to time, to the* 1st, 2d, *and* 3d *of* March, *so near Lent, that if the Feast were not held on these Days, it could not be done within the compass of that Year; because the* 23d *of* April, *for the next Year, did fall on* Good-Friday, *and so consequently must have been kept in Lent this Year, or not at all; and considering the great and important Affairs of the Parliament, he moved the Question, whether, if there were no Feast kept this Year, it would be any Blemish to the Honour of the* Order? *And whether he might not dispence with the* Statute, *and defer it till next Year? They all confessed the Sovereign's dispensing Power; yet some of the* Knights *seeing from the Institution to that Time, no Precedent was found where the Grand Feast had been wholly omitted, but that some of the Sovereigns, even though engaged in War beyond Sea, either solemniz'd the Feast in their own Presence, or by Commission in* England, *which was averred by the* Chancellor *to be both the fundamental and constant Practice, humbly besought the Sovereign not to begin to make any Breach in the constant* Order, *so long and uninterruptedly continued. Whereupon it was resolv'd, by general Vote, that the Feast should be celebrated on the aforesaid Days of Prorogation.*

By which Determination it sufficiently appears, of what Moment the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* then conceiv'd it to the Honour of the *Order*, to follow the *Statutes*, for the Celebration of the Grand Feast once every Year. Besides, it is observable, that it was not thought expedient to be dispens'd with, even on the most pressing and important Occasions. But rather than the *Statutes* should suffer any Violation, the Feast was then solemniz'd, tho' they were so straiten'd, in point of time, as not to have above two Days to make Preparation for it.

And though indeed, on the breaking out of the unhappy Civil War, the Sovereign was oblig'd to defer the Solemnity from Year to Year, it was not to be look'd on as any Precedent; and on the Restauration of King *Charles* II. it renew'd its former *Order*.

CAP. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feast of the Order.

Of Letters giving Notice of the Time and Place.

§ 1.

Among many other things which are necessary to be prepar'd beforehand; the first of Course is, the Letters directed to all the *Knights-Companions* and Officers of the *Order*, resident within the Kingdom, to give them Notice of the Time and Place, when and where the Feast is to be held. (2.) Letters of Dispensation to such Knights, as the Sovereign shall please to excuse from their Attendance at the Feast. (3.) Commissions of Lieutenancy, (or sometimes of Assistance) when the Sovereign cannot personally solemnize the same. (4.) Warrants for the Removal of Atchievements, if there be then Occasion. (5.) Escutcheons and Stiles, to be set on the back of each *Knight-Companion's* Stall, if the Feast be held elsewhere than at *Windsor*. (6.) The Chappel to be decently adorn'd. (7.) The great Hall, or other Place, for the Grand Dinner, to be prepar'd, and very nobly furnish'd. (8.) And lastly, Officers to be appointed, besides those of the *Order* of Arms, who are to give peculiar Attendance on the

Sovereign, at this Grand Solemnity.

As to the first of these Points, the Chancellor is to attend the Sovereign some convenient Time before the approach of St. *George*'s *Day*, to learn his Pleasure therein, and whether he is inclined to Prorogue the Day, *&c.*

If the Sovereign be inclin'd to a Prorogation, then the Chancellor is to draw up a Commission for that purpose. After this, Letters issu'd out anciently under the Sovereign's Sign Manual, both to his Lieutenant, when he holds not the Feast personally, and the *Knights-Companions*, giving them notice of the Time and Place; but of late the Chancellor hath been appointed to dispatch these Letters in his own Name.

But whether the Feast be held upon St. *George*'s *Day*, or any other, by Prorogation, the Sovereign's Pleasure was usually known so long before the appointed Time, that these circular Letters issu'd out sometimes two, three, four, five, or six Months, before the assign'd Day. And in Cases where there has been farther Prorogations, Care has been taken to issue out new Commissions, in the like convenient Time, before the old were expir'd; as may be observ'd by what has gone before; that so those *Knights Companions*, who are most remote from Court, may have sufficient Time to prepare; either for Attendance, or, on just Occasion, to apply themselves to the Sovereign, for Letters of Dispensation for Absence: And farther, that the absent Knights may thereby take notice of the Day set, because such are oblig'd to hold the Feast in their own Houses, at the same Time.

Besides the Letters directed to the *Knights-Companions*; the Chancellor is likewise to write his Letters to each of the Officers of the *Order*, to give them the like notice.

Of Dispensations for not attending the Grand Feast.

§ 2. It having been complained of by the Chancellor of the *Order*, and taken notice of by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, in a Chapter held at the Celebration of the Grand Feast, 13 *Car.* I. at *White-Hall*:

That of late Years, divers Knights-Companions *had neglected, both their Attendance on the Sovereign at the Feast of St.* George, *or to send, under their Seals of Arms, their probable Excuses, and Petitions for Licence and Dispensation, contrary to the most ancient* Statutes, *and their Duty.*

It was therefore, among many other things, decreed, *That for the future, every Knight of the* Order *should be bound to attend on the usual Days, or such as should be assigned by Prorogation*: But in Case of Sickness, or other important Business to retard them, they shou'd, under their Seals of Arms to the Chancellor, signify the Reasons for requiring a Dispensation for their Absence, twenty Days at least before the usual, or assigned Time, to be presented by him to the Sovereign; and on Neglect of so doing, except in sudden Accidents, should not be excused, but incur the Penalty of the *Statutes*.

And it is evident, that this way of enjoining the *Knights-Companions* to send the Reason that prevented their Attendance, under their Seals, has been very ancient; for the *Black-Book* records an *Order* in *Chapter*, held at a General Feast, 1 *Hen.* VI. to this very Purpose; and enjoin'd farther, *That when such absent Knights were present at the next Feast, they*

should be oblig'd to give the Reason why they should not incur the Penalty of their former Absence, since the Statutes *enjoin it.*

In Pursuance of the beforementioned Decree, Sir *Thomas Rowe*, then Chancellor, added to those his Letters, dated 18 *May*, 1637, and directed to the *Knights-Companions*, under the Seal of the *Order*, this following Postscript.

According to two Acts made in Chapter, *in the Presence of the Sovereign*, 18 April, 1637. *concerning the Neglect of the* Knights-Companions, *in their Attendance upon his Majesty at the Feast of St.* George, *and a Command expresly receiv'd to signify so much to your* Lordship; *I have the true Copies of the Acts themselves, it being resolv'd, in Case of Omission of your lawful and timely Excuse, under your Seal of Arms, and in Occasion of Absence, in keeping the Solemnity in your own House, that no Dispensation shall be given, but your* Lordship *shall incur the Penalties of the ancient* Statutes; *which are, That you shall not be permitted to the* Chapter, *nor to your Seat, the next Year; but shall stand before it, as do the* Choristers: *In Procession then you shall go before, and not in your Place among the Knights, and shall Offer last; and that this Penance being done, you shall come before the Seat of the Sovereign, and ask Absolution: But if two Years successively your* Lordship *shall omit your Attendance, or timely Suit for Dispensation, you shall pay twenty Marks, and that Sum to be doubled for every Year of such Omission, till you are reconcil'd, and pardon'd by the Sovereign, whereof I beseech your* Lordship *to take Knowledge.*

It afterwards appears, by an *Order* past in *Chapter*, *9th October*, 15 *Car.* I. that this early Notice to be given from such of the *Knights-Companions* as, upon the Reasons already mention'd, should be absent, was design'd chiefly in Favour of the Officers of the

Sovereign's *Houshold*, who, by knowing in due Time who should be absent, and who not, might make timely and certain Provision for the Feast.

Upon Notice sent by the Chancellor, to the *Knights-Companions*, as aforesaid, if any of them should happen to be any way indispos'd, or have other lawful Excuse for not repairing to Court, and attending the Feast, they may acquaint the Chancellor therewith, whose Duty it is to represent it to the Sovereign, and thereon to procure his Letters of Dispensation for their Absence, if the Sovereign consents.

Which Letters are to be convey'd by *Garter*, or carry'd by whomsoever he shall appoint; for which there was a Fee by the Mile allowed him, by the following *Order*, past at a Meeting held by the *Knights-Commissioners*, for regulating Points relating to the *Order*, 13 *Car.* I.

Whereas it having anciently been the Office of Garter, King *of* Arms, *to disperse and send Letters of Prorogation, Dispensation, and other Commands of the Sovereign, to the absent Knights, which in many Cases must be chargeable, it was this Day order'd, That if he should send any Act of Favour or Dispensation to any Knight, absent from his Majesty's Court, or four Miles from the City of* London, *he to whom such Dispensation should be sent, should pay his Servant or Messenger, for every Day's Travel, as much as is allow'd and paid any other Messengers of his Majesty's House or Chamber.*

Variety of Occasions and Accidents, as Grounds to move the Sovereign, and Inducements to obtain his Dispensation, are extant in several Letters sent to Sir *Thomas Rowe*, when Chancellor, on the aforesaid Injunctions, decreed 13 *Car.* I. but they all agree in the Causes we have mentioned.

Of Commissions of Lieutenancy.

§ 3. Touching the third particular, and preparing Commissions of Lieutenancy, in such Cases where the Sovereign cannot personally celebrate the Feast; as also Commissions for those whom he thinks fit to appoint for his *Assistants*, the Reader is referr'd to the Head in the next *Chapter*, under which there is an Account of constituting a *Lieutenant*; and here only observe, that the Chancellor is to draw up these Commissions, and attend the Sovereign for his Hand, and after to pass them under the Great Seal of the *Order*.

Warrant for the Removal of Atchievements.

§ 4. If there be Occasion for Removal of any of the *Knights-Companions* Atchievements, at the Grand Feast, which indeed has seldom happen'd, unless an Installation were celebrated at the same time, then does the Chancellor obtain the Sovereign's Warrant, directed to *Garter*, for the Performance thereof: But of this we have already said sufficient, under the Head of Preparations made for Personal Installations of a *Knight-Companion*.

Escutcheons of Arms and Stiles.

§ 5. Heretofore, when the Celebrations of St. *George*'s *Day* were kept at any other Place besides *Windsor Castle*, it was thought most necessary to provide large Paper Escutcheons; wherein were Marshalled the Arms and Quarterings of the Sovereign, and each *Knight-Companion*, in Metal and

Colour, encompass'd with a *Garter*; and thereon Crowns, Caps, or Coronets, peculiar to each Dignity, with their Stiles and Titles fairly printed underneath, (but without Crests or Supporters,) to be set on the Back-side of their Stalls, on the Eve of the Feast: But the Sovereign's Arms were impaled with those of St. *George*, over which an imperial Crown was plac'd, and these, (in Defect of the Plates and Banners, set over their Stalls, in the Choir of St. *George*'s *Chappel* at *Windsor*,) did serve for Directions for the *Knights-Companions*, that, by the view of them, they might the more readily and certainly know their proper Stalls.

We have not met with any Memorial of this Usage, that reacheth higher than *Anno* 21 *Hen.* VII. when the Sovereign, holding the Day of St. *George* at *Cambridge*, *King's College Chappel* was furnish'd with Escutcheons of the *Knights-Companions* Arms; but to shew the Use was ancient, there is this Note put into the Memorial, [as was Yearly accustomed,] *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VIII. the Sovereign being at *Windsor* on the Eve of St. *George*, appointed the Service of the Church to be celebrated in his Chappel, in the upper Quadrangle of *Windsor Castle*; and there being present with him thirteen *Knights-Companions*, each of them had set over their Heads an Escutcheon of their Arms.

This Manner the Stalls were afterwards solemnly establish'd, and enlarged to absent Knights, by an *Order* of *Chapter*, held at *Greenwich*, *Anno* 3 *Edward* VI. wherein the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* agreed, that from thenceforth every Stall, upon St. *George*'s *Eve*, should have an Escutcheon of the Arms of them which are absent, as well as those that were present, at their several Costs and Charges:

But this cannot be understood of the Stalls situate

in the Chappel of St. *George* at *Windsor*; for besides, that we have met with no ancient Account of any such Custom in that Place, we find a Memorial, rather implying the contrary; when Queen *Elizabeth*, in the sixth Year of her Reign, held the Feast of St. *George* upon its proper Day, at *Windsor Castle*; namely, that there was no Escutcheons of the *Knights-Companions* Arms set up there, but only the Plates; and without all doubt, had it been the Usage to fix Escutcheons in the Choir of that Chappel, as at other Places, they would not at that time especially have been omitted; because then the Sovereign appear'd upon an extraordinary Occasion, and where many things were added to heighten the Glory of that Grand Feast, by Reason the Peace between *England* and *France* was to be proclaimed at this Festival, in the Presence of the *French* Ambassador, and was accordingly done with great Solemnity on St. *George*'s *Day* in the Morning, at the East-Entrance in the lower Ward of the Castle, at the top of the Hill towards St. *George*'s *Chappel*; and to which Place the Sovereign, in her whole Habit of the *Order*, (the *French* Ambassador being near her,) with the five Officers of the *Order*, and *Knights-Companions* before her, and before them the Officers of Arms and Trumpets, proceeding in a stately and well order'd Cavalcade; and after *Clarenceux*, King of Arms, had ended the Proclamation, they continu'd the Proceeding thence to the Chappel, in the same State and Order.

As to the Practice and constant Usage of setting up Escutcheons of Arms, since *Anno* 3 *Edward* VI. and at such time as St. *George*'s *Day* was held elsewhere than at *Windsor*, we have seen Variety of Testimonies.

The Care of ordering and providing of which

belong'd to *Garter*; but the Sovereign of the *Order* was at the Charge, (notwithstanding the said Order, *Anno* 3 *Edw.* VI.) which heretofore we see was paid out of the Treasury in the *Exchequer*; and since the Establishment of 1200 *l. per Annum*, (settled by the late Sovereign King *Charles* I. to discharge the ordinary and extraordinary Expences of the *Order*,) the Allowance issu'd thence, and was paid by the Chancellor of the *Order*; but now the Charge is plac'd upon *Garter*, he having an Allowance therefore included in the Augmentation of his Pension, *Anno* 15 *Car.* II.

We find Privy Seals to have issu'd as high as the fifteenth of Queen *Elizabeth*, for the Annual Allowance of 7 *l.* for Escutcheons imploy'd for the Use aforesaid, and that the Price some time before was about that rate; for the three and twenty Escutcheons, provided against St. *George*'s *Feast*, *Anno* 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* came to 6 *l.* 1 *s.* and 8 *d.* and those five and twenty set up the following Year, 6 *l.* 11 *s.* and 8 *d.* some Differences then also being in the Work, which enhanc'd the Price, *viz.* those provided for Princes, at 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* a Piece, and each of the rest at 5 *s.*

The Sovereign, the Prince of *Wales*, and Stranger Kings and Princes, have accustomably had, at these Times, Majesty Escutcheons set up over each of their Stalls; but the rest of the *Knights-Companions*, Lodging Escutcheons only; and we have seen an Account of some Majesty Escutcheons prepar'd for every St. *George*'s *Feast*, from 1613, to 1619; to wit, one for the Sovereign, another for the King of *Denmark*, a third for the Prince of *Wales*, and a fourth for *Frederick*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, at 6 *s.* and 8 *d.* a piece; but so many *Knights-Companions* as attended the Sovereign at those Feasts, had each a

Lodging Escutcheon, at 2 *s.* and 6 *d.*

From the Marshalling of Arms, quarter'd in the *Knights-Companions* Escutcheons, and ordering their Stiles, (printed always in *French*) there are several things no less useful than worthy of Observation; for, first, though the Plates of Arms and Quarterings, fix'd in each *Knight-Companion's* Stall at *Windsor*, continue there without Alteration, or very seldom chang'd from that Order wherein they were Marshall'd at that Time of their Installation; yet these Escutcheons and Stiles Annually set up, do admit of frequent Alteration, as there is Occasion; either by adding more Quarterings, altering the Stiles, or amending any thing that is amiss.

For Instance: Whereas the Duke of *Savoy*, before 5 *Eliz.* bore *Gules a cross Argent*, it was then alter'd into five Coats; that is to say, in the first Quarter, *Westphalia*, *Saxe-Moderne* and *Angria*; in the second, *Chablais*; in the third, *Aouste*, and the fourth as the first; and over all, in the middle, the aforesaid Escutcheon of *Savoy*.

When the Lord *Hunsdon* was install'd, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* he had twelve Coats of Arms, thus Marshall'd in his Plate; four, four, and four; the first *Carey*, the second *Spencer*, the third *Somerset*, the fourth *Bullen*, the fifth *Ormond*, the sixth *Hoo*, the seventh *Rochford*, the eighth *Seyntomer*, the ninth *Malmains*, the tenth *Wichingham*, the eleventh St. *Leger*, and the twelfth *Hangford*; but *Anno* 7 *Eliz.* his Escutcheon receiv'd an Addition of four other Coats, *viz. Beuchamp*, *Warwick*, *Berkley*, and *Gerard*, and they were inserted next to *Somerset*, the third Coat in this said Plate.

But on the contrary, where *Ambrose*, Earl of *Warwick*, had twenty one Coats put into his Plate, *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* and they Marshall'd in this Order, five, five, five, and six; namely, first *Sutton*, second

Paganell, third *Grey* of *Ruthin*, fourth *Hastings*, fifth *Quincy*, sixth *Malpas*, seventh *Somery*, eighth *Valence*, ninth *Talbott*, tenth *Warwick*, eleventh *Beauchamp*, twelfth *Berkley*, thirteenth *Lisle*, fourteenth *Gerard*, fifteenth *Guilford*, sixteenth *Houlden*, seventeenth *West*, eigthteenth and nineteenth *Quarterly de la Ware* and *Cantilupe*, twentieth *Mortimere* of *Wigmore*, and twenty one *Greely*; at the Feast of St. *George* held at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 9 *Eliz.* his Escutcheon contain'd but sixteen; *viz.* four, four, four, and four; namely, first *Sutton*, second *Paganell*, third *Somery*, fourth *Malpas*, fifth *Grey* of *Ruthin*, sixth *Hastings*, seventh *Valence*, eighth *Ferrers*, ninth *Quincess*, tenth *Chester*, eleventh *Talbott*, twelfth *Beauchamp*, thirteenth *Warwick*, fourteenth *Berkley*, fifteenth *Gerard*, sixteenth *Lisle*: So that there were seven Coats taken out of the former; namely, *Guilford*, *Holden*, *West*, *de la Ware* and *Cantilupe*, *Quarterly Mortimere* and *Greely*, and two added, *viz. Ferrers* and *Chester*.

But the greatest and frequentest Variations are in the Stiles and Titles of *Honour*, set under the Escutcheons, and these relate unto, and are occasioned principally from their attaining or resigning of Offices or Dignities.

We find that the Stile set under the Escutcheon of *Ferdinand* the Emperor, at St. *George*'s *Feast*, *Anno* 1 and 2 *Phil.* and *Mar.* was as followeth.

Du tres hault tres-Excellent & tres-Puissant Prince, Ferdinand, par la grace de Dieu, Roy des Romaines, de Hungarie, & Bohemie, Arch-Duc d'Austrie, Duc de Burgoigne, &c. *Chevalier du tres-Noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.*

But *Anno* 5 *Eliz.* in the said Emperor's Stile, the

Titles of King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* were left out; because *Maximilian* his Son had a little before obtain'd both those Kingdoms.

In the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, the Stiles of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, who, while Queen *Mary* lived, was Co-Sovereign of this most Noble *Order*, run thus:

Du tres Hault tres-Excellent and tres-Puissant Prince Philip, par la grace de Dieu, Roy d'Espaigne, des Deux Cicels & Jerusalem, Arch-Duc d'Austriæ, Duc de Burgoigne, Millan, & Brabant, Compte de Hapsburghe, Flanders, & Tiroll; Chevalier du tres-Noble Ordre de la Jarretiere.

But at the Feasts of St. *George*, *Anno* 28, 29, and 30 *Eliz.* the Title of Catholick Prince was also given him.

The Instances relating to *Knights-Subjects* are very many; there having been almost every Year some Additions, or Omissions.

In the Duke of *Norfolk*'s Stile, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the *Lieutenantship of the North* was omitted. In the Earl of *Rutland*'s, at the same Feast, *President of the Council in the Council in the North*, was added. The Marquiss of *Winchester* caus'd the Title of Baron *St. John* to be omitted, because his eldest Son bore that Title, and was a Baron of Parliament.

It may be further observed, that a Stranger elect (having receiv'd the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order*,) hath been allow'd the Honour of having an Escutcheon of his Arms set on the back of that Stall design'd for him, notwithstanding he has not been install'd.

Of Adorning the Chappel.

§ 6. The Chappel where divine Service is celebrated, at the Time of the Grand Feast; whether it be that of St. *George*'s at *Windsor*, or elsewhere, as the Sovereign is pleas'd, hath at all Times been adorn'd with rich Furniture; the Care and Oversight whereof at *Windsor*, is committed to the Dean of the College, but at other Places, to the Dean of the Chappel.

The *Altar*, by the Gift of pious Benefactors, was adorned with Vessels, sumptuous both for their Materials and Workmanship; but *temp. Hen.* VIII. and *Edw.* VI. most of them were dispos'd of, so that King *James* I.· taking notice that very little Plate, and other Ornaments, were belonging to the Chappel, was pleas'd to make some Provision for the adorning thereof, which was at length effected by the free Contributions of the Knights themselves.

For at a *Chapter* held at *White-Hall*, 16 *Jac.* I. it was decreed, that every *Knight-Companion* should give to the Use of the *Altar*, in the said Chappel, a piece of *Plate* of the Value of 20 *l.* at the least.

This Decree was confirm'd, *Anno* 6 *Car.* I. the Dean and Canons of *Windsor* being impower'd to demand and receive the Sums of Money, as above, which they were to bestow in Plate for the Use of the *Altar*; and accordingly they agreed for the Quantity of Plate hereafter mention'd, which was deliver'd, *Anno* 1637. *viz.*

	Ou.	*Dr.*
Two little Candlesticks chas'd and gilt, for Wax Candles	092	06

Two Chalices, with four Pattens	113	01
Two great Candlesticks, neat for Tapers	553	15
Two little Basons	251	15
One great Bason	210	00
	l.	*s.*
The Value at 12 *s.* the Ounce, came to	730	10
Besides nine Cases	009	10

But to make some farther Addition to the Glory of this *Altar*, King *Charles* II. at the time of his *Installation*, offer'd two large gilt Water-pots, weighing 387 Ounces ten Peny Weight, amounting, by the excellent Workmanship, to 12 *s.* the Ounce, and to the Sum of 232 *l.* 10 *s.* Some sacred Ceremonies were perform'd at the Consecration of this Plate, not very necessary to be spoke of here. But all these, with the other Goods and Monuments belonging to the King's free Chappel and Treasury at *Windsor*, were rifl'd and taken away by the Parliament Army. King *Charles* II. therefore, after the Restauration, *Anno* 1667, by the Consent of the *Knights-Companions*, did levy and collect, and by his own Bounty furnish'd the Chappel again with the following Plate:

A Pair of gilt Flaggons, bought with Money collected from the Knights Companions, 150 *Ounces.*

A Pair of wrought Flaggons, with great Bellies, having the Figure of St. George *on Horseback on the Cover*, &c. *bought with the* Knights *Money*, 414 *Ounces.*

One small Bason. 25 *Ounces and an half.*

A Pair of plain gilt Chalices and Covers, bought also with the Knights *Money*, 163 *Ounces and a quarter.*

A large Embost Bason, with the Figure of Mary Magdalen *washing our Saviour's Feet*, 198 *Ounces.*

A Pair of large Taper Candlesticks, 264 *Ounces.*

At the Charge of the College.

A Pair of large Basons gilt and emboss'd, given by her Royal Higness the Dutchess of York, 305 *Ounces.*

A plain gilt Corporas, the Gift of Sir Richard Fanshaw, 24 *Ounces.*

A double gilt Chalice, the Gift of the Lady Mary Heveningham, 33 *Ounces.*

As to the Adorning, and Furniture of the Chappel, 'tis very sumptuous; the particulars being not so very material, I shall here omit them.

The Furnishing St. George's Hall.

§ 7. The Care of making ready and furnishing St. *George*'s *Hall*, or any Place, either there, or elsewhere, set apart for the Grand Dinner, is committed partly to the Gentlemen Ushers of the *Black-Rod*, and partly to the Sovereign's Surveyer-General of his Works, both by Warrant from the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold: They cause to be prepar'd the Tables, and set in order the rich and costly Furniture.

Officers and Servants appointed to attend the Grand Feast.

§ 8. The principal Officers of the Grand Feast are serv'd by Noblemen, whom the Sovereign appoints, and are put in a List, Sign'd by the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshould, and deliver'd to the *Black-Rod*,

who gives them Notice some convenient time before the Feast, that they may the better perform the Duty of their several Places; of what Quality they usually are, will appear by the following List.

Those that gave their Attendance at the Grand Feast, *Anno* 14 *Car.* II. when the Sovereign was install'd, were,

For the Sword,	The Earl of *Northampton*.
The great Bason,	The Earls of *Bedford*, *Hertford*, *Clare*, St. *Albans*, and the Lord *Herbert* of *Ragland*.
The Cup-bearer,	The Earl of *Essex*.
The Carver,	The Earl of *Carlisle*.
The Sewer,	The Earl of *Dover*.
The Surnap,	The Earl of *Elgin*.
The Ewer,	The Earl of *Devonshire*.
The Train,	The Lords *Russel*, *Herbert*, and *Cranborne*.

The Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Privy-Chamber in waiting bear the Canopy, and the Sovereign's Officers and Servants following, (having notice from the Lord Chamberlain,) give their Attendance; as appears by the List of those appointed to give their Attendance at *Windsor*, *Anno* 23 *Car.* II.

Lord Chamberlain, and Servants.
Groom of the Stool.
Bed-Chamber Men.
Secretaries of State.
Gentlemen-Ushers of the Privy-Chamber.
Mr. Vice Chamberlain.

Gentlemen of the Bed Chamber.
Privy Purse.
Secretaries of *Scotland*.
Twelve Gentlemen of the Privy-Chamber in waiting.
Four Gentlemen Ushers daily Waiters.
Two Cup-bearers.
Eight Quarter Waiters, Gentlemen Ushers.
Two Chaplains.
Two Physicians.
Two Chirurgeons.
Mrs. Sempstress and Landress to his Majesty.
Four Grooms of the Chamber.
Fourteen Lords to attend his Majesty.
Officers of the Guard.
Yeomen of the Guard.
Three Masters of the Tents.
Master of the Ceremonies.
Aid of the Ceremonies.
Jewel-House.
Musicians.
Yeomen of the Bows and Guns.
Captain Cook, and the Children of the Chappel.
Two Carvers.
Two Sewers.
Two Pages of the Presence.
Two Esquires of the Body.
Two Apothecaries.
Four Serjeants at Arms.
Eight Sewers of the Chamber.
Pages of the back Stairs.
Captain of the Guards.
Officers of the Robes.
Two Grooms of the Privy-Chamber.
Groom Porter.
Marshal of the Ceremonies.
Removing Wardrobe.

Gentlemen of the Chappel.
Five Messengers.
Sixteen Trumpeters.
Serjeant Trumpeter.
Drum Major.
Four Drummers and a Fife.

CAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feast.

Of the beginning of the Grand Feast.

§ 1.

The Celebration of the Grand Feast, with the Ceremonies, devis'd to set forth and illustrate the Glory thereof, hath been worthy the observation of the first Institutor, and all succeeding Sovereigns; well knowing that what is once slightly observ'd will soon fall into disesteem, if not into contempt. Therefore they have been very particular to the Day, the Hour, and the Place, where the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* are to meet.

As to the first, although St. *George*'s *Day* (or such other Day as the Sovereign shall please to nominate and appoint, by Prorogation in lieu thereof,) be the Principal and Grand Day of the Feast, yet the Eve of that Day does the Feast take Commencement, and determines not till the third Day following; the whole Solemnity taking up three Days inclusively.

And this is clear from several Articles of the *Statutes*, wherein the course of the Ceremonies to be observ'd at the Grand Solemnity are set down;

whether observed, on the Eve, the Feast-Day, or the Morrow after: And these three Days together did the Sovereign hold the Grand Feast, whether they personally celebrated the same, or deputed other of the *Knights-Companions* to that Employment, the cause of the Commissions of Deputation limitting their Power either in general, *during the time of the Feast*; or in particular, upon the Day of St. *George*, the Day, and that following, *viz.* the last Day of the Feast. In like manner, when in succeeding Times, Commissions of Prorogation of the Grand Feast were made use of, we find the three Days continuance of the Feast to be particularly mentioned in the Body of those Commissions: Namely, the Day wherein, by such Appointment, the Feast was to begin, the Grand Day it self, and the Day whereon it ended.

The Directions given in the *Statutes*, for the Order and Course of this Solemnity, to begin with the Eve, run thus: Every Year upon St. *George*'s *Eve*, shall be an Assembly, or Meeting of all the *Knights-Companions* of the *Order*, at *Windsor Castle, &c.* and the same is positively enjoin'd by all the other Bodies of the *Statutes*.

And as the Grand Feast is generally said to Commence *in Vigilia Sancti Georgii*, or as it is otherwise exprest in the *Black-Book*, in *Vigilia in future celebratis*, or, *Vigiliis Divi Georgii*, or in *Vigilia Festi*. So has the time of this preceeding Day several other Denominations given it in the same *Register*, *Vesper ante Diem Sancti Georgii*; *in Vesperiis Georgianis*, *in Vesperiis Festi*, *in Vesperiis Commitionem*; and at other times, *pridie Divi Georgii*, *pridie Georgianæ Solemnitatis*, *pridie Festi*, *pridie feriarum Divi Georgii*, and sometimes *per vigilia*, and lastly in plain *English*, St. *George*'s *Eve*; all which signify one and the same thing, and are but various Names given to the

Evening of the Day foregoing either that of St. *George*, or that whereon the Grand Feast is appointed to be held by Prorogation.

Thus we see that the Founder began his Solemnity upon the Eve of the Feast Day; which doubtless was in conformity to the Custom of the Church, who made the *Vigils* and *Eves* part of the ensuing Festivals, and as Ushers to the Grand Solemnities.

As the Eve was appointed by the Founder for the Commencement of the Anniversary of the Grand Feast, so to make the time more certain, the *Statutes* express the exact Hour of meeting for beginning the Solemnities, to be at the Hour of *Tierce*, which in many other Places is called, *Hora Tertiarum*. But this seemed not sufficient to express clear enough the meaning of a Law, where a Penalty was enjoined, and therefore at a *Chapter* held at *Windsor*, 17 *Edw.* IV. a scruple arising among the *Knights-Companions*, concerning the Words *Hora Tertiarum*, whether they were intended to mean three in the Afternoon, or at the Hour of the Church, generally used after Prime Noon before; and fixed it to the latter.

The *Registrum Chartaceum* Records the same Explanation of the Words; and to let us see that 'twas immediately put in Practice, it is there entered with the Names of those *Knights-Companions* present with the Sovereign, both in the Morning and Evening of the same Day.

Another Instance of which there is, 3 *Hen.* VII. on the Eve of the Grand Feast, held by Prorogation at *Windsor*, where the Sovereign, in regard of the arrival of several Ambassadors, put off the usual *Chapter* till Noon; whence it is evident, that the Custom at this time was likewise to begin the Solemnity in the Morning.

But notwithstanding the said Decree of King *Edw.* IV. we find it *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. to be meant and intended for three in the Afternoon. And when King *Henry* VIII. came to Model the *Statutes* of the *Order*, in two several Articles, he declares and expounds the *Hora Tertia*, (which the *English* Version of those *Statutes* renders the *Hour* of *Tierce*,) to be the *Hora Tertia post Merediem*, three in the Afternoon; and in another Article of the same *Statutes*, *Hora Tertiarum, id est, Hora Tertiarum post Merediem*; and elsewhere, *Hora Tertia Vespertina vel Pomeridiana*; which Hour, as it was then settled to be the punctual time for the *Knights-Companions* meeting, to enter on the Solemnity of the Feast, so has it ever since continued unaltered, and usually observed.

The Place of Assembly for the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, hath usually been in such of the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, both at *Windsor*, or elsewhere, as he hath appointed; frequently in the Privy, Withdrawing, or Bed Chambers: To this appointed Place the *Knights-Companions* repair, to give their Attendance on the Sovereign, having first invested themselves in full Robes, either in their own Lodgings, or some convenient Room at Court, where *Garter* is to attend them, with notice of the approaching Hour.

The *Knights-Companions* being come to the Sovereign, as likewise the Officers of the *Order*, habited in their *Mantles*, and bearing in their Hands the *Symbols* of their several Offices, they wait the Sovereign's being vested in his Robes, till he passes into the Presence Chamber, or give beginning to the Feast, by opening the *Chapter* at their meeting, before he goes thither.

About the same time, the Provincial *Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, wearing their Coats of the

Sovereign's Arms; so also the Band of Pensioners, armed with their Pole Axes, Assemble in the Presence Chamber; but the Prebends of the College, vested in their Taffaty Mantles over their Surplices, and *Alms-Knights* in their *Mantles* and *Surcoats*, come no nearer than the Guard Chamber.

Lastly, The Servants and Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* meet without the Guard Chamber Door, whence spreading themselves down the Stairs, through the Stone Gallery, into the upper Ward of the Castle, or as far as their Number will reach, all wait the Sovereign's coming forth into the Presence.

It will be necessary here to inform the Reader, in regard not only the Feast Day of St. *George*, but the Grand Feast held in Honour of the *Order*, hath been kept in several other Places besides *Windsor Castle*, more particularly, at *White-Hall*, St. *James*'s, *Greenwich*, and *York*; that there are many Ceremonies, and other Particulars hereafter named, which alter not with the Place; but appertain to the Festival, and are therefore to be observed every where alike; as for instance, the form of Proceeding, the manner of holding *Chapters*, the Ceremony of Offering Gold and Silver, Swearing of Officers, and such like: But others there are, which are precisely local and particular, as the *Prebends* and *Alms-Knights* going in the Proceeding, the Offering up of Atchievements, *&c.* to *Windsor* only.

Since the withdrawing the Grand Feast from *Windsor*, some of the Officers of Arms, curious in the Observation of these Solemnities, performed in other Places, have afforded us great Plenty of Memorials, relating to the ceremonious Part thereof, while the same was continued at *Windsor*; and therefore, when the true Place where the Instance lies, shall be also cited, the Reader is not to conclude that the

Precedent urged doth not full enough answer the Purpose, unless it had been likewise fetched from *Windsor*. But that in this case, the Ceremony or Example is such, as is peculiar to the Feast, not the Place, and ought to be observed without alteration at any Place, where the Sovereign shall keep the Grand Feast.

Of setting the Proceeding in Order.

§ 2. In Times past, the *Knights-Companions* appeared at the Grand Feast, attended with a numerous Train of Servants and other Dependents; but the Feast having removed from *Windsor* to other Places, much of this ancient Splendor was laid aside; yet upon King *James* I. Accession to the Crown, somewhat of this Glory began to revive; for we find it entered upon the *Register*, in the fourth of his Reign; *That the ancient Custom, which for some Years had been intermitted, wherein, at the Solemnity of this Feast, all the* Knights-Companions *were wont to go attended, each with a large Train, was recalled and brought back into use*.

But this heighth of Gallantry and Splendor in the Number of Attendants, and richness of their Apparel, within ten Years grew up to such Excess, or rather Exorbitancy, that it required a restraint; wherefore the Sovereign, by the unanimous Advice of the *Knights-Companions*, Decreed, and Commanded, *That every one of the* Knights-Companions *of the* Order, *should have to attend upon his Person at the yearly Solemnization of the Feast of the* Order, *fifty Persons, and no more*: The reason whereof we find elsewhere noted to be, for saving of Charge, and avoiding of Emulation. But in the beginning of King *Charles* I.

Reign, of ever Blessed Memory, the gallantry of Attendants began again to Increase and Augment; insomuch that at the Grand Feast held at *White-Hall*, the 22d, 23d, and 24th of *April*, *Anno* 8 *Car.* I. we find it observed, that the *Knights-Companions* came forth attended, each with a Train of Servants very richly clad.

But to return and enter upon the Proceeding, to the end the Servants and Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* may be exactly Marshalled, the Usher of the Hall (whose Duty it is to rank them) ought to call for a List from *Garter*, of such *Knights-Companions* as are to be present at the Grand Feast, noted with their several Places in the Proceeding, for his better Directions in assigning the Attendants their due Places, the Order whereof is thus: First, the *Junior* Knights-Attendants proceed one before another, on the left Hand, upon whose right Hand the second eldest Knights-Attendants go in equal Rank with them, for this we observe to have been the general rule; where the *Knights-Companions* Proceed in pairs, their Attendants go together; those belonging to the *Senior* Knights of the two, on the right Hand, and to the *Junior* upon their left; but the Order is otherwise, where any of the *Knights-Companions* proceed single and alone, (which often falls out, as shall be noted in its due Place,) for then the Attendants belonging to that single Knight go two and two, on both sides the Way, opposite one against the other.

But when the Grand Feast is Celebrated at *White-Hall*, there the *Knights-Companions* Attendants are Marshalled by the said Usher, on both sides the Passage, from the outward Door of the Guard Chamber, down into the Hall, taking up all the Room as far as the old Chappel; and because here they do not proceed, in regard of the shortness of the

Processional way, but only make a stand, for the Proceeding to pass through them, they are ranked in a way different from that used at *Windsor*; nevertheless relating more especially to the Order observed by their Masters: Which Method, in the Sovereign's Proceeding to the Chappel, at the beforementioned Feast, held at *White-Hall*, *Anno* 8 *Car.* I. we find thus described. The eldest *Knight-Companions* Servants were ranked on the right Hand of the Passage, the chiefest of them near unto the old Chappel Door; and the second Knight (being Companion to the eldest) his Attendants stood on the left side, the chiefest of them also next the said old Chappel Door, and in case the eldest Knight's Fellow or Companion be not present in this Proceeding, then the eldest Knight's Servants ought to be placed opposite one against the other, upon each side the said old Chappel Door: The like Order is to be taken in Marshalling the Servants of the other Knights of this most Noble *Order*, whose Companions are then absent.

Secondly, The Order of Proceeding amongst the *Alms-Knights*, (who, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. had two Waiters of the Sovereign's Hall, in their Livery Coats, bearing white Rods in their Hands, to proceed before them,) is in general two and two together, the *Junior* is placed foremost on the left Hand, and his next *Senior* on his right; and if Sickness, or other lawful Impediment, chance to hinder one or more of them, from going in the Proceeding, his *Junior* is advanc'd into his Place, and consequently all the other *Juniors* do in like manner alter their Places, and advance, to the end the superior Place be still supplied, according to the right rule of Marshalling the Singles, that compose a gross Body; but in this Case, if the Number that attend happen to be odd, the Governor

of the *Alms-Knights* goes last of all, and alone.

Thirdly, The Virger of the College hath his Place next after the *Alms-Knights*, and immediately before the *Prebends* of the College; who being habited in a Gown, beareth a Silver Verge, the Ensign of his Office: Nevertheless, heretofore, when the *Prebends* went not in the Proceeding, on the Eve of the Grand Feast, the Virger proceeded first of all, before the *Alms-Knights*, for so it was observed on the Eve of St. *George*, at *Windsor*, *Anno* 6 *Eliz.* and in this manner we see it exprest, in the Proceeding set forth by *Marcus Gerchard*.

Fourthly, Under the general rule, relating to the *Alms-Knights*, are comprehended the *Prebends* of the College, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, insomuch, that where either of the said Kings are absent, the *Senior Herald* is advanced, and goes in breast on the left Hand of him who is then present; so also where any of the *Heralds* are wanting, his next *Junior* ascendeth into his Place; whereby it sometimes falls out, that the *Senior Pursuivant* is joined to the left Hand of the *Junior Herald*: And through their defects and absence, the Number of the Officers of Arms be odd, then (with this difference in the foresaid rule observed among the *Alms-Knights*,) the youngest *Pursuivant* goeth single by himself.

Touching the right of Precedency, between the Officers of Arms, and *Prebends* of the College, in Proceeding before the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, we find there hath been heretofore not only some Question started, but the Place contended for; insomuch, that at the Installation of the Earls of *Shrewsbury* and *Cumberland*, *Anno* 34 *Eliz.* the *Prebends* took Place, and upon the 24th of *May, Anno* 39 *Eliz.* at the Installation of *Thomas*, Lord *Howard* of *Walden*, and others, the *Prebends* again endeavoured

to pass between the Officers of Arms, and Officers of the *Order*; but *Charles*, Lord *Howard* of *Effingham*, then Lieutenant to the Sovereign, delivered his Opinion on the behalf of the Officers of Arms against the *Prebends*.

Yet did not this so settle the *Order* of Precedency, or quiet the *Prebends*, but that the Contention again broke out, *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. at the Installation of the Earls of *Pembrook*, *Marr*, *Southampton*, and Duke of *Lenox*; (which happened on the ninth, not second of *July*, in the foresaid Year,) even to such a heighth, that the *Prebends*, *Pursuivants*, and *Heralds*, contended in the Proceeding; but the Controversy was on the next Morning composed, by the Lord Admiral, (then the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) the Lord Treasurer, and the Earl of *Worcester*; and the *Order* in Proceeding thus settled: first, That the *Alms-Knights* should go foremost, the *Pursuivants* next, then the *Prebends*, and then the *Heralds* and Kings of Arms; and this Order in Proceeding was afterwards observed, on the 21 *May, Anno* 4 *Jac.* I. at the Installation of the Earl of *Salisbury*, and Viscount *Bindon*; as also the 19 *May, Anno* 6. of the same King, at the Installation of the Earls of *Dunbar*, and *Montgomery*.

Howbeit, *Anno* 9 *Jac.* I. and so afterwards, we do not find the *Pursuivants* mentioned in the Proceeding, by particular Name, nor otherwise, than in this following Order, *viz. Alms-Knights*, *Prebends*, *Heralds*, &c. but it may be presumed that the *Pursuivants*, then joined again in Body with the *Heralds*, (though for some Years before divided from them, by the interposition of the *Prebends*,) as well as the Provincial Kings, and all of them under the Title of *Heralds*, and sometimes Officers of Arms.

And though at the Grand Feast held by Prorogation, on Sunday the 14th of *September*, in the

said fifteenth Year of King *James*, it is noted, that the Prince (being then the Sovereign's Lieutenant,) proceeded to Morning Service on the Feast Day, with the *Alms-Knights*, *Heralds*, *Prebends*, and Officers of the *Order* before him; from which manner of Expression, it may perchance be supposed, that the *Heralds* went at that time next after the *Alms-Knights*, and before the *Prebends*; nevertheless, elsewhere we find them, on the Eve of the aforesaid Feast, ranked in this following Order.

The Alms-Knights.
The Prebends.
The Officers of Arms.
The Knights of the Order, *&c.*

And doubtless, they proceeded in the same Order to the Chappel, on the next Morning, notwithstanding what is before said to the contrary, those Expressions being interwoven with the general Account given of the Ceremonies of the whole Festival, and more subject to mistake, where the relation of the Proceeding is carried on in a continued Discourse, than were ranked (as is before exhibited,) in particular Lines, and in the Order and Form of a Proceeding. Besides, we no where meet with any Order or Decree, nulling the foresaid Determination, made *Anno* 1 *Jac.* I. which placeth the *Prebends* before the *Heralds*. Finally, to give an end to the Disputes in this Point, we find, that upon the Eve of this Feast, held at *Windsor*, the 23, 24, and 25 of *November*, *Anno* 1 *Car.* I. the *Prebends* proceeded next before the *Pursuivants*, and the *Pursuivants* immediately before the *Heralds* and Provincial Kings; that is to say, all the Officers of Arms (except *Garter*, whose Place is elsewhere,) proceeded in one entire Body together, which Order

we find to be the same in all Proceedings after, that we have met with, and was so observed at the Grand Feast held at *Windsor*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. and ever since. But to proceed.

All the before mentioned Attendants wait in their several Stations, till the Hour of *Tierce*, when the Sovereign (having the *Knights-Companions* and Officers of the *Order* before him, and his Train carried up,) passeth towards the Presence Chamber, notice of whose coming being given, the Band of Pensioners make the accustomed Guard and Passage along the Presence Chamber, the *Seniors* standing towards the Lobby Door, within which Guard, on the other side, the Officers of Arms place themselves: Upon the same warning, the Yeomen of the Guard clear a like Passage from the Presence Chamber Door, along the Guard Chamber, unto its outward Door, for the Proceeding to pass through.

At the Sovereign's approach, one of the Gentlemen Ushers attended with the Sword of State, (the Point resting upon the Ground,) delivereth to such one of the Nobility, (not being a Knight of the *Order*,) whom the Sovereign, as an honorary Favour, hath before nominated, to bear it from thence, before him in all the Proceedings of the Feast; during which Action, the *Knights-Companions* proceed forwards, and being entred the Presence Chamber, Flank on each side the State, with some small distance between them, and there make a stand: The Sovereign being also entred, passeth to the Step before the State, (the Nobleman who beareth the Sword, and the five Officers of the *Order*, retiring a little on his right Hand,) and then turning himself towards the *Knights-Companions*, standeth there a while, until they have made their Reverences unto him; which being performed, he resaluteth the *Knights-Companions* by putting off his

Cap: This done, the Sovereign putteth his Cap on again; whereupon every of the *Knights Companions* putteth on theirs, and immediately Rank themselves, according to their due Place, on both sides the State.

For the right understanding whereof, we are in the fifth place to Note, that in the Order and Method wherein the *Knights-Companions* are ranked, (if they be all present,) is two and two together, the *Junior* foremost on the left Hand, for that is his Place in all Proceedings; but where any of them be absent, the rule is different from that appropriate to the before-mentioned Degrees; for though it be recorded, that upon the Eve of the Grand Feast held at *Windsor*, *Anno* 7 *Hen.* V. the *Knights-Companions* went in Order to the *Chapter-House* and *Choir*; yet this being exprest but in general terms, how it ought to be understood, will more fully appear, from the particular Directions given for the Order of the *Knights-Companions* Proceeding in King *Henry* VIII's Statutes; where the Law directs each *Knight-Companion* to proceed alone, at such time as his Fellow (who possesseth the Stall opposite unto him) is absent, but the Order of such Proceeding will by a Scheme be made more evident.

The Proceeding of the Knights-Companions, *present on the Eve of*
St. George, *to the Closet at* White-Hall, Anno 3 Eliz.

The Lord *Hunsdon*.	Void.
The Lord *Robert Dudley*.	The Viscount *Mountague*.
The Lord *Loughborow*.	The Earl of *Shrewsbury*.

The Earl of *Sussex*.	The Lord *Howard* of *Effing*.
Void.	The Earl of *Westmorland*.
The Marquiss of *North*.	Void.
The Lord *Clynton*.	The Duke of *Norfolk*.
Void.	The Earl of *Pembrook*.

Thus four *Knights-Companions* proceeded alone, in regard the Stalls opposite to them were void, the three first being absent, and the last void by the Death of the Earl of *Huntington*; and to avoid all disputes in relation to Precedency, King *Henry* VIII. Decreed, in the sixteenth Year of his Reign; *That each* Knight-Companion *should take Place, in Procession, Station, or sitting at the Table, thence forward, as he had his Seat or Stall in the Choir, and not according to the Degree of his Birth or Condition, unless the Sovereign was pleased that any should be made Choice of, according to the Nobility of his Family, to sit at the end of his own Table, or perform any other thing by the by*.

The Proceeding among the Officers of the *Order* differeth from all before spoken of; for, being five in Number, the three inferior Officers (when all present,) March in a breast, and (of later Times,) the *Register* in the middle, *Garter* on his right Hand, and the *Usher* of the *Black-Rod* on his left.

After these three Officers, the two superior proceed together, the *Prelate* on the Right, and the *Chancellor* on the left; and after, the Officers of the

Order follow the Sword, which is carried immediately before the Sovereign. In the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, it was born by some of the Barons, but of later Times it hath been conferr'd on Persons of higher Rank, as *Anno* 4 *Car.* I. on the Earl of *Dover*; *Anno* 9 *Car.* I. on the Earl of *Danby*; and *Anno* 13 *Car.* II. on the Lord Viscount *Mordant*, then Constable of the Castle of *Windsor*; and at this Time 'tis usually born by none under the Degree of an Earl.

The Sovereign's Place in the Proceeding, & *notandum quod superior Ordinis tempore Processionis in dicta Capella transibit retro totam Sociarum Comitivam*; which though the *Statute* mentions here to be performed at the Grand Procession, yet it refers to all those times the Sovereign proceeds to, or from, no less than within the Chappel. In ancient Time, the Sovereign (if he were at *Windsor*, to celebrate the Grand Feast,) proceeded to the Chappel in Person, as well on the Eve, as on the Feast Day. Queen *Elizabeth* being the first who went not to the Chappel on the Eve of the Feast, unless we except King *Henry* VI. who, by reason of Sickness, was necessitated to make a Deputy in his stead: The aforesaid Omission of Queen *Elizabeth*, was first occasioned through Indisposition of Health, though she afterwards, without that necessity, did not comply, as in the 18, 25, 29, and 31 Years of her Reign, which gave occasion to King *James* to make Deputies at those three Grand Feasts he Celebrated at *Windsor*; and the like did King *Charles* I. in the first Year of his Reign; but in the fourth Year of his Reign, the ancient Custom (for many Years intermitted,) was restored, and the Sovereign (making no Lieutenant,) proceeded to the Chappel, not only on that Eve, but always observed it afterwards, as did King *Charles* II.

in all the Grand Feasts he held, and is now observed.

It will be necessary to take notice, that the Proceeding begins from the Presence Chamber, call'd in the *Statutes* the Great Chamber; a Scheme whereof, on the Eve of the Grand Feast, is here exhibited.

The Attendants on the Knights-Companions.
Alms-Knights.
Virger of the Chappel.
Prebends of *Windsor*.
Officers of Arms.
Knights-Companions.
Black-Rod.
Register.
Garter.
Chancellor.
Prelate.
The Sword.
The Sovereign.
Train-bearers.
Captain of the Pensioners.
Pensioners.

To the foregoing Proceeding have been occasionally receiv'd some Persons of Quality, and others Eminent in Place and Degree; (though their Offices do not particularly relate to this most Noble *Order*,) but are admitted by reason of their requisite Attendance on the Sovereign, in his Proceedings on all Occasions.

On St. *George*'s *Eve*, *Anno* 3 *Eliz.* the old Ambassador of *Sweden*, accompanied by the Earl of *Hertford*, went in the Proceeding to the Closet at *White-Hall*, next after the Train-bearers, and immediately before the Ladies Attendants on the

Sovereign; and the next Morning, when the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, the new Ambassador of *Sweden* went in the same Place.

As to those admitted on the Account of their Offices, is the Lord Chamberlain, (though not a Knight of the *Garter*,) and is allowed Place somewhat behind, on the right Hand of the Sovereign, and the Vice Chamberlain on the left.

The Dean of the Sovereign's Chappel at *White-Hall* attends when the Proceedings are thither, going a little behind the Sovereign towards his left Hand; next goes the Clerk of the Closet, then the Master of the Robes, as also one of the Masters of Requests, and then the Gentlemen of the Robes.

Of the Proceeding to the Chapter-House.

§ 3. Having under the precedent Head, treated at large of the Rank and Place of all those that pass in the Proceeding, wherein all are Bare-headed, except the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*: I now come to the Place whither the Proceeding is directed.

The first Solemn Action on the Entrance of the Grand Feast, which the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* are obliged to perform, is to Celebrate a *Chapter*, to which end it hath been most usual for them to proceed from the Presence Chamber, *every one in their due Place and Order*; first to the *Chapter-House*, to consult of things of course; and next into the *Choir*, to hear Divine Service; which has been the constant Custom from the Reign of King *Henry* V. as many Examples, recorded in the Registers of the *Order*, evidence.

As this Custom of holding a *Chapter* on the Eve of

the Grand Feast, was constantly observed when celebrated without Prorogation; so also hath a *Chapter* been in like manner held before *Vespers*, on the Eve, at such time as the Feast Day of St. *George* only hath been observ'd, when (for any cause) the Anniversary of the Grand Feast receiv'd Prorogation: As for Instance, *Anno* 1 *Mary*, a *Chapter* was held at the Mannor of St. *James*'s, on the *Vigil* of St. *George*, before the first *Vespers*; whereunto is fixt this Note, *ut moris est*; and the Grand Feast for that Year receiv'd Adjournment, until the coming of *Philip*, then Prince (after King) of *Spain*.

In like manner, though the Celebration of the Grand Feasts were removed from *Windsor*, and observed at other Places, yet this usual Custom of holding a *Chapter* on the Eve, was always practised; after which the proceeding to Evening Prayer succeeded, as is manifest by several Testimonies from the *Registers*.

The publick processional way to the *Chapter-House* at *Windsor*, used Time out of Mind, led from the Presence Chamber through the Cloister, and the great Gate of the King's Lodging, to the upper Ward of the Castle, thence through the middle Ward, and part of the lower, to and through the Passage, between the East End of the Chappel and *Tomb-House*; and thence into the *Chapter-House*, Situate on the North East Corner of St. *George*'s *Chappel*.

But the Sovereign hath sometimes thought fit to wave this publick processional way, and pass along the private way, which leads from the King's Privy Chamber, down the Stairs into the Terrace, *viz.* through that stately Walk lying on the North side of the Castle, and entring again at a Door, heretofore made through a part of the Castle Wall into one of the Canons Lodgings, adjoining to *Winchester Tower*,

(now made up) went thence through the Cloisters, proceeding in the Order before shewed.

We shall close this Head, with observing, that though the Proceedings to the *Chapter-House* or Chappel, on the Eve of the Feast, have most commonly been on Foot; yet have they been also on Horse-back, on extraordinary Occasions, as *Anno* 3 *Hen.* VII. at which Time several Ambassadors being arrived here from Foreign Kings and Princes, they and many of the Nobility of this Kingdom, with the King's Council, the two Archbishops, the Bishops of *Lincoln* and *Ely*, and the Chief Justice of the King's Bench, repaired also thither; and on the Eve, the Sovereign, accompanied with the *Knights-Companions*, rode from the upper Quadrangle down to the College. The Queen and the King's Mother rode in a Chair, covered with rich Cloth of Gold, drawn by six Coursers finely Harnass'd, and twenty one Ladies, habited in Crimson Velvet, rode on white Palfries: Sir *Roger Cotton*, Master of the Queen's Horse, led her Horse of State, whereon was a Saddle of Cloth of Gold, and three Crowns of Silver gilt; as soon as they alighted, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceeded to the *Chapter-House*, and thence to Evening Song, which ended, they return'd in the Order they came.

King *Henry* VIII. in the eleventh Year of his Reign, at three a Clock in the Afternoon, with all the *Knights-Companions*, in the Habit of the *Order*, proceeded from the Presence Chamber in *Windsor-Castle*, till they came to the Quadrangle, where they took their Horses, and rode according to their Stalls, not according to their Estate, next before the King, and thence rode to the middle Door of the Chappel, and there alighted, and proceeded without the *Choir* to the *Chapter-House*; there are other Examples, but

these may suffice.

Of the opening of the Chapter.

§ 4. The Proceeding being arriv'd at the Entrance into the Chappel, first the Attendants on the *Knights-Companions* divide themselves as they enter, beginning at the outward Door, and Flank on each side the North Isle of the Chappel, and so toward the West Door of the *Choir*, making a stand along the Isle for the *Alms-Knights*, *Virgers*, *Prebends*, and *Officers* of *Arms*, to pass through them, who go on towards the said West Door; and when the *Junior Knights-Companions* are entred into the Chappel, the Proceeding makes a stand, while all the *Knights-Companions* following turn aside on the right Hand into the *Chapter-House*, next the Officers of the *Order*, and lastly the Sovereign; but the Nobleman that carries the Sword, the Train-bearers, Pensioners, *&c.* stay without the *Chapter-House* Door in the North Isle; none being admitted in but the Sovereign, the *Knights-Companions*, and the Officers of the *Order*; who being all entred, the Door is shut by the Gentleman Usher of the *Black-Rod*, and every Person severally takes his due Place and Station, whereupon the *Chapter* immediately opens.

In what Manner and Order the Sovereign, *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of the *Order*, are ranked, at the holding of a *Chapter*, is describ'd, *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. when the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* consulted in the *Chapter-House*, on the Reformation and Explanation of the *Statutes* of the *Order*.

The Sovereign, on his Entrance, proceeded to the midst of the North-end of the Table; the *Knights-Companions*, whose Stalls in the *Choir* were on the

Sovereign's side, took the right Hand of the Table, and those of the Princes side the left; then the Prelate of the *Order* came and stood on the Sovereign's right Hand, at the corner of the Table; *Register* and *Garter* were at the lower end, and *Black-Rod* kept the *Chapter-House* Door on the inside. The Chancellor of the *Order* is not there mention'd, (as not being present) yet his Place is on the Sovereign's left Hand of the Table.

If the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* arrive at the *Chapter-House* so late, that the Business necessary to be done cannot be discuss'd, without putting off the Celebration of *Vespers*, beyond the Canonical Hour; it hath been usual to adjourn the Debates till the next Morning, as was done *Anno* 14 *Car.* I.

Transactions in the Chapter *held before the* Vespers.

§ 5. When the *Chapter* held before the *Vespers* is opened, and no Adjournment given thereto, all things are then to be provided for, which concern the Honour and Dignity of this most Noble *Order*.

The matters of course are; first, Swearing, and admitting Officers; secondly, Debating about the *Knights-Companions* then absent, and either dispensing with, or inflicting Penalties on them; and thirdly, Constituting or appointing an Officer, to carry on the State and Solemnity of the Feast in the Sovereign's absence. But other Particulars that are occasional, cannot so well be brought within Rule, as being wholly accidental.

As to the first, the Officers of the *Order*, soon after the *Chapter* is open'd, take their respective Oaths, in

Order to perform the Duty of their several Places, during the Session of the *Chapter*, and thenceforward, as is evident from several Examples, but one may suffice, from a *Chapter* held at *Windsor*, *Anno* 4 *Car.* I. whereat Dr. *Neal*, Bishop of *Winchester*, was Sworn Prelate; Sir *Francis Crane*, Chancellor; and Dr. *Mathew Wren*, Bishop of *Ely*, Register.

It hath sometimes happened, that some of the Officers of this *Order* have been Sworn at other Times, as at *Chapters* next ensuing their Nomination and Choice, wherein the Administration of the Oath is one of the first things done.

Touching the second particular debated in *Chapter*, *viz.* the dispensing with, or punishing absent Knights; it is to be considered, that the *Statutes* of the *Order* enjoin all the *Knights-Companions* to be present at the Celebration of the Grand Feast: that is, those that are within the Kingdom, or elsewhere; although the Service of St. *George*, according to the Rites of the Church, be not celebrated, as on the Service of the Day whereon that of St. *George* has fallen, *viz. Good-Friday*: But with this Limitation, *so that they be in a capacity, or may conveniently repair thither*.

Therefore the next thing usually entred upon in the *Chapter*, is the Sovereign's and *Knights-Companions* taking notice, whether any of the Fellowship make default of coming at the Hour assign'd; and if so, they are considered under one of these Heads. First, Stranger Princes; Secondly, Late Commissioners who are arrived, or every Minute expected; and Thirdly, Such as have given notice that they cannot be present, during the continuation of the Feast: Of these Excuses of course, verbal Apologies, or Letters of Excuse, are, or may be, offered; and in case they are approved or admitted, then the Penance, which by the *Statutes* ought

otherwise to be inflicted, is admitted; all which ought to be recorded.

Stranger Princes are excused in course, on Account of their necessary Residence in their own Territories; and of their Excuses and accustom'd Dispensations, are divers Instances in the Registers of the *Order*.

As to *Knights-Companions*, who are tardy in their Journey, or being come to the Castle, fall short of the Hour, or of attending the Sovereign to the *Chapter-House*, either through negligence, or want of timely notice, or other accident; the *Statutes* enjoin for Penance, that they be not permitted for that time to enter into the *Chapter*, but tarry without the Door, and not have Voice in any thing that shall happen to be done there, unless they can alledge a just Excuse, or render such a sufficient cause as the Sovereign, or his Deputy, shall approve of; but few defaulters have been noted of this kind.

The third sort of Delinquents, are those *Knights-Companions* absent, not only at the Hour of *Tierce*, but are likely to be so during the whole Feast; the Proceedings relating to them, are either upon what is offered in Excuse of their absence, or determined on their neglect of making Apology for it.

Excuses for absence, are either by Letters or Word of Mouth; if by Letters, they are directed to the Chancellor of the *Order*; or else the Sovereign sends to his Lieutenant on their behalf, and both are produc'd by the Chancellor: But if Excuse be made by Word of Mouth, then are they delivered by the Sovereign himself; or on motion made by some of the *Knights-Companions* present in *Chapter*.

The Custom of sending Letters has been very ancient: The Lord *Powis*'s Letter, under his Hand and Seal, (certifying his Indisposition of Body,) was

produc'd in *Chapter*, *Anno* 8 *Hen.* V. And the following Year the Dukes of *York*, *Norfolk*, and *Buckingham*, with the Earls of *Salisbury*, *Shrewsbury*, and *Pembrook*, Viscount *Bourchier*, the Lord *Rivers*, and Sir *John Falstaff*; being all absent from St. *George*'s *Feast, they declared the reason of their absence by their Messengers*. There are many Precedents of this kind, and of Letters sent from the Sovereign, directed to his Lieutenant, to accept of *Knights-Companions* Excuses, whose absence he had beforehand dispenc'd with; we observe those Dispensations excus'd not the sending their own particular Excuses; for it is evident they were also expected, and that such allowance of absence was not Absolute, the Clause running thus: *That you [the Sovereign's Deputy] allow these Excuses so far as are consonant to reason*. And in all other Letters of the same nature, a Clause to this Effect hath been inferred: *That as the Sovereign thought good to advertise his Deputy, that for certain Causes he had dispenc'd with their Attendance for that time; so he will'd him to accept their reasonable Excuses in that behalf accordingly*.

Secondly, The absent *Knights-Companions* have had their Excuses frequently made by Word of Mouth, either of the Sovereign, or some other of the *Knights-Companions*, present in the *Chapter*. This Favour is done either by the Sovereign himself, if present; or by his Order to the Lieutenant, in his absence.

There have been many Examples of what hath been done in this Case, and also when the Sovereign hath not been present in *Chapter*, but hath beforehand verbally given his Deputy or Lieutenant direction to excuse the absence of several *Knights-Companions*.

It will be necessary to observe what Effect the Excuses have usually produc'd; whereinto we find

the just and reasonable favourably admitted, some suspended, and divers disallowed. Those easily allow'd were, first, Sickness; (for those of the *Knights-Companions* who have been either Sick, far spent with Age, or intent on publick Affairs, have been readily allow'd,) Secondly, The not recovery of Wounds receiv'd in the publick Service; as we meet with in the Case of Sir *William Harington*, *Anno* 7 *Hen.* V. whom we see excus'd *for his Illness, occasion'd from his Wounds then lately receiv'd at the Siege of* Rohan, *and elsewhere*. Thirdly, Impotency and old Age. Fourthly, Imployment in the Sovereign's Service, either Abroad or at Home; those Abroad are necessarily excus'd, those at Home we shall be more particular to. The Earl of *Shrewsbury*, *Anno* 22 *Eliz.* was taken up in certain Affairs, enjoin'd him by the Sovereign; the Earl of *Huntington*, 26 *Eliz.* being President of the Council of the North, his absence was for that, and several Years following, favourably excus'd; and a like Case was that of the Earl of *Danby*, *Anno* 13 *Car.* I. who for his necessary Attendance at the Seat of Justice in *Eyre*, was excus'd waiting on the Sovereign at the Grand Feast that Year. Fifthly, *When the Grand Feast hath receiv'd Prorogation, and any of the* Knights-Companions *have not had notice of the Day whereunto it was prorogued*. Sixthly, *When any of them have been in Captivity*; as was *Thomas*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Earl of *Huntington*, both Prisoners in *France*, *Anno* 2 *Hen.* VI. Seventhly, When any of them have obtain'd the Sovereign's Letters of Dispensation, of which sufficient is spoken before. Lastly, *Some other just and lawful Occasion*, as well as Accident, having fallen out; (not relating to those under the former Heads,) the Sovereign, on Information given in *Chapter*, hath been pleas'd to allow of; as in the Case of the Lord

Fauconbridge, *Anno* 32 *Hen.* VI. was readily admitted, on his pleading *the care of his Domestick Affairs, he having been lately in Prison, and had obtained leave to go and see his House and Lands in the Country*. The Earl of *Arundel*'s absence, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. was pardon'd, by reason of the Dutchess of *Richmond*'s Death, who died on the Eve of the Grand Feast; that so he (being the chief of her Family,) might be at Hand to advise and assist in all things conducing to the Honour of the deceased Dutchess.

And as the *Knights-Companions* have been often excus'd for not appearing on the Grand Feast, so hath the Sovereign, on sufficient Grounds, been pleas'd to license and dispence with their departure; from the same of this is an Example, 6 *Eliz.* when the Lord *Hastings* of *Loughborough*, falling Ill a little before the Offering on St. *George*'s *Day*, obtain'd Licence from the Sovereign to depart out of the *Choir*; and came no more abroad that Day, nor during the Feast. As also another in the Duke of *Lenox*, *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. *The Deputy Chancellor having, by Command of the Sovereign, and in discharge of the Duty of his Office*; who being forc'd to go back to *London*, by reason of the aforesaid Dutchess of *Richmond*'s Death, had his Excuse, and the Sovereign's Licence for departure.

We are next to consider Excuses, which, though sent in due time, yet on Debate in *Chapter* were suspended rather than allow'd; to which Head may be referr'd that Case of several of the *Knights-Companions*, who were Members of the Lord's House in the long Parliament. For *Anno* 18 *Car.* I. the Deputy Chancellor having, by the Command of the Sovereign, and in discharge of the Duty of his Office, sent to each of them a Summons, for their Attendance at the Celebration of the Grand Feast, to be held for the preceeding Year at *York*; and notice

thereof being given to the House of Lords, they immediately made the ensuing Order.

Die Martis 22 Maii, 1641.

Whereas the Lord Chamberlain of his Majesty's Houshould, and some other Lords of Parliament, Knights of the Garter, *have been Summoned to give their Attendance, and repair into the City of* York, *for the Celebration of St.* George*'s Feast; who acquainting this House with the Summons aforesaid, it is this Day ordered by the Lords in Parliament, that they attend the weighty Affairs of the Kingdom discussed in Parliament, whereunto they are obliged by his Majesty's Writ, and the Law of the Land.*

Jo. Browne, Cleric. Parliament.

Whereupon the said *Knights-Companions*, before the Days appointed by Prorogation for holding the Feast, sent their petitionary Letters of Excuse to the Deputy Chancellor, wherein they profess'd their desire and readiness to attend, in Obedience of the said Summons; nevertheless pleaded the foresaid *Order* for the Ground of their stay in *London*, and therefore desired him to obtain for them the Sovereign's Dispensation: On producing the said Letters in *Chapter*, the Sovereign would not at that time either admit or disallow of their Excuses, but referr'd the consideration to the next *Chapter*, to be held by Prorogation.

Of Excuses which have not been allow'd, the most remarkable is that of the Duke of *Norfolk*, and the Lord *Scales*, *Anno* 36 *Hen.* VI. who were adjudg'd to the Penalty of the Statute, in regard the Causes alledged to excuse their absence were not approved;

the latter was signed by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, in a Jewel to the value of twenty Marks, to be offered in the College; whereby the rigour of the *Statutes* appears to have been more strictly executed on him, than the Duke, probably because the Lord *Scales* was absent the Year before, and no cause thereof shewed to the *Chapter*.

In relation to the Proceedings on the absent *Knights-Companions* neglect of sending their Excuses, we shall observe, that some of them have with difficulty been remitted, some left in suspence, and others sentenc'd, and referr'd either to the Sovereign's pleasure, or the Punishment assign'd by Law; of the first kind we find that the Earl of *Westmorland*, *Anno* 10 *Hen.* V. though not very well, yet had much ado to be excus'd, because he signified not the Cause of his absence, as the *Statutes* required. So *Anno* 12 *Car.* I. the Earls of *Derby* and *Kelly*, having made no Excuse, were for that Omission blameable, but by the Grace of the Sovereign for that time pardon'd.

As to those who, through the indulgence of the Sovereign, (where probable cause hath induc'd it,) have not had Sentence pass'd on them presently, but were deferr'd in expectation of some satisfactory Cause to be shewed; we find in the Case of the Prince, the Duke of *Buckingham*, and five other *Knights-Companions* absent from the Feast, held *Anno* 18 *Hen.* VII. wherein it is registred, that *no cause of Excuse was shewed, but there was an expectation of one to be alledged*.

But as for those of the third sort, on whom Sentence hath pass'd; they have been left either to the pleasure of the Sovereign, or to those Penalties which the Law of this *Order* inflict; of which, as also of those on whom Judgment hath pass'd, are divers

Instances.

Besides these Grounds of assigning Penances, there are other Causes set down in the before recited ninth Article, of the *Statutes* of Institution for Penances; as when the *Knights Companions* are absent at other times, beside the Hour of *Tierce*, that is, the beginning of the first *Vespers*. Secondly, At the beginning of the Morning Service on the Feast Day. Thirdly, At the beginning of the second *Vespers*. Fourthly, During the whole Feast. And, Fifthly, at the Grand Feast next following.

For the first, admitting any *Knight-Companion* hath failed of meeting and attending on the Sovereign at the Hour of *Tierce*, and thereupon suffered the Punishment of Non-admittance into the *Chapter-House*, and deprivation of Vote; nevertheless if at the rising of the said *Chapter*, he be not ready to proceed with the Sovereign, and other the *Knights-Companions*, into the *Choir*, to the beginning of the first *Vespers*; he ought not only to suffer the former, but this additional Penalty, that he shall not presume to Enter into his Stall at that time, but tarry in that part of the *Choir*, where the Taper-bearers are wont to stand; nevertheless before his own Stall, until the holy Offices be ended; and the Law of the *Order* is the same in King *Henry* V's, and King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, only render the Place for the Delinquent Knight to stand in, to be before the Stalls in the Choiristers Places; and now how the Penalty hath been inflicted, upon breach of the Law in this particular, we shall see by the following Instances.

At the Grand Feast celebrated at *Windsor*, *An.* 21 *H.* VII. when it seems the Lord *Kildare*, Sir *Gilbert Talbot*, and Sir *Richard Goulford*, came late to the Chappel, we find this Memorandum fixt to their Names; they stood without, (before their Stalls) by

the Sovereign's Permission, or rather Command: But yet this is not all the Punishment which hath been inflicted upon the *Knights-Companions* for this Offence; (though it be all that is set down in the foresaid Article,) for *Anno* 25 *Hen.* VI. upon the Eve of St. *George*, the Marquiss of *Dorset* not coming to the first *Vespers*, and being convicted of his late coming, was prohibited joining in the Nomination then made, for the Election of the King of *Portugal*, into the room of the Duke of *Gloucester*.

Offenders in the second and third Case, being such as neglect to come before the beginning of the high Mass, or the second *Vespers*, called also the *Vespers* on St. *George*'s *Day*, have the like Punishment with the former assigned them, throughout all the Bodies of the *Statutes*; *viz.* Exclusion from their Stalls, and Station in the Choiristers Range.

Anno 1 *Hen.* VI. We observe the Lord *Willoughby* noted to be absent upon the Eve of the Grand Feast, but present on the Day; and consequently he incurred no further Penance than what his absence on the Eve drew on him; the Earl of *Derby*, *Anno* 18 *Eliz.* coming too late to the first Morning Service on the Feast Day, did for some short time undergo the same Penance, but soon after, upon Dispensation from the Lieutenant, went up to his Stall.

There are several other Instances; and besides the aforesaid Defaults, he is likewise to undergo the same Penalties, when the Grand Feast is prorogued, or celebrated at any other Place than *Windsor*.

But if he offend in all, and have no reasonable or allowable Excuse for his absence, he is then prohibited entering his Stall at the next Feast, and to pay ten Pounds, to be employed towards the Ornaments of the College; and sometimes the former Penance has been inflicted for late coming to Divine

Service.

The fourth degree of Offence is yet greater than any, and the variety of Penances are heightened. If a *Knight-Companion* shall neglect coming to the Grand Feast, and have no allowable reason; he shall not at the Feast held the ensuing Year be permitted to enter his own Stall, but stand below it; he shall walk alone by himself before three Crosses, which, in ancient time, were born in the Grand Procession: When the Grand Procession returns to the *Choir*, he shall stand in the Place aforesaid, till the time of the Offertory; he shall Offer last by himself, and then humbly approach the Stall of the Sovereign, or his Deputy, and there desire Absolution. But there is no Instance that these Rigours were put in Execution, though many have offended in this kind.

Lastly, The *Statutes* enjoin; That where a *Knight-Companion* remains within the Kingdom, and shall be Guilty of an Omission two Years together, he ought to be so long interdicted his Stall, till he have offered a Jewel at St. *George*'s *Altar*, to the Value of twenty Marks; and thenceforward every Year in which he shall be guilty of the same Omission, the Penalty to be doubled, till he is pardoned: The most memorable Case in the Prosecution of a Contempt, was against the Earl of *Arundel*, 14 *Edw.* IV. who for being absent two Years together, was Mulct forty Marks; and continuing his Contempt the next Year, was fined the Sum of eighty Marks.

Touching the Necessity, and Power, of the Sovereign's constituting a Deputy; it was provided for at the Institution of the *Order*; the Sovereign being then engaged in the Wars of *France*, thought it reasonable that Provision should be made by the *Statutes*, for to depute some Person in his stead.

When therefore such Occasion happened, a

Commission was made out to one of the *Knights-Companions*, some reasonable time before the approach of the Feast; so that none of the ancient Ceremonies might be omitted, or any Impediment happen through his absence; and such Deputy hath usually been one of the chief of the *Order*, in Authority, Eminence, or Birth. The first so made was, *John* Duke of *Bedford*, 7 *Hen.* V. and the reason thereof given, in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, is, because the Sovereign was then employed in the Wars in *Normandy*.

And though the Title given by the *Statutes* to this Officer, be not particularly mentioned in the *Blue-Book*, where it speaks of the said Duke's holding the Feast of St. *George* that Year, but rather implied in the Words *Regiæ Sublimatis locum implevit*; yet in the *Registrum Chartaceum* it is expresly set down, and the said Duke there styled, *Depute de l'Ordre de Jaritiere*. Sometimes he has been styled, *Deputatis Ordinis, & præses clarissimæ Ordinis*, &c.

About the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. the Title of *Locum Tenens*, or Lieutenant, began to be taken up, and has, for the most part, continued in all succeeding Times; and the other Titles of Deputy, President, and Vicegerent, laid aside. As to the Business of this Officer, sufficient has been said already. As an Essential Honour to his Place, he has from ancient Time had some of the *Knights-Companions* assigned for his Assistants; the first mention of which is in the *Registrum Chartaceum*, 8 *Hen.* VIII. The Number of these Assistants were in those times uncertain; at the time aforesaid they were 4. 21 *Hen.* VIII. 3. and 32 *Hen.* VIII. we find but two; which Number has been a constant Rule ever since, except once, *viz.* the last of *Hen.* VIII. They were always appointed in *Chapter*, and have Letters

of notice sent them thereof: But neither the Lieutenant, nor Assistants, can be Chosen two Years together, except the Sovereign should please to be present at the Day or Feast; and after it was Decreed, 23 and 24 *Hen.* VIII. that this Indulgence should extend to the term of three Years.

Lastly, We observe that this Officer always held the Feast at his peculiar Cost and Charge; and gave liberal Rewards to *Garter*, and for his Escutcheons, as also to the Officers of Arms, Gentlemen-Ushers, Alms-Knights, and to all the several Waiters and Attendants employed in the Ceremony.

The Ceremonies relating to the first Vespers.

§ 6. The first *Chapter* held on the Eve of St. *George* being finished, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* immediately proceed from the *Chapter-House* to the *Choir*, to hear *Vespers*. The Officers of Arms, Prebends, and Alms-Knights, having attended in the North-Isle of the Chappel, do now put themselves in Rank, and continue the Proceeding from the *Chapter-House* Door, along the said North-Isle, to the West Door of the *Choir*; in like manner as they did from the Presence Chamber, to the *Chapter-House*: The Organs then beginning to play, and so continue till *Vespers* begin.

When the Alms-Knights arrive at the West-Door, they first enter in a whole Body, while the rest of the Proceeding makes a short stand, and pass forward near the middle of the *Choir*, where they make a joint and low Obeysance; next, all turning about by the left Hand, to the Sovereign's Seat; then still turning from the right, to the left Hand, they ascend the *Haut Pas's*, even to the Rails set before the *Altar*;

and forthwith divide themselves, flanking on each side, the *Juniors* nearest the Rails.

This done, the Prebends enter in a Body also, and having made the like Obeysances in the middle of the *Choir*, divide themselves, and take their Seats; which, by King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, are appointed in the lower range of Seats, between, but not in, the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions*. While the Prebends are entering their Seats, the Pursuivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms, in a Body, likewise enter the *Choir*; and after due Reverence, pass up to the *Altar*, and join the Alms-Knights; though anciently some difference was in this Ceremony.

Afterwards, the two *Junior Knights-Companions* enter, passing on till they come near their own Stalls, and there make their Reverences, and then divide, and take their stands directly before their Stalls; and so of the rest of the *Knights-Companions*.

Next to the *Knights-Companions*, the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*, enter in a Breast, who, proceeding to the middle of the *Choir*, make their Obeysances, and then pass to their Form, placed on the South-side of the *Choir*, before the Sovereign's Stall, and stand before it. After them, the Chancellor and Prelate in the like manner, stand before their Form, placed near the Sovereign's Seat: And for these Forms, whereon the Officers of the *Order* sit in the Chappel, there is a special Decree for the allowance of them, entered at the end of the Constitutions of their Offices.

Last of all the Sovereign enters, (having the Sword born before him, but his Band of Pensioners stay at the *Choir* Door, to keep off the Crowd,) who, coming to the Steps which ascend the Royal Seat, makes a Reverence toward the Altar, and then takes Place therein, before he makes a second Reverence.

When the Lieutenant, in the Sovereign's absence, proceeds to the first *Vespers*; as soon as he enters the *Choir*, and comes near the Sovereign's Stall, he stands and makes a little pause there; then doing his Reverences, after he has again stood a while, before he ascends his own; where being arrived, he makes the double Reverence a second time, and then sits down.

And now to placing the *Knights-Companions* in their Stalls: *Garter*, as soon as the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, is placed, makes again the usual Reverence in the middle of the *Choir*; then turns to the *Senior* Knights, and doth his Reverence to each of them; whereupon, at one Instant, they make their double Reverences below, where they stood, and strait ascend at the first, or western Entrance, that goes to the side Stalls; where being arrived, they make again their double Reverences, and then seat themselves. But when the Sovereign's Lieutenant is present, each Knight adds a third Reverence to him, both when they ascend to, and descend from, their Stalls; and so likewise do all Persons, who pass in the Proceeding, add to their double Reverences so often as there is occasion to make it, after such time as the Lieutenant is entered his Stall; and so long as he continues therein, both on the Eve, the Feast Day, and the Morrow after.

The *Knights-Companions* being all seated, the Prelate and Chancellor pass into the middle of the *Choir*, and having made double Reverences, return to their Forms, and sit down. And after them, in the same manner, the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, proceed.

As to the Sovereign's other Attendants, the Nobleman who carries the Sword retires before the Sovereign's Stall, a little on the right Hand; and the

Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold, if not a Knight of the *Garter*, and the Vice Chamberlain, on the left, till the Sovereign give them leave to sit down. The Clerk of the Closet stands at the Sovereign's right Hand, but the young Noblemen, that carry up the Sovereign, and the Gentleman of the Robes, sometimes repose themselves on the Steps going to the Sovereign's Stall.

This being done, preparation for *Vespers* begin; in reference to which, the Prelate ascends the *Altar*, it being the Duty of his Office, which if he omits, he is fined twenty Marks, to the use of the College, unless he give sufficient reason for his absence; in which Case, or on the vacancy of the See of *Winchester*, the Sovereign hath sometimes appointed another Bishop to Officiate for him. The Proceeding to the *Altar*, on this occasion, is as follows.

First, The Serjeant of the Vestry makes a double Reverence, then comes before the Prelate, and makes a single one to him; who thereon arises from his Seat, and the Serjeant proceeds before him into the middle of the *Choir*, where the Prelate makes a double Reverence; and passing forward after the Serjeant, and having ascended the uppermost *Haut-pas* before the *Altar*, he makes one single Reverence toward the same, and so goes to the North side of it.

After which, the two *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, leaving their fore-mentioned Stations, join together till they come near the Forms of the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*; where, making their double Reverences, they divide again on each side, and there stand.

Lastly, The Alms-Knights come down into the *Choir* in a Body, and there make their joint double Reverences, and then take their Chairs; all which being finished, Divine Service is begun by the

Prelate.

The like Solemnity is observed at any other Place, as well as at *Windsor*; where, because the Alms-Knights are absent, the Pursuivants at Arms ascend nearer the *High-Altar* than when they are at *Windsor*; but this occasions little Variation.

When the *Vespers* are ended, the Prelate goes to the middle of the *Altar*, and with great Reverence makes an Obeysance; and thence, with the Serjeant before him, descends to the middle of the *Choir*, where he makes his double Reverences, and so returns to his Seat; whereupon all make ready to pass out of the *Choir*, which is performed in much the same manner, and with the same State, as they proceeded thither; and the Servants and Attendants of the *Knights-Companions* are marshalled in the same Order as they were at the beginning of the Proceeding, that the whole Procession may again pass through them.

The Alms-Knights having entered the Guard Chamber, spread themselves on each side thereof; the Prebends pass through them, and fall off on either side the Room to the Presence Chamber Door.

Then the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, proceeding through the Lane made by the Alms-Knights and Prebends, enter the Presence Chamber, and fall off on either side toward the Stall, the King's standing uppermost.

Then enter the *Knights-Companions*, and place themselves on each side of the State, in such Order as they sat in their Stalls, the eldest nearest the State; but those whose Companions are absent, stand alone; after whom follow the Officers of the *Order*, disposing themselves conveniently near the State.

Lastly, The Sovereign passes to the Step before the

State, where, being arrived, he turns toward the *Knights-Companions*, who make their Reverences jointly to him, and he thereon puts off his Cap, and re-salutes them; which done, the Sovereign and they withdraw into the Privy Chamber till Supper time.

But in Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, when the Feast of St. *George* was held at *White-Hall*, or *Greenwich*, and the Sovereign, as was usual with her, proceeded no farther on the Eve to *Vespers*, than to the great Closet, the ordinary way, and thence sent her Lieutenant into the *Choir*. Then, in such Case, when *Vespers* were ended, the Lieutenant returned from the *Choir*, through the great Hall, and so back to the said Closet, and stood at the Door thereof, attending the Sovereign's coming forth; from whence they all proceeded before her into the Presence-Chamber, and there the Ceremony, for that time, ended.

But in the Reign of King *James* I. when the Supper on the Eve, as also the following Meals, were prepared in the Banquetting-House, the Sovereign's Lieutenant frequently returned from the Closet, by the Lobby, to the said Banquetting-House, instead of going to the Presence; and passing up the State, gave an End to the Ceremony till Supper time: And so we find it observed in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, and 16 of that King.

When the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* are retired, they are not to put off any part of their Robes till Supper is over, for that is prohibited by the *Statutes*, not only to those who do not Sup, as well as those who do. And hereon, 19 *Car.* II. the Sovereign having a mind to take the Air, went into *Hide-Park*, after he had taken leave of the *Knights-Companions*, the Dukes of *York* and *Monmouth*, and the Earl of *Oxford* being with him, but all in full Robes, and so returned to Supper.

The Supper on the Eve.

§ 7. When the Sovereign is pleased to Sup publickly, on the Eve of the Feast at *Windsor*, the Supper has been always prepared in St. *George*'s *Hall*. The usual Place at *White-Hall*, was heretofore in the Presence Chamber; of later times, the Banquetting-House; and at *Greenwich*, either the Presence, or the Council Chamber; where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, were always present. But when the Feast of St. *George* was celebrated at *York*, 17 *Car.* I. the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* marched after the first *Vespers*, to a House prepared for that purpose, and supped there.

But if the Eve of the Feast fell out on a Fasting Day, as it did 22 *Hen.* VIII. and 11 *Jac.* I. the Supper was always omitted; and the Sovereign, with his Lieutenant, and *Knights-Companions*, were served of the Void only.

Nor does the Sovereign, when he Sups publickly, pass privately to the Place; but as soon as notice is given that the first Mess is set upon the Table, he presently enters the Presence Chamber, whence the Officers of the *Order*, and of Arms, the *Knights-Companions* in their full Robes, for so the *Statutes* expresly direct, having put themselves into their usual Order, proceed before him to St. *George*'s-*Hall*: Where being entered, the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, fall off all upon the right Hand, opposite to the *Knights-Companions* Table, the *Junior Pursuivants* standing toward the lower End of the Hall. Then the *Knights-Companions* passing up beyond them, formerly divided themselves on either side, according to the Decree, 16 *Hen.* VIII. and made a stand, each taking Place, according to the Order of their Stalls. But at the Feast held at *White-Hall*, 19

Car. II. the Sovereign directed that they should stand all on the right Hand side, facing the Table.

Next, the five Officers of the *Order* follow, who ascending beyond the *Senior* Knight, retire on the right Hand: After them the Sovereign, and the Officers of Arms, all doing him Reverence as he passes by: Who passing up to the *Haut-pas*, before his own Table, turns himself to the *Knights-Companions*, and putting off his Cap, they return their Reverences jointly to him.

The Sovereign sitting down to Supper, is first served by Water by some Nobleman; then Grace is said by the Prelate; then is the *Senior* Knight conducted to his Table by two Officers of *Arms*, and so the rest in Order, to the Tables appointed them. Whereupon the Officers of the *Order*, and of Arms, retire out of the Hall to Supper.

If a Lieutenant be constituted, he proceeds to Supper in full Robes, and in the same Order as doth the Sovereign, and sits alone at the Sovereign's Table, yet on the left Hand of the Cloth of State, being served in all Points with Water, and by a *Cup-bearer*, *Carver*, and *Sewer*, as the Sovereign himself is.

When Supper is ended, and the Banquet taken away, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed back in the same Order they came to the Presence Chamber, where the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, standing on the Step before the Cloth of State, Salutes them as before; and then appoints the Hour and Place for the *Knights-Companions* to attend him the next Morning: The like, if the Supper be provided in any other Place besides the Presence Chamber, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed back thither, because the Ceremony ought to end there, as has always been the Custom. And if the Supper be prepared in the Presence Chamber, they then take

their Leave in the same Room, there being no occasion to proceed farther.

If any of the *Knights-Companions* accompany the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, to his Lodgings, they then go after, not before him, in regard the State of that Night's Service ended in the Presence Chamber; and after they have retired to their Lodging, they have Permission to Unrobe.

When the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, do not Sup in St. *George*'s *Hall* on the Eve of the Feast, on the following Night, the Officers of Arms have formerly had the Liberty to Eat there; and this Privilege was assigned them by Decree of a *Chapter* held 16 *Eliz.* appointing them *that Table, which was before that time used by the Chancellor, Register*, and other *Officers* of the *Order*: But how they came to lose this Privilege, is not mentioned; for now, instead of sitting in the great Hall, they are necessitated to Eat in such Rooms of the Castle as they can procure.

CAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feast Day.

The Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning.

§ 1.

Notwithstanding the Celebration of the Feast takes up three Days, *viz.* part of the twenty second, all the twenty third, and part of the twenty fourth of *April*, yet the twenty third, St. *George*'s *Day*, is the Grand Part: The Ceremonies of which may be divided into Sacred and Civil, the first solemnized in the Chappel, the latter in St. *George*'s *Hall*.

In Order to which, *the Knights-Companions* in full Robes repair to the Sovereign's Privy Lodgings, at the Hour appointed; as also the Officers of the *Order*. In the mean time the rest of the Degrees and Persons, which made up the Proceeding on the Eve of the Feast, take their several Stations then appointed them, to attend the Sovereign's coming out of the Presence-Chamber.

When the Sovereign, having the *Knights-Companions*, and Officers of the *Order* before him, has entered the Presence, the Sword is delivered to the Nobleman appointed to bear it; and after the usual Salutations, the Proceeding sets forward to the

Chappel in the same Order as on the Eve; the *Knights-Companions* having their Trains born by some of their own Gentlemen.

At the Foot of the Stairs, entering the Cloister, or Stone Gallery, twelve Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber attend, with a rich Canopy of Cloth of Gold, who, when the Sovereign approaches, receive him under it, and bear it over his Head, till he comes to the *Choir Door* of St. *George*'s *Chappel*; which Canopy is carried only on the Morning of the Feast Day, and not at any other time.

The Processional way to the Chappel, is the same they traversed on the Eve, if the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* proceed to the *Chapter-House* first; for anciently it was the Custom to hold a *Chapter* in the Morning of the Feast Day, either before Mattins, or after, before the Grand Procession set forward. This Course received interruption in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, during which, no Chapter was held in the Morning, except in the 26, 31, and 38 Years of her Reign, and then only for admitting some Officers of the *Order*: But the time of holding this *Chapter* was restored by King *Charles* I. who several times held it before the first Service began; as in the 5, 14, and 15, of his Reign.

But if no *Chapter* be held at this time, then, as soon as the Proceeding comes near the Chappel, instead of entering the Passage between the East-end of the Chappel, and King *Henry* VIII's Tomb House, as it does on the Eve, by reason the Sovereign goes first to the *Chapter-House*, it proceeds straight on to the South Door, and thence into the *Choir*: Yet King *Charles* II. in the 15 of his Reign, appointed the whole Proceeding to pass by the said South Door, all along the South side of the Chappel, and then to enter at the West Door, which was then, and since

observed.

When the Alms-Knights are come to the West Door of the *Choir*, they enter, and pass up above the Steps of the *Altar*, in the very same Manner and Order as they did on the Eve, and so exactly of the rest: Which being done, the Prelate begins the Morning Service, according to the Order observed in the Common-Prayer, only that the first Lesson being made proper to the Festival, is taken out of the 44 Chapter of *Ecclesiasticus*.

This Solemn Proceeding to the Chappel in the Morning of the Feast Day, is, and has been, most usual performed on Foot; yet there are Instances heretofore, where the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* have proceeded on Horse-back, for the greater Splendor and Gallantry of the *Order*: As in 16 *Edw.* IV. when several Ladies rode in the Cavalcade, richly adorned, of which Habit mention is already made. So also 3 *Hen.* VII. when it was augmented by the Presence of the Queen, and the King's Mother, attended by a splendid Train of Ladies: And again the 22 of the same King, when he held the Feast at *Baynard*'s-*Castle*, in *London*, he proceeded on Horse back to St. *Paul*'s: The like King *Henry* VIII. did at *Windsor*, on the Feast of St. *George*, 11 of his Reign; and King *Philip*, 1 and 2 of *Phil.* and *Mar.* and Queen *Elizabeth*, in the 6 of her Reign, in her whole Habit of the *Order*; so did the Sovereign's Lieutenant at the same Feast ride to the first and second *Vespers*, and to the Morning Service the Day after.

It was a Custom begun by Queen *Elizabeth*, and used when she celebrated St. *George*'s *Feast*, either at *White-Hall*, or *Greenwich*, for the Sovereign's Lieutenant, and *Knights-Companions*, in full Robes, attended with the Officers of the *Order*, and of *Arms*, to meet in the Presence Chamber, about nine in the

Morning of the Feast Day, and proceed thence as they did the Evening before, through the Guard Chamber, down into the great Hall, and thence into the Chappel, where they took their Stalls, as on the Eve; after which, Morning Prayer was performed as far as the Litany, and this was called the first Service; which done, they all descended from their Stalls, in the accustomed Order, and proceeded back to the Presence, and there waited the coming of the Sovereign, before whom they proceeded a second time to the *Choir*, where the Litany, and Grand Procession began, called the second Service, at which the Sovereign was usually Present; but seldom at the first Service.

The first Instance we have met with of this double Proceeding, is recorded in the *Blue-Book* of the *Order*, 3 *Eliz.* and was continued throughout her Reign; and that of King *James* I. not only when the Feast of St. *George* was celebrated at *White-Hall*, or *Greenwich*, but also at other times, when celebrated at *Windsor*; and so 1 *Car.* I. But from that time, the Sovereign went to the Chappel at the beginning of Morning Service, which was continued without interruption: Which way has been ever since duly observed.

But when it was known that the Sovereign did not go in the Grand Procession, but his Lieutenant for him; then the Service was constantly gone through withal at once.

The Proceeding to the second Service.

§ 2. When the Feast has been celebrated elsewhere than at *Windsor*, as soon as the Prelate was come down from the *Altar*, on finishing the first Service, the *Knights-Companions* descended from their Stalls in

usual Order; and then the Lieutenant, with the Officers of the *Order*, and of *Arms*, proceeded before him to the Presence, to conduct the Sovereign to the second Service; which second Proceeding was disposed in the same manner as was that to the first Service in the Morning; only in the latter, because the Sovereign proceeded, the Sword was also carried.

Of the Grand Procession.

§ 3. We are now arrived at the Grand Procession of this most Noble *Order*, which is indeed the most Solemn, and Magnificent Part of the whole Ceremony, and has always been celebrated in the Morning of the Feast Day of St. *George*; or on such other Day, as the Sovereign hath appointed by Prorogation to hold the same. But as to the instant of Time when it began, it has sometimes been uncertain; with respect to the conveniency of the Church Service, when it was conceived most proper; which was generally at the end of the second Collect, and before the Litany: Nevertheless, in 6 *Eliz.* the Feast being then held at *Windsor*, it began presently after the *Te Deum* was Sung; and the twentieth of the said Queen's Reign, at *Greenwich*, after reading the second Lesson. And to come nearer our Times, the Grand Procession set forward, 8 *Car.* I. when the first Service was finished; and 17 *Car.* I. after the Sermon was ended: But at the Grand Feast, 13 *Car.* II. it was brought to its usual time, after the last Collect.

As to the Proceeding, or Processional way at *Windsor*, that has not been always the same; sometimes it was confined within the Walls of St. *George*'s *Chappel*, but at other times enlarged through the lower Court of the Castle; a few Instances of both

Cases are remaining, but none of any ancient date.

What the Order and Manner of this Ceremony was, may be collected from what an old Relator says, of the Solemn Procession made the 29 *May*, 5 *Hen.* VIII. *That it was ordered as of old Time accustomed.*

First went the Alms-Knights, two and two on either side the *Choir*, then the Officers of Arms, next the *Knights-Companions*; after them the Officers of the *Order*, and then the Prelate bearing the Heart of St. *George*, under a Canopy honourably assisted, four Noblemen bearing each a Torch; and last of all the Sovereign.

And though here is no mention of any Ecclesiasticks, that joined themselves in the Proceeding; yet it cannot be supposed, that as part of the Divine Service was to be performed, but that some of the Chaplains and Priests were included. And we meet with one Instance, where the Priests not only went in the Grand Procession, but had a Place assigned in it; where the Gentlemen of the Sovereign's *Chappel*, and *Choir* of *Windsor*, now go.

But it must be confessed, that the Records of the *Order* are very defective in this particular, relating to the Grand Procession, and speak of it only in general, or at most, take notice but of some of those Degrees that attend in it; and this but of late Time neither: Among which, 23 *Eliz.* it is said; *They all proceeded in Order, as the Custom was*; the Sovereign following in the Rear of the Procession.

As to Place and Precedency, it is in every respect the same, as in the Sovereign's Proceeding to the Chappel, on the Eve of the Grand Feast; only here are some Persons added, which go not in that; Namely, the Gentlemen and Choiristers of the Sovereign's Chappel at *White-Hall*; and the Petty-Canons, Vicars,

and Choiristers of *Windsor*: The whole Order is as follows.

The Morning Service having proceeded to the second Lesson, and the Prelate conducted by the Serjeant of the Vestry from the *Altar* to his Seat;

The Alms-Knights rise from their Seats, and pass to the middle of the *Choir*; and after their accustomed Reverences, go up to the sides of the *Altar*.

Next, in like manner, the Officers of Arms pass up.

Hereupon *Garter* rises from his Seat, and makes his usual Reverences; then waving his Rod, summons the *Junior* Knights to descend.

Whilst they and the rest of the *Knights-Companions* are leaving their Stalls, with usual Reverences; the Gentlemen of the Chappel, Petty-Canons, and Vicars of *Windsor*, put on Copes, and make themselves ready to proceed.

Then the *Knights-Companions* being all come down, stand each under his proper Stall.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register* rise, and stand before their Forms.

So do the Chancellor and Prelate.

This done, the Alms-Knights come down from the *Altar*, and passing into the middle of the *Choir*, make again their double Reverences, and proceed out of the *Choir*.

After them the Choiristers pass in a Body to the middle of the *Choir*, and having made their double Reverences, (as do all that follow,) proceed forth two and two.

So do the Vicars of *Windsor*.

Next, the four Petty-Canons come from their Seats, into the middle of the *Choir*; and there begin to Sing an Hymn.

Then follows the Serjeant of the Vestry, bearing his gilt Rod.

After him the Gentlemen of the Chappel at *White-Hall*.

Next the Virger of *Windsor Chappel*, bearing his Silver Rod.

Then the Prebends of *Windsor*.

After whom the Officers of Arms come down from the *Altar*, and pass on.

Then the *Knights-Companions*, the *Juniors* first.

Then the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

The Chancellor and Prelate.

The Nobleman that bears the Sword of State.

Then the Sovereign, above in his Stall, makes a Reverence toward the *Altar*, and being descended, another below; then passes out, and enters under the Canopy, which waits for him at the *Choir Door*; the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold, if not a Knight of the *Order*, attending somewhat behind the side of the Canopy, on the Sovereign's right Hand; and the Vice Chamberlain at the like distance on his left; as in the Grand Procession, 23 *Car.* II.

And lastly, The Band of Pensioners, who attend the Guard on each side the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, with their Captain at the Head of them.

In this Order, to this Day, they proceed with great Devotion; the whole *Choir* Singing the Office appointed, which heretofore was the Litany; but is now generally a Thanksgiving Hymn.

The Grand Procession, when it has been celebrated at *White-Hall*, or elsewhere than at *Windsor*, is for the most part ordered after the aforesaid manner, as may be seen by the following Scheme.

Serjeant of the Vestry, with his gilt Rod.
Choiristers in Surplices.
Gentlemen of the Chappel in Copes.
Subdean in a Cope.
Officers of Arms.
Knights Companions.
Officers of the Order.
The Sword.
The Sovereign under a Canopy, with his Train born up.
The Pensioners as before.

But in what this Grand Procession differs from that at *Windsor*, we shall here Note.

First, Here the Serjeant of the Vestry leads the Proceeding, and is followed by the Choiristers.

Secondly, The Prebends and *Choir* of *Windsor*, and the Alms-Knights, are here wanting.

Thirdly, The Subdean and Dean of the Chappel are taken in, and proceed next to the Gentlemen of the Chappel, to whom the Sovereign's Almoner has sometimes joined himself.

Fourthly, Whilst the *Knights-Companions* are descending from their Stalls, the Gentlemen of the Chappel go into the Vestry, to put on their Copes; but the Dean of the Chappel hath his brought into the *Choir*, which he puts on below, under his Seat.

Fifthly and Lastly, In Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, the Ladies Attendants went with the Pensioners on either side the Sovereign.

To contribute more to the Pomp and State of this great Ceremony, a Canopy is born over the Sovereign's Head, by Knights and Gentlemen of Quality, while he passeth in Procession, till he return to the *Choir Door*.

The Persons appointed to carry the Canopy, *Anno* 11 *Hen.* VIII. were four Knights of the Body, when four other Knights bore four Wax Tapers; but since they are the Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber in ordinary, who at the time of the Feast are in waiting, twelve of whom are appointed for this Service; the Sovereign hath also the long Train of his Mantle carried up by several of the young Nobility, who receive notice thereof by the Lord Chamberlain of the Houshold.

In like manner the Lieutenants, or Deputies to the Sovereign, have had their Train carried up in the Proceedings, by Persons of Distinction; and the Train of a Stranger King, personally present at *Windsor*, hath also been born up; and in like manner the Train of a Deputy from a Stranger King; and lastly, the *Knights-Companions* have their Trains carried up by their own Gentlemen.

The Cloaths and Apparel of the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*, and the great variety of rich Jewels which surround or adorn their Caps, or where else they may appear most conspicuous, shine with great Lustre.

The *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, habited in their rich Coats, and going together in one Body, appear also very conspicuous, from the Royal Arms of the Sovereign richly Embroidered on them with fine Gold, Purples and Twist; the Ground of the *Provincial King's* Coats are blue Velvet, the *Heralds* blue Sattin, and the *Pursuivants* blue Damask.

The Habit in which the Canons of the College proceed, is also peculiar; for though, as Clergymen, they are vested in Linen Surplices at all times of Divine Service, yet at this Solemnity they wear a Mantle over those Surplices, which is a Habit appointed for them, from the Foundation of the

Order; these Mantles are of *Murry Taffety*, and on the right Shoulder is an Escutcheon of St. *George*'s *Arms* within a Rundlet, Embroidered with Gold and Silk, which is bought at their own Charge.

The Gentlemen of the Sovereign's Chappel, the Petty-Canons, and Vicars of *Windsor*, appear in Habits more glorious, being all (or the most part of them) vested in rich Copes of Cloth of Gold, or most costly Embroideries; but the Children of the Chappel and Choiristers, proceed habited in Surplices of white Linen; lastly, the Habits of the Alms-Knights [a Mantle and Kirtle] are not unremarkable both for Colour and Materials, which appear suitable to their Age and Degree. The Mantles are of Cloth, which the *Statutes* appoint to be of a red Colour, with a Shield of the Arms of St. *George*, but without a Garter to surround them.

In this Grand Proceeding, the Habits entertain the Beholders with a very delightful Prospect, being so ordered, that the Grave are placed between those that are Rich and Gallant; and to add to the greater Shew of this Solemn Ceremony, the Registers of the *Order* make mention of divers Persons of Rank and Quality, who put themselves on the Duty of Attendance on their Sovereign, because related to his Service, though in reference to the *Order* not so concerned as to be taken into the Proceeding; such are divers of the Nobility, sometimes great Ladies, many considerable Officers of the Houshold, and other Courtiers, all richly habited and attired.

To complete the Pomp of this great Solemnity, we may (in the last Place,) fitly remember the Musick, as a part thereof, the *Choirs* of the Sovereign's Chappel at St. *James*'s, and at *Windsor*, being united, all Singing the sacred Hymn together, while the Grand Procession devoutly passeth; and on their return to

the *Choir Door*, the Alms-Knights first advance into it, and after double Reverences ascend above the *Haut Pas*'s to the *Altar*.

Next the Choiristers, and in like manner the Vicars, Petty-Canons of *Windsor*, Gentlemen of the Chappel, and Prebends, go to their Seats.

Then the Officers of Arms pass up, and join to the Alms-Knights. After this the *Knights-Companions* enter, and stand before their Stalls.

The like doth the *Black-Rod*, *Garter*, and *Register*.

As also the *Chancellor* and *Prelate*.

Then doth the Sovereign take his Royal Stall.

The *Knights-Companions* ascend their Stalls.

The Officers of the *Order* sit down on their Forms, in the same Manner and Order, and with like Reverences, as at their Entrance into the *Choir*, on the Eve of the Feast.

Then the Prelate, with two Prebends, (appointed to read the Epistle and Gospel,) are conducted, the one by the Serjeants of the Vestry, the other by the Virger, up to the *Altar*, (which they approach with usual Reverences,) the Prelate passing to the North-side, and the Prebends to the South, to finish the remaining part of Divine Service.

Whereupon the Officers of Arms descend into the *Choir*; And

The Alms-Knights go down to their Seats, which, while they are so doing, the two Prebends put on their Copes at the South-side of the *Altar*. This done, the Prelate begins the second Service, which hath been celebrated, since the time of the Reformation, according to the Book of *Common-Prayer*, and is the same commonly used on any other Feast Day; excepting a peculiar Epistle and Gospel; the first being the thirty third Chapter of *Deuteronomy*, and

the latter the fifth Chapter of St. *John*, beginning at the twenty fourth Verse, and ending at the thirtieth; which being read, the Creed is Sung.

We may here Note, that before the Reformation, it belonged to the Abbot of *Tower-Hill* to read the Gospel, and to the Prior of *Medemenham* in *Norfolk*, to read the Epistle.

The Offering of Gold and Silver.

§ 4: This Ceremony, whether it be performed in the Sovereign's Chappel at *Windsor*, or in any other Church or Chappel, is one and the same, (except the Sovereign's Offering of Gold and Silver, instead of the *Bezant*,) which is peculiar to *Windsor*.

The accustomed time of Offering on the Feast Day, is mentioned *Anno* 22 *Hen.* VIII. to be after the Sovereign's return to his Stall from the Grand Procession, in the time of High Mass, and at this Day begins immediately after this first Sentence of the Offertory is pronounced by the Prelate.

Let your Light so shine before men, &c.

This said, the Organ begins to Play, and forthwith a Groom and Page of the removing Wardrobe, (with Reverence first made,) unrol a long Carpet, and spread it before the *Altar*; which being done, the *Alms-Knights* first, next the *Pursuivants*, *Heralds*, and *Provincial Kings*, ascend in usual Order, and flank the Carpet on both sides. Then *Garter* steps from his Seat, and after double Reverences, and the usual manner of waving his Rod, the *Knights-Companions* descend in their accustom'd Order, and stand before their Stalls.

After this, *Black-Rod* goes from his Seat to the

Altar, towards which, making a single Reverence, he turns his Back, and immediately the Groom of the removing Wardrobe delivereth him a little Carpet, anciently of Silk, now of Cloth of Gold; and the said Groom holds on his Arms a Cushion of Cloth of Gold, for the Sovereign to Kneel upon, at the time of his Offering, which the *Black-Rod* forthwith lays on the upper *Haut Pas* before the *Altar*, and each of them, as well in delivering, as receiving the Cushion, kiss it.

After this, the Prelate of the *Order* takes a gilt Bason to receive the Sovereign's Offering, and stands before the middle of the *Altar*, with one of the Prebends to assist him, at which time the Sovereign arising makes his Reverence towards the *Altar*, and then descending, makes a little Reverence below, and ascends towards the *Altar* with his Attendants, and being come into the middle of the *Choir*, he makes another Reverence, and at the first *Haut Pas* his last.

He that bears the Sovereign's Offering, is either the *Senior* Knight, the Prince, or the greatest Estate among the *Knights-Companions* then present, and no other Person, (of what Degree soever) if he be not of this Noble Fraternity, performs this Service.

The Sovereign being come to the upper *Haut Pas* kneels, at which Instant *Black-Rod* on his Knee delivers (with Assay) the Sovereign's Offering to the *Senior* Knight, or other Person nominated, and he kneeling presents it to the Sovereign, which he immediately Offers into the Bason held by the Prelate, and then ariseth, and is conducted and attended, as when he came up to Offer; at the Entrance into his Stall, he turns and makes a Reverence, and his Attendants also bow towards the *Altar*; and being attended into his Stall, doth the like again, and then reposeth himself in his Seat.

An Entry is made in the *Red-Book*, *Anno* 6 *Car.* I.

That whereas in other Places (*besides* Windsor) *the Sovereign is wont to Offer a certain Gold Piece, (vulgarly called a Bezant) to be redeemed afterwards at a certain Price; the Usher of the* Black-Rod *having been admonished, that in these Services there is no Redemption to be made, should never present the Bezant at* Windsor *to the Sovereign, but Gold and Silver of English Money.*

When the Sovereign is absent, and the Lieutenant Offers for him, he performs the Ceremony as follows.

First, (After the Preparations made for the Offering, as aforesaid,) he descends from his Stall with the usual Reverences, and goes to the Steps ascending the Sovereign's Stall, and there stands a while; then making his double Obeysance, he proceeds towards the *Altar* (the Officers of the *Order* going before him,) with one other Reverence in the middle of the *Choir*, and another at the first *Haut Pas* of the *Altar*; the Carpet and Cushion is spread and laid for him, as is for the Sovereign, and the Offering also given in the same way, and the Lieutenant kneeling puts it in the Bason, and returns to the Sovereign's Stall in the same Order, *&c.* he came; where standing a while again before it, he makes a Reverence towards it, and then goes up into his own Stall, where (if it fall out that the Lieutenant is not the *Senior* Knight,) he stays to receive the Reverences of all the *Knights-Companions* his *Seniors*, as they go up to Offer, and when his own turn comes to Offer, he descends with a double Reverence, and proceeds up with his Fellow, (if present) and Offers for himself in his own Place, but his Train is then let down, the Carpet, *&c.* taken away, and only two Officers of Arms (but none of the *Order*) proceeds before him, and when he has Offer'd, he returns to his Stall.

But it seems, 7 *Jac.* I. that *Garter* alone, on the

Feast Day, brought up the Prince, then the Sovereign's Lieutenant, when he came to Offer for himself, which Service ought to have been performed by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, which was an oversight in *Garter*; as likewise his bringing down at the same, the *Knights-Companions* out of their Stalls to Offer, before the Epistle and Gospel were Read, contrary to the usage of former times; by which they were kept a tedious time waiting below in the *Choir*, before the Offering began. But 11 *Jac.* I. the Prince was brought up by *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, when he came to Offer, and not by *Garter*. When the Lieutenant hath Offered for himself, he returns to the lower end of the Stalls, and passes to his own, where having paid the usual Reverences, he enters it, and is ready to receive the Reverences of all the other *Knights-Companions*.

As soon as the Sovereign, or his Lieutenant, is returned to his Stall, the two Provincial Kings pass down into the middle of the *Choir*, where making Reverences jointly to the *Altar*, and next to the Sovereign, *Clarenceux* turns himself to the *Senior* Knight, and makes him a third Reverence, while *Norroy* at the same Instant does the same to the next *Junior* Knight, and so both, as an intimation of their going up to Offer; then each King retires a little backward toward the Stalls: In the mean time, the two *Senior* Knights draw near together, and making double Reverences, *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* step forth, and pass up before them, till they arrive near the Prelate; (or if the *Senior* Knight be without his Opposite, then he is brought up single,) then making their Reverences, first towards the *Altar*, next to the Knights, *Clarenceux* retires to the right side, and *Norroy* to the left, waiting for the return of the Knights, who are kneeling on the uppermost *Haut Pas* of the *Altar*, making their Offering. Which humble

Ceremony of kneeling, not being heretofore used, was fixed by a Decree of 4 *Car.* I.

The *Knights-Companions* Offerings are both of Silver and Gold, which is receiv'd by two of the Prebends, or by one Prebend and one Chantor, anciently by one Chantor only, when the Offering is at *Windsor*; but by the Dean of the Chappel, when at *White-Hall*. The Offering being made, the *Knights-Companions* rise, and forthwith divide themselves, *Clarenceux* conducting the *Senior* Knight to the lower end of the Stalls on the Sovereign's side; and *Norroy* the next *Junior* Knight, to the lower end of the Stalls on the Prince's side; and at parting make their Reverences, and return to their Stations before the *Altar*. The Knights, at their Entrance into the Stalls, make their double Reverences together, and then pass on to their own; where making the like Reverences, they take their Seats.

But if any Stranger King be present at the Offering, he does not retire to his Seat, by the lower end of the Stalls, but along the *Choir*, as does the Sovereign, the same way he proceeded up: So did the King of *Denmark*, 4 *Jac.* I.

The Ceremonies of the two *Senior* Knights Offering being finished, the two *Senior Heralds* observing their last Reverences, pass down into the *Choir*, in the same manner as did *Clarenceux* and *Norroy*, to bring up the next two *Senior* Knights to Offer, who use all the same Ceremonies, and are conducted back in like manner to the *Altar*; and so of the other, brought up by the two next *Senior Heralds*; *Clarenceaux* and *Norroy* beginning again, if there are more Knights than the *Heralds* in one Course supply; and after them the *Heralds* again, till the whole is ended: And here it may be noted, that where any Knight goeth single to Offer, he hath nevertheless two *Heralds* to

attend him.

Touching the Offerings themselves, made in the Chappel of *Windsor*, they belong of right to the Dean and Prebends, being conferr'd on them by the *Statutes* of the College: And ordained also, that the *Chantor* should see them receiv'd, and faithfully kept; and at the end of every Month, or Weekly, if the College required it, give an Account of what was receiv'd: All which was confirmed by King *Edward* III. the Bishop, Dean, and Chapter of *Salisbury*, to whose Jurisdiction the College of *Windsor* belongs; and also by the Bishop of *Winchester*, Prelate of the *Garter*, 1352. But Dr. *Montague*, Bishop of *Winchester*, at the Feast at *Windsor*, 21 *Jac.* I. challenged a right to the Offerings; and Bishop *Andrews* did *de Facto* both receive, and keep the Offerings, whenever he officiated at *Windsor*. But on complaint of the Dean and Prebends of *Windsor*, this matter was referred to the Chapter; yet we do not find that any final or positive Determination was ever made to the time of the Restauration, from which time the right of the Dean and Canons has never been disputed, and the *Statutes* have duly taken Place.

What has usually been offered, either in Gold or Silver, we shall see by the Account given in by the Bishop of *Winchester*, 4 *Car.* I. at St. *George*'s *Feast* at *Windsor*, *September* 24.

The whole Offering of the eight Knights, is four Pounds fifteen Shillings, *viz.* in Gold ten Shillings each, and in Silver two; excepting the Lord Steward, whose Offering in Silver was only one Shilling; besides the Sovereign's *Bezant* redeemable.

The Offerings on the twenty fifth Day.

His Majesty's Offering in Gold one Pound, and in Silver ten Shillings.

The eight *Knights-Companions* the same as the Day before; the whole, besides the King's *Bezant*, eleven Pounds.

When all the Knights have offered, and are returned to their Stalls, the Chancellor of the *Order* makes his Reverences; and after him, the *Register*, *Garter*, and *Black-Rod*, theirs together, and take their Seats: Next, the Carpet being rolled up by the Groom and Page of the removing Wardrobe, the *Provincial Kings*, *Heralds*, and *Pursuivants*, and last of all the Alms-Knights, make their Reverences, and pass into the *Choir*, where they remain till the Prelate has finished the second Service; who, conducted by the Serjeant of the Vestry, comes down from the *Altar* with his accustomed Reverences to his Seat. After whom, the two Prebends are brought down by the Virger, who making their usual Reverences take their Seats.

The Return to the Presence.

§ 6. Immediately after, all prepare to pass out of the *Choir*, and to proceed back to the Presence Chamber, which is done in every particular as it is in the return of the Sovereign from the first *Vespers*.

The Proceeding passes on through the South-Door of the Chappel, and here the Trumpets are taken in, and placed before the Alms-Knights, and sound all the way to the Guard Chamber; at which time the Drums and Fifes begin to beat and play. Thence the Proceeding passes into the Presence Chamber, whither it ought to go, before the Sovereign pass into the great Hall to Dinner; and here the *Knights-Companions* take their usual Stands; and after the Sovereign's Salutation, and their Reverences, the

Sovereign retires into the Privy Chamber, and the Knights likewise retire till Dinner is ready.

Of the Dinner on the Feast Day.

§ 7. As soon as the Sovereign hath notice given him, that the first Mess is set on the Table, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* come out of the Privy Lodgings into the Presence Chamber, attended by the Officers of the *Order*, and seat themselves in the same manner, as at the Supper on the Eve of the Feast: The Musick sounding whilst the said Mess is carrying up; which is in the following Order.

Four Serjeants at Arms,	two and two.
The Comptroller.	The Treasurer.
The Sewer.	
The Messes carried up by the Pensioners.	
Master of the Houshold.	Cofferer.
A Clerk Comptroller.	A Clerk Comptroller.
Second Clerk of the Kitchin.	Chief Clerk of the Kitchin.

The Sovereign hath most frequently sat alone, though sometimes heretofore he hath been pleased to admit some of the *Knights-Companions* to sit at the Table with him; but this Honour has not been offered to any of them since the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*. As soon as the Sovereign is placed, the *Knights-Companions* put on their Caps, and remaining

covered, retire against the Tables prepared for them; where Water is brought them by a Gentleman of Quality; and having washed, they all sit down.

The Order of passing to their Seats at the Table, 19 *Car.* II. and so appointed to be observed for the future, was after the following manner. First, The Duke of *York* entered the Rails at the upper end of the Table, and passed down the hither side, to the lower end, and thence to the bench-side to his Place: In like manner followed all the other Knights, according to the Seniority of their Stalls, as it is ordained they shall sit, and not according to their Estates or Dignities, (except the Sons of Stranger Kings, Princes, and Dukes,) and all on the right Hand, or farther side of their Table, not one against another, but two and two at a Table to a Mess, and those whose Opposites are wanting to sit alone, and have a whole Mess. Their Meat being usually brought up by the Yeomen of the Guard; and are attended by some of the Gentlemen Pensioners, and others of the Sovereigns Servants, two to each Table.

It appears that anciently the Officers of the *Order* had a Table allowed them in the great Hall, and sat covered in the Sovereign's Presence; but on the Eve of the Feast, 10 *Car.* I. it was ordered in *Chapter*, That they should be at their Choice, to keep the Feast privately by themselves, or sit uncovered where the Sovereign dined. Whereupon, from that time, they forbore sitting in the Hall, or where else the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* sat. It likewise appears, that the Officers of Arms did anciently sit in St. *George*'s *Hall*, at a Table joined to that, at which the Officers of the *Order* sat.

Before the Entrance of the Sovereign's second Course, he stands up and drinks to the *Knights-Companions*, (and so it is remembred to be done by

Phil. and *Mar.*) they standing all the while uncovered, till they have all pledged him: Which done, the Officers of Arms make themselves ready, at the lower end of the Hall, to proceed up in the following *Order*.

Garter.
Clarenceux and Norroy.
Heralds two and two.
Pursuivants two and two.

And so altogether make their Reverence to the Sovereign, and proceed near the side of the Knights Table, till they come to the middle of the Hall, where, after another Reverence made, they go still forward; and when *Garter* has passed about two Yards beyond the Knights Table, and come near the *Haut Pas* ascending the Sovereign's State, they make the like Reverence again jointly. Then *Garter* with a loud and audible Voice cries Largess thrice, though anciently but twice.

Upon *Garter's* beginning to cry Largess, all the *Knights-Companions*, unless Kings and great Princes, if any be present, stand up uncovered, till he has made an end; (which Custom, it seems, 7 *Car.* I. had been discontinued for some time.) Then *Garter* proceeds, and Proclaims the Sovereign's Stiles and Titles of Honour, first in *Latin*, after in *French*, and lastly in *English*; he and the Officers of Arms making a Reverence between; and at the end join altogether in crying Largess thrice, and then all make Reverence together.

Hereupon, sometimes the Treasurer of the Houshold puts the Sovereign's Largess, which is ten Pounds in Gold, into *Garter*'s Hat; and this is

afterwards divided among the Officers of Arms, according to Custom. But *Anno* 23 *Car.* II. the *Black-Rod* put the Largess into *Garter*'s Hat. This being finished, all the Officers of Arms retire about three Yards backward, keeping their Faces towards the Sovereign, and there make a Reverence, and so a second, and thence retire out of the Hall to Dinner.

This Ceremony ended, the Sovereign's second Course is brought up; first the Serjeants at Arms, next the Treasurer and Comptroller of the Houshold, next the Sewer, then the Gentlemen-Pensioners, bearing the Messes; then the Cofferer and Master of the Houshold, the two Clerks of the Green-Cloth, the two Clerks Comptrollers, and lastly the two Clerks of the Kitchin, habited in their Gowns, and their Caps in their Hands. And after the Sovereign's Table is compleatly furnished, the second Course is served up to the Knights Table by the Yeomen of the Guard, in such Order as was the first.

But where any *Knight-Companion* happens to be installed at this Grand Feast, and is present at Dinner, then *Garter*, and the Officers of Arms, proceed in Order, (after they have proclaimed the Sovereign's Stile,) from the lower end of the Hall, till they come before the new installed Knight's Mess, and there *Garter* cries Largess once, and Proclaims his Stile in *English* only; and then retires to Dinner.

In the last Place comes in the Banquet, brought to the Sovereign's Table by the Pensioners, in the same Order as the Messes; (only in Place of the Clerk of the Kitchin, the Chief Clerk of the Spicery waits,) and the Banquet for the *Knights-Companions*, by the Yeomen of the Guard.

Dinner being ended, the *Knights-Companions* rise first, and having washed, place themselves a little below the State, in their usual Order, and make their

Reverences to the Sovereign. After which, the Sovereign hears Grace said by the Prelate, then Water is brought in the usual way, and the Sovereign washes: Which done, the Knights making again due Reverence to the Sovereign, he puts off his Cap, and salutes them, and then proceeds as usually to the Presence Chamber, with the Knights and Officers of the *Order* before him, *&c.*

In like manner does the Sovereign's Lieutenant proceed from the Presence to the Hall, or such other Room where the Dinner is prepared, only his Place at the Table is a little on the left Hand the Cloth of State, or at the end of the Table: And after Dinner, he returns to the Presence in the same Order as the Sovereign does.

The Ceremonies belonging to the second Vespers.

§ 8. The usual time for Proceeding to the *Chapter-House*, hath usually been about four a Clock in the Afternoon, but sometimes not before five, by reason of the length of the Dinner. The Proceeding is as at other times; and when the Sovereign and Knights have made a Cavalcade of it on the Eve, or on the Feast Day, the same has been observed at the Proceeding to the second *Vespers*.

It has been customary to hold a *Chapter* before the second *Vespers*, for the regulation of the Affairs of the *Order*. When the second *Vespers* are ended, the Proceeding passes out of the *Choir* in the very same Order as at the first *Vespers*; but *Anno* 15 *Car.* I. it happening to be late ere the second *Vespers* ended, the Sovereign did not go to the Presence Chamber,

but proceeded directly to the great Hall to Supper by Torch Light.

Of the Supper on the Evening of the Feast Day.

§ 9. It has not been frequently known, that the Sovereign hath supped publickly in St. *George*'s *Hall* on the Feast Day; but when it happens, as 14 *Car.* I. the Proceeding thither, and return, are in all respects performed as at the Supper on the Eve. And if the Sovereign's Lieutenant hath on this Night supped publickly, then it was in the Presence Chamber, where he sat alone at the Sovereign's Table, as at other times.

CAP. XXII.

The Ceremonies observed on the last Day of the Feast.

Of the Proceeding to the Choir.

§ 1.

The manner of Proceeding to the *Chapter-House* is performed in the same manner as it was on the Eve of the Feast; and differs only in this Point; that then the Sovereign and Knights are obliged by the *Statutes* to proceed in full Robes; here, by the Indulgence of King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, all are dispensed with, except the upper Robe or Mantle: And as then the Image of St. *George* was worn Pendant at the Coller of the *Order*, now a blue Ribbond sufficeth; and instead of a Cap and Feather, only their ordinary Hats.

It was the ancient Custom to Celebrate a *Chapter* in the Morning of the last Day of the Feast, before the Sovereign proceeded to the Chappel, chiefly to make Election of Knights, where any Stall is void; which has sometimes been held, when the Sovereign did not go to the Chappel, in the Privy Chamber, and then the Lieutenant, waving the *Chapter-House*, proceeds straight on to the Chappel, and enters at the

South Door.

Of the elect Knights proceeding into the Choir.

§ 2. Where an Election has been made of a Person then present at Court, he is called into the *Chapter-House* by *Garter*, according to the usual manner; and having been invested with the *George* and *Garter*, he usually passed in the Proceeding to the Chappel, whether it were from the *Chapter-House*, or Presence Chamber; and in this ordinary Apparel, always bare-headed; the Place allowed him in the Proceeding being between the *Knights-Companions* and the Officers of Arms: But if two Knights have been elected, they then proceed together, before the *Knights-Companions*. At his Entrance into the *Choir*, the elect Knight is placed by *Garter*, next before the lowest Stall; or if there be two elected, and both proceed to the Chappel, they are placed in the two lowest Stalls; where they are to stand all Service time, unless upon Licence to sit, as they have sometimes obtained.

Of the Ceremonies performed at Divine Service.

§ 3. In this Morning Service, before the Reformation of our Church, the Mass of *Requiem* was solemnly Sung, for the Souls of the *Knights-Companions*, and all faithful Souls departed, which was provided for by the *Statutes*. As likewise, that all the Knights should be present thereat, unless upon License obtained, or special Case to the contrary. At this Celebration, was the deceased Knights Atchievements also offered with solemn Ceremony;

of which we shall speak presently.

Another Ceremony belonging to the Service of this Morning, is the Offering of Gold and Silver, which (when the first Sentence of the Offertory has been pronounced,) is again performed by the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions*; the Ceremonies being the same, in all particulars, as are observed at the like Offering on the Feast Day.

Divine Service being ended, the Sovereign and *Knights-Companions* frequently proceed to the *Chapter-House*, and there put off their Mantles, and therewith the Ceremonies of this Grand Feast determine.

CAP. XXIII.

The Observation of the Grand Feast by absent Knights.

Absent Knights enjoined to observe the Grand Feast.

§ 1.

Having shewn with what Magnificence and Ceremony the Feast of St. *George* has been, and ought to be observed; as also how strictly the *Statutes* oblige the *Knights-Companions* to appear annually thereat; and what severe Penalties they are liable to, if absent, except on reasonable Cause of Absence. Yet lest the Honour might receive diminution, from too small an Appearance at its publick Solemnities; it was farther at the Institution of the *Order* Decreed: *That none of them should depart the Kingdom, without first acquainting the Sovereign, and obtaining his special Leave and License*; nevertheless the Sovereign granted them License to go beyond Sea, before the rest of his Subjects, if they were dispos'd to undertake any Military Expedition, from whence any Glory of Knighthood might be hop'd for.

It was then by the eleventh Article also ordained; (on whatsoever occasion the Absence might be,) *That*

wheresoever any of the Knights-Companions *resided, during the said Feast, they should wear their Mantles of the* Order, *from the Hour of the first Vespers on the Eve of St.* George, *till the second* Vespers *on the Feast Day were finished; as they should have done, had they been present in Person, with the Sovereign or his Deputy, during the whole Celebration of the Feast; (in case they were not deprived of their Liberty) the Prorogation of the Feast notwithstanding*.

King *Henry* VIII. observing the Custom of these Celebrations began to be neglected, in the eleventh year of his Reign, enlarged the Law in this particular, explaining the said eleventh Article. He declar'd and enjoin'd the wearing of the whole Habit on the Eve of St. *George*, if the *Knight-Companion* were not under restraint. Then he enumerated the times for wearing it; to wit, on the Eve, at all times of Divine Service, Dinner and Supper; unless in case of War, Sickness, or other just impediment; when it was sufficient, if the absent Knight did wear the *Garter* and *George*, either in a Gold Chain, or Silk Ribbond.

And when the same Sovereign, about three Years after, made a general Reformation of the *Statutes*, he enjoin'd the absent *Knights-Companions* (unless under restraint,) to prepare a Capital Stall in the Church or Chappel where he design'd to hear Service, to the Honour of the Sovereign; in which should be set up the Arms of the *Order* within a *Garter*; and also to erect another Stall, as far in distance (according to the proportion of the said Church or Chappel,) from the Stall of the Sovereign, as is the absent Knights Stall in the Castle of *Windsor*, and therein place his own Arms: And should wear the whole Habit of the *Order*, and hear Divine Service, such as the Church ordained for the said time; as well on the Eve and Morning, as on the Afternoon on the Feast Day. He is

likewise to do Reverence towards the *Altar*, in the Honour of God, and after towards the Stall erected for the Sovereign, at his coming in and going out of the said Church or Chappel, and, as often as he should pass before the said Stall. But Emperors, Kings, Princes, or Electors, are excepted, who may place their Seats and Stalls as they think fitting.

This Decree is still in full force, and we shall only further observe, that it has been usual for the absent Knight to perform the same Ceremonies as near as may be to what is observed at *Windsor*, and to be attended with a convenient Number of Gentlemen before him, well habited, with the Officers of his Houshold, *&c.* who, according to their Degrees, proceed two and two together bare-headed; and that he Dines and Sups alone at all times, unless a *Knight-Companion* be with him.

How it is to be observed in Case of Sickness.

§ 2. In Case of Sickness, if the absent Knight was only confin'd to his Chamber, the Custom was to prepare a Capital Stall for the Sovereign, in the Chamber where he lay, and another Stall for himself, placed according to the before-mentioned directions, to remain during the Feast; in which Room Divine Offices were celebrated. And if the absent Knight was so Sick as to keep his Bed, then his whole Habit of the *Order* was laid thereon; and upon this Account *Ambrose*, Earl of *Warwick*, falling Ill at *Greenwich*, when St. *George*'s *Day* was there celebrated, *Anno* 30 *Eliz.* retir'd to his Chamber, and sat in his Robes.

In what manner the Feast hath been observ'd

by absent Knights.

§ 3. Of this, the *Black-Book* of the *Order* gives a very considerable Precedent; Namely, the Feast of St. *George* held at the Palace of *Hereford*, by Prince *Arthur*, 15 *Hen.* VII. being then in his Government of the Principality of *Wales*; and had with him Sir *Richard Pool*, one of the *Knights-Companions*; where every thing, according to the form of the *Statutes*, was duly observed. The Prince's Sword was born before his Stall, and the Service performed by his *Herald* with great exactness. Likewise the Sovereign's *Herald* stood all the while before the Sovereign's Stall, which was adorned with accustomed Ornaments; and the Bishop, who performed Divine Service, had his Seat erected near the High *Altar*.

There are other Instances, as particularly those observed by Sir *Henry Sidney*, at *Shrewsbury* and *Ludlow*, 23 and 24 Queen *Eliz.* which were very remarkable.

As to the observation of the Feast, by a Knight beyond Sea, there is an Instance in *Robert*, Earl of *Leicester*, Lieutenant for Queen *Elizabeth*, Governor, and Captain General of the united Provinces, and there celebrated the Feast, 1586. He had an Escutcheon of the *Order*, impailed with the Sovereign's Arms, fixt to the front of his House, so also to the back of her Stall in the Church, and his own Arms at the back of his own Stall.

He proceeded on Horse-back to the Church, a Pursuivant riding before him, wearing a King of Arms's Coat; who, after Sermon, proceeded before him to the Offering; which he made for the Sovereign and himself; Service being ended, he returned to his Lodging, and dined with great Solemnity.

Dispensations for Absence granted during Life.

§ 5. Sometimes Dispensations for Absence have been obtained for Life, upon the Petite of the *Knights-Companions* setting forth their Age and Infirmity: An Instance of which, we find was granted to the Lord *Dacrees*, 26 *Hen.* VIII. and the Earl of *Derby*, 14 *Car.* I. and the Lord *Musgrave*; but both with this Restriction; that the absent should be obliged to send to *Garter* for his Escutcheons, at the same time that he sent his Excuse, and Petite for Dispensation; and should solemnly keep in his own House the Feast, with all the sacred Rites and Ceremonies, in his Robes, and other Ornaments, if Health permit; and in Case of Sickness, upon his Bed, according to the ancient *Statutes*.

This Act was thought of so great Importance to be observed, that the Chancellor was ordered to transcribe it, and send it to each of the *Knights-Companions*; acquainting them at the same time, with the Penalties they should be liable to, if they neglected the least Punctilio. And the like was again observed, and repeated to them, before the Feast of the ensuing Year.

CAP. XXIV.

The Degradation of a Knight-Companion.

§ 1.

The Ensigns of the *Order* are not to be withdrawn from a Knight, during Life, unless Guilty of some of those Marks of Reproach, set down in King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, *viz.* Heresy, Treason, or Flying from Battle: It has sometimes been found, that Prodigality has been made a fourth Point, where a Knight has so wasted his Estate, as to be incapable of supporting his Dignity. The Pretence for divesting *William*, Lord *Paget*, 6 *Edw.* VI. was, his not being a Gentleman of Blood, both by Father and Mother. But Felony comes not within the compass of this *Statute*, as not being expresly mentioned among the Reproaches there Summ'd up; and so it was adjudged in a *Chapter*, 14 *Jac.* I. in the Case of *Robert*, Earl of *Somerset*, then lately condemned for that Fact, whereon his Hatchments were not removed.

When a *Knight-Companion* is found Guilty of any of the Offences mentioned in King *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*, he is usually degraded at the next *Chapter*, of which the Sovereign gives the *Knights-Companions* previous notice; and then commands *Garter* to attend such of them as are appointed to go to the Convict Knight, who, in a solemn manner, first takes from him the

George and *Ribbond*, and then his *Garter*. And at the ensuing Feast of St. *George*, or sooner, if the Sovereign appoint it, publication of his Crimes and Degradation is made by *Garter*.

Next, *Garter*, by Warrant to that purpose, takes down his Atchievement, on which Service he is vested in his Coat of Arms, and the Officers of Arms standing about him, the *Black-Rod* also present; First *Garter* reads aloud the Instruments of Degradation, after which one of the *Heralds*, who is placed ready on a Ladder set to the back of the Convict Knight's Stall, at the Words *expelled, and put from among the Arms*, takes his Crest, and violently casts it down into the *Choir*, after that his Banner and Sword; and when the Publication is read out, all the Officers of Arms spurn the Atchievements out of the *Choir*, into the Body of the Church, first the Sword, then the Banner, and last of all the Crest, so out of the West Door, thence to the Bridge, and over into the Ditch; and thus it was done at the Degradation of *Edward*, Duke of *Buckingham*, 13 *Hen.* VIII. Their Plates are likewise taken down from their Stalls and carried away.

Degradation not being alone thought sufficient, it was debated in *Chapter*, 32 *Hen.* VIII. whether the Names of such *Knights-Companions* as were convicted of Treason should remain in the *Registers*, or be razed out: Where the Sovereign determined; That wheresoever the Actions or Names of such Offenders should be found, these Words [*Vah Proditor*] should be Written in the Margin; by which means the *Register* wou'd be preserved fair, and not defaced with razures or blots.

In the close of this Section we may observe, that some *Knights-Companions*, who have suffered Degradation, have lived to be restored thereto; being re-elected, and re-invested, and their Atchievements

set up again, by the Indulgence of the next Reign; as were the Lord *Paget*'s, 1 *Mar.* and the Marquiss of *Northampton*, 1 *Eliz.* as likewise the Duke of *Norfolk*, 1 *Mar.*

CAP. XXV.

Honours paid to deceased Knights-Companions.

1.

As to the first part of this Section, the celebrating Masses for defunct *Knights-Companions*, I think it very little material here; that Ceremony altering with the Form of Religion, became wholly disused, 32 *Hen.* VIII. at which time, in a *Chapter* then held at *Westminster*, the following Decree was made.

That everyone of the Knights-Companions, *in lieu of the said Masses, should, for the future, after the Death of any of their Brethren, according to the Rates of their Degrees hereafter mentioned, and immediately upon Demand of the* Register, *and Dean of* Windsor, *or one of them, pay the several Sums following.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
The Sovereign	8	06	8
A Stranger King	6	08	4

The Prince	5	16	8
A Duke	5	00	0
A Marquiss	3	16	0
An Earl	2	10	0
A Viscount	1	01	8
A Baron	1	13	4
A Knight-Batchelor	0	16	8

The Monies so collected, (called *Obiit Monies*) were by the said Decree appointed to be distributed in Alms-Deeds, *as the Reparation of High Ways*, *the Relief of the Poor, &c.* The receipt and disbursements of these Sums were committed to the care of the Dean and Register.

Mr. *Ashmole*, has made this addition in his Library, which it will not be out of our way to observe, for the information of those who may be desirous to know how the Point then stood; that not withstanding the aforesaid Order in *Chapter*, made the 24th of *May*, *Anno* 32 *Hen.* VIII. for changing the Number of Masses usually Sung for defunct Knights, into a pecuniary Rate, according their degrees; the Prayers for Souls departed, both by private Persons, as also by the Clergy, in Masses and Exequies; nay farther, to give Alms to others, and to pray for them,

was continued by the Church of *England* several Years beyond that space; for in a Book, entituled the *Institution of a Christian Man, &c.* made by the Clergy of *England*, as appears by the Subscriptions of the Archbishops, Bishops, and others of the Clergy to the Preface; dedicated by them to King *Henry* VIII. and printed by *Thomas Bartelet*, the King's Printer, *Anno* 1537. *cum Privilegio*, the Article of Purgatory is there set down.

But to proceed. This charitable distribution, in a *Chapter* held at *Greenwich*, 5 *Edw.* VI. was enlarged to the relief of the Poor in the Town of *Windsor*, and other Towns, Villages, and Places, at the discretion of the Dean of *Windsor*. And though the said Decree was confirmed by King *Edward* VI. Queen *Mary*, and Queen *Elizabeth*, yet for many Years, the Collection of these *Obiit* Monies was neglected; till in 9 *Car.* I. the Earl of *Portland*, out of his great Generosity, as well as his Zeal for restoring so pious a Work, reiterated to the Sovereign the ancient Decrees made in this Case. Whereupon it passed in *Chapter*, that the same should be revived, and for ever continued; and that the same should begin for the five Knights, whose Atchievements were offered at that Feast, *viz.* the King of *Sweden*, the Elector Palatine, the Earls of *Northumberland*, *Banbury*, and *Rutland*. And as to Stranger Princes, it pleased the Sovereign to express himself, *That as by the* Statutes *they are left* to perform these Payments by themselves, if they wou'd; so, if it were not done by them, that both then, and for the future, the same should be paid by the Sovereign himself.

Afterwards, all the Sums of Money, to be collected by Virtue of this Decree, together with the *Knights-Companions* Duties, at their first Entrance in the *Order*, were employed toward providing Plate for the

Altar, within St. *George*'s *Chappel*, which is already treated of.

Of fixing on the Stalls Plates of their Arms and Stiles.

§ 2. The next thing provided for by the *Statutes* of Institution, was the deceased Knight's Honour; in regard of which, it was ordained, *That when any one of the first Founders should die, there should be in Metal an Escutcheon of his Arms, with his Helm, or Crest, fastened at the back of his Stall, for a Mark of Honour to him that bore them*. And in like manner, *that their Successors should have a like Escutcheon fixed on the back of their Stalls*; and to difference them from those of the first Founders, they were appointed to be made somewhat less, and to be placed a little underneath them. But this Article relates only to the *Knights-Companions*, not to the Sovereigns of the *Order*; nor do we find that any of them had Plates of their Arms and Stiles set upon the back of their Stalls, in manner as is before prescribed to the rest of the *Knights-Companions*.

King *Henry* VIII. in his Body of *Statutes*, alters this Article in three particulars; first, as to the setting up their Plates, which he appoints not to be after their Deaths, but within, after the Installation of every *Knight-Companion*; secondly, as to the nature of the Metal, that it may be such as the Knight shall please himself: And lastly, as to the size, though he also restrains the *Knights-Subjects* to a lesser than those of the first Founders; yet he gives liberty to the *Knights-Strangers* to use their Plates and Fashions at Pleasure. As to the first of these, it has been pretty duly observed; and indeed the second, of making them of

Copper; but the last, *viz.* the size, has been very little regarded; for the very Plates of those Knights who were soon after installed, and thence downwards, are larger than those of the first Founders.

In tract of time, many of these Memorials were, by sacrilegious Hands, taken away, which King *Charles* I. taking notice of, and desirous to put a stop to a Mischief not in his Power to prevent, and to preserve the Remembrance of the precedent *Knights-Companions*; commanded the Dean of *Windsor* to describe the Stiles of those that remained in a Book, which he accordingly did, and deposited the same in the College: But what became of this Book, could not be afterwards discovered; so that the most that could be done, was to draw the Arms, and Copy out the Stiles, engraven on the Plates then remaining; from whence the following Observations may be made.

First, That for many Years after the Institution of the *Order*, the Plate whereon the Shield was engraved, bore no other Inscription, than the deceased Knight's Name, set at the Foot thereof, under the Escutcheon of his Arms. Afterwards, the chief Title of Honour began to be added, though now and then, in the first and elder times, both were omitted, as also their Crests. But about the beginning of King *Henry* VIII's Reign, not only the Knight's chief Title, but all other his Titles and Dignities, whether Honorary, or Officiary, were drawn together in one Inscription, concluding with that of Knight of this most Noble *Order*; and which, about the same time, the *Knights-Companions* used to insert, in all their publick and private Instruments of Writing; a Custom observed by the Knights of other Sovereigns *Orders* Abroad.

At first the *Knights-Companions* gave their Paternal Coats of Arms, singly and without any Quarterings;

but toward the beginning of *Hen.* V. they began to add their Quarterings, as appears from the Escutcheons of *Hugh*, Lord *Burnel*, who died 9 *Hen.* V. Sir *Lewis Robessart*, and others. Yet was not the same generally used, but left to the Pleasure of the *Knights-Companions*.

But of later times, this very thing was thought of such concern, that where a Knight has been elected, who wanted Quarterings, the Sovereign has been pleased to grant him another Coat of Arms, to quarter with his Paternal Coat; that his Banner, which ought to hang over his Stall, might not seem too naked.

Soon after King *Henry* VIII's Accession, the Knights compassed their Shields with the Royal *Garter*, and thereon (such as were Noblemen) placed the Coronet belonging to their Dignity. As to Supporters, we observe two Places to which they are added; the one of *John Beaufort*, the first Duke of *Somerset* of that Name, elected 20 *Hen.* VI. the other of *Anthony Widvile*, Earl *Rivers*, elected 5 *Edw.* IV. and besides these, till the Reign of King *Henry* VIII. there is not another Example: But then it grew into common usage, as also the ingraving their peculiar Motto's, or Devices upon the Plates.

The Offering of Atchievements.

§ 3. A third Honour paid to the defunct Knight, is a most solemn Offering up his Atchievements at the High *Altar*; namely, the Banner of his Arms, his Sword, Helmet, and Crest, with its Mantlings; all which had been set up over his Stall at his Installation. The Ceremony of Offering these Ensigns does not appear to have been regulated at the

Institution of the *Order*, but rather added as an additional Honour, by King *Henry* V. and the manner thereof set down in the fourteenth Article of his Body of *Statutes*.

This Solemnity is local to the Chappel of St. *George*, within the Castle of *Windsor*, and not to be performed till the Sovereign has notice of the *Knight-Companion's* Death.

In 1 *Edw.* VI. at the Feast then held at *Windsor*, there arose a Question, whether the Atchievements of King *Henry* VIII. which yet hung over the Sovereign's Stall, should be taken down and offered at the Mass of *Requiem* ensuing, or not? in regard his Banner, Sword, Helm, and Crest, with Mantles, had been offered up before, at his Interment within that Chappel. In conclusion of which it was determined, *That the said Atchievements shou'd not again be offered, but remain over the Sovereign's Stall, for his Son King* Edward VI. But when the Sovereigns of this most Noble *Order* are not interred at *Windsor*, then their Atchievements are offered up the next ensuing Feast; as were those of Queen *Elizabeth*, which the *Blue-Book* notes to be done at Morning Prayer.

As to the time for performing this Ceremony, it was ordained to be on the Morrow after the Feast, when the Mass was Sung for the Souls of the *Knights-Companions*, *&c.* and so was duly observed till the time of the Reformation, when the Mass of *Requiem* being abolished, it was nevertheless at the Morning Service, on the Morrow immediately after the Offertory: But after Queen *Elizabeth* had removed the Feast of St. *George* from *Windsor*, this Solemnity was frequently dispatched in one Day, before they went out of the *Choir*; and the ancient Rule, as to the time, being thus broke, was never after restored, but generally performed the very same Morning wherein

the elect Knights were installed: And though the Day was thus changed, yet the Ceremony it self was not performed till after the Installation was finished, that Solemnity having always the Precedency, till 9 *Jac.* I. when he observing how incongruous it seemed, to instal a new Knight before his Predecessor had been fully discharged of his Stall, gave Order for Offering the Atchievements of Sir *Henry Lea*, the Lord *Scroop*, and others, before the Instalment of the elect Knights.

Not long after, it was thought convenient to perform this Ceremony on the Eve of the Feast, presently after the first *Vespers* began; and next to proceed with the Installations; whereby, as much as possible, the Stalls of the *Knights-Companions* might be supplied, in all the rest of the Solemnities of the Feast. But if at any time, any of the new elect Knights were introduced into the *Choir*, before the Offering of the Atchievements began, they were appointed to stand there under the Stalls designed for them till that Ceremony was finished.

Thus it continued from the said 9 *Jac.* I. till the 15 *Car.* II. when it was performed at the time anciently accustomed for it; the Prince of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Monmouth*, being both installed before the first *Vespers* began, and the Atchievements of the defunct Knights not offered till the Morrow after the Feast Day.

As to the Manner and Order of this Ceremony, among other Institutions of King *Henry* V. it is appointed, *That as often as, through the vacancy of any Stall, the Swords, Helms, with the rest of the defunct Knights, ought to be offered, the Sword of the deceased Knight shall be first offered, being carried up to the* High Altar *by two of the* Knights-Companions, *and afterwards the Helm, with the Crest and Mantlings, by*

two other Knights-Companions; *and this Offering is to be made for them, in the Order they were installed, not as they died*.

But of the Offering of a defunct Knight's Banner, we find no express mention till 18 *Hen.* VII. at which time the Banner of the Lord *Brook* was offered: But afterwards the direction for Offering their Ensign and Banner was taken into King *Henry* VIII's Body of *Statutes*. And since the same were introduced, according to the foregoing Precedent, it was to be offered first, and so hath been generally observed.

By the appointment of the *Statutes* of *Henry* V. the Sovereign is to nominate and assign the *Knights-Companions*, who are severally to perform this Ceremony; and so is the direction in *Henry* VIII's *Statutes*: But since the beginning of Queen *Elizabeth*'s Reign, the Knights have generally proceeded to this Offering, according to their Seniority; and when the Course ended, then the *Seniors* began again. There are likewise many Examples where the Sovereign's Lieutenant has joined in the Ceremony to assist the other Knights: Nor is a Proxy, or Deputy, to be admitted to perform any part of the Ceremony, though in the Offering of Money he ought.

We shall next proceed to the Duties of the Prelate of the *Order*, the Prebends, and Officers of Arms, as their Services severally, or jointly, relate to the performance of this Ceremony. First then, the Prelate, and two Prebends, ought to proceed up to the *Altar*, immediately before *Garter* summons down the *Knights-Companions* to the Offering; and there stand ready to receive the Atchievements, as they are severally offered up.

It is next the Duty of the *Provincial Kings*, and *Heralds*, to conduct the *Knights-Companions*, when they proceed up to the *Altar*, bearing any part of the

defunct Knight's Atchievements. The whole Ceremony is briefly thus.

First *Garter* rises from his Seat, and proceeds into the middle of the *Choir*, where, after his usual Obeysances, he summons the *Knights-Companions* to descend, who come down and place themselves before their Stalls: Whereupon *Clarenceux* and *Norroy* (or in the absence of either, the *Senior Herald*, or of both, of the two eldest *Heralds*,) pass down from the Steps of the *Altar* into the Body of the *Choir*; in the interim *Garter* takes the *Banner* of the eldest defunct Knight, and presents it, half rolled up, to the two *Senior Knights-Companions*; the two *Provincial Kings* by this time approaching them, make their double Reverences, and after to the other *Knights-Companions*, and then stand a little aside; while the two *Senior* Knights, having taken the *Banner* between them, make their double Reverence, and pass up to the *Altar*, (preceeded by the Kings) bearing it with the lower end of the Staff foremost, and at the first *Haut-Pas* make another double Reverence. The *Provincial Kings* being arrived at the uppermost *Haut-Pas*, after an humble Obeysance, divide themselves to make way for the Knights to Offer, who forthwith raise the Point of the *Banner* upwards, and after a single Reverence toward the *Altar*, present it upon their Knees, to the Prelate of the *Order*, who delivers it to two Canons, and they deposite it upon Cushions laid before the *Altar*. This done, the two *Provincial Kings* conduct the Knights back into the *Choir*, who, with the usual Reverences, retire to their Stations, under (not to) their Stalls, and the *Provincial Kings* to their, on either side the *Altar*.

Next the two *Senior Heralds* pass down into the *Choir*, as the *Provincial Kings* did, whilst *Garter*, taking up the Sword, presents it to the two next

Senior Knights, who proceed to the *Altar* with the two *Heralds* before them, in the same Order as before, bearing the Sword between them, and offer the same with the Pommel or Hilt upwards, and then retire as before.

In the next place, the two next *Senior Heralds* go down as before, and the *Helm* and *Crest* is offered in the like manner: But the *Pursuivants* at *Arms* do no part of this Duty.

Heretofore we find that *Garter* has not only begun this Solemnity, by presenting the *Banner*, but has also conducted the two *Senior* Knights to the *Altar*, as he did 5 *Eliz.* by the *Banner* of the Lord *Grey*; and at some other times. It was likewise the usage heretofore for the Prelate to deliver the offered Atchievements, to some of the *Heralds*, to be deposited near the *Altar*.

There is nothing on this farther observable, than what relates to the Atchievement it self, which, as they became by this Ceremony part of the Goods of the Chappel, and included within the Words of the *Statutes* of the College, whereby the Sovereign granted to the Dean and Canons all Oblations, they could not be sold or alienated, and were therefore deposited by them in the *Chapter-House*: But the *Helms* and *Swords*, because they were at first forged for the Service of War, of an extraordinary large size, have been frequently redeemed, that they might serve again to the same uses. And likewise, because it belongs to *Garter* to provide Atchievements for new installed Knights, he usually hath compounded with the Dean and Canons for the defunct Knight's Atchievements.

Of depositing the deceased Knights Mantles *in*

the Chapter-House.

$ 4. In 9 *Eliz.* there passed a Decree, *That the* Knights-Companions *should be bound by their Oaths, to take care, by their last Will, that after their Decease, all their Ornaments, which they had receiv'd, should be restored, the Robes to the College, and the Jewels to the King that gave them*. Sir *Christopher Hatton* complied with the Decree, and sent his *Mantle* accordingly; but that of Sir *Henry Lea*, being left to the disposal of others, and not sent to the College, happened at length to come into the Hands of Brokers, and was openly exposed to Sale in *Long-lane*, to the great dishonour of the *Order*.

This Decree was in after times but slackly observed, and therefore in a *Chapter* held at *Windsor*, 4 *Car.* I. the Knights were admonished, *That when the Sovereign should vouchsafe to bestow the* Mantle *of the* Order, *the Knight should take care at his Death, to have it sent to the Chappel at* Windsor, according to the *Statutes*. But this taking little Effect, the Sovereign thought fit to restore vigorously the Law in this particular, by a Decree in *Chapter*, 13 *Car.* I. which obliged all *Knights-Companions*, receiving the Ensigns of the *Order* from the Sovereign, to take care, according to the tenor of their Oaths, that these, together with the Book of *Statutes*, should be restored in the Hands of the Sovereign, after their Deaths; and a Command was therewithal given, *That certain* Books, Mantles, *and* Surcoats, *then lying at* White-Hall, *shou'd be delivered to the* Register *of the* Order, *to be laid up at* Windsor, *in honourable Memory of those to whom they belonged*.

In Observation of these Decrees, where the *Habit* and *Ensigns* of the *Order* were either wholly, or in part, bestowed by the Sovereign, Order was taken, at

the Decease of such *Knights-Companions*, to send for them in again. As at a *Chapter* held 15 *Car.* I. the *Garter* and *George* of the Lord Treasurer *Weston* being sent back, were presented to the Sovereign; and after delivered to the *Dean* and *Chapter* of *Windsor*, to be preserved: And in the same *Chapter* it was ordered, that the Earl of *Kelly*'s Robes and Ornaments of the *Order*, should be sent for by the Chancellor.

These former Decrees were yet thought needful to be confirm'd by King *Charles* II. so that in a *Chapter* held 1669. at *White-Hall*, it was Decreed, *That the Mantle of each* Knight-Companion, *with the Book of* Statutes, should be sent to *Windsor*, immediately after their Deaths; *and that the Chancellor of the* Order *should be obliged, by Letters to their Heirs and Executors, to put them in mind of sending them thither*. But it is to be understood, that where the Mantle has been provided at the Knight's own Charge, there is no obligation for returning them.

Thus I have run through all the Particulars, relating to the Institutions, Laws, and Ceremonies, of this most Noble *Order*; I shall in the last Place proceed to give a List of all those who have enjoyed this singular Mark of Honour from its first Foundation. The Motives which excited the Royal Founder to set on Foot the said *Order*, are already particularly treated of; who having established *Rules* and *Statutes* for the Government, and regulation thereof, he next resolved to elect, from among the Flower of his own Wars, twenty five of the most celebrated Knights, who, together with himself, should make up the Number of Twenty six; for of so many does the *Order* by his Appointment consist: And indeed that Age plentifully furnished him with Men of the most brave and celebrated Characters, and of signal Reputation in Arms, raised by the

eminent Wars of those times, and justly distinguished by their own heroick Actions.

The first that he elected into this Noble *Order*, was *Edward*, his eldest Son, who already in part deserved, and afterwards justly obtained the Title of a Brave and Martial Prince, of whom our Histories speak so largely. The rest of his accomplished Collegues, were these that follow, and are thus placed in their Stalls.

CAP. XXVI.

A List of the Founders, and Catalogue of their Successors, to the present time.

1 *The Sovereign King* Edward *III*.	2 Edward *Prince of* Wales.
3 Henry, *Duke of* Lancast.	4 Th. Beauchamp, *E.* War.
5 Piers Capitow de la Bouch.	6 Ralph Stafford, *E.* Staff.
7 W. Montacute, *E. Salisb*.	8 Rog. Mortimer, *E.* March.
9 *Sir* John Lysle.	10 *Sir* Barthol. Burghersh.
11 *Sir* John Beauchamp.	12 *Sir* John Mohun.
13 *Sir* Hugh Courteney.	14 *Sir* Thomas Holland.
15 *Sir* John Grey.	16 *Sir* Richard Fitz Simon.
17 *Sir* Miles Stapleton.	18 *Sir* Thomas Wale.
19 *Sir* Hugh Wrotesley.	20 *Sir* Nele Loring.

21 *Sir* John Chandos.	22 *Sir* James Audeley.
23 *Sir* Otho Holland.	24 *Sir* Henry Eam.
25 *Sir* Sanchet Daubrichcourt.	26 *Sir* Walter Paveley.

A Catalogue of their Successors, with the Blazoning of their Arms, corrected in above sixty Errors, in the Plates engrav'd in Ashmole.

Knights afterwards elected in the Reign of King Edward III.

27.

Richard *of* Bordeaux, *afterwards King of* England; *of that Name the second.*

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Argent on the middlemost, a Cross of St. George.

28. Lionel *of* Antwerp, *Earl of* Ulster, *and Duke of* Clarence.

Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label of three Points Argent, as many Cantons Gules.

29. John *of* Gaunt, *Duke of* Lancaster, *after created Duke of* Acquitaine.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Ermine.

30. Edmund *of* Langley, *Earl of* Cambridge, *after Duke of* York.

Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label of three Points Argent and nine Torteauxes.

31. John de Montford, *Duke of* Bretagne, *and Earl of* Richmond.

Plain Ermine.

32. William de Bohun, *Earl of* Hereford.
Azure a bend Argent between two Cottises, and six Lyons rampant Or.
33. William de Bohun, *Earl of* Northampton.
Azure on a bend Argent, cottized between six Lyons rampant Or, three Mullets Gules.
34. John Hastings, *Earl of* Pembroke.
Or a manch Gules.
35. Thomas Beauchamp, *Earl of* Warwick.
Gules a fess between six cross Croslets Or.
36. Richard Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel *and* Surrey.
Gules a Lyon rampant Or.
37. Robert Ufford, *Earl of* Suffolk.
Sable a Cross ingrailed Or.
38. Hugh Stafford, *Earl of* Stafford.
Or a chevron Gules.
39. Ingelram de Coucy, *Earl of* Bedford.
Barry of six Vair and Gules.
40. Guiscard d'Angoulesme, *Earl of* Huntingdon.
Or billetty a Lyon rampant Azure.
41. Edward Spencer, *Lord* Spencer.
Quarterly Argent and Gules, in the second and third a fret Or, over all a bend Sable.
42. William Latimer, *Lord* Latimer.
Gules a Cross patonce Or.
43. Reynold Cobham, *Lord* Cobham *of* Sterborough.
Gules on a Chevron Or three Estoils Sable.
44. John Nevil, *Lord* Nevil *of* Raby.
Gules a Saltire Argent.
45. Ralph Basset, *Lord* Basset *of* Drayton.
Or three Piles Gules a Canton Ermin.
46. *Sir* Walter Manny Banneret.

Or three Chevrons Sable, to which King *Edward* III. added an augmentation of a *Lyon Passant gardant Or, placed on the uppermost Chevron.*

47. *Sir* William Fitz Warin, *Kt.*

Quarterly per fess indented Ermine and Gules.

48. *Sir* Thomas Ufford, *Kt.*

Sable a Cross ingrailed Or with his difference.

49. *Sir* Thomas Felton, *Kt.*

Gules two Lyons passant in pale Ermine crowned Or.

50. *Sir* Francis Van Hale, *Kt.*

Gules within a bordure cousu Azure enurny verdoy of Lyons rampant and Flower Deluces, a Wyvern or bifooted Dragon rising and crowned all Or, charged on the breast with an inescochion, of the first therein a double headed Eagle displaid Gold.

51. *Sir* Fulk Fitz Warrin, *Kt.*

Quarterly per fess indented Argent and Gules.

52. *Sir* Allan Boxhull, *Kt.*

Or a Lyon rampant queve fourche Azure frettee Argent.

53. *Sir* Richard Pembruge, *Kt.*

Barry of eight Or and Azure.

54. Sir Thomas Wreigt, *Kt.*

Gules on a Cross patonce Or, five mullets of the Field.

55. *Sir* Thomas Banester, *Kt.*

Argent a Cross patonce Sable.

56. *Sir* Richard de la Vache, *Kt.*

Gules three Lyons rampant Argent crowned Or.

57. *Sir* Guy de Bryan, *Kt.*

Or three Piles Azure.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Richard *II.*

58. Thomas *of* Woodstock, *Earl of* Buckingham, *after Duke of* Gloucester.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a bordure Argent.

59. Henry *of* Lancaster, (*or* Bolinbroke,) *Earl of* Darby, *afterwards King of* England; *of that Name the fourth.*

Comme son Pere, No. 29.

60. William, *Duke of* Gelderland.

Parti per pale Or and Azure, two Lyons rampant combatant and counter-changed.

61. William *of* Bavaria, *Earl of* Ostrevant, *after Earl of* Holland, Henault, *and* Zeland.

Quarterly the first and fourth Or, a Lyon rampant Sable, the second and third Or, a Lyon rampant Gules, i. e. Flanders *and* Hainault.

62. Thomas Holland, *Earl of* Kent, *after Duke of* Surry.

England a border Argent, to which the King in Augmentation gave him King *Edward* the Confessor's, *viz. Azure a Cross patonce between five martlets Or*, to be impaled before his own aforesaid, assumed from his Grandmother of the House of *Plantagenet Woodstock*. *Vide* among the Founders.

63. John Holland, *Earl of* Huntingdon, *after Duke of* Exeter.

England a border of France, as descended maternally from *Plantagenet Woodstock*.

64. Thomas Mowbray, *Earl of* Nottingham, *after Duke of* Norfolk.

England a Label of five Points Argent, his maternal Grandmother's Arms *Plantagenet* of *Brotherton*, his own Arms was *Gules a Lyon rampant Argent*.

65. Edward, *Earl of* Rutland, *after Duke of* Albemarle,
Comme son Pere, No. 30.

66. Michael de la Pole, *Earl of* Suffolk.
Azure a Fess between three Leopards Faces Or.

67. William Scroop, *Lord* Scroop, *after Earl of* Wiltshire, *and Lord Treasurer of* England.
Azure a bend Or, a Label of three Points Argent with difference, being of the *Masham* Line.

68. William Beauchamp, *Lord* Bergavenny.
Comme son Pere, No. 35. *with a Crescent difference*.

69. John Beaumont, *Lord* Beaumont.
France a Lyon rampant Or.

70. William Willoughby, *Lord* Willoughby.
Quarterly Ufford and Beke, viz. *Sable a Cross ingrailed Or, and Gules a Cross moline Argent*, his Grandmother *Ufford*'s Arms, his own proper Coat being *Or fretty Azure*.

71. Richard Grey, *Lord* Grey.
Barry of six Argent and Azure, a Label of five Points Gules.

72. *Sir* Nicholas Sarnesfield, *Kt.*
Azure an Eagle displaid Or, crowned Argent, potius Argent crowned Or.

73. *Sir* Philip de la Vache, *Kt.*
Comme, No. 56.

74. *Sir* Robert Knolls, *Kt.*
Gules on a Chevron Argent, three Roses of the first.

75. *Sir* John Sulby, *Kt.*
Ermine four barrs Gules.

76. *Sir* Lewis Clifford, *Kt.*
Checquy Or and Azure a fess Gules, potius a bend Gules.

77. *Sir* Simon Burley, *Kt.*

Or three barrs Sable in chief, two Pallets of the second, in pretence Hussey, viz. *Gules with three bars Ermine.*

78. *Sir* John d'Evereux, *Kt.*

Gules a fess Argent in chief, three Plates.

79. *Sir* Richard Burley, *Kt.*

Comme, No. 77.

80. *Sir* Bryan Stapleton, *Kt.*

Argent a Lyon rampant Sable, on his Shoulder an annulet diff.

81. *Sir* Peter Courtney, *Kt.*

Or three Torteauxes, on a Label of three Points Azure, nine Plates.

82. *Sir* John Burley, *Kt.*

Comme, No. 79.

83. *Sir* John Bourchier, *Kt.*

Argent a Cross ingrailed Gules, between four water budgets Sable.

84. *Sir* Thomas Granston, *Kt.*

Paly of six Argent and Azure, on a bend Gules, three escallops Or.

85. *Sir* Robert Dunstavil, *Kt.*

Argent a fret Gules and Border ingrailed Sable, over all on a Canton, of the second a Lyon passant Or.

86. *Sir* Robert de Namur, *Kt.*

Or a Lyon rampant Sable, suppressed by a Batime Gules.

87. *Sir* Sandich de Frane, *Kt.* alias vocat Sanchet la Towre.

Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Gules.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry IV.

88. Henry, *Prince of* Wales, *after King of* England, *of that Name the fifth.*

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of three Points Argent.

89. Thomas *of* Lancaster, *Earl of* Albemarle, *and Duke of* Clarence, *Brother to Prince* Henry.

Quarterly France ancient and England, on a Label Argent, three cantons Gules at the Label Ermine as his Grandfather, No. 29. but charged with *Cantons*.

90. John, *Earl of* Kendal, *and Duke of* Bedford, *after Regent of* France, *another Brother to Prince* Henry.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a Label of five Points per pale Ermine, and Azure semi de liz Or.

91. Humphry, *Earl of* Pembrook, *and after Duke of* Exeter.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a border Argent.

92. Thomas Beaufort, *Earl of* Dorset, *and after Duke of* Exeter.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a border gobone Ermine and Azure, in every piece of the second a Flower Deluce Or.

N. B. Sir Thomas Percy, *Knight of the Garter, living* 7 Rich. II. *is mentioned by* Ashmole, p. 213, *tho' omitted in his and other Catalogues. Or a Lyon rampant Azure.*

93. Robert, *Count Palatine, Duke of* Bavaria, *after Emperor of* Germany.

Quarterly Sable, a Lyon rampant crowned Or, for the Palatinate, *and Paly bendy Argent and Azure*, Bavaria.

94. John Beaufort, *Earl of* Somerset, *and Marquiss of* Dorset.

Quarterly France ancient and England, a bord. gobone Argent and Azure.

95. Thomas Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.

Comme son Pere, No. 36.

96. Edmund Stafford, *Earl of* Stafford.

Comme son Pere, No. 38.

97. Edmund Holland, *Earl of* Kent.

England a border Argent.

98. Ralph Nevil, *Earl of* Westmorland.

Comme son Pere, No. 44.

99. Gilbert Roos, *Lord* Roos.

Gules three water budgets Argent.

100. Gilbert Talbot, *Lord* Talbot.

Gules a Lyon rampant within a border ingrailed Or.

101. John Lovell, *Lord* Lovell.

Barry nebulee of six Or and Gules.

102. Hugh Burnell, *Lord* Burnell.

Argent a Lyon rampant Sable, crowned Or, a border Azure.

103. Thomas Morley, *Lord* Morley.

Argent a Lyon rampant Sable crowned Or.

104. Edward Charleton, *Lord* Powis.

Or a Lyon rampant Gules.

105. *Sir* John Cornwall, *Kt. after Lord* Fanhope.

Ermine a Lyon rampant Gules crowned Or, a bordet ingrailed Sable besanty.

106. *Sir* William Arundel, *Kt. of the House of* Fitz Alan.

Gules a Lyon rampant Or, a crescent difference.

107. *Sir* John Stanley, *Kt.*

Quarterly Argent and Or in the first, on a bend Azure, three Stags Heads Silver, in the second a chief indented as the third, charged with three Plates, i. e. Stanley *and* Latham.

108. *Sir* Robert de Umfrevile, *Kt.*

Gules Semi de cross Croslets a cinque foil Or, over all a bend ingrailed Argent.

109. *Sir* Thomas Rampston, *Kt.*

Argent a Chevron, and in the dexter chief Point a cinquefoile Sable.

111. *Sir* Thomas Erpingham, *Kt.*

Vert an inescocheon within eight Marlets, placed in Orle Argent.

Hitherto the Knights of this Noble Order are ranked, as placed in divers other Catalogues, and according to their greatest Dignities, because the certain Years of their Elections cannot be found; only we have here removed Sir *John Sulbie*, and Sir *Sanchet de Trane*, from the Reign of King *Henry* IV. in which they are written in those old Catalogues, to the Reign of King *Richard* II. for it appears in *Ashmole*, Page 213. that they were Knights of the *Garter*, 7 *Rich.* II. and we have a little varied the Places of the Knights in that Reign following: The precedence in the Roll of Accounts of *Alan de Stoke* that Year, who reciting twenty three of these *Knights-Companions*, gives therein the preference to some of them after this manner; Sir *Guy Bryan*, Sir *William Beauchamp*, Sir *Thomas Percy*, Sir *Nele Loring*, Sir *John Sulby*, Sir *Lodowick Clifford*, Sir *Simon Burley*, Sir *Richard Burley*, Sir *Bryan Stapleton*, and Sir *Soldan de la Trane*. These that follow are Marshalled in an exact Series of their Elections.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry *V.*

111. *Sir* John Dabrichcourt, *Kt.*

Ermine three barrs humet Gules.

112. Richard Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.

Quarterly Gules and Or, in the first Quarter a Mullet Argent.

113. Thomas Camois, *Lord* Camois.

Or on a chief Gules, three Plates.

114. *Sir* Simon Felbryge, *Kt.*

Or a Lyon rampant, rather saliant Gules.

115. *Sir* William Harington, *Kt.*

Sable, a fret Argent, a Label of three Points, Gules.

116. John Holland, *Earl of* Huntingdon.

Comme son Pere, No. 63.

117. Sigisimund, *Emperor of* Germany.

Or an Eagle double headed displaid Sable, on the Breast, Hungary and Bohemia, in pretence Brandenburgh.

118. Dux Hollandiæ *Lib. Nig. Fol.* 27.

119. .... *Duke of* Briga.

Or an Eagle displaid Sable, escharfoned cross the breast Argent.

120. *Sir* John Blount, *Kt.*

Quarterly Sanchet of Spain, his Mother's Arms, *viz. Argent a Castle Azure and Blont, viz. barry nebulee of six Or and Sable.*

121. *Sir* John Robessart, *Kt.*

Vert a Lyon rampant Or, vulned on the Shoulders proper.

122. *Sir* William Phelip, *afterwards Lord* Bardolph.

Quarterly Gules and Argent, in the first Quarter an Eagle displaid Or, *Guillim* gives him the Lord

Bardolph's Arms, whose Heir he Married, *Azure three Cinquefoils Or.*

123. John, *King of* Portugal.

Over Or, debrasing a Cross d'Avis Or, of Calatrava, Portugal, viz. Argent five Escochions in cross, each charged with five Plates saltirewise, a bordure of Castile, viz. Gules, therein Castles Or.

124. Eric, *King of* Denmark.

Or semi de Coeur or Hearts proper, three Lyons passant gardant in pale Azure, crowned Or.

125. Richard Beauchamp, *Earl of* Warwick, *after Lieutenant General, and Governor in* France *and* Normandy.

Comme son Pere, No. 35.

126. Thomas Montacute, *Earl of* Salisbury.

Argent three losenges in fess Gules.

127. Robert Willoughby, *Lord* Willoughby.

Comme son Pere, No. 70. *viz. Ufford and Beke.*

128. Henry Fitz Hugh, *Lord* Fitz Hugh.

Azure three Chevrons fretted in base, and a cheif Or.

129. *Sir* John Grey, *Kt. Earl of* Tankervile.

Gules a Lyon rampant and border, ingrailed Argent.

130. Hugh Stafford, *Lord* Bourchier.

Quarterly Or, a Chevron Gules, a mullet diff. for Stafford and Argent, a Cross ingrailed Gules between four water budgets Sable for Bourchier.

131. John Moubray, *Earl* Marshal.

Comme son Pere, *Plantagenet*, *Brotherton*, No. 64. *making only the label to consist of three Points.*

132. William de la Pole, *Earl of* Suffolk, *after Marquiss and Duke of* Suffolk.

As his Grandfather, No. 66.

133. John Clifford, *Lord* Clifford.

Checquy Or and Azure, a fess Gules.

134. *Sir* Lewis Robessart, *Kt. afterwards Lord* Bourchier.

Comme son Frere, No. 12.

135. *The* Heer, *or Sir* Henry Van Clux, *a* German *Lord*, *Captain of* Crewly *in* Normandy, 7 *Hen.* V.

Quarterly per fess embatteled Gules and Argent, in the second and third a branch of a Tree in bend, with four folages bend, couped at both ends, sable rather Vert.

136. *Sir* Walter Hungerford, *after Lord* Hungerford, *and Lord* Treasurer *of* England.

Sable two bars Argent in chief, three Plates.

137. Philip le Bon, *Duke of* Burgundy.

France a bordure Gobone, Argent and Gules being Burgundy Modern, aliter Quarterly, the first Austria, viz. Gules a fess Argent; the second Burgundy, Modemas aforesaid; the third, Bendy Or and Azure Burgundy ancient; the fourth, Brabant Sable, a Lyon rampant Or, over all Flanders, Or a Lyon rampant Sable.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VI.

138. John Talbot, *Lord* Talbot, *after Earl of* Shrewsbury.

Comme son Frere, No. 100.

139. Thomas Scales, *Lord* Scales.

Gules six escallops, three hundred and twenty one Argent.

140. *Sir* John Falstoff, *Kt.*

Quarterly Or and Azure, on a bend Gules, three escallops Argent.

141. Peter, *Duke of* Conimbero, *third Son of* John *I.*

King of Portugal.

Comme son Pere, No. 123. *but without the Calatrava Cross of Flower Deluces, viz. Portugal a border of Castile*.

142. Humphry Stafford, *Earl of* Stafford, *after Duke of Bucks*.

Comme son Pere, No. 96.

143. *Sir* John Ratcliff, *Kt.*

Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

144. John Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel, *and Lord* Maltravers.

Comme, No. 106, *and* 95, *and* 36.

145. Richard, *Duke of* York, *the King's Lieutenant in* France *and* Normandy.

Quarterly France modern and England, on a label of three Points Argent nine torteauxes.

146. Edward, *King of* Portugal.

Comme, No. 123.

147. Edmund Beaufort, *Earl of* Moriton, *after Earl of* Dorset, *and Duke of* Somerset.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border gobone Ermine and Azure.

148. *Sir* John Grey, *Kt.*

Barry of six Argent and Azure in chief, three torteauxes over all, a label of three Points Argent for his difference, being of the Ruthyn Line.

149. Richard Nevil, *Earl of* Salisbury, *after Lord Chancellor of* England.

Quarterly first and fourth, his Wives Arms, *Argent three losenges enjoyn'd in fess, viz. Montague, Gules quartering Monthermer Or, an Eagle displaid Vert, second and third, Gules a Saltire Argent, Comme son Pere*, No. 98. *with a label of three Points gobone*

Argent and Azure difference therein.

150. William Nevil, *Lord* Falconbergh, *after Earl of* Kent.

Quarterly first and fourth, his Wives Arms, *Argent a Lyon rampant Azure Falconbergh, second and third, Comme son Pere*, No. 98. *viz. Gules a saltire Argent, a mullet Sable difference.*

151. Albert, *Duke of* Austria, *afterwards Emperor.*

Or on the breast of an imperial Eagle, i. e. double-headed and displaid Sable, an Escochion of Austria, viz. Gules a fess Argent.

152. John Beaufort, *Earl of* Somerset, *afterwards Duke of* Somerset, *and Earl of* Kendal.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border gobone Argent and Azure.

153. Ralph Butler, *Lord* Sudley, after *Lord Treasurer of* England.

Gules a fess checquy Argent and Sable, between six cross patees fitchee of the second.

154. Henry, *Duke of* Visco, *fourth Son of* John *I. King of* Portugal, *after King of* Portugal.

Comme son Frere, No. 141.

155. John Beaumont, *Viscount* Beaumont.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 69.

156. Gaston de Foix, *Earl of* Longueville *and* Benanges, Captain de Buch.

Quarterly first and fourth Or, three Pales Gules, the Arms of the old Counts *de Foix, second and third Argent, two Cows passant, Gules armed and ingrailed, and collered Or, Bells hanging at their Necks, Azure for Bearne, vel vice versa, both the maternal Coat of the Gaston.* Over the whole Atchievement, *a label of three Points terminating in Crosses Sable, on each of which charged with five*

escallops Argent, in allusion to the Arms of *Greilly*, the original House of this *Gaston*.

157. John de Foix, *Earl* of Kendal.

Comme son Pere, No. 156.

158. John Beauchamp, *Lord* Beauchamp *of* Powick, *and after Lord Treasurer of* England.

Gules, a fess between six martlets Or.

159. Alphonsus, *King of* Portugal.

Comme, No. 123.

160. Albro Vasques d'Almada, *Earl of* Averence *in* Normandy.

Or on a bend Vert between two Eagles, displaid Gules, as many cross patonces Argent pierced.

161. Thomas Hoo, *Lord* Hoo.

Quarterly Sable and Argent.

162. *Sir* Francis Surien, *Kt.*

Or three pales Gules, on a chief Sable, three escallops Argent.

163. Alphonsus, *King of* Aragon.

Aragon, viz. Or four pales Gules.

164. Casimire *IV. King of* Poland.

Quarterly first and fourth, the Dutchy of *Lithuania, viz. Gules a Chevalier armed at all Points a Cap-a-pee, brandishing his Sword aloft, Argent garnished Or, Mounted on a barded Courser, furnished throughout of the second, and holding a Shield in his left Hand, Azure charged with a Cross double crossed as the second; second and third Gules, an Eagle displaid Argent, rather vice versa*, the last being *Poland*.

165. William, *Duke of* Brunswick.

Gules two Lyons passant gardant in pale Or.

166. Richard Widvile, *Lord* Rivers, *afterwards created*

Earl Rivers.

Argent a fess and canton Gules. Philipot Vil. Cant. says he bore Rivers *in pretence*. *Gules a Gryphon rampant Or.*

167. John Mowbray, *Duke of* Norfolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 131.

168. Henry Bourchier, *Viscount* Bourchier, *after Lord Treasurer of* England, *and Earl of* Essex.

Bourchier Comme, No. 83. *quartering Lovain, viz. Gules a fess between fifteen billets Or.*

169. *Sir* Philip Wentworth, *Kt.*

Sable a Chevron between three leopards faces Or.

170. *Sir* Edward Hall, *Kt.*

Argent three cross Croslets fitchee Azure in bend, between two cotises Gules.

171. Frederick *III. Emperor of* Germany.

Comme son Frere, No. 151.

172. John Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 138.

173. Lionell Wells, *Lord* Wells.

Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Sable.

174. Thomas Stanley, *Lord* Stanley.

Quarterly first and fourth Or on a chief indented Azure, three Plates for *Latham*, his great Grandmother's Arms; *second and third Stanley, viz. Argent on a bend Azure, three Staggs heads caboshed Or.*

175. Edward, *Prince of* Wales.

The national Arms, *viz. Quarterly France modern and England, a label of three Points Argent.*

176. Jasper, *Earl of* Pembroke, after *Duke of* Bedford.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border Azure, semi de Flower de Luce Or.

177. James Butler, *Earl of* Wiltshire.

Or a chief indented Azure.

178. John Sutton, *Lord* Dudley.

Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Vert.

179. John Bourchier, *Lord* Berners.

Argent a Cross ingrailed Gules between four Water-budgets Sable, on a label of three Points, of the second nine Lyons of England.

180. Richard Nevil, *Earl of* Warwick.

Quarterly of four; first, his Wives Arms, *Beauchamp*, Earl of *Warwick*, *viz. Gules a fess between six Croslets Or impaling* the old Earls of *Warwick checquy. Or and Azure a Chevron Ermine; second*, his Mother's Arms, *viz. Montague, Argent three losenges in fess impaling Monthermer, Or an Eagle displaid Vert; third, Spenser, viz. quarterly Argent and Gules a bend Sable, in the second and third a fret Or; fourth, Clare, impaling Or, three Chevrons Gules impaling Nevil*, his paternal Coat, *viz. Gules a saltire Argent, differenced with a label gobonated Argent and Azure*.

181. William Bonvill, *Lord* Bonvill.

Sable six mullets, 3 2 1 Argent pierced Gules.

182. John Wenlock, *Lord* Wenlock.

Argent a Chevron Sable between three Negroes heads brased proper.

183. *Sir* Thomas Kyriell, *Kt.*

Or two Chevrons Gules on a Canton, of the last a Lyon of England.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Edward IV.

184. George, *Duke of* Clarence.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points

Argent, on each a canton Gules.

185. *Sir* William Chamberlayn, *Kt.*

Gules a Chevron between three escallops, Or a label extended of three Points Argent.

186. John Tiptoft, *Earl of* Worcester, *after High Constable of* England.

Argent a saltire ingrailed Gules.

187. John Nevil, *Lord* Montague, *after Earl of* Northumberland, *and Marquiss of* Montague.

Comme son Pere, No. 149. *a crescent difference in pretence quarterly; first, Argent on a Canton Gules a rose Or for Bradeston, two Gules a Cross ingrailed Argent, for Ingolsthorp*, [Wife of this Lord *Montague*] *third, Delapole, viz. Azure a fess between three leopards faces Or; fourthly and lastly, Brough Argent on a fess dancet Sable three besants*.

188. William Herbert, *Lord* Herbert, *after Earl of* Pembroke.

Parti per pale, Azure and Gules three lyons rampant Argent.

189. William Hastings, *Lord* Hastings.

Argent a Maunch Sable.

190. John Scrope, *Lord* Scrope *of* Bolton.

Azure a bend Or.

191. *Sir* John Astley, *Kt.*

Quarterly Azure a cinquefoil Ermine for Astley, and Or two barrs Gules for Harcourt, over both a label extended of three Points Ermine.

192. Ferdinand, *King of* Naples, *Son of* Alphonsus, *King of Aragon*.

Aragon, viz. Or four pales Gules, a baston sinister Argent.

193. Francis Sfortia, *Duke of* Milan.

Milan, viz. a Guivre or Snake wreathed and erected in pale Azure vorant, an Infant issuant proper.

194. James, *Earl of* Douglas.

Argent an heart Gules regally crowned proper as the augmentation, on a chief Azure, three mullets Argent.

195. Galiard de Duras, *Lord of* Duras.

Quarterly, Gules a lyon rampant Argent, and Argent a bend Azure, both by the Name of *Duras*.

196. *Sir* Robert Harcourt, *Kt.*

Gules two barrs Or.

197. Anthony Widvile, *Lord* Scales *and* Nucells, *afterwards Earl* Rivers.

Comme son Pere, No. 166. there should be the due difference of a *label*.

198. Richard, *Duke of* Gloucester, after *King of* England, *of that Name the third*.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Ermine.

199. ..... *Lord* Mountgryson *in* Apulia.

.....

200. John Moubray, *Duke of* Norfolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 167. *viz.* Plantagenet Brotherton.

201. John de la Pole, *Duke of* Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 132.

202. William Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.

Comme son Frere, No. 144.

203. John Stafford, *Earl of* Wiltshire.

His Grandmothers Arms *Plantagenet Woodstock, viz. Quarterly, France modern and England, a border Argent and Crescent difference; aliter Quarterly, first, Plantagenet Woodstock, ut ante; second, Azure a bend Argent cotised between six lyons rampant Or,*

for Bohun, Earl of *Hereford; third*, the said last Coat *with three mullets Gules on the bend* for *Bohun*, Earl of *Northampton; fourth*, his own paternal Arms, *viz. Or a Chevron Gules*, in the Centre of the whole, *a Crescent difference*.

204. John Howard, *Lord* Howard, *after Duke of* Norfolk.

Quarterly first and fourth, Plantagenet Brotherton pro Mowbray, viz. England a label of three Points Argent; second and third, Howard, Gules a bend between six cross Croslets fitchee Argent.

205. Walter Devereux, *Lord* Ferrers *of* Chartley.

Argent a fess Gules in chief three torteauxes.

206. Walter Blount, *Lord* Montjoy.

Quarterly; first Argent two Wolves passant in pale Sable, a border Gules of Saltires Argent for ayela; second, Azure a Castle Or, sanchet de ayela, his Grandmother's Arms, a *Spanish* Lady; *third, barry nebulee of six Or and Sable*, his own paternal Arms; *and fourth, Vair and Beauchamp* of *Hatch*, a maternal Ancestor.

207. Charles, *Duke of* Burgundy.

Burgundy modern, viz. France a border gobonated Argent and Gules.

208. Henry Stafford, *Duke of* Buckingham.

Plantagenet Woodstock, his great Grandmother's Arms, *viz. Quarterly France modern and England a border Argent*, his own Coat was, *Or a Chevron Gules.*

209. Thomas Fitz Alan, *Lord* Maltravers, *afterwards Earl of* Arundel.

Quarterly Fitz Alan, Comme son Pere, No. 202. *and Maltravers, viz. Sable a fret Or over the whole Atchievement, a label extended of three Points Argent*

for difference.

210. *Sir* William Parr, *Knight of* Kendal.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Ross of Kendal, viz. Or three Water-budgets Sable; second and third, Argent two barrs Azure, a border ingrailed Sable Parr.

211. Frederick, *Duke of* Urbin.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Or an Eagle displaid Sable; second and third, Or bends couped Azure, between the two uppermost an Eagle displaid Sable, the said Quarterings separated by a Pale Gules, charged with the Papal Infula or tripple Crowned Mytre Or in chief, and the Ecclesiastical Keys, in Saltire the dexter Gold, the Sinister Argent in base tyed Azure, for his Office of Gonfalonier under the Pope, tho' properly this Mytre is a Gonfannon pavilionated.

212. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.

Quarterly Percy, Lovain and Lucy, viz. Or a lyon rampant Azure and Gules, three lucies hauriant Argent.

213. Edward, *Prince of* Wales.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Silver.

214. Richard, *Duke of* York, *second Son to King* Edward.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Argent, on the first one Canton Gules.

215. Thomas Grey, *Marquiss of* Dorset, *and Earl of* Huntingdon.

Barry of six Argent and Azure, in chief three torteauxes, a label extended of three Points Ermine.

216. *Sir* Thomas Montgomery, *Kt.*

Gules a Chevron Ermine between three Flower Deluces Or.

217. Ferdinand, *King of* Castile *and* Leon.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, viz. Gules a Castle Or and Argent, and lyon rampant Gules crowned Or.

218. Hercules d'Esti, *Duke of* Ferrara.

Quarterly; first, Or an Eagle displaid Sable, bequd. membred and couroned Gules, the Empire; second, for France a bordure parte per indenture throughout Gules and Or; for Ferrara, the said Quarterings separated by a Pale Gules, charged with the papal Keys in Saltire, the dexter being Or, the sinister Argent as Gonfalonier, over all pretence Azure an Eagle displaid Argent for Esti. Mr. *Ashmole* afterwards corrected it as now in his Library. *Palewise of three pieces, first, partie per fess in the chief Or an Eagle displaid Sable, membred langued and Crown'd Gules, and in base Azure three Flower Deluces within a bordure indented Or and Gules; secondly, Gules, two Gules in Saltire, the one Or, the other Argent, charged in fess with an Escutcheon of pretence Azure supporting an Eagle; of the third membred langued and Crown'd, of the second, over all in chief a papal Crown Or, garnished with sundry Gemms Azure and Parts; thirdly, the third as the first, counter plac'd.*

219. John, *King of* Portugal, *Son to* Alphonsus *V.*

Comme son Pere, No. 159.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Richard III.

220. *Sir* John Conyers, *Kt.*

Azure a manch Or.

221. Thomas Howard, *Earl of* Surrey, *after Lord Treasurer of* England, *and Duke of* Norfolk.

Quarterly, first and fourth Gules a bend betwixt six cross Croslets fitchee Argent for Howard; second and third, England a label of three Points Argent, for

Plantagenet, Brotherton and Mowbray; over the whole a label extended of three Points Argent.

222. Francis Lovell, *Viscount* Lovell.

Comme, No: 102.

223. *Sir* Richard Ratclift, *Kt.*

Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

224. *Sir* Thomas Burgh, *Kt. after Lord* Burgh.

Azure three Flower Deluces Ermine.

225. Thomas Stanley, *Lord* Stanley, *after Earl of* Darby.

Argent on a bend Azure, three Stags Heads caboshed Or, a crescent diff.

226. Sir Richard Tunstall, *Kt.*

Sable three combs Argent.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VII.

227. John Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 112.

228. *Sir* Giles d'Aubeny, *after Lord* d'Aubeny.

Gules four fusils in fess Argent.

229. Thomas Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.

This is the same Person, No. 209. *called* Thomas *Lord* Maltravers, *who succeeded his Father* William Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel; *therefore one of them should be out, for other Catalogues have him not temp.* Hen. VII.

230. George Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 171.

231. John Wells, *Viscount* Wells.

Comme son Pere, No. 173.

232. George Stanley, *Lord* Strange.

Comme son Pere, No. 225. *in pretence* his Wives

Arms, *viz. Strange of knockin, Gules two lyons passant in Pale Argent quartering Mohun, Or a Cross ingrailed Sable*.

233. *Sir* Edward Wydevile, *Knight Banneret*.

Comme, No. 197. *with due difference*.

234. John Dynham, *Lord* Dynham, *Lord Treasurer of* England.

Gules four fusils in fess Ermine.

235. Maximilian, *King of the* Romans, *after Emperor of* Germany.

Or on the breast of a single headed Eagle displaid Sable, an Escochion Quarterly of four first, Barry of eight Argent and Gules for Hungary; second, Gules a fess Argent for Austria; third, Gules a lyon rampant with two Tails, armed langued and crowned Or for Bohemia; fourth, bendy Or and Azure, a bordure Gules for Burgundy ancient.

236. *Sir* John Savage, *Kt.*

Quarterly, first and fourth, Argent a pale of Losenges Sable, Daniel pro Savage; second, Or on a fess Azure, three garbs of the first Vernon; third and last, Gules a Chevron between three martlets Argent, the ancient Arms of *Savage*, over the whole Atchievement *a label extended of three Points Gules*.

237. *Sir* William Stanley, *Kt. Lord* Chamberlain.

Comme son Frere, No. 225. *a crescent on a Crescent difference*.

238. *Sir* John Cheney, *Knight Banneret.*

Azure six Lyons rampant Argent and Canton Ermine, Shirland's Arms his maternal Ancestor.

239. Alphonsus, *Duke of* Calabria *and* Naples, *King of* Sicily *and* Jerusalem.

Quarterly, the first Arragon, viz. Or four pales Gules, the second Calabria, viz. *Argent a Cross potent Sable.*

240. Arthur, *Prince of* Wales.

Quarterly France and England a label Argent.

241. Thomas Grey, *Marquiss of* Dorset.

Comme son Pere, No. 215.

242. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.

Comme son Pere, No. 212.

243. Henry Bourchier, *Earl of* Essex.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 168, *vel* 83.

244. *Sir* Charles Somerset, *Knight Banneret, after Earl of* Worcester, *and Lord* Herbert.

Quarterly France modern and England, a border Gobone Argent and Azure, over all a baston sinister Argent impaling his Wife *Herbert, viz. per pale Azure and Gules three Lyons rampant Argent.*

245. Robert Willoughby, *Lord* Brook.

Quarterly Ufford and Beke, viz. Sable a Cross ingrailed Or, and Gules a cross moline Argent, his maternal Ancestors; but the proper Arms of his Family, *Or fretty Azure*.

246. *Sir* Edward Poynings, *Kt.*

Barry of six Or and Vert, a bend Gules.

247. *Sir* Gilbert Talbot, *Knight Banneret of* Grafton.

Comme son Pere, No. 172. *a Crescent difference*.

248. *Sir* Richard Poole.

Parti per pale Or and Sable, a Saltire ingrailed counter-changed.

249. Edward Stafford, *Duke of* Buckingham.

Quarterly of four, first, Comme son Pere, No. 208. i. e. *Plantagenet Woodstock; second, Azure a bend Argent cotised between six Lyons rampant Or, Bohun* Earl of *Hereford; third, Or a Chevron Gules Stafford; fourth, Azure on a bend Argent cotised between six Lyons rampant Or, three mullets Gules, Bohun* Earl

of *Northampton*.

250. Henry, *Duke of* York, *after King of* England, *of that Name the eighth*.

Quarterly France and England, a label of three Points Ermine.

251. Edward Courtney, *Earl of* Devonshire.

Or three Torteauxes.

252. *Sir* Richard Guilford, *Knight Banneret*.

Or a Saltire between four martlets Sable.

253. Edmund de la Pole, *Earl of* Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 201.

254. *Sir* Thomas Lovell, *Knight Banneret*.

Argent on a Chevron Azure between three Squirrels, sercint Gules, an annulet difference.

255. *Sir* Reginald Bray, *Knight Banneret.*

Argent a Chevron between three Eagles Legs, erased a la quise Sable.

256. John, *King of* Denmark.

Denmark Comme, No. 124.

257. Guido Ubaldo, *Duke of* Urbin.

Comme, No. 211.

258. Gerald Fitz Gerald, *Earl of* Kildare.

Argent a Saltire Gules.

259. Henry Stafford, *Lord* Stafford, *after Earl of* Wiltshire.

Plantagenet Woodstock, a crescent difference, Comme son Frere, No. 249.

260. Richard Grey, *Earl of* Kent.

Barry of six Argent and Azure, in chief three Torteauxes.

261. *Sir* Rys ap Thomas, *Knight Banneret*.

Argent a Chevron Sable between three cornish Choughs

proper.

262. Philip, *King of* Castile.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 217.

263. *Sir* Thomas Brandon, *Knight Banneret.*

Barry of ten Argent and Gules, over all a Lyon rampant Or Crowned per pale; of the second and last, a mullet difference.

264. Charles, *Archduke of* Austria, *Prince of* Spain, *after Emperor of* Germany.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 217.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Henry VIII.

265. Thomas Darcy, *Lord* Darcy.

Azure semi of cross Croslets, three cinquefoiles Argent.

266. Edward Sutton, *Lord* Dudley.

Comme, No. 178.

267. Emanuel, *King of* Portugal.

Comme, No. 218. *viz. Portugal debrusing a Calatrava Cross, or a Cross Flower Deluced, within a bordure of Castile*.

268. Thomas Howard, *Lord* Howard, *eldest Son to* Thomas, *Duke of* Norfolk, *afterwards Earl of* Surry, *and second Duke of* Norfolk.

Gules a bend between six cross Croslets fitchee Argent, a label of three Points Or.

269. Thomas West, *Lord* La Ware.

Argent a fess dancet Sable.

270. *Sir* Henry Marney, *Kt. after Lord* Marney.

Gules a Lyon rampant gardant Argent.

271. George Nevil, *Lord* Abergaveny.

Gules on a Saltire Argent, a Rose of Lancaster, i. e. *Gules*.

272. *Sir* Edward Howard, *Kt. second Son to* Thomas, *Duke of* Norfolk, *second Duke of that Family*.

Gules a bend between six cross Croslets fitchee Argent, a crescent difference Sable.

273. *Sir* Charles Brandon, *after Duke of* Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 264. *but without difference*.

274. Julian de Medices, *Brother to Pope* Leo X.

Or eight roundels in Orle, that in chief of France, viz. Azure charged with three Flower Deluces Gold, the other Gules.

275. Edward Stanley, *Lord* Monteagle, *second Son to the Earl of* Derby.

Comme son Pere, No. 225. *in pretence Gules a Lyon rampant Or*, for his Wife *Vaughan*.

276. Thomas Dacres, *Lord* Dacres *of* Gilessland.

Gules three escallops Argent.

277. *Sir* William Sandys, *after Lord* Sandys.

Argent a Cross ragulee Sable in pretence Bray, his Wives Arms, *viz. Quarterly first and fourth, Gules three Bars Vair Longville pro Bray; second and third, Argent a Chevron between three Eagles Legs.*

278. Henry Courtney, *Earl of* Devonshire.

Quarterly first and fourth, an Augmentation, *viz. France and England within a Border of England and France Quarterly; second, Courtney, Comme son Pere*, No. 251. *third, Rivers*, Earl of *Devonshire, Or a Lyon rampant Azure*.

279. Ferdinand, *Prince and Infant of* Spain, *Archduke of* Austria, *after Emperor of* Germany.

Quarterly Castile and Leon, ut No. 216. *a label of three Points Azure, on the Foot of the first a Crescent Or.*

280. *Sir* Richard Wingfield, *Kt.*

Argent on a bend Gules cottised Sable, three pair of Wings impailed, of the first an Estoile of sixteen Rays.

281. *Sir* Thomas Bullen, *Kt. after Viscount* Rochford, *and Earl of* Wiltshire *and* Ormond.

Argent a Chevron Gules between three Bulls-Heads coupee Sable, afterwards his Mother's Arms, *Butler* of *Ormond, Or a chief indented Azure*.

282. Walter d'Evereux, *Lord* Ferrars *of* Chartley, *after Viscount* Hereford.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 205.

283. Arthur Plantaginet, *Viscount* Lisle.

Quarterly first, France and England; second and third, Ulster, viz. Or a Cross Gules; fourth, Mortimer, Earl of *March; viz, Barry of six Or and Azure, on a chief of the second a pale two Esquens based dexter and sinister Gold, an Escochion Argent, over all a baton sinister Azure*.

284. Robert Radcliff, *Viscount* Fitz Walter, *after Earl of* Sussex.

Quarterly first and fourth, Argent a bend ingrailed Sable, Radcliff, second and third, Or a fess between two Chevrons Gules Fitz Walter.

285. William Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.

Comme son Pere, No. 209. but without difference.

286. Thomas Mannors, *Lord* Roos, *after Earl of* Rutland.

Or two Barrs Azure a chief Quarterly, two Flower Deluces of France, and a Lyon of England.

287. Henry Fitz Roy, *after Earl of* Nottingham, *and Duke of* Richmond *and* Somerset.

Quarterly France and England, a border Quarterly Ermine and compone Argent and Azure a baton sinister of the second.

288. Ralph Nevil, *Earl of* Westmorland.

Comme, No. 98.

289. William Blount. *Lord* Montjoy.

Barry nebulee of six Or and Sable.

290. *Sir* William Fitz Williams, *Kt. after Earl of* Southampton.

Losengy Or and Gules a mullet difference.

291. *Sir* Henry Guilford, *Kt.*

Comme son Pere, No. 252. *with a Canton of Granada, viz. Argent a Pomegranet slipped and leaved all proper.*

292. Francis I. *the* French *King.*

France, viz. Azure three Flower Deluces Or.

293. John Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.

Comme son Cousin, No. 227.

294. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.

Quarterly; first, Percy, Lovain, Or a Lyon rampant Azure; second, Quarterly France modern and England a border gobonne; third, Lucy Gules three Lucies hauriant Argent; fourth, Poynings, Barry of six Or and Vert a bend Gules.

295. Anthony Montmorency, *Duke of* Montmorency.

Or a Cross Gules between sixteen Eagles displaid Azure.

296. Philip Chabor, *Earl of* Newblanch.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Or three Chabots Chubs or Chevin Fish hauriant Argent; second, Argent a Lyon rampant Gules, Crowned Or; third, Gules a Sun Argent.

297. James V. *King of* Scotland.

Scotland, viz. Or a Lyon rampant within a double tressure flory counter flory Gules.

298. *Sir* Nicholas Carew, *Kt.*

Or three Lyons passant in pale Sable, with due difrence.

299. Henry Clifford, *Earl of* Cumberland.

Comme, No. 133.

300. Thomas Cromwell, *Lord* Cromwell, *after Earl of* Essex.

Azure on a fess between three Lyons rampant Or a rose Gules, on either side whereof a Chough proper.

301. John Russell, *Lord* Russell, *after Earl of* Bedford.

Argent a Lyon rampant Gules on a chief Sable, three escallops of the first.

302. *Sir* Thomas Cheyney, *Kt.*

Comme son Oncle, No. 237.

303. *Sir* William Kingston, *Kt.*

Azure a fess between three Leopards faces Or.

304. Thomas Audley, *Lord* Audley *of* Walden, *and Lord Chancellor of* England.

Quarterly per pale indented Or and Azure, in the second and third, an Eagle displaid of the first, on a bend of the second a fret between two martlets Gold.

305. *Sir* Anthony Browne, *Kt.*

Sable three Lyons passant in bend double cotised, Argent a Crescent difference.

306. Edward Seymour, *Earl of* Hertford, *after Duke of* Somerset.

Quarterly the Augmentation, *viz. Or on a Pile Gules between six Flower Deluces Azure, the Lyons of England; second, Seymour, viz. Gules a pair of Wings conjoyned in pale tips downward Or.*

307. Henry Howard, *Earl of* Surrey.

Gules on the middle of a bend between six cross Croslets Argent, the Augmentation, *viz. an Escochion Or, therein a demi Lyon within a double*

Scotch tressure Gules, an Arrow transfixing his Mouth, of the last a label of three Points Azure.

308. *Sir* John Gage, *Kt.*

Quarterly per bend dexter and sinister Azure and Argent, a Saltire Gules.

309. *Sir* Anthony Wingfield, *Kt.*

Comme son Frere, No. 281. but without the *Estoil.*

310. John Sutton, (alias Dudley) *Viscount* Lisle, *after Earl of* Warwick, *and Duke of* Northumberland.

Or two Lyons passant in pale Azure, Somery his maternal Ancestor.

311. William Paulet, *Lord* St. John *of* Basing, *after Earl of* Wiltshire, *and Marquiss of* Winchester.

Sable three Swords in pile Points conjoyned in base Argent Hilts Or, a Crescent difference.

312. William Parr, *Lord* Parr *of* Kendall, *after Earl of* Essex, *and Marquiss of* Northampton.

Argent two Bars Azure a border ingrailed Sable, vide son Beau Pere, No. 210.

313. *Sir* John Wallop, *Kt.*

Argent a bend unde Sable.

314. Henry Fitz Alan, *Earl of* Arundel.

Comme son Pere, No. 285.

315. *Sir* Anthony St. Leger, *Kt.*

Azure frette Argent a chief Or.

316. Francis Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 172.

317. Thomas Wriothesley, *Lord* Wriothesley, *after Earl of* Southampton.

Azure a Cross Or between four Falcons Argent.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Edward VI.

318. Henry Grey, *Marquiss of* Dorset, *after Duke of* Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 241.

319. Edward Stanley, *Earl of* Derby.

Comme, No. 225.

320. Thomas Seymour, *Lord* Seymour *of* Sudley.

Comme son Frere, No. 307. *with a Crescent or Mullet difference.*

321. *Sir* William Paget, *Kt. after Lord* Paget.

Sable on a Cross ingrailed between four Eagles displaid Argent, five Lyons passant of the first.

322. Francis Hastings, *Earl of* Huntingdon.

Comme, No. 189.

323. George Brook, *Lord* Cobham.

Gules on a Chevron Argent, a Lyon rampant Sable Crowned Or.

324. Thomas West, *Lord* La Ware.

Comme son Pere, No. 269.

325. *Sir* William Herbert, *Kt. after Lord* Herbert *of* Cardiff, *and Earl of* Pembroke.

Perti per pale Azure and Gules, three Lyons rampant Argent, a border Gobonee Or, and of the second besanted.

326. Henry II. *the* French *King.*

France Comme, No. 292.

327. Edward Clinton, alias Fines, *Lord* Clinton, *after Earl of* Lincoln.

Argent six cross Croslets fitchee Sable on a chief Azure, two mullets Or pierced Gules.

328. Thomas Darcy, *Lord* Darcy *of* Chiche.

Argent three cinquefoiles Gules.

329. Henry Nevil, *Earl of* Westmorland.

Comme son Pere, No. 288.

330. *Sir* Andrew Dudley, *Kt.*

Or a Lyon rampant quevee fourchee Vert a Crescent difference.

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen Mary.

331. Philip, *Prince of* Spain, *after King of* England, *by that Name the second.*

Quarterly Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 262.

332. Henry Ratcliff, *Earl of* Sussex.

Argent a bend ingrailed Sable.

333. Emanuel Philibert, *Duke of* Savoy.

Tierce emanche towards the chief the dexter Westphalia or ancient Saxony, viz. Gules on Horse enraged Argent the same counterturned; the sinister Saxony modern, viz. barry of eight Or and Sable, over all a chaplet of rue Vert in bend, ente in base Angria, viz. Argent three bouteroles Gules.

334. William Howard, *Lord* Howard *of* Effingham.

Gules on a bend between six cross Croslets Argent, the *Scotch* Augmentation, *Comme*, No. 307. *a mullet difference.*

335. Anthony Browne, *Viscount* Montagu.

Comme son Pere, No. 305.

336. *Sir* Edward Hastings, *Kt. after Lord* Hastings *of* Loughborough.

Comme son Frere, No. 322, *a crescent difference.*

337. Thomas Ratcliff, *Earl of* Sussex.

Comme son Pere, No. 332.

338. William Grey, *Lord* Grey *of* Wilton.

Barry of six Argent and Azure, a label of five Points Gules.

339. *Sir* Robert Rochester.

Checquy Argent and Gules on a fess Azure, three escallops Or.

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen Elizabeth.

340. Thomas Howard, *Duke of* Norfolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 308. but without the *label*, *viz. Howard* with the *Scotch* Augmentation in the middle of the *bend*.

341. Henry Manners, *Earl of* Rutland.

Comme son Pere, No. 286.

342. *Sir* Robert Dudley, *Kt. after Earl of* Leicester.

Comme son Oncle, No. 330.

343. Adolphus, *Duke of* Holstein.

Norway, viz. Gules a Lyon rampant Argent crowned Or, holding, or supporting with three of his Feet, a danish Battle Ax, of the last headed as the second.

344. George Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 316.

345. Henry Carey, *Lord* Hunsdon.

Argent, on a bend Sable three Roses of the Field, a crescent on a crescent difference.

346. Thomas Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.

Comme, No. 212. *viz. Percy, Lovain, and Lucy, Quarterly*.

347. Ambrose Dudley, *Earl of* Warwick.

Comme son Frere, No. 342. without the *crescent* distinction.

348. Charles IX. *the* French *King*.

France, Comme, No. 326.

349. Francis Russel, *Earl of* Bedford.

Comme son Pere, No. 301.

350. *Sir* Henry Sidney, *Kt.*

Or a Pheon Azure.

351. Maximilian II. *Emperor of* Germany.

Or, on the Breast of an imperial Eagle, i. e. *double headed and displaid Sable, an Escochion of Hungary and Bohemia, viz. barry of eight Argent and Gules impailing Gules, a Lyon rampant Argent crowned Or.*

352. Henry Hastings, *Earl of* Huntingdon.

Comme son Pere, No. 322.

353. William Somerset, *Earl of* Worcester.

Or, on a fess France and England, Quarterly and borded gobenee Argent and Azure.

354. Francis Montmorency, *Duke of* Montmorency.

Comme, No. 295.

355. Walter d'Evereux, *Viscount* Hereford, *after Earl of* Essex.

Comme son Pere, No. 282.

356. William Cecill, *Lord* Burghley, *after Lord Treasurer of* England.

Barry of ten Argent and Azure on six Escocheons Sable, as many Lyons rampant of the first.

357. Arthur Grey, *Lord* Grey *of* Wilton.

Comme son Pere, No. 338.

358. Edmund Bruges, *Lord* Chandos.

Argent on a Cross Sable, a Leopard's Face Or.

359. Henry Stanley, *Earl of* Derby.

Comme son Pere, No. 319.

360. Henry Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke.

Comme son Pere, No. 325. *omitting the besants.*

361. Henry III. *the* French *King.*

France Comme, No. 348.

362. Charles Howard, *Lord* Howard *of* Effingham,

after Earl of Nottingham.

Comme son Pere, No. 334. *viz. Howard*, with a *mullet difference*.

363. Rodolph, *Emperor of* Germany.

Comme, No. 351.

364. Frederick II. *King of* Denmark.

Denmark, Comme, No. 257. but the *Lyons* crowned *Or*.

365. John Casimire, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine.

Quarterly; first and fourth, the Palatinate, viz. Sable a Lyon rampant Or, crowned Gules; second and third, losongy bend-wise, Argent and Azure for Bavaria.

366. Edward Manners, *Earl of* Rutland.

Comme son Pere, No. 341.

367. William Brook, *Lord* Cobham.

Comme son Pere, No. 323.

368. Henry Scrope, *Lord* Scrope *of* Bolton.

Comme, No. 190.

369. Robert d'Evereux, *Earl of* Essex.

Comme son Pere, No. 355.

370. Thomas Butler, *Earl of* Ormond *and* Ossery.

Or a chief indented Azure.

371. *Sir* Christopher Hatton, *Kt. after Lord Chancellor of* England.

Azure a Chevron between three garbs Or.

372. Henry Ratcliff, *Earl of* Sussex.

Comme son Frere, No. 337.

373. Thomas Sackville, *Lord* Buckhurst, *after Lord Treasurer of* England, *and Earl of* Dorset.

Quarterly; Or and Gules a bend vaire.

374. Henry IV. *the* French *King*.

France, Comme, No. 361.

375. James VI. *King of* Scotland, *after King of* England, France, *and* Ireland.

Scotland, Comme, No. 297.

376. Gilbert Talbot, *Earl of* Shrewsbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 316.

377. George Clifford, *Earl of* Cumberland.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 299.

378. Henry Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.

Comme son Frere, No. 346.

379. Edward Somerset, *Earl of* Worcester.

Comme son Pere, No. 353.

380. Thomas Burogh, *Lord* Burogh.

Azure three Flower Deluces Ermine.

381. Edmond Sheffield, *Lord* Sheffield, *after Earl of* Mulgrave.

Argent a Chevron between three garbs Gules.

382. *Sir* Francis Knolles, *Kt.*

Azure crusily, a Cross moline voided Or.

383. Frederick, *Duke of* Wirtenbergh.

Or three Staggs attires placed Bar-ways Sable, id est, *Wirtenbergh*.

384. Thomas Howard, *Lord* Howard *of* Walden, *after Earl of* Suffolk, *and Lord Treasurer of* England.

Comme son Pere, No. 340. with a *Crescent difference*.

385. George Carey, *Lord* Hunsdon.

Comme son Pere, No. 345.

386. Charles Blount, *Lord* Montjoy, *after Earl of* Devonshire.

Comme, No. 289.

387. *Sir* Henry Lea, *Kt.*

Argent a fess between three Crescents Sable.

388. Robert Ratcliff, *Earl of* Sussex.

Comme son Pere, No. 372.

389. Henry Brook, *Lord* Cobham.

Comme son Pere, No. 367.

390. Thomas Scrope, *Lord* Scrope *of* Bolton.

Comme son Pere, No. 368.

391. William Stanley, *Earl of* Derby.

Comme son Pere, No. 359.

392. Thomas Cecil, *Lord* Burghley, *after Earl of* Exeter.

Comme son Pere, No. 356.

Knights elected in the Reign of King James I.

393. Henry, *Prince of* Wales.

Quarterly; first and fourth, France and England quartered; second, Scotland, viz. Or a Lyon rampant within a double tressure counterflory Gules; third, Ireland, Azure an Harp or String Argent, over all a label of three Points Argent.

394. Christian IV. *King of* Denmark.

Denmark, Comme, No. 364.

395. Lodowich Stewart, *Duke of* Lenox, *and after Duke of* Richmond.

Quarterly; first, the Augmentation, *viz. France within a border cousu Gules, charged with eight round Buckles Or; second, Or a fess checquy, Argent and Azure, a border ingrailed Gules, for Stewart, over all in pretence Lenox, viz. Argent a Saltire ingrailed between four cinquefoils or roses Gules.*

396. Henry Wriothesley, *Earl of* Southampton.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 317.

397. John Erskin, *Earl of* Marr.

Azure a bend between six cross Croslets fitchee Or, his

Title of *Marr*, his proper Coat, *Argent a pale Sable*.

398. William Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke.

Parti per Pale, Azure and Gules, three Lyons rampant Argent.

399. Ultrick, *Duke of* Holstein.

Norway, Comme, No. 344. but the *Lyon* crowned *Or*.

400. Henry Howard, *Earl of* Northampton.

Comme son Frere, No. 341. *a Crescent difference*.

401. Robert Cecil, *Earl of* Salisbury.

Comme son Frere, No. 392. with a *Crescent difference*.

402. Thomas Howard, *Viscount* Bindon.

Comme son Frere, No. 268. *viz. Howard* with a *Crescent difference*, and without the *label*.

403. George Hinne, *Earl of* Dunbarr.

Vert a Lyon rampant Argent.

404. Philip Herbert, *Earl of* Montgomery, *after Earl of* Pembroke.

Comme son Frere, No. 398. *a Crescent difference*.

405. Charles Stewart, *Duke of* York, *after Prince of* Wales, *and King of* England, *of that Name the first.*

Quarterly; first and fourth, France and England; second, Scotland; third, Ireland; Comme son Frere, No. 393. *on a label of three Points Argent, nine Torteauxes*.

406. Thomas Howard, *Earl of* Arundel, *after Earl of* Norfolk.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 340.

407. Robert Carr, *Viscount* Rochester, *after Earl of* Somerset.

Gules on a Chevron Argent, three Mullets Sable in the dexter chief Point, a Lyon of England, Augmentation and *difference*.

408. Frederick, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *Prince Elector of the Empire, and after King of* Bohemia.

Quarterly; the Palatinate and Bavaria, Comme, No. 365. *in pretence* the Augmentation, *viz. Gules an Imperial mound or globe Or*.

409. Maurice Van Nassau, *Prince of* Orange.

Azure billettee a Lyon rampant Or; i. e. *Nassau*.

410. Thomas Ereskine, *Viscount* Fenton, *after Earl of* Kelly.

Quarterly; first, the Augmentation *Gules, an imperial Crown within a double Tressure counterflory Or; second*, Erskine, *Comme*, No. 397. with a *Crescent difference*.

411. William Knolles, *Lord* Knolles, *after Viscount* Wallingford, *and Earl of* Banbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 382.

412. Francis Manners, *Earl of* Rutland.

Comme son Oncle, No. 366.

413. *Sir* George Villiers, *Kt. after Baron of* Whaddon, *then Earl and Marquiss of* Buckingham, *and lastly, Earl of* Coventry, *and Duke of* Buckingham.

Argent on a Cross Gules five Escallops Or, a martlet difference.

414. Robert Sidney, *Viscount* Lisle, *after Earl of* Leicester.

Comme son Pere, No. 350.

415. James Hamilton, *Marquiss* Hamilton, *and Earl of* Cambridge.

Gules three cinquefoiles pierced Ermine.

416. Esme Stewart, *Duke of* Lenox, *and Earl of* March.

Comme son Frere, No. 395.

417. Christian, *Duke of* Brunswick.

Gules two Lyons passant gardant in pale Or, which is

Brunswick.

418. William Cecill, *Earl of* Salisbury.

Comme son Pere, No. 401.

419. James Hay, *Earl of* Carlisle.

Argent three Escocheons Gules.

420. Edward Sackvile, *Earl of* Dorset.

Comme son Beau Pere, No. 373.

421. Henry Rich, *Earl of* Holland.

Gules a Chevron between three Crosses bottonee Or.

422. Thomas Howard, *Viscount* Andover, *after Earl of* Barkshire.

Comme son Pere, No. 384. *viz. Howard*, with a *Crescent* on a *Crescent difference*.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Charles I.

423. Claude de Lorrain, *Duke of* Chevereux.

Hungary, viz. Barry of eight Argent and Gules; his proper Arms being *Lorrain, viz. Or on a bend Gules three Alerions* [*Doves*, or as others, *Eaglets* without *becques*,] *displaid Argent.*

424. Gustavus Adolphus, *King of* Sweden.

Sweden, viz. Azure three Crowns Or.

425. Henry Frederick Van Nassau, *Prince of* Orange.

Nassau, Comme son Frere, No. 409.

426. Theophilus Howard, *Earl of* Suffolk.

Comme son Pere, No. 384.

427. William Compton, *Earl of* Northampton.

Sable three Helmets Argent with a Lyon of England Augmentation in *fess* between them.

428. Richard Weston, *Lord* Weston, *Lord Treasurer of* England, *and after Earl of* Portland.

Or, an Eagle regardant displaid Sable.

429. Robert Bertie, *Earl of* Lindsey.

Argent three battering Rams proper armed and garnished Or.

430. William Cecil, *Earl of* Exeter.

Comme son Pere, No. 392.

431. James Hamilton, *Marquiss of* Hamilton, *Earl of* Cambridge *and* Arran.

Comme son Pere, No. 415.

432. Charles Lodowick, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *Prince Elector of the Empire, and Duke of* Bavaria.

Comme son Pere, No. 408.

433. James Stewart, *Duke of* Lenox, *and Earl of* March, *after Duke of* Richmond.

Comme son Pere, No. 416.

434. Henry Danvers, *Earl of* Danby.

Gules a Chevron between three mullets of six Points Or.

435. William Douglas, *Earl of* Morton.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Morton Argent on a chief indented Gules, two mullets of the first; second and third, Douglass, Comme, No. 193.

436. Algernon Percy, *Earl of* Northumberland.

Comme son Pere, No. 378.

437. Charles, *Prince of* Wales, *after King of* England, *of that Name the second.*

Comme son Oncle, No. 393.

438. Thomas Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford.

Sable a Chevron between three Leopards faces Or.

439. James Stewart, *Duke of* York, *after King* James, *of that Name the second.*

Comme son Frere, No. 437. *viz.* the national Arms with a *label Ermine*.

440. Rupert, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *and Duke of*

Bavaria, *after Earl of* Holderness, *and Duke of* Cumberland, *second Son of the King of* Bohemia.

Comme son Frere aisne, No. 432. but without the Augmentation, No. 405, *viz. the Palatinate and Bavaria quarterly*.

441. William Van Nassau, *Prince of* Orange.

Nassau, Comme son Pere, No. 425.

442. Bernard de Nogaret de Foix, *Duke* de Espernon *and* de Valette.

Quarterly; Castile and Leon, Comme, No. 331. *in pretence Nogaret, viz. Or a Nut-tree eradicated proper impailing Thoulose*, i. e. *Gules a Cross urdee voided Or, and pomellee as the Points Or, over both Coats a chief of Valette, viz. Gules a Cross potent Argent*.

Knights elected in the Reign of King Charles II.

443. Maurice, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *and Duke of* Bavaria, *third Son of the King of* Bohemia.

Comme son Frere aisne, No. 440.

444. James Butler, *Marquiss of* Ormond, *after Earl of* Brecknock, *and Duke of* Ormond, *in* Ireland *and* England.

Comme, No. 370.

445. Edward, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine, *and Duke of* Bavaria, *fifth Son of the King of* Bohemia.

Comme son Frere aisne, No. 443. *viz. the Palatinate and Bavaria quarterly*.

446. George Villiers, *Duke of* Buckingham.

Comme son Pere, No. 413.

447. William Hamilton-Dowglass, *Duke of* Hamilton.

Quarterly; first, Hamilton, Comme, No. 415. *second, Dowglass, Comme*, No. 193.

448. Thomas Wriothesley, *Earl of* Southampton.

Comme son Pere, No. 396.

449. William Cavendish, *Marquiss of* Newcastle, *after Duke of* Newcastle.

Sable three Harts heads caboshed Argent, a Crescent difference.

450. James Graham, *Marquiss of* Montrose.

Or on a chief Sable, three escallops of the first.

451. James Stanley, *Earl of* Darby.

Comme son Pere, No. 391.

452. George Digby, *Earl of* Bristol.

Azure a Flower Deluce Argent, a Crescent difference.

453. Henry Stewart, *Duke of* Gloucester, *third Son to King* Charles I.

Quarterly; first and fourth, France and England, Quarterly; second, Scotland; third, Ireland, on a label Argent nine Roses of Lancaster.

454. Henry Charles de la Tremoville, *Prince* de Tarente.

Arragon, Sicily, viz. parti per Saltire the chief and base Or, four pales Gules for Arragon; the second and third, Argent an Eagle displaid Sable for Sicily in pretence, his paternal Arms, *viz. Tremoville, Or a Chevron Gules between three Eagles displaid Azure*.

455. William Van Nassau, *Prince of* Orange, *after King of* England, *of that Name the third.*

Nassau, Comme son Pere, No. 441.

456. Frederick William, *Prince Elector of the* Empire, *Marquiss of* Brandenburgh.

Argent an Eagle displaid Gules, which is *Brandenburgh*.

457. John Gaspar Ferdinand de Marchin, *Count de* Gravil.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Argent a Fish hauriant Gules; second and third, Or two barrs Sable.

458. *Sir* George Monk, *Kt. after Duke of* Albermarle.

Gules a Chevron between three Lyons Heads erased Argent.

459. *Sir* Edward Montague, *Kt. after Earl of* Sandwich.

Quarterly, Montague and Monthermer, viz. Argent three Losenges in fess Gules, a border Sable and Or, an Eagle displaid Vert, over all a Mullet difference.

460. William Seymour, *Marquiss of* Hertford, *after Duke of* Somerset.

Comme, No. 306. *a Crescent difference.*

461. Aubrey de Vere, *Earl of* Oxford.

Comme, No. 293.

462. Charles Stewart, *Duke of* Richmond *and* Lenox.

Comme son Oncle, No. 433.

463. Montague Bertie, *Earl of* Lindsey.

Comme son Pere, No. 429.

464. Edward Montague, *Earl of* Manchester.

Comma son Cousin, but with a *Crescent difference.*

465. William Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford.

Comme son Pere, No. 438.

466. Christierne, *Prince of* Denmark, *after King of* Denmark.

Denmark, Comme, No. 394.

467. James Scot, *Duke of* Monmouth *and* Bucclugh.

The Imperial Arms of King *Charles* II. *a baston sinister Argent, In pretence, Scot of Bucclugh, viz. Or on a bend Azure, a Crescent between two Mullets.*

468. James Stuart, *Duke of* Cambridge, *Son of* James, *Duke of* York.

Comme son Pere, No. 439. *viz.* the national Arms,

with a label of five Points Ermine.

469. Charles IX. *King of* Sweden, Goths *and* Vandalls.

Sweden, Comme, No. 424.

470. John George II. *Duke of* Saxony, Juliers, Cleves *and* Monts, *and Prince Elector of the* Empire.

Quarterly; first, Thuringe, viz. a Lyon rampant barry of ten Argent and Gules.

471. Christopher Monk, *Duke of* Albermarle.

Comme son Pere, No. 458.

472. John Maitland, *Duke of* Lauderdale.

Or a Lyon rampant dismembred, Gules within a double tressure counterflory Azure.

473. Henry Somerset, *Marquiss of* Worcester, *after Duke of* Beaufort.

Quarterly, France and England, a border gobone Argent and Azure.

474. Henry Jermyn, *Earl of* St. Albans.

Sable a Crescent between two Mullets in pale Argent.

475. William Russell, *Earl of* Bedford, *after Duke of* Bedford.

Comme, No. 346.

476. Henry Bennet, *Earl of* Arlington.

Gules between three demi Lyons rampant couped Argent, a besant after changed to an imperial mound, serving for both difference and Augmentation.

477. Thomas Butler, *Earl of* Ossory.

Comme son Pere, No. 444.

478. Charles Fitz Roy, *Earl of* Southampton, *after Duke of* Southampton, *and now Duke of* Cleveland.

The Imperial Arms of England, *a Battune Sinister Ermine difference*.

479. John, *Earl of* Mulgrave, *now Duke of* Buckingham.

Arragon a Chevron between three Garbs Gules.

480. William Cavendish, *Duke of* Newcastle.

Comme, No. 447.

481. Thomas Osborn, *Earl of* Danby, *after Duke of* Leeds.

Quarterly, Ermine and Azure a Cross Or.

482. Henry Fitz Roy, *Duke of* Grafton.

The Arms of King Charles II. *with a Battoon Sinister Gobony Argent and Azure*.

483. William, *Earl of* Salisbury.

Barry of ten Pieces Argent and Azure on six Escocheons Sinister, as many Lyons rampant; of the first, a Crescent difference.

484. Charles, *Count Palatine of the* Rhine.

Comme, No. 445.

485. Charles, *Duke of* Richmond.

The Arms of King *Charles* II. *within a Bordure Gobony Argent and Gules, the Argent charg'd with Roses as the second*.

486. George, *Prince of* Denmark.

Denmark, Comme, No. 466.

487. Charles Seymour, *Duke of* Somerset, *&c.*

Quarterly; first, an Augmentation, *viz. Or on a Pile Gules, between six Flower Deluces Azure, three Lyons of England; second*, the paternal Coat of *Seymour, Gules, two Wings conjoined in Lure Or*.

488. George Fitzroy, *Duke of* Northumberland.

Knights elected in the Reign of King James II.

489. Henry Howard, *Duke of* Norfolk.

Comme, No. 426.

490. Henry Mordaunt, *Earl of* Peterborough.

Argent a Chevron between three Estoils Wavy.

491. Laurence Hyde, *Earl of* Rochester.

Azure, a Chevron between three Lozenges, a Crescent difference.

492. Louis de Duras, *Earl of* Feversham.

Quarterly; first and fourth, Gules a Lyon rampant Argent; second and third, Argent a bend Azure, with a label of three Points difference.

493. Robert Spencer, *Earl of* Sunderland.

Quarterly, Argent and Gules, in second a Fret Or, over all a bend Sable, charged with three eschallops of the first.

Knights elected in the Reign of King William *and Queen* Mary, *and King* William.

494. James Butler, *Duke of* Ormond.

Or, a chief indented Azure.

495. Frederick Schonbergh, *Duke of* Schonbergh.

Argent, an Escocheon Sable, over all a Carbuncle of eight Roys Or, a Crescent difference.

496. William Cavendish, *Duke of* Devonshire, *then Earl of* Devonshire.

Sable, three Hearts Heads caboshed, Argent.

497. Charles Sackville, *Earl of* Dorset *and* Middlesex.

Quarterly, Or and Gules a bend Vaire.

498. Frederick III. *Marquiss of* Brandenburgh, *Prince*

Elector, and Great Chamberlain of the Holy Roman Empire; *after King of* Prussia.

Comme, No. 456.

499. George-William, *Duke of* Brunswick *and* Lunenburg-Zell, *Prince of the Holy* Roman Empire.

500. Charles Talbot, *Duke of* Shrewsbury.

Gules a Lyon rampant, within a border ingrailed Or.

501. *Prince* William, *Duke of* Gloucester.

The Arms of *England, with a label of three Points Argent*, the middlemost charged with the *Cross of* St. *George, and an Escocheon* of his paternal Coat of *Denmark*.

502. John Holles, *Duke of* Newcastle.

Ermine, two Piles, their Points meeting in *base Sable*.

503. William Bentinck, *Earl of* Portland.

Azure, a Cross Moline Argent.

504. Thomas Herbert, *Earl of* Pembroke *and* Montgomery.

Comme, No. 404.

505. Arnoldjoost Van Keppel, *Earl of* Albermarle.

Gules, three eschallops Argent.

506. James Dowglass, *Duke of* Queensbury *and* Dover.

Quarterly; first and fourth, a Heart Gules, Crown'd with an Imperial Crown Or, on a chief, Azure, three Mullets Argent; second and third, Azure, a Bend Or, six cross Croslets of the same, all within a double Tressure Counterflory Gules.

507. George-Lewis, *Elector of* Brunswick-Lunenburgh, *&c. the present Sovereign*.

Knights elected in the Reign of Queen ANNE.

508. Wriothesly Russel, *Duke of* Bedford.

Comme, No. 475.

509. John Churchill, *Duke of* Marlborough.

Sable, a Lyon rampant Argent, on a Canton of the second, St. George*'s Cross.*

510. Meinhardt Schonbergh, *Duke of* Schonbergh.

Comme, No. 495.

510. Sidney Godolphin, *Earl of* Godolphin.

Gules, an Eagle with two Heads display'd between 3 Fleurs de Lis Argent.

511. George Augustus, *Prince Electoral of* Hanover, *now Prince of* Wales.

512. William Cavendish, *Duke of* Devonshire.

Comme, No. 496.

513. John Campbell, *Duke of* Argyle.

Girony of eight Pieces, Or and Sable.

514. James Hamilton, *Duke of* Hamilton *and* Brandon: *Placed here in his Order of Election, but lived not to be installed.*

Comme, No. 447.

515. Henry Beaufort, *Duke of* Somerset.

Comme, No. 473.

516. Henry de Grey, *Duke of* Kent.

Barry of six Argent and Azure.

517. John Poulett, *Earl* Poulett.

Sable, three Swords, their Points in Pile Argent, the Hilts Or.

518. Robert Harley, *Earl of* Oxford *and Earl* Mortimer.

Or, a bend cotised Sable.

519. Thomas Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford.

Sable, a Chevron between three Leopards Heads Or.

520. Charles Mordant, *Earl of* Peterborough *and* Monmouth.

Comme, No. 490.

Knights elected by King George.

521. Charles Poulet, *Duke of* Bolton.

Sable, three Swords, their Points in pile Argent, their Hilts Or, a Crescent difference.

522. John Maners, *Duke of* Rutland.

Comme, No. 412.

523. Lionel-Cranfield Sackvil, *Earl of* Dorset *and* Middlesex.

Comme, No. 497.

524. Charles Montague, *Earl of* Halifax.

Argent three Lozenges in fess Gules, within a border Sable difference.

A Catalogue of the several Officers of this most Noble Order, to this Time.

Prelates of the Order.

1.

William de Edyngton, *Bishop of* Winchester, *Lord Treasurer, and after Lord Chancellor of* England.

2. William de Wykham, *Bishop of* Winchester, *Priest, Cardinal of St.* Eusebius, *and Lord Chancellor of* England.

3. Henry Beaufort, *Bishop of* Winchester, *Priest, Cardinal*, &c. *and Lord Chancellor of* England.

4. William de Waynfleet, *Bishop of* Winchester, *and Lord Chancellor of* England.

5. Peter Courtney, *Bishop of* Winchester.
6. Thomas Langton, *Bishop of* Winchester.
7. Richard Fox, *Bishop of* Winchester, *and Lord Privy-Seal.*
8. Thomas Wolsey, *Bishop of* Winchester, *Priest, Cardinal*, &c. *and Lord Chancellor of* England.
9. Stephen Gardiner, *Bishop of* Winchester.
10. John Poynet, *Bishop of* Winchester.
11. Stephen Gardiner *restored, and made Lord Chancellor of* England.
12. John White, *Bishop of* Winchester.
13. Robert Horne, *Bishop of* Winchester.
14. John Watson, *Bishop of* Winchester.
15. Thomas Cooper, *Bishop of* Winchester.
16. William Wykham, *Bishop of* Winchester.
17. William Day, *Bishop of* Winchester.
18. Thomas Bilson, *Bishop of* Winchester.
19. James Montague, *Bishop of* Winchester.
20. Lancelot Andrews, *Bishop of* Winchester.
21. Richard Neyle, *Bishop of* Winchester.
22. Walter Curle, *Bishop of* Winchester.
23. Brian Duppa, *Bishop of* Winchester.
24. George Morley, *Bishop of* Winchester.
25. Peter Mew, *Bishop of* Winchester.
26. *Sir* Jonathan Trelawny, *Bar. now Bishop of* Winchester.

Chancellors of the Order.

1. Richard Beauchamp, *Bishop of* Salisbury, *and Dean of* Windsor.
2. Lionel Woodevelle, *Bishop of* Salisbury.

3. Thomas Langton, *Bishop of* Salisbury.
4. John Blyth, *Bishop of* Salisbury.
5. Henry Dean, *Bishop of* Salisbury.
6. Edmond Audley, *Bishop of* Salisbury.
7. *Sir* William Cecil, *Kt. Secretary of State*.
8. *Sir* William Peters, *Kt. Secretary of State*.
9. *Sir* Thomas Smith, *Kt. Secretary of State*.
10. *Sir* Francis Walsingham, *Kt. Secretary of State*.
11. *Sir* Amias Paulet, *Kt. Secretary of State*.
12. *Sir* John Woolee, *Kt. Secretary for the* Latin *Tongue*.
13. *Sir* Edward Dyer, *Kt.*
14. *Sir* John Herbert, *Kt. Secretary of State*.
15. *Sir* George More, *Kt.*
16. *Sir* Francis Crane, *Kt.*
17. *Sir* Thomas Row, *Kt.*
18. *Sir* James Palmer, *Kt.*
19. *Sir* Henry de Vick, *Bar.*
20. Seth Ward, *Bishop of* Salisbury.
21. Gilbert Burnet, *now Bishop of* Salisbury.

Registers of the Order.

1. John Coringham, *Canon of* Windsor.
2. John Deepden, *Canon of* Windsor.
3. James Goldwell, *Canon of* Windsor.
4. Oliver King, *Canon of* Windsor, *Secretary to Prince Henry, Son of King* Henry VI. *To King* Edward IV., V. *and* Henry VII.
5. Richard Nix, *Canon of* Windsor.
6. Christopher Urswick, *Dean of* Windsor.
7. Thomas Wolsey, *the Kings Almoner*.

8. William Atwater, *Canon of* Windsor, *after Bishop of* Lincoln.
9. Nicholas West, *Dean of* Windsor.
10. John Vescy, *Dean of* Windsor.
11. Richard Sydnor, *Canon of* Windsor.
12. Robert Aldridge, *Canon of* Windsor.
13. Owen Oglethorp, *Dean of* Windsor.
14. John Boxal, *Dean of* Windsor, *and Secretary of State*.
15. George Carew, *Dean of* Windsor.
16. William Day, *Dean of* Windsor.
17. Robert Benet, *Dean of* Windsor.
18. Giles Thompson, *Dean of* Windsor, *and Bishop of* Gloucester.
19. Anthony Maxey, *Dean of* Windsor.
20. Marc Antonio de Dominis, *Archbishop of* Spalato, *Dean of* Windsor.
21. Henry Beaumont, *Dean of* Windsor.
22. Matthew Wren, *Dean of* Windsor.
23. Christopher Wren, *Dean of* Windsor.
24. Brune Ryves, *Dean of* Windsor.
25. *Dr.* Gregory Heskard, *Dean of* Windsor.
26. *Dr.* John Robinson, *Dean of* Windsor, *since Bishop of* London.
27. *Dr.* George Verney, *Lord* Willoughby *of* Brook, *now Dean of* Windsor.

Garters King of Arms.

1. *Sir* William Brugges, *Kt.*
2. John Smert.
3. *Sir* John Writh, *Kt.*

4. *Sir* Thomas Wriothesley, *Kt.*
5. *Sir* Thomas Wall, *Kt.*
6. *Sir* Christopher Barker, *Kt.*
7. *Sir* Gilbert Dethick, *Kt.*
8. *Sir* William Dethick, *Kt.*
9. *Sir* William Segar, *Kt.*
10. *Sir* John Borough, *Kt.*
11. *Sir* Henry St. George, *Kt.*
12. *Sir* Edward Walker, *Kt.*
13. *Sir* William Dugdale.
14. *Sir* Thomas St. George.
15. *Sir* Henry St. George.

Ushers of the Black-Rod.

1. William Whitehorse.
2. John Cray.
3. Thomas Sye.
4. John Athelbrig.
5. William Evington, *and* Edward Hardgyll.
6. Robert Marleton.
7. Ralph Ashton, *and* Hugh Dennys.
8. *Sir* William Compton, *Kt.*
9. Henry Norresse, *Esq;*
10. Anthony Knyvet, *Esq;*
11. *Sir* Philip Hobby, *Kt.*
12. John Norres, *and* William Norres, *Esqs;*
13. Anthony Wingfield, *Esq;*
14. Richard Coningsbye, *Esq;*
15. James Maxwell, *Esq;*
16. Peter Newton, *Esq;*
17. *Sir* John Ayton, *Kt.*

18. *Sir* Edward Carteret, *Kt.*
19. *Sir* Thomas Duppa.
20. *Sir* Fleetwood Shepard.
21. *Sir* David Mitchell.
22. *Sir* William Oldes.

APPENDIX.

The Statutes of Institution of the most Noble Order *of the* Garter, *as they were reform'd and explain'd by King* Henry VIII.

Whereas the moost famous, moost happiest, and victorious Prynce *Edwarde*, the thirde of that Name, his Noble Progenitour sometyme Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce*, and Lord of *Irland, &c.* To th' onnoure of Almighti God, and of the Blessed and Immaculate Virgyn *Marie*, and the Blessed Martir Sainte *George*, Patron of the right Noble Roialme of *England*; and of Saynt *Edwarde*, Kyng and Confessour; To the exaltation of the holy Faith Catholique, ordeyned, established, created, and founded within the Castel of *Wyndesore*, a Company of twenty six Noble and Worthi Knyghtes, for to be of the said moost Noble Ordre of Saynt *George*, named the Gartier, and for the honourable continuance, augmentation, and interteyning of the same.

The seid moost victorious Kyng did devyse and institute divers honorable Estatuts, and laudable Ordinances, for to be observed and kept by the Cobrethren and Confreres, Knyghtes and Compaynons of the said moost Noble Ordre; amonge the which Estatutis been certeyne doubtis and

ambiguities, which to be more playnly declared, interpreted and extended, it is thought right necessary and expedient, and that certeyne other new Ordinances and Articles be to the said Statutes added and adjoyned. Wherefore the said moost excellent and victorious Prynce *Henry* VIII. Kyng of *England* and of *Fraunce*, Defensor of the Faith, and Lord of *Irland*, and Soverayne of the said moost Noble Order; and for the right singular Love, good Zeal, ardent and intier Affection that his Royall Majestie hath and bearith to the said moost Noble Order, and to the Estate of Chivalrie and Knyghthood, and for the honorable contynuance and encreasing the same. And also at the humble requeste and instante desire of the Knyghts and Companyons of the said Noble Order, and by their Advyse, Councell and Assent, the twenty third Day of *April*, in the Year of Grace MDXXII. and of his moost Noble Reign the eighth Year, made interpretacion and declaracion of the Obscurities, Doubtis, and Ambiguities, of the said Estatutes, Ordinances, Interpretacions, Declaracions, Reformacions, with their additions aforesaid, after the trew intencion of them, shall be from henceforth observed, kept and ensued by the Soverayne, and the Knyghtes Confreres and Companyons of the said Noble Order, in manner and fourme following.

I. Firste, It is ordened and accorded, That the Kyng and his Heires and Successors, Kyngs of *England*, shall be for evermore Soveraynes of the saide moost Noble Order and amiable Companye of Saynt *George*, named the Gartier, to the which Soverayn, and to his Heires and Successours, shall apperteine the Declaracion, Solucion, Determinacion, Interpretacion, Reformacion, and disposition of all Causes, concernyng and towchyng any thing of

Obscuritie or Dowbte conteyned in the Statutes of the said moost Noble Order.

II. *Item*, It is accorded, That none shall be elected and chosen for to be Fellow or Companyon of the said moost Noble Order, except that he be a Gentilman of Blood, and that he be a Knyghte, and without reproche. And that the Knyghtes of the said Noble Order, from hensforth, shall not Name any Person in their Election to be Felow or Companyon of the said Noble Order, in whom thei shall thynke or extiem in their Conscience to have Spotte of Reproche. And as towchyng the Declaracion of a Gentilman of Blode, it is declared and determined that he shall be descended of three decentis of Noblesse, that is to say, of Name and of Arms, both of his Father's side, and also of his Mother's side. And as towchyng or concernyng any manner of reproche, forasmoche as there be divers and many sundry Poyntis of reproche, there shall be here declared but three Poyntes of them oonly, as it is declared in manner and fourme folowyng.

A List of all the present *Knights-Companions* of the most Noble Order of the *Garter*; as their Places occur in their *Stalls* in the Royal Chappel of St. *George*, within the College of *Windsor*: Shewing the respective Times of their Installations.

The Sovereign's Side	The Prince Side

3.	1. *The Sovereign*, George, *King of* Great-Britain, France *and* Ireland; *installed* March 13. 1702-3. 2*Queen* Anne.	2. George-August, *Prince of* Wales, &c. *installed* December 22d, 1706. 5 *Queen* Anne.	4.
5. Charles Fitzroy, *Duke of* Cleveland *and* Southampton, *&c. installed* April *the first*, 1673. 25 Charles II.		6. John Sheffield, *Duke of* Buckingham *and* Normanby, *&c. install* May *28th*, 1674. 26 Charles II.	
7. Charles Lenox, *Duke of* Richmond, *&c. installed* April *20th*, 1681. 33 Charles II.		8. Charles Seymour, *Duke* Somerset, *&c. installed* April *8th*, 1684. 36 Charles II.	
9. George Fitzroy, *Duke of* Northumberland, *&c. installed* April *8th*, 1684. 36 Charles II.		10. James Butler, *Duke of* Ormond, *&c. installed* April *5th*, 1689. 1 William *and* Mary.	
11. Charles Talbot, *Duke of* Shrewsbury, *&c. installed* June *5th*, 1694. 6 William *and* Mary.		12. Thomas Herbert, *Earl* Pembroke *and* Montgomery, *&c. installed* May *14th*, 1700. 12 William III.	

13. Arnold Joost Van Keppel, *Earl of* Albemarle, *&c. installed* May *14th*, 1700. 12 William III.	14. John Churchill, *Duke o* Marlborough, *&c. installed* March *13th*, 1702-3. 2 *Queen* Anne
15. Meinhardt Schonbergh, *Duke of* Schonbergh; *installed* September *2d*, 1703. 2 *Queen* Anne.	16. William Cavendish, *Duke of* Devonshire, *&c. installed* Decembe *22d*, 1710. 9 *Queen* Anne.
17. John Campbel, *Duke of* Argyle, *&c. installed* December *22nd*, 1710. 9 *Queen* Anne.	18. Henry de Grey, *Duke o* Kent, *&c. installed* August *4th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.
19. John Poulett, *Earl* Poulett, *&c. installed* August *4th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.	20. Robert Harley, *Earl of* Oxford, *and Earl* Mortimer, *&c. installe* August *4th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.
21. Thomas Wentworth, *Earl of* Strafford, *&c. installed* August *4th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne.	22. Charles Mordant, *Earl* Peterborough *and* Monmouth, *&c. installed* August *4th*, 1713. 12 *Queen* Anne
23. Charles Poulet, *Duke of* Bolton, *&c. installed* December *9th*, 1714. 1 *King* George.	24. John Maners, *Duke of* Rutland, *&c. installed* December *9th*, 1714. *King* George.
25. Lionel-Cranfield Sackvil, *Earl of* Dorset *and* Middlesex; *installed* December *9th*, 1714. 1 *King* George.	26. Charles Montague, *Ear of* Halifax, *&c. installe* December *9th*, 1714. *King* George.

The first Poynt of Reproche ys, That if any Knyght (as God defende) be convaynqued or attaynted of

Errour against the Cristen Faith Catholique, or had for any suche Offence suffred any Payne or Punicion publique.

The second Poynt of Reproche is, That if any Knyght (as God defende) had been arrayned, convicted, or attainted of High Treason.

The third Poynt of Reproche is, That if any Knyght departe or flee away from Batayle or Journei, beyng with his Soverayne Lord, his Lieutenant or Deputie, or other Capetayne having the Kyng's Power Royal and Auctoritie; and whereas Banners Estandatz, or Pennons, have bene displaied, and that thei preceded to Fight, he that then reniously and cowardly flieth or departeth away from thens, ought to be esteemed and judged to have reproche, and never worthi to be elected Knyght of the said Company, (as God forbidde) do commytte any such reproche; that then he shall be departed and disgraded of the said Order, at the next Chaptier ensuyng, if it soo shall please the Soverayne and the Company.

III. *Item*, That every Yere upon the Vigill of Saynt *George*, that is to say, the twenty second Day of the Month of *April*, on what Day soever it fall on, and tho' no Service of Saynt *George* be celebrate or done, all the Knyghts of the said Company beyng in any Place or Places of their Liberties, in what Places soever it be, shall be bounde for to were the hole Habit of the said Order; that is to wit, Robe, Mantell, Hudde, and Coller, from the owre of the first Even Songe, at the owre of *Tierce*, that is, at three of the Clocke at Afternone, untill the said Even Songe, and other Devyne Service, Souper, and Voydance, be done and accomplished; and likewyse on the Morrow on Saynt *George*'s *Day* at Matens, Procession, [1] Mass, and the seconde Even Songe and all the said Day, untyll that Souper and Voydance be done, as ys

aforesaid.

1. *Divine Service.*

IV. *Item*, That if for any Causes it should please the said Soverayne to proroge the said Feast and Solemnytie of Saint *George*, or that the said Feast shuld be prolonged and proroged to another Day, that all the Knyghtis of the said Order, that shall be within the Realme of *England*, shall gyve their Attendance the Even and the Day of Saynt *George*, on the Parson of the said Soverayne, and shall fynde themselffes in his Company, in what Place soever he be within the said Realme of *England*, and they so gyving their Attendance upon his said Parson the said Even and Day, shall observe and kepe the Servyce of Saynt *George*, if the Ordenance and Commaundement of holye Church doth suffre and permit it, and if the Ordenaunce of the Church doth not permit it, in this behalfe they be bound to tarry with the Soverayne, and heare such Servyce as all be than limited and ordened by the holy Churche to be done and celebrated, the said Even and Day of Saynt *George*, in observyng and kepyng, duryng the said Daies, of all other Ceremonies, aswell in goyng to the Chapter upon the said Even before Even Song at Afternone, and the said Day of Saynt *George* at Afternone, before the laste Even Songe, and also in weryng their hole Habit; and every Knyght beyng in his own Stall in kepyng the Devine Servyce, from the tyme of the fyrst Even Song of the said Even, Matens and [2] Masse, unto the last Even Song of the said Day, and the Morrow after ensuying before the [3] Masse of *Requiem*, they shall take their Mantells, upon suche Gownes as shall please them, and shall enter into the Chapter, if there be eny Election or other great Affaires, before the said [4] Masse of *Requiem*, in using such Ceremonyes to this

accustomed, as though they were present in the said Castell of *Wyndesore*. And in case that the said Soverayne be come, and entred into the said Chapiter, and that some of the seid Felows of the said Order be not entred or come with hym, and shulde tary behynde, in case they that have not gyven and done dew Attendance upon hym, shall abide withoute the Dores of the said Chapiter, without entryng into it, duryng all the tyme that the said Soverayne and other Knyghtes shall be in the said Chapter for that tyme. And if so be that eny of the above-named Knyghtes come to late to the first Even Song of the said Even or Mattens [5] Masse, or laste Even Song, the said Day of Saynt *George*, he shall have for Penance, that during the tyme and space of such Devyne Servyce he shall knele or stande before his Stall in the Place of the Queresters; and if he come not to gyve Attendance upon the Parson of the said Soverayne the sayd Even and Day of Saynt *George* as is aforesaid, and that he have no Lycence or other reasonable Excuse, and that it be acceptable to the said Soverayne; for his absence in this Case, the said Knyght that soo shall have done, for his Penance, shall not come in his Stall at the next Feast ensuyng, in the presence of the Soverayne, nor in his said Stall in the said College of *Wyndesore*; and farthermore shall Pay ten Pounds, for to be converted and bestowed to the use of the Ornaments of the said College.

2. *Divine Service.*

3. *Divine Service.*

4. *Divine Service.*

5. *Divine Service.*

V. *Item*, If it chaunsed that any of the Knyghtes of the said Order, by Leave or Licens, or otherwise,

were in his House, or in any other Place, at his Libertie and Fraunchise, the said Even and Day of Saynt *George*, he shall be bound to cause to be prepared a Capitall Stall in the Church or Chappel in the which he shall heare Devine Service. In the Capitall Stall shall be sett and elevated the Order of Saynt *George*, named the Gartier, beyng within the Gartier; and his propre Arms, within the Gartier also shall be set at a Stall that shall be asmoche in distance, after the proportion and quantity of the said Church or Chappel, from the Stall of the said Soverayn, as is his Stall in the Castle of *Wyndesore*, and shall were his said Habit hole, and shall heare the Devyne Service, suche as by the Holy Church is ordened and limited for the said Day, as well the first Even Song Mattens [6] Masse, as the latter Even Songe. In doyng by him, first Reverence to the Aulter, in the Honor of God, and after to the Stall where is fixed or set up the Armes of the said Order, as well and as often at his comyng in, as at his goyng owte of the said Church or Chappel; and also as often as he shall passe before the said Armes allwey, excepte the Emperours, Kynges, Princes, and Electors. The which may in this case so ordeyne their Seats and Stalles, as that shall seme them beast, and at their Pleasure.

6. *Divine Service.*

VI. *Item*, If that were so, that without any Prorogation the said Feast and Solempnyte of Saynt *George* were kept and celebrated the said Day and Even of Saynt *George*, in the said Castell of *Wyndesore*; and if it were not the Pleasure of the said Soverayne for to be present, or that conveniently he may not be there in Parson the said Day and Feast, at his said Castell of *Wyndesore*; That in this Case, in what Place that his Pleasure shall be, beyng within

this his Realme of *England*, his Majestie may appoynte and Commande suche Knyghtes of the seid Order as best shall seme hym, there for to kepe Company and geve Attendance upon the Parson, and to kepe all and lyke Ceremonyes as though they were at the said Castell of *Wyndesore*; and they doyng the thynges abovesaid, shall be excused for their absence of the Feast of Saynt *George*, holden at the said Castell of *Wyndesore* for that Yere.

VII. *Item*, It is agreed that if the Soverayne cannot be at Saynt *George*'s Feast, that he shall make his Deputy, by his Letters, for to kepe the Chapter upon Saynt *George*'s Even, at the Owre of *Tierce*, the which is at three of the Clocke at Afternone, and on Saynt *George*'s Day, to kepe the said Feast at the Costes of the said Soverayne for the space abovesaid, without any new Ordenance to be made, havyng Power to correcte and redresse all Poynts of the said Chapter as for then shall seme necessary.

VIII. *Item*, That every one on Saynt *George*'s Even, that is to wit, the twenty second Day of *April*, a gatheryng together shall be made of all the Knyghtes of Saynt *George* within the Castell of *Wyndesore*, that is to wit, of all them that shall be within this Realme of *Englande* or withoute, that conveniently may come; and there they shall have the Service of Saynt *George*, and also shall were their hole Habit of the said Order, duryng the seid Servyce, being ordinarily in theyre Stalls. And every of them shall have his Banner, Sworde, with his Helme and Creste, above his Stall, the which, duryng his Lyff, shall abyde in the said Chappell for his Honor, and in Signe and Knowledge that he beres them in defence of holy Churche, as the Order of Knyghthod requireth. But in Case that the seid Feast of Saynt *George* happen to fall within fifteen Days after the Feast of *Easter*, or

upon any Fyshe-Daye or Fastyng-Day, then shall it be proroged and prolonged at the Soverayn's Pleasure, as above is said, if so be that the Day of the seid Feast be not assigned nor ordeyned to be kepte the twenty fourth, twenty fifth, twenty sixth, nor the last Day of *April*, nor upon the fowre first Dayes of *May*, for by cause of the impediment or let of Devyne Servyce ordened by Holy Churche, for the double Feasts of Saynt *Marke*, *Philipp* and *Jacob*, and the invention of the Holy Cross of our Lord Jesu Chryste, nor at such Dayes as shall fall the Assencion, or the Feast of *Pentecoste*, or any other Feaste of Solempnitie as is ordened in Holy Churche, whereby the fyrst or second Even Songe, by suche Prorogacions, might be letted or distorbed.

IX. *Item*, That all the Knyghtes of the said Order shall come Yerely in the said Place of the said Castell of *Wyndesore*, on Saynt *George*'s Even, at the Owre of *Tierce*, the which is at three of the Clocke at Afternoone, as it is abovesaid; and if thei come not at the tyme assigned, without havyng a juste and reasonable Excuse, that they may be acceptable to the said Soverayne or to his Deputy, or otherwyse pardoned by the said Soverayne, of their absence, by special Letters of Excuse, in the whiche Letters theyr Names and Causes shall be wryten, or otherwyse shall have their Pennance after the Ordenaunce and Agreement of the said Chapter; And the said Ordenaunce is such, that they shall not entre into the Chaptre for that tyme, but shall byde without the Dore, and shall have Voyce in any thynge that is done in the said Chapter at that tyme allonly; and if they come not to Even Songe before the begynnyng of the said Even Songe, they shall not enter into their Stalles, but shall byde belowe affore the said Stallis, in the Queristers Places, duryng the said Even Songe;

and like Pennance is ordened for them that come not to the High [7] Masse betyme, and at Even Songe on St. *George*'s Daye. And if there be any that come not to the Feaste, and have not a reasonable Excuse towarde the Soverayne or his Deputye, as is above declared, his Pennance shall bee, that he shall not enter within his Stalle the next Feaste after, but shall byde below, as it is said at the first Even Songe, and shall goo in the Procession before all the [8] three Crosses, and shall sit below as afore is said, all the [9] Masse tyme, untyl the Offering, and he shall Offer laste; and after his Pennance so done, incontinent he shall come before the Soverayn's Stalle, or his Deputye, and there he shall aske Pardon; and after that, the Soverayne or his Deputye shall Command hym to goo unto his Stalle in his fyrst Estate; and if he come not to the seconde Feaste, and be dwellyng within the Realm, without having any Excusation alowable to the Soverayne or his Deputye, as is abovesaid, he shall not enter into his Stalle from thenceforth, until the tyme that he hath gyven and offered a Jewell unto Saynte *George*'s Aultar, within the said Chappell, of the valew of twenty Markes of Silver of Troye, and fro thensforwarde, he shall double every Yere the Penaltie, unto the tyme he be reconsciled.

7. *Morning Service.*

8. *Queristers.*

9. *Divine Service.*

X. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any Knyghte of the sayd Companye be founde in apperte without his Garter, that he pay anon, after that the Chalenge be made to hym by any of the five Officers of the Order, or of the Warden of the seid College, a Marke of Money, except he be boted for to ryde, that then it shall suffice to were under his bote a blew Ribande

of Sylke, in signyfying of the Garter, and also provided that no Knyght of the seid Order from hensforthe, do entre into the Chaptre without his Garter, upon the Payne abovesaid; and whosoever of the said Officers or Warden shall make the fyrst Chalence, shall have the Penaltye for his Labor.

XI. *Item*, It is agreed, That the Knyghts of the Order of St. *George*, alway, and as often as they were theyr Mantels, they shall goo before there Soverayne, every of them with his Felow, that is for aneynst him ordinarily as they be set in their Stalls. And if it should happen that eny of them were not there present, his Felow for aneynst hym shall goe alone, the which Order shall be kepte and observed, as well in goyng in Procession as elliswhere in other Places. But at the Offryng, the Soverayne or his Deputye shall goo before all the Company, and the ordinaire Officers of the said Order shall goo as they have bene accustomed, when any Procession shall be done in the Chapter, Chappell, or elliswhere. And for the Order of the said Knyghtes for to sitt at the Table, for to take their refeccion by it at Dinner, or at Souper, they shall sitt all along on one side after there Stalles, and not after there State, except Children or Bretherne of Kinges, Princes, and Dukes, that be Strangers, the which shall kepe their Places and Romes after their Astate; and at their voiding and going out shall abide and goo in Order, so as thei sat at the Table.

XII. *Item*, It is agreed, That every one of them at the Castell of *Wyndesore*, on the Morrow after the Feast of Saynt *George*, before the departyng of the Company, that the said Knyghtes, upon such Gownes as shall please them, at the Chapter Dore, shall take their Mantels, and shall goo into the said Chapter, and after that shall goo and here a [10] Masse of

Requiem, the which shall be Solempnely songe for the Souls of all the Felows of the said Order, which be departed and deceassed, and for all Christen Sowlles; and that all the Company be there present, without eny of them be lett bi a reasonable Cause, or have Lysence of the Soverayne or his Deputie before the departyng; and when it happens that for any Cause of the voydyng of eny of the said Felowship, there shall be certayne Banners, Swordes, Helmets, and Crestes, the which ought to be offered up before the offeryng of eny Silver, the said Hachements ought to be offered, fyrst the Banner, by two of the seid Felowship, such as the Soverayne or his Deputye shall appoynte or name, and after that the Sworde shall be offered by two other, and likewise his Helmet and Crest by two other Knyghtes of the seid Order, assigned by the Soverayne or his Deputye; and if any Knyghte of the seid Order shuld decease the Yere afore, then every Knyghte beyng in the said Castell of *Wyndesore*, at the said [11] Masse of *Requiem*, shall offer a Tapre armed with a little Scuchion, of the Arms of the Knyghte departed; and if there were more then one deceassed, that then be made for every of them a Scuchion of Arms, and a grote sett nye to the light of the Tapre, the which Scuchions and Tapers shall be made at the Coste and Charge of the Knyghts of the seid Order.

10. *Divine Service.*

11. *Divine Service.*

XIII. *Item*, It is agreed, That all Strangers that shall be electe Felowes of the seid Order, shall be certifyed by Letters of the Soverayne of their Election. The which Letters of Certification, with the Statutes of the seid Order, under the common Seal, shall be sent unto them, at the Coste and Charges of the seid Soverayne, in all diligence, and at the fardest thei

shall be certifyed of this within foure Moneths after the seid Election, to the end that the seid Electe may advyse them by the seid Statutis, if they will receyve the seid Order or no. But if the seid Soverayne have greate and high Lettes and Busynes, that then he may deferre the Certification of the seid Election at his good Pleasure, unto tyme of opportunitie and convenient. After that the Certification have byn delivered, and that the Soverayne shall be certefied that the said Electe will receyve the said Order; Then the Soverayne shall sende unto the said Electe by his Ambassadours his hole Habit, with the Gartier and Coller; and that all such Strangers, of what Estate, Dignytie, or Condicion, that they be of, shall sende within seven Moneths after the reception of the said Gartier, Coller, and Habit, and that he have certified the Soverayne to have reseyved those thyngs, a sufficient Deputye or Attorney, after the Astate of his Lorde and Maister, so be that he be a Knyghte without Reproche, to be stalled in his place; the whiche shall bryng with him a Mantell of blew Velvett, of the Order of that which he shall send him, and also his Banner, Sworde, Helme, and Crest, for to be and abide within the said College duryng his Lyff. And that the Mantell, in the tyme that the said Deputye or Attorney shall be stalled by the Soverayne or his Deputye, put upon his right Arme, for to hold the said Mantell upon his Arme, and shall be accompanyed and ledd by two of the Knyghtes of the said Order, from the Dore of the Chapter unto the Stalle, and there beyng shall make his Oath, and shall be stalled for, and in the Name of his said Lorde and Maister, and the said Mantell abovesaid, the said Attorney or Deputye shall bere it upon his right Arme duryng the Devyne Servyce; beyng sett in the Stalle of his said Maister and Lorde without beryng

of it at any tyme after: And to have no manner of Voyce in the Chaptre, or to come in it, in the absence of hym that hath sent hym. And if he send not his said Attorney within seven Moneths abovesaid, without havyng a reasonable Excuse, which shall be acceptable to the Soverayne or his Deputye, the Election shall be void of hym; except so be, that the said Knyghte be lett and distorbed by great Affaires; then he may send his Excuse to the said Soverayne, or to his Deputye, within a Moneth after; and after he is, as the Soverayne or his Deputye will allowe it, or accepte it, that then the said Soverayne or his Deputye, may geve unto hym four Moneths more of respite; and if he came not or sent not his Attorney, before that the tyme of the four Moneths be fynished, that then in this case the Election shall be hole voyde from hym for that tyme. And it is to be knowne, that this Favoure is done and shewed to the Strangers, the which may not well come in their proper Parsons, that they myght be stalled by Attourneys; to the ende that they may be parretakers of the [12] Masses, and all the Prayers of the seid Order, for they shoulde fayle of the half, yf they were not stalled before their Deathe. And likewise it is ordened for them that be never Chosen and electe of the said Order, beyng in the Kyngs Warres by his Commaundement, for to enjoy of the Benefytes of the said Statutes, to that that shall appertayne allonly to their Stallacion.

12. *Divine Service.*

XIV. *Item*, There is also ordened a Dean and Warden, with twelve Cannons Seculers, the which shall be Pristz at their entryng in, or ells within a Yere nexte folowyng; and also eight Peticanons and twelve Vicars, also Prestes at their entryng in, or ells at the gyvyng of the next Orders, or at the furdest within a Yere after their Presentacion; also thirteen

Clerkes and thirteen Queristers, for to syng and Pray unto God for the prosperity of the Soverayne and all the Knyghtes of the said Order lyving, and also for the Sowles of all the Knyghtes of the said Order departed, and for all Crysten Sowles; and the Presentation of the said Cannons shall belonge allway to the Soverayne of the said Order; and the said Cannons, when any Knyghte of the said Order is there present within the Quyer of the said Chappel, shall sitt in the lowermost Seates, where they be wonte to sitt at the Feastes of Saynt *George*; and in the absence of the said Knyghtes, the said Cannons may sitt in the high Seates nexte unto the Stalles of the said Knyghtes.

XV. *Item*, There be ordened five Officers appertaynyng to the said Order; that is to witt, Prelate, Chaunceler, Register, and Kyng of Armes, named Gartier, and an Huysher at Armes, named the Blacke-Rod; the which shall be receyved and Sworne to be of the Councell of the said Order; the Secretes, with alsoo their Charges and Privileges, shall expressely be declared in the Booke of the Ordenances of the said Officers.

XVI. *Item*, It is also ordened, That thirteen pore Knyghtes, that have not wherwithall to lyve, for to have in that Place their lyvyng and sustentacion conveniently, for their good Prayers in the Honor of God and Saynt *George*, of the which the Charges and Privileges hereafter shall be declared folowyng: The Ordynances of the Officers and of their Election is ordened, as of the Presentacion of the Cannons, so that allway the Election shall abyde to the said Soverayne; and it is agreed that the pore Knyghtes shall have their Mantells of Scarlett, and a Scuchion of the Armes of Saynt *George*, without a Gartier.

XVII. *Item*, It is agreed, That every Knyghte of the

said Company shall leave his Mantell within the said College, for any sodayne Chaunses that myght happen, for to kepe, holde and observe, all suche Ordenances, Precepts and Commaundements, which may be advysed in Chapter by the said Sovereign. The which Soverayne, by the Consent and Agrement of six Knyghtes of the said Order, may at all Tymes and Places, at his Pleasure, Sommon and make to be kepte Chaptre for all suche Causes, as it shall please to the said Soverayne to name, towching the said Order.

XVIII. *Item*, It is agreed, That if it fortune, that any of the said Companye shulde come within eleven Myle of the Castell, that he shall goo in, if he may, for the Honor of the Place, if he be not busied or lett by some juste Cause, and that he take his Mantell before he entre within the said Chappell; and alsoo that he enter not in, but he have his Mantell upon hym; and the Cannons there beyng present for that tyme, shall come to receyve hym, and devotly shall bring hym into the said Chappel; and if it be in tyme of [13] Masse, he shall tarry and heare Masse in the Honor of God and of Saynt *George*; and if it be at Afternone, he shall come in, in manner abovesaid; and there shall be said by the Cannons *de Profundis*, for all Cristen Sowles, and there shall offer and returne to his Stalle; and if any of the said Companye ride thorowgh the Town, and wyll not offer as agreed, that upon his Obedience for every tyme that he faileth, he shall goe one Myle a Fote from the said Chappell unto the said Place, in Honor of Saynt *George*; and also for every tyme that he shall so fayle, he shall gyve a Grote for his Offrynge; the which distance, for to come nygh unto the said Castell, is two Myles allonly and no more.

13. *Divine Service.*

XIX. *Item*, It is accorded the thirty second Yere of our Soverayne Lorde Kynge *Henry* VIII. by the Grace of God, Kynge of *Englande* and of *Fraunce*, Defensor of the Faithe, Lorde of *Irland*, *&c.* upon Saynt *George*'s Day, the twenty third Day of *Aprill*, at a Chapter holden at the Paleys of *Westminster*, by the Soverayne and the Companyons of the said Noble Order then there assembled; That as sone as the deth of any of the Company of the said Order shall be certeynly knowen, every of the rest, beyng no Strangiers, shall, accordyng to the rates of their Degrees hereafter specified, immediately, upon a demande to be made for the same by the Register and the Dean, or one of them, to be by one of them employed in Aulmes Deeds, as in mendyng of High Wayes, or such other Workes of Charitie, as the Kyng's Majestie from tyme to tyme shall lymite and appoynte, the severall Somes of Money ensuyng. Furst, The Soverayne, eight Pounds six Shillings and eight Pence; a King of another Realme, six Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence; the Prince, five Pounds sixteen Shillings and eight Pence; a Duke, five Pounds; a Marquess, three Pounds fifteen Shillings; an Erle, fifty Shillings; a Visconte, forty one Shillings and eight Pence; a Baron, thirty three Shillings and four Pence; a Bacheler Knyghte, sixteen Shillings and eight Pence. Of all which Somes thus to be receyved, the said Dean and Regester, or eyther of them, shall yerely, at the Chapter, present his Accompte to the Kyng's Majestie, with his true and juste declaracion of disbursyng agayne, and defraying of the same. In that Cause the Partie whose Porcyon shall apere to be unpayde, shall in the Name of a Payne add unto his former Dutye another thirde parte of the same, and so for every Yere that he shall be behynde, to pay a thirde parte more than he shuld

pay if he shuld satisfye his Ordinary, accordyng to the rate before expressed; and if the Dean or Register, or any of them, shall not at every suche Chapter present the Certificate of the Receipts and Payments in fourme aforesaid, whereby the same may apere to the Soverayne and Companyons of the Order then present, or at the leest he in whome the defawlt shall rest, shall in the Name of a Payne contente and paye immediately, to be employed abowte like purpose as afore, the Some of ten Pounds for every such defaulte.

XX. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any of the said Companye die, that the Soverayne or his Deputie, after that they shall have certification of his Deth, shall be bounde for to send and gyve knowlege by ther Letters to all the Felowship of the said Order, beyng within *Englande*, for to come and be with the said Soverayne or his Deputie, in what place soever it be, where it shall please hym to assigne, convenyently within six Wekys after the certification of the Deth or Decease of the said Knyghte; the which allsoo assembled, or at the lest six, with the Soverayne or his Deputie abovesaid, every of them that there shall be present come to the Election, shall name nine of the worthiest and sufficient Knyghtes withoute Reproffe that he shall knowe, Subjectes to the said Sovereyne, or others, so be that they holde no contrary Partie or be agaynst hym; that is to witt, three Dukes, three Marquess, Erles, or of greater Astate, three Barons, or Banerettis, and three Bachelers; the which denominations the cheiff Prelate of the said Order shall wryte; that is to witt, the Byshop of *Wynchester* for the tyme beyng, or in his absence the Chaunceler, or the Dean, or Register, or the mooste auncient Residencer of the said College in their absence, and the denominacion soo

done by all, or six at the leest, by hym that have Written shall be shewed to the said Soverayne or to his Deputie, that then shall Chose of them that be named he that shall have the moost Voyces, and also he that the Soverayne shall exteme to be moost Honorable to the sayde Order, and moost profitable to his Crowne and to his Realme. And if there be any Knyght of the said Order that doth fayle for to come to the said Election, if he be not lett by a juste Cause, and that the said cause of his Excuse shewed under his Seal of Armes, be founde by the Soverayne or his Deputie to be juste and reasonable, then his Excuse to be accepted and allowed; and that if his Cause be not juste, and that he come not to the Seremonies above-named, it is agreed that he shall Paye to the Warden of the College for to synge for hym that is departed, twenty Shillings Sterling; and at his nexte comyng to the Chapter, he shall not be before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; and shall knele upon the Grounde in the myddes of the Chapter, untyll the tyme that he be reconciled by the Soverayne or his Deputie and the said Companye.

XXI. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any Knyghte of the said Companye shulde departe, and another is Chosen and Electe, he shall have sone after his Election the Garter, in signyfyeng that he ys one of the Knyghtes and Felowes of the Order of the Garter, and his Robe and Hode shall be delivered hym in the Chapter-House incontinently, after that his Commission hath been red before the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Companye, and after that shall be led by two Knyghtes of the said Order, accompanied with the other Noblemen, and the Officers of the Order shall also be present, and his Mantell shall be borne before hym by one of the Knyghtes of the said Order, or by the Kyng at Armes

of the Order. The which Mantell shall be delyvered to hym for his Habit, after that he shall have made his Oth before his Stalle, and not before. And this done, he shall retorne into the Chapter-House, where he shall reseyve, by the Soverayne or his Deputie, the Coler, and soo he shall have the full Possession of his Habit holely, except great Prynces Strangers, the which may receyve their Habit holely within the Chapter-House, as it hath been used and accustomed in tymes paste, for the shortenyng of tyme. And if he die before he have receyved hys Habit, he shall not be named one of the Founders, seyng that he lacketh to have full Possession of his Astate: But he shall have the one halfe of the Masses above-named for the delyverance of the Garter, and none other thynge above it. And if he soo Chosen come not in all good diligence, after the reception of the said Garter in the said Place to be stalled, and in specyally within the Yere of his Election, if he be a Knyghte dwellyng within the Realme, and hath none Excuse reasonable, allowable, and acceptable to the said Soverayne or his Deputie and the Company; then the Election shall be voyd of hym, and the Soverayne or his Deputie and the Companye, shall goo and make another new Election, and neyther the Banner, the Sworde, nor the Helmet, nor Crest, of hym so Chosen, be put upon his Stalle within the Castell before his commyng; to the ende that if he come not, his said Hachementes, as Banner, Sworde, Helmet, be not taken down nor avoled, but honesly put oute of the Quyer, and the reast of other thyngs shall abyde, to the profitt and use of the saide Order.

XXII. *Item*, It is agreed, That if any of the Dukes, Marques, Erles, Vizcontes, Barons, Bandrettis, or Bachelers die; that he that shall come after and succede in his place and rome, be he Duke,

Marquess, Erle, Vizconte, Baron, Baneret, Bacheler, or any of the Astates above-named, he shall have the selffe same Stalle his Predecessor had, and shall not change it, without he have especiall License or Warrant of the said Soverayne, allwayes all Emperours, Kyngs, and Prynces, be excepted, the which shall kepe and holde theyr Stalles after theyr Astate, and very nexte unto the Soverayne; and then by this meane a Duke shall take the Stalle of a Bacheler, and a Bacheler the Stalle of a Duke, in signe and knowlege of the fyrst Founders.

XXIII. *Item*, If there be any Place or Stalle voyde, the Soverayne at his Pleasure may advance and translate, by his special License, any Knyghte of the said Companye in the said Stalle, so be it that it be more hyer then the Stalle that he was in afore; also the Soverayne onys in his Lyffe may, if it please hym, make a general Translation of all the States at his pleasure, excepte the Emperours, Kyngs, Prynces, and Dukes; the which allwey shall kepe ther Places and Stalles, if not that they be translated in more hyer Rome and Stalle, in the which translacion the long contynuance in the Ordre, and the praises, worthynes, and Merites of the Knyghtes ought to be considered and remembred; the which Knyghtes from hensforth in goyng and syttyng at all tymes, that they shall were their Mantells, shall kepe their Places after the Order of their Stallis, and not after their Astatis, as is aforesaid.

XXIV. *Item*, It is agreed, That all the Felowis abovesaid, at their fyrst commyng in, shall gyve every of them a certayne Somme, after their Astate, for the entertaynyng and mayntenance of the Cannons and pore Knyghtes dwellyng in the said Place, and for the Almes Dedes that is there perpetualli ordenyd; that is to witt, the Soverayne

fourty Markes, a Stranger Kyng twenty Pounds, the Prynce twenty Markes, every Duke ten Pounds, every Marques eight Pounds six Shillings and eight Pence, every Erle ten Markes, every Vizconte five Pounds sixteen Shillings and eight Pence, every Baron and Baneret, five Pounds, every Bacheler five Markes; and their Baners, Helmetts, Crestis, and Swordis, shalle not be set over their Stalles untyll the tyme that they have payd, at their entryng, the foresaid Sommes, every one after his Astate and Degree whereof he is; and that is to witt, the Soverayne is bounde to pay for every Stranger that shall be Chosen and electe, when he shall be stalled in his propre Parson, or by procurement or Attornay, and these Gyftes be gieven, to the entent that every one of them that shall entre into the Ordre, be more worthy to have the Name, Title and Privelege of one of the Founders of the said Ordre.

XXV. *Item*, It ys agreed, That every Knight within the Yere of his Stallation, shall cause to be made a Scouchon of his Armes and Hachementis in a Plate of Metall, suche as shall please hym, and that it be suerly sett upon the back of his Stall; and the other that shall come after, shall have their Scochons and Hachements in like manner; but their Plates of Metall nor there Hachements shall not be soo large nor soo greatte as they of the first Founders were; excepte Strangers, which may use their Plates and Fashions at their Pleasure.

XXVI. *Item*, It ys agreed, That no Knyght chosen and electe for to be Felow of the said Noble Ordre, shall not be stalled by Procurement or Attornay, excepte he be a Straunger, and may not well come hyther in his propre Parson for to be stalled, or other that is busied withoute the Realme for the Affaires of the Soverayne, or by his Commandement and

Lycence, as it ys above declared.

XXVII. *Item*, That every Knyght entryng in the said Ordre, shall Promes and Swere faithfully to observe and kepe the Poyntis and Articles that here followeth; that is to witt, that to his trew Powre he shall helpe, duryng his Lyffe, and duryng the tyme that he shall be Felow of the said Ordre, for to kepe, defende and sustayne the Honor, Quarrelles, Rightes and Lordshippes of the Soverayne of the said Ordre.

Item, That with all his Powre he shall enforce hymselffe and take payne honorably to entertayne and augment the said Ordre; and if it happen hym for to know any thynge that were imagyned or procured to the contrarye, of the defence and resistence of this, with all his trew Powre he shall put hymself in more gretter endevorment.

Item, That well and trewly he shall accomplisshe and entertayne all the Statutis, Poyntis and Ordynances of the said Ordre; and of all this shall make a generall Othe, all and so as though it were redde unto hym fro Poynt to Poynt, and Article to Article, and shall make the said Othe to the Soverayne of the said Ordre, or his Deputie, in sweryng and promisyng upon the Holye Gospellis, for to kepe them and entertayne them withoute any fraude or delacion. And upon this he shall touche the Boke, and kysse the Crosse.

Item, This done, the said Knyght soo Chosen, with due Reverence, shall receyve the Garter; the whiche the, Soverayne or his Deputye shall put it aboute his left Leg, in saying these Words: “Sir, The lovyng Companye of the Ordre of the Garter hath receyved you theyr Brother, Lover, and Felow; and in token and knowlege of this, they gyve you and present you this present Garter; the whiche God wyll that you receyve and were from hensforth to his Praise and

Pleasure, and to the Exaltacion and Honor of the said Noble Order, and of your self."

XXVIII. *Item*, It is agreed, That in case that the Soverayne be out of the Contrey, to the whiche he cannot in propre Parson do that shall appertayne to the Stallation; he may gyve Powre and Auctorite, by his Letters of Commission, to two of the Felows, or to dyverse, for to exercise it in his Name.

XXIX. *Item*, It is agreed, That a common Seal, a Signet of the Arms of the Ordre be made, the which shall rest in the custodi and kepyng of the Chanceler of the Ordre, or of such a Knyghte and Felow of the said Ordre as shall please the Soverayne to name and assigne; and if he that shall have the Seales in kepyng or custodi, shulde departe or goo forth for any cause twenty Miles farre from the Soverayne, then he shall deliver the said Seals to the Soverayne, or to such Knyghte of the Ordre, or to any other Parson that it shall please the said Soverayne for to ordeyne and appoynte; to the entent that at no tyme the said Seals be out of the presence of the seid Soverayne, he beyng within his Realme; and if he be owte of his Realme, the Signet shall suffice for to Seal all suche Actes and Wrytynges touchyng the said Ordre, that there may be concluded and made.

XXX. *Item*, It is agreed, That every Felow of the said Ordre, from hensforth, shall have the Statutis of the said Ordre first collected and oversene by the Register, and after that sealed with the common Seal aforesaid: And if the Knyght will have any Armes devysed, or cognysance made within the Boke of the said Statutes, then the said Boke shall be delyvered to the Kynge at Armes of the Ordre, for trewly to ordayne of it as it shall appertayne; and the original to be likewyse signed and sealed, the whiche shall abyde in the Treasory of the said College for

evermore.

XXXI. *Item*, It is agreed, That after the Death of eny of the Knyghtes of the said Companye, his Executours shall be bounde for to sende agayne, and to delyver, the Statutes of the said Ordre within three Monethes after, if so be that the Statutes hath been delivered unto hym by the Soverayne, or to his charge; the which Statutes shall be delivered agayn to the Warden or Register of the said College, or to one of the principal Officers for the tyme beyng.

XXXII. *Item*, It is agreed, That none of the Knyghtes of Saynt *George*, of the said Companye of the Garter, shall not goo oute of the Contrey nor Dominion of the Soverayne, without havyng Leave and Lisence of the Soverayne; and therefore it is agreed, That if eny Viage be made, or any other notable Acte, appertaynyng to the Honor of Knyghthod; the said Soverayne, of his Grace, for the great Love, Favor and Confidence that he beares towarde the Knyghtes of the said Ordre, will prefarre, advance and present the said Felowes and Knyghtes of the Order of Saynt *George* before all other.

XXXIII. *Item*, That none of the Knyghtes of the said Ordre shall not Arme themselves the one against the other, but in the Warres of his Soverayne Lorde, in his right and juste Quarell; and if it shulde happen that any of the said Ordre were retayned with any Lorde, and holdyng his Partie and Quarell, and the adversari Partie desireth alsoo to have another Felowe of the said Ordre with hym; In this case such a Knyght and Felowe shall not be retayned, but may excuse hym from all suche thynges, because his Felowe is armed against hym on the other syde, and was retayned before hym; and every Knyght of the said Ordre shall be bounde to excepte when he shall be retayned, that he may be holely dischargyd from

his Servyce of Warre, if any of the Felowshipp before hym retayned or holdyng the contrary and adversari Partye; and if he that is second retayned, know that any of his Felowes be retayned before hym, and armed with his adversari Partye; Then he that is seconde retayned, at the fyrste knowledge that he shall have thereof, shall be bounde to excuse hym toward his Maister, and leave that Quarell.

XXXIV. *Item*, That all the Lycencis gyven to the Knyghtes of the said Ordre that goo oute of the Realme, for to seke and obtayne Honor; and all Certifications or sendynge Letters and Writynges concernyng the said Ordre, from hensforth shall be Sealed with one of the Seales of the said Ordre.

XXXV. *Item*, It is agreed, That if eny Knyght of the said Ordre, for his Devocion, wyll dwell within the said Castell contynually; there shall be ordeny'd for hym a dwellyng Place convenient, by the Assignment of the Soverayne, and he of his propre Goods, and at his Costes and Charges, shall provyde for hys Lyveyng.

XXXVI. *Item*, If any other Knyght, not beyng of the said Ordre, hathe any wyll to dwelle there for his Devocion; there shall be ordened for hym a dwellyng Place, after the Wyll and Pleasure of the said Soverayne, and with the Consentement of the said Company.

XXXVII. *Item*, It is ordened, That yf any Knyght, or other Parson, wylle gyve any Landes, Heritage, or Rentes, for to be participant of all the good Oraysons and Prayers that shall be said in the sayde Place, also his Name shall be registred, and the Canons and pore Knyghts shall Pray perpetually unto God for hym; and also the said Deane, Warden, and Canons of the said College, from hensforth, shall not take any maner of Charge upon the said College, withoute the

Advyse and Consentement of the sayd Soverayne, or his Deputye, and the Felowship of the sayd Order, in Presence, and by them concented and agreed in playne Chapter.

XXXVIII. *Item*, For to have better knowledge of the Knyghtes that shall be of the said Order, the Soverayne of it willyth and ordeneth, by the Willes and Consentement of all the hole Company, that from hensforth, that every Knyght of the said Ordre shall have and were apertly and openly, a Coller of Golde about his Necke, waying thirty Ounces of Troy Weyght, and not above, the whiche Coller shall be made by Pieces in Fashion of Garters, in the myddes of which Garters shall be a double Rose, the one Rose of Rede, and the other within White, and the other Rose White, and the other Rose within Rede, and at the ende of the said Coller shall be put and fastned the Ymage of Saynt *George*. The whiche Coller, the said Soverayne, his Successours, and amiable Companye of the said Ordre, shall be bounde to were, and in especiall in principall and solempne Feasts of the Yere, and in other Dayes of the Yere shall be holden to were a small Chayne of Gold, with the Ymage of Saynt *George* dependyng at the ende of the said Chayne, excepte in tyme of Warre, Sickeness, long Viage; then it shall suffice hym to were alonely a Lase of Sylke, with the said Image of St. *George*; and if the said Coller have any need of reparacion, it might be put into the Handes of the Goldesmyth and Workeman, unto the tyme that it be repared; the whiche Coller allso may not be made more richer with Stones or other thynges, reserving the said Ymage, the which may be garnished and enryched at the Pleasure of the saide Knyghte: Also the said Coller may not be solde, engaged, aliened, nor gyven, for any nede, cause, or

necessity whatsoever it be.

FINIS.

THE CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

Of Knighthood in general, and the several Orders in England, &c. page 1.

CHAP. II.

Of the Religious Orders of Knighthood in Christendom, &c. page 19.

CHAP. III.

An Account of the Orders of Knighthood absolutely Military. page 53.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Castle, Chappel, and College of Windsor. page 79.

CHAP. V.

The Institution of the most Noble Order *of the* Garter. page 119.

CHAP. VI.

The Statutes and Annals of the Order. p. 133.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Habits and Ensigns of the most Noble Order *of the* Garter. page 156.

CHAP. VIII.

The Officers appointed for the Service of the Order. page 189.

CHAP. IX.

The Election of a Knight into the Order. page 225.

CHAP. X.

The Investiture of a Knight Subject, with the Garter and George. page 272.

CHAP. XI.

Of Preparations for the personal Installation of a Knight. page 286.

CHAP. XII.

The personal Installation of a Knight-Subject. page 315.

CHAP. XIII.

The Installation of a Knight-Subject by Proxy. page 352.

CHAP. XIV.

The Signification of Elections to Strangers. page 360.

CHAP. XV.

The Investitures of Strangers with the Habit and Ensigns of the Order. page 367.

CHAP. XVI.

The Installation of a Stranger by Proxy. p. 384.

CHAP. XVII.

The Duties and Fees payable by the Knights-Companions at their Installations. page 404.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Grand Feast of the Order. page 410.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Preparations for the Grand Feast of the Order. page 420.

CHAP. XX.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Eve of the Grand Feast. page 433.

CHAP. XXI.

The Order of the Ceremonies on the Feast Day. page 465.

CHAP. XXII.

The Ceremonies observed on the last Day of the Feast. page 484.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Observation of the Grand Feast by absent Knights. page 486.

CHAP. XXIV.

The Degradation of a Knight-Companion. p. 489.

CHAP. XXV.

Honours paid to deceased Knights-Companions. page 491.

CHAP. XXVI.

A List of the Founders, and Catalogue of their Successors, to the present time. page 501.

Transcriber's Note

This book often uses inconsistent spelling and formatting (decorative small capitals, italics, etc.). This was left as printed unless noted below.

Opening quote marks in the

printed book were often included at the beginning of a quote and at the start of each subsequent line of the paragraph. Closing quote marks were often omitted. In this representation of the book, the opening quotes following the first were omitted and a closing quote was added to aid readability.

Some presumed printer's errors have been corrected, including normalizing punctuation. Further corrections are listed below.

p. 6 Patenr -> Patent
p. 13 ortns -> ortus
p. 15 *Brune*, in in *Lincolnshire* -> *Brune*, in *Lincolnshire*
p. 15 a, -> at
p. 27 Hospitellers -> Hospitallers
p. 32 Cisterian -> Cistercian
p. 39 Beast -> Breast
p. 61 Portaiture -> Portraiture
p. 112 4 *l.* 2 *d.* 8 *d.* -> 4 *l.* 2 *s.* 8 *d.*
p. 113 *l.* 12. 9 *d.* -> *l.* 12 *s.* 9 *d.*
p. 173 among the the Romans -> among the Romans
p. 188 Cold Chain -> Gold Chain
p. 189 obious -> obvious
p. 201 exhibied -> exhibited
p. 218 37 *l.* 13 *s.* 10 *s.* -> 37 *l.* 13 *s.* 10 *d.*
p. 244 Execuing -> Executing
p. 247 mannner -> manner
p. 248 Fengo -> Fengs (one instance)

p. 250 *Eliz.* IV. -> *Edw.* IV.
p. 273 Year of of our Reign -> Year of our Reign
p. 393 Christan -> Christian
p. 419 annna -> annua
p. 429 Flanders, Flanders -> Flanders
p. 475 there moving -> the removing
p. 478 twenty fith -> twenty fifth
p. 501 Chapter heading added according to the Table of Contents
p. 516 mngland -> England
p. 546 hmuble -> humble
p. 548 Even Soog -> Even Song
p. 548 Saynt *Geooge* -> Saynt *George*
p. 555 for they they should -> for they
p. 562 gvye -> gyve

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK THE HISTORY OF THE MOST NOBLE ORDER OF THE GARTER ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial

redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG™ LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set

forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project

Gutenberg License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

> This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under

the terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full

Project Gutenberg License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg electronic works provided

that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”

- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.

- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

• You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party

distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work

is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission

of Project Gutenberg

Project Gutenberg is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 41 Watchung Plaza #516, Montclair NJ 07042, USA, +1 (862) 621-9288. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations ($1 to $5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit

www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in

compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility: www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.